CONTENTS

SECTION 1 GENERAL

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1. STRUCTURE

This service manual has been prepared as an aid to improve the quality of repairs by giving the serviceman an accurate understanding of the product and by showing him the correct way to perform repairs and make judgements. Make sure you understand the contents of this manual and use it to full effect at every opportunity.

This service manual mainly contains the necessary technical information for operations performed in a service workshop.

For ease of understanding, the manual is divided into the following sections.

SECTION 1 GENERAL

This section explains the safety hints and gives the specification of the machine and major components.

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

This section explains the structure and function of each component. It serves not only to give an understanding of the structure, but also serves as reference material for troubleshooting.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

This section explains the hydraulic circuit, single and combined operation.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

This section explains the electrical circuit, monitoring system and each component. It serves not only to give an understanding electrical system, but also serves as reference material for trouble shooting.

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

This section explains the computer aided power optimization system and each component.

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

This section explains the troubleshooting charts correlating problems to causes.

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

This section gives the judgement standards when inspecting disassembled parts.

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This section explains the order to be followed when removing, installing, disassembling or assembling each component, as well as precautions to be taken for these operations.

2. HOW TO READ THE SERVICE MANUAL

Distribution and updating

Any additions, amendments or other changes will be sent to HYUNDAI distributors.
Get the most up-to-date information before you start any work.

Filing method

1. See the page number on the bottom of the page.
   File the pages in correct order.
2. Following examples shows how to read the page number.
   Example 1
   2 - 3
   - 2: Item number(2. Structure and Function)
   - 3: Consecutive page number for each item.
3. Additional pages : Additional pages are indicated by a hyphen(-) and number after the page number. File as in the example.

   10 - 4
   10 - 4 - 1 ⎤ Added pages
   10 - 4 - 2 ⎦
   10 - 5

Revised edition mark(①②③…)

When a manual is revised, an edition mark is recorded on the bottom outside corner of the pages.

Revisions

Revised pages are shown at the list of revised pages on the between the contents page and section 1 page.

Symbols

So that the shop manual can be of ample practical use, important places for safety and quality are marked with the following symbols.

Symbol	Item	Remarks
⚠	Safety	Special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work.
		Extra special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work because it is under internal pressure.
※	Caution	Special technical precautions or other precautions for preserving standards are necessary when performing the work.

3. CONVERSION TABLE

Method of using the Conversion Table

The Conversion Table in this section is provided to enable simple conversion of figures. For details of the method of using the Conversion Table, see the example given below.

Example

1. **Method of using the Conversion Table to convert from millimeters to inches**

   Convert 55mm into inches.

   (1) Locate the number 50in the vertical column at the left side, take this as ⓐ, then draw a horizontal line from ⓐ.

   (2) Locate the number 5in the row across the top, take this as ⓑ, then draw a perpendicular line down from ⓑ.

   (3) Take the point where the two lines cross as ⓒ. This point ⓒ gives the value when converting from millimeters to inches. Therefore, 55mm = 2.165 inches.

2. Convert 550mm into inches.

   (1) The number 550 does not appear in the table, so divide by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the left) to convert it to 55mm.

   (2) Carry out the same procedure as above to convert 55mm to 2.165 inches.

   (3) The original value(550mm) was divided by 10, so multiply 2.165 inches by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the right) to return to the original value.
   This gives 550mm = 21.65 inches.

Millimeters to inches

ⓑ

1mm = 0.03937 in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
ⓐ 50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	ⓒ 2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Millimeters to inches

1mm = 0.03937in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Kilogram to Pound

1kg = 2.2046lb

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		2.20	4.41	6.61	8.82	11.02	13.23	15.43	17.64	19.84
10	22.05	24.25	26.46	28.66	30.86	33.07	35.27	37.48	39.68	41.89
20	44.09	46.30	48.50	50.71	51.91	55.12	57.32	59.5.	61.73	63.93
30	66.14	68.34	70.55	72.75	74.96	77.16	79.37	81.57	83.78	85.98
40	88.18	90.39	92.59	94.80	97.00	99.21	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26

Liter to U.S. Gallon

1ℓ = 0.2642 U.S.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.264	0.528	0.793	1.057	1.321	1.585	1.849	2.113	2.378
10	2.642	2.906	3.170	3.434	3.698	3.963	4.227	4.491	4.755	5.019
20	5.283	5.548	5.812	6.6076	6.340	6.604	6.869	7.133	7.397	7.661
30	7.925	8.189	8.454	8.718	8.982	9.246	9.510	9.774	10.039	10.303
40	10.567	10.831	11.095	11.359	11.624	11.888	12.152	12.416	12.680	12.944
50	13.209	13.473	13.737	14.001	14.265	14.529	14.795	15.058	15.322	15.586
60	15.850	16.115	16.379	16.643	16.907	17.171	17.435	17.700	17.964	18.228
70	18.492	18.756	19.020	19.285	19.549	19.813	20.077	20.341	20.605	20.870
80	21.134	21.398	21.662	21.926	22.190	22.455	22.719	22.983	23.247	23.511
90	23.775	24.040	24.304	24.568	24.832	25.096	25.631	25.625	25.889	26.153

Liter to U.K. Gallon

1ℓ = 0.21997 U.K.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.950	4.179
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.969	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778
50	10.998	11.281	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.528	12.758	12.978
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777

kgf·m to lbf·ft

1kgf·m = 7.233lbf·ft

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		7.2	14.5	21.7	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
10	72.3	79.6	86.8	94.0	101.3	108.5	115.7	123.0	130.2	137.4
20	144.7	151.9	159.1	166.4	173.6	180.8	188.1	195.3	202.5	209.8
30	217.0	224.2	231.5	238.7	245.9	253.2	260.4	267.6	274.9	282.1
40	289.3	396.6	303.8	311.0	318.3	325.5	332.7	340.0	347.2	354.4
50	361.7	368.9	376.1	383.4	390.6	397.8	405.1	412.3	419.5	426.8
60	434.0	441.2	448.5	455.7	462.9	470.2	477.4	484.6	491.8	499.1
70	506.3	513.5	520.8	528.0	535.2	542.5	549.7	556.9	564.2	571.4
80	578.6	585.9	593.1	600.3	607.6	614.8	622.0	629.3	636.5	643.7
90	651.0	658.2	665.4	672.7	679.9	687.1	694.4	701.6	708.8	716.1
100	723.3	730.5	737.8	745.0	752.2	759.5	766.7	773.9	781.2	788.4
110	795.6	802.9	810.1	817.3	824.6	831.8	839.0	846.3	853.5	860.7
120	868.0	875.2	882.4	889.7	896.9	904.1	911.4	918.6	925.8	933.1
130	940.3	947.5	954.8	962.0	969.2	976.5	983.7	990.9	998.2	10005.4
140	1012.6	1019.9	1027.1	1034.3	1041.5	1048.8	1056.0	1063.2	1070.5	1077.7
150	1084.9	1092.2	1099.4	1106.6	1113.9	1121.1	1128.3	1135.6	1142.8	1150.0
160	1157.3	1164.5	1171.7	1179.0	1186.2	1193.4	1200.7	1207.9	1215.1	1222.4
170	1129.6	1236.8	1244.1	1251.3	1258.5	1265.8	1273.0	1280.1	1287.5	1294.7
180	1301.9	1309.2	1316.4	1323.6	1330.9	1338.1	1345.3	1352.6	1359.8	1367.0
190	1374.3	1381.5	1388.7	1396.0	1403.2	1410.4	1417.7	1424.9	1432.1	1439.4

kgf/cm^2 to lbf/in^2

1kgf / cm^2 = 14.2233lbf / in^2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		14.2	28.4	42.7	56.9	71.1	85.3	99.6	113.8	128.0
10	142.2	156.5	170.7	184.9	199.1	213.4	227.6	241.8	256.0	270.2
20	284.5	298.7	312.9	327.1	341.4	355.6	369.8	384.0	398.3	412.5
30	426.7	440.9	455.1	469.4	483.6	497.8	512.0	526.3	540.5	554.7
40	568.9	583.2	597.4	611.6	625.8	640.1	654.3	668.5	682.7	696.9
50	711.2	725.4	739.6	753.8	768.1	782.3	796.5	810.7	825.0	839.2
60	853.4	867.6	881.8	896.1	910.3	924.5	938.7	953.0	967.2	981.4
70	995.6	1010	1024	1038	1053	1067	1081	1095	1109	1124
80	1138	1152	1166	1181	1195	1209	1223	1237	1252	1266
90	1280	1294	1309	1323	1337	1351	1365	1380	1394	1408
100	1422	1437	1451	1465	1479	1493	1508	1522	1536	1550
110	1565	1579	1593	1607	1621	1636	1650	1664	1678	1693
120	1707	1721	1735	1749	1764	1778	1792	1806	1821	1835
130	1849	2863	1877	1892	1906	1920	1934	1949	1963	1977
140	1991	2005	2020	2034	2048	2062	2077	2091	2105	2119
150	2134	2148	2162	2176	2190	2205	2219	2233	2247	2262
160	2276	2290	2304	2318	2333	2347	2361	2375	2389	2404
170	2418	2432	2446	2460	2475	2489	2503	2518	2532	2546
180	2560	2574	2589	5603	2617	2631	2646	2660	2674	2688
200	2845	2859	2873	2887	2901	2916	2930	2944	2958	2973
210	2987	3001	3015	3030	3044	3058	3072	3086	3101	3115
220	3129	3143	3158	3172	3186	3200	3214	3229	3243	3257
230	3271	3286	3300	3314	3328	3343	3357	3371	3385	3399
240	3414	3428	3442	3456	3470	3485	3499	3513	3527	3542

TEMPERATURE

Fahrenheit-Centigrade Conversion.

A simple way to convert a fahrenheit temperature reading into a centigrade temperature reading or vice verse is to enter the accompanying table in the center or boldface column of figures.

These figures refer to the temperature in either Fahrenheit or Centigrade degrees.

If it is desired to convert from Fahrenheit to Centigrade degrees, consider the center column as a table of Fahrenheit temperatures and read the corresponding Centigrade temperature in the column at the left.

If it is desired to convert from Centigrade to Fahrenheit degrees, consider the center column as a table of Centigrade values, and read the corresponding Fahrenheit temperature on the right.

˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F
-40.4	-40	-40.0	-11.7	11	51.8	7.8	46	114.8	27.2	81	117.8
-37.2	-35	-31.0	-11.1	12	53.6	8.3	47	116.6	27.8	82	179.6
-34.4	-30	-22.0	-10.6	13	55.4	8.9	48	118.4	28.3	83	181.4
-31.7	-25	-13.0	-10.0	14	57.2	9.4	49	120.2	28.9	84	183.2
-28.9	-20	-4.0	-9.4	15	59.0	10.0	50	122.0	29.4	85	185.0
-28.3	-19	-2.2	-8.9	16	60.8	10.6	51	123.8	30.0	86	186.8
-27.8	-18	-0.4	-8.3	17	62.6	11.1	52	125.6	30.6	87	188.6
-27.2	-17	1.4	-7.8	18	64.4	11.7	53	127.4	31.1	88	190.4
-26.7	-16	3.2	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-26.1	-15	5.0	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-25.6	-14	6.8	-6.1	21	69.8	13.3	56	132.8	32.8	91	195.8
-25.0	-13	8.6	-5.6	22	71.6	13.9	57	134.6	33.3	92	197.6
-24.4	-12	10.4	-5.0	23	73.4	14.4	58	136.4	33.9	93	199.4
-23.9	-11	12.2	-4.4	24	75.2	15.0	59	138.2	34.4	94	201.2
-23.3	-10	14.0	-3.9	25	77.0	15.6	60	140.0	35.0	95	203.0
-22.8	-9	15.8	-3.3	26	78.8	16.1	61	141.8	35.6	96	204.8
-22.2	-8	17.6	-2.8	27	80.6	16.7	62	143.6	36.1	97	206.6
-21.7	-7	19.4	-2.2	28	82.4	17.2	63	145.4	36.7	98	208.4
-21.1	-6	21.2	-1.7	29	84.2	17.8	64	147.2	37.2	99	210.2
-20.6	-5	23.0	-1.1	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-20.0	-4	24.8	-0.6	31	87.8	18.9	66	150.8	40.6	105	221.0
-19.4	-3	26.6	0	32	89.6	19.4	67	152.6	43.3	110	230.0
-18.9	-2	28.4	0.6	33	91.4	20.0	68	154.4	46.1	115	239.0
-18.3	-1	30.2	1.1	34	93.2	20.6	69	156.2	48.9	120	248.0
-17.8	0	32.0	1.7	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-17.2	1	33.8	2.2	36	96.8	21.7	71	159.8	54.4	130	266.0
-16.7	2	35.6	2.8	37	98.6	22.2	72	161.6	57.2	135	275.0
-16.1	3	37.4	3.3	38	100.4	22.8	73	163.4	60.0	140	284.0
-15.6	4	39.2	3.9	39	102.2	23.3	74	165.2	62.7	145	293.0
-15.0	5	41.0	4.4	40	104.0	23.9	75	167.0	65.6	150	302.0
-14.4	6	42.8	5.0	41	105.8	24.4	76	168.8	68.3	155	311.0
-13.9	7	44.6	5.6	42	107.6	25.0	77	170.6	71.1	160	320.0
-13.3	8	46.4	6.1	43	109.4	25.6	78	172.4	73.9	165	329.0
-12.8	9	48.2	6.7	44	111.2	26.1	79	174.2	76.7	170	338.0
-12.2	10	50.0	7.2	45	113.0	26.7	80	176.0	79.4	172	347.0

SECTION 1 GENERAL

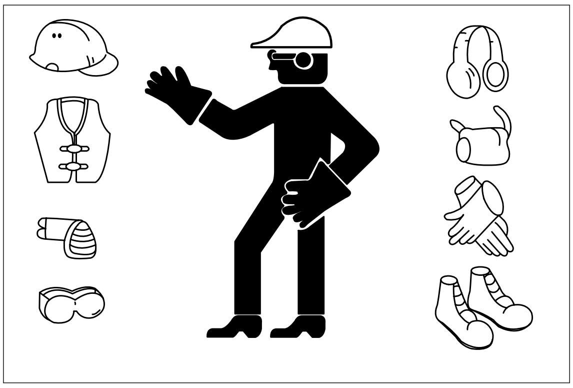
GROUP 1 SAFETY

FOLLOW SAFE PROCEDURE

Unsafe work practices are dangerous. Understand service procedure before doing work; Do not attempt shortcuts.

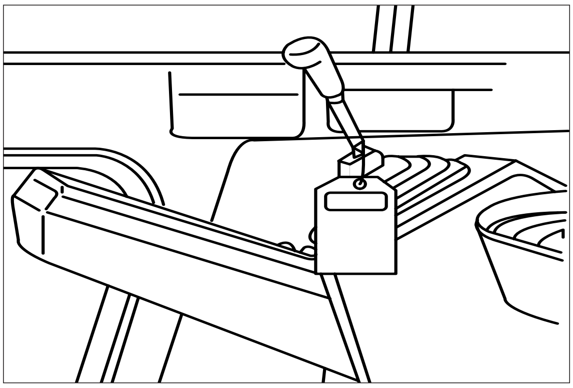
WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.



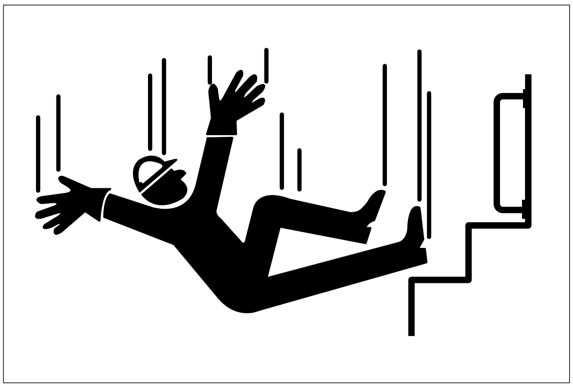
WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK

Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
Before performing any work on the excavator, attach a 「**Do Not Operate**」 tag on the right side control lever.



USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS

Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
When you get on and off the machine, always maintain a three point contact with the steps and handrails and face the machine. Do not use any controls as handholds.
Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.

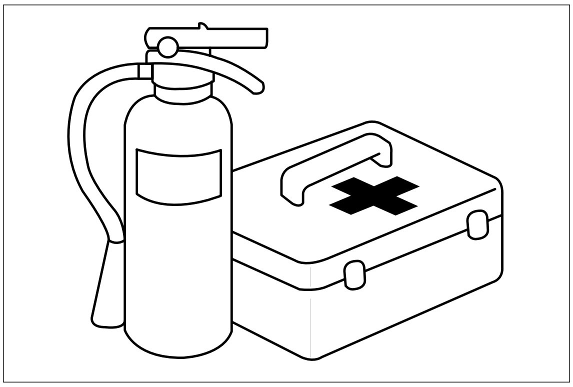


PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

Be prepared if a fire starts.

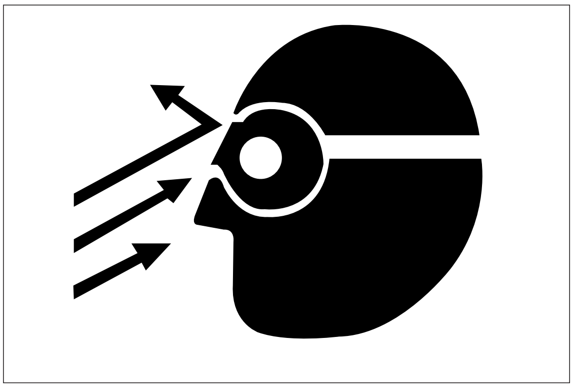
Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

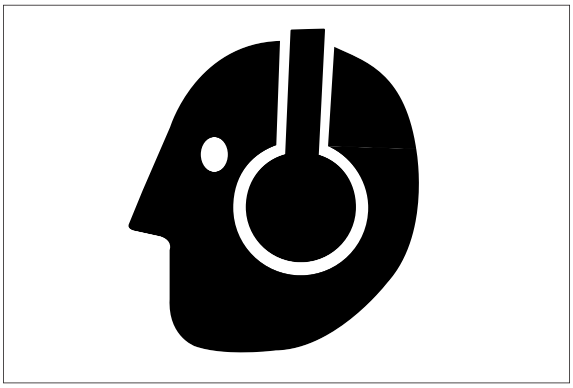
Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; Wear goggles or safety glasses.



PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

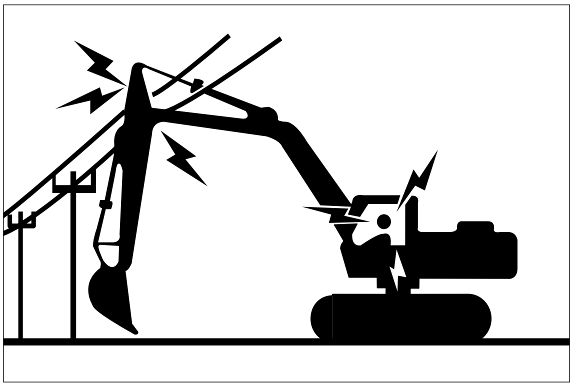
Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.



AVOID POWER LINES

Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.

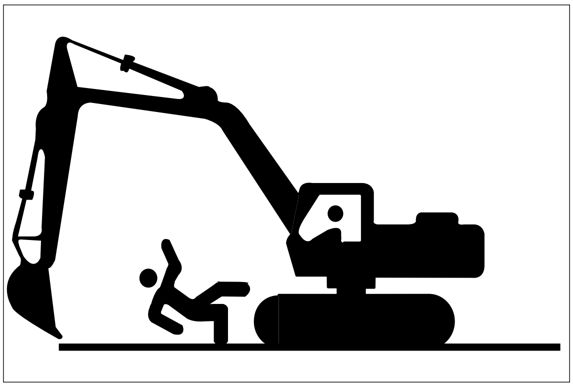
Never move any part of the machine or load closer to electric line than 3m(10ft) plus twice the line insulator length.



KEEP RIDERS OFF EXCAVATOR

Only allow the operator on the excavator. Keep riders off.

Riders on excavator are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the excavator. Riders also obstruct the operator's view resulting in the excavator being operated in an unsafe manner.

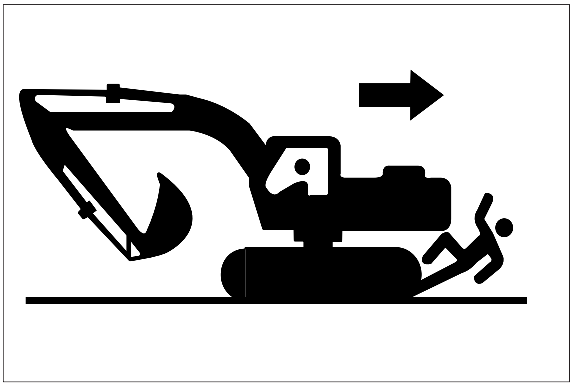


MOVE AND OPERATE MACHINE SAFELY

Bystanders can be run over. Know the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.

Always keep the travel alarm in working condition. It warns people when the excavator starts to move.

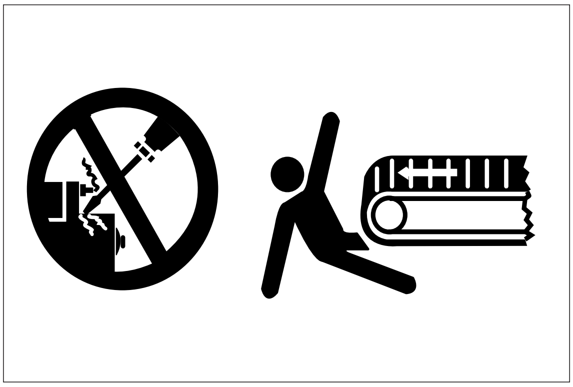
Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the excavator.



OPERATE ONLY FORM OPERATOR'S SEAT

Avoid possible injury machine damage. Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.

NEVER start engine while standing on ground. Start engine only from operator's seat.

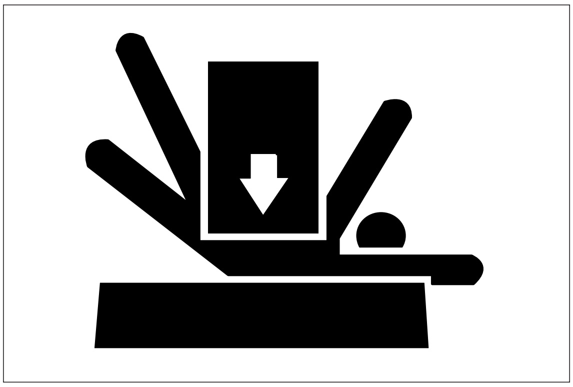


PARK MACHINE SAFELY

Before working on the machine:

·Park machine on a level surface.
·Lower bucket to the ground.
·Turn auto idle switch off.
·Run engine at 1/2 speed without load for 2 minutes.
·Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine. Remove key from switch.
·Move pilot control shutoff lever to locked position.
·Allow engine to cool.

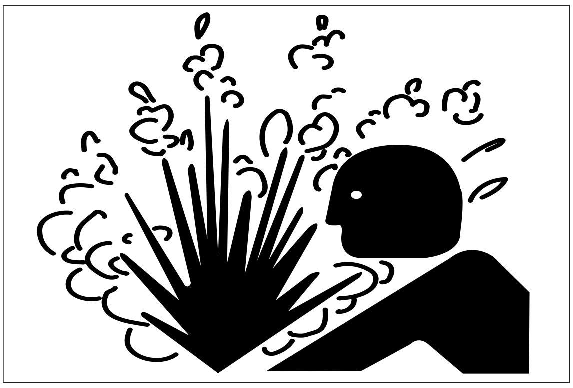
SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY



Always lower the attachment or implement to the ground before you work on the machine. If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment.

Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tiles, or props that may crumble under continuous load.
Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack. Follow recommended procedures in this manual.

SERVICE COOLING SYSTEM SAFELY

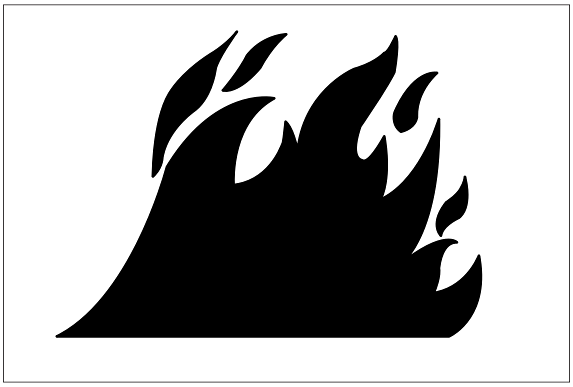


Explosive release of fluids from pressurized cooling system can cause serious burns.

Shut off engine. Only remove filler cap when cool enough to touch with bare hands.

HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY-AVOID FIRES

Handle fuel with care; It is highly flammable. Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks. Always stop engine before refueling machine.
Fill fuel tank outdoors.



Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.

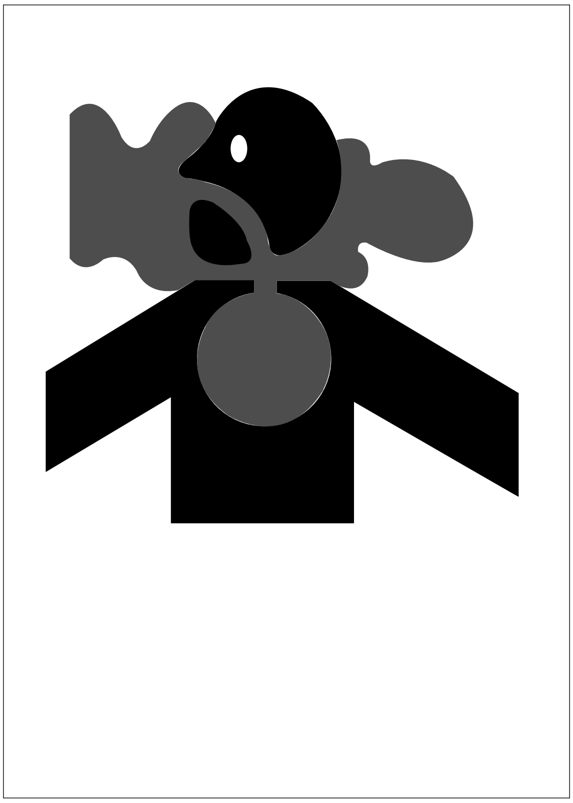
Make sure machine is clean of trash, grease, and debris.

Do not store oily rags; They can ignite and burn spontaneously.

BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES

Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.

If you must operate in a building, be positive there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.



REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING

Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

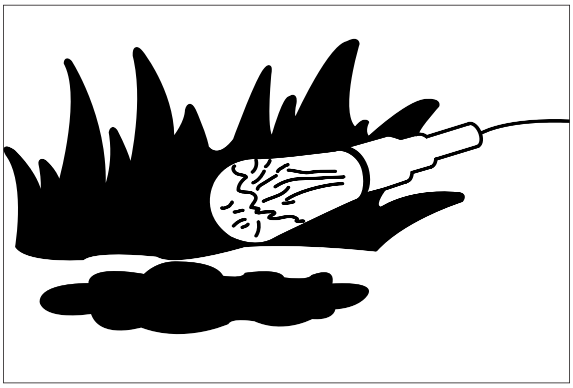
Do all work outside or in a well ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

Remove paint before welding or heating:

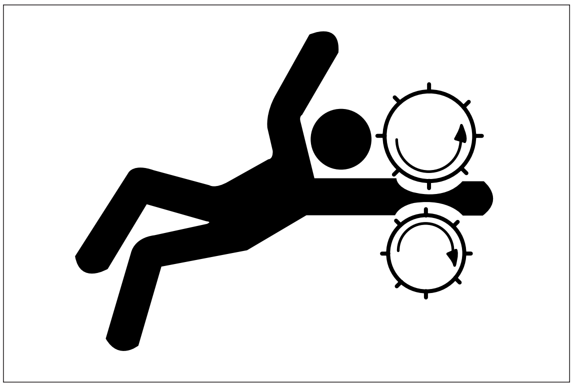
- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust.
  Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

ILLUMINATE WORK AREA SAFELY

Illuminate your work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the machine. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.



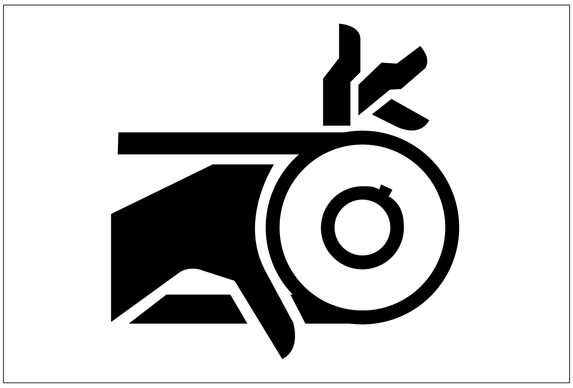
SERVICE MACHINE SAFELY



Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.

STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS



Entanglements in moving parts can cause serious injury.

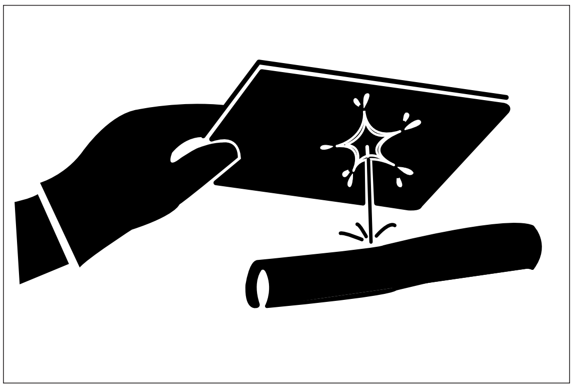
To prevent accidents, use care when working around rotating parts.

AVOID HIGH PRESSURE FLUIDS

Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.



If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.

Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install fire resisting guards to protect hoses or other materials.

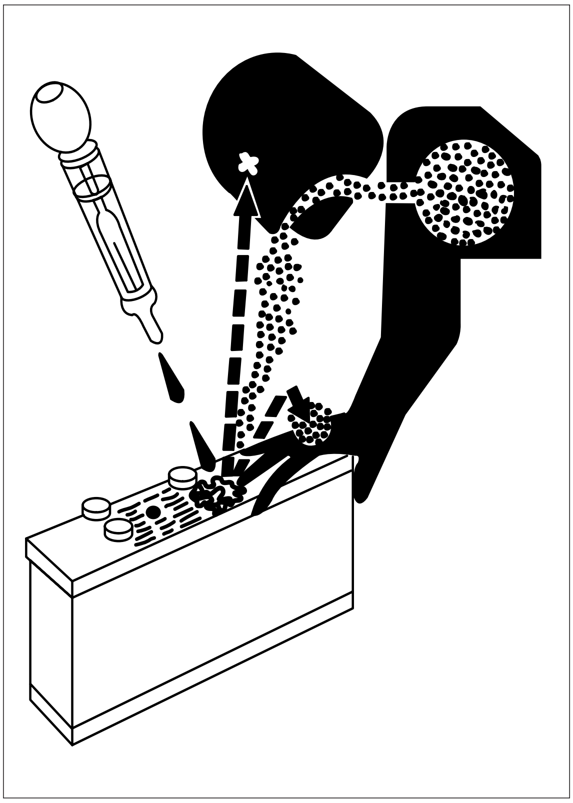
PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery. Battery gas can explode.

Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a volt-meter or hydrometer.

Do not charge a frozen battery; It may explode. Warm battery to 16˚C (60˚F).

PREVENT ACID BURNS



Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into eyes.

Avoid the hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling of dripping electrolyte.
5. Use proper jump start procedure.

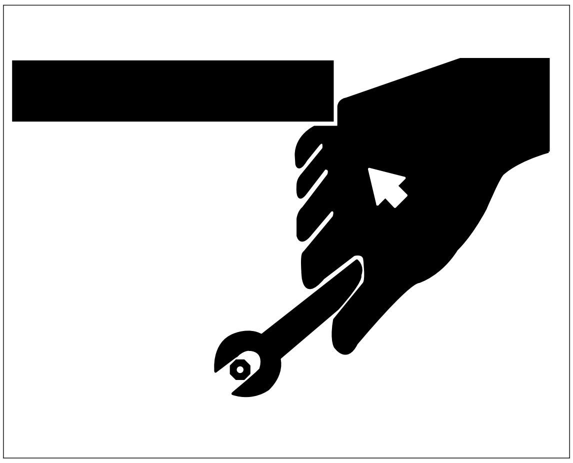
If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. Flush your eyes with water for 10-15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

If acid is swallowed:

1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
3. Get medical attention immediately.

USE TOOLS PROPERLY



Use tools appropriate to the work. Makeshift tools, parts, and procedures can create safety hazards.

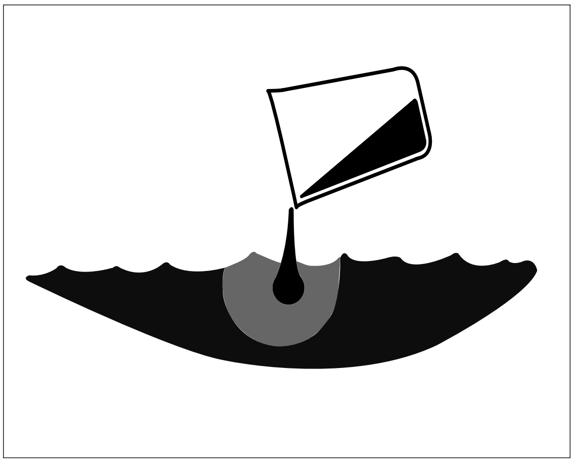
Use power tools only to loosen threaded tools and fasteners.

For loosening and tightening hardware, use the correct size tools. DO NOT use U.S. measurement tools on metric fasteners. Avoid bodily injury caused by slipping wrenches.

Use only recommended replacement parts. (See Parts catalogue.)

DISPOSE OF FLUIDS PROPERLY

Improperly disposing of fluids can harm the environment and ecology. Before draining any fluids, find out the proper way to dispose of waste from your local environmental agency.

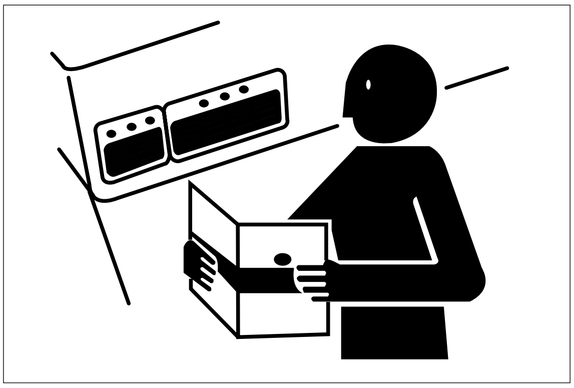


Use proper containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

DO NOT pour oil into the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Observe relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, batteries, and other harmful waste.

REPLACE SAFETY SIGNS

Replace missing or damaged safety signs. See the machine operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.

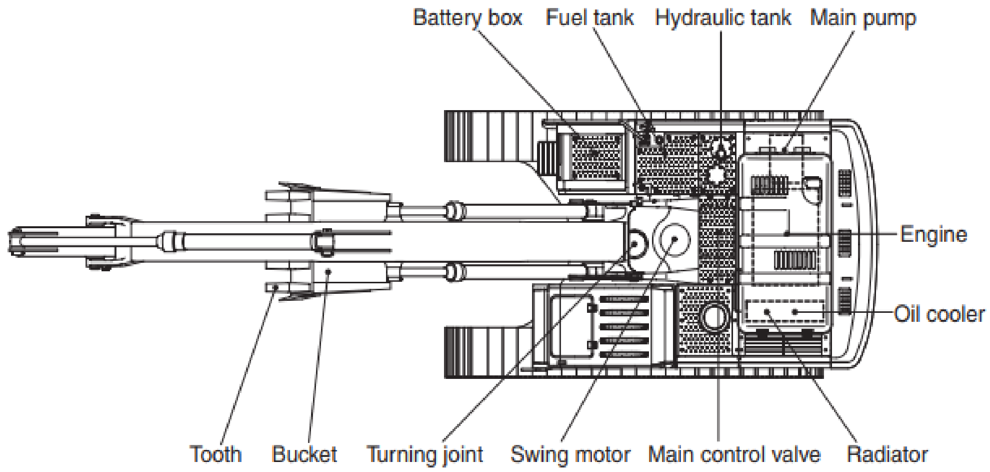


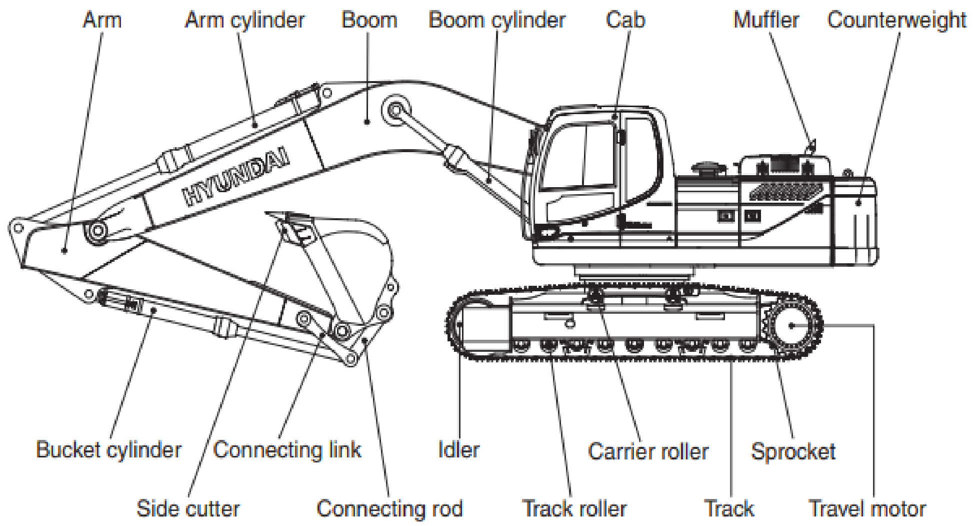
LIVE WITH SAFETY

Before returning machine to customer, make sure machine is functioning properly, especially the safety systems. Install all guards and shields.

GROUP 2 SPECIFICATIONS

1. MAJOR COMPONENT

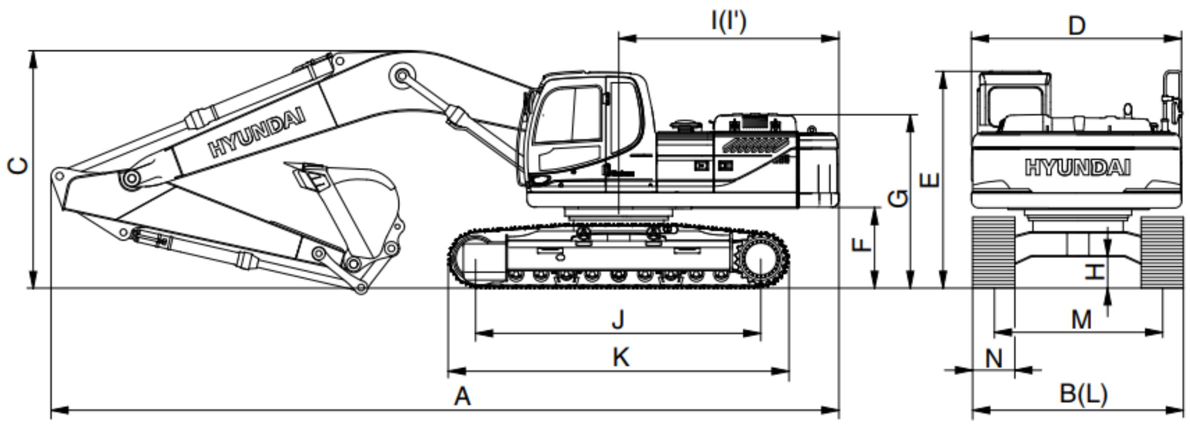




2. SPECIFICATIONS

1) R305LVS

·6.25 m (20' 6") BOOM and 2.85 m (9' 4") ARM

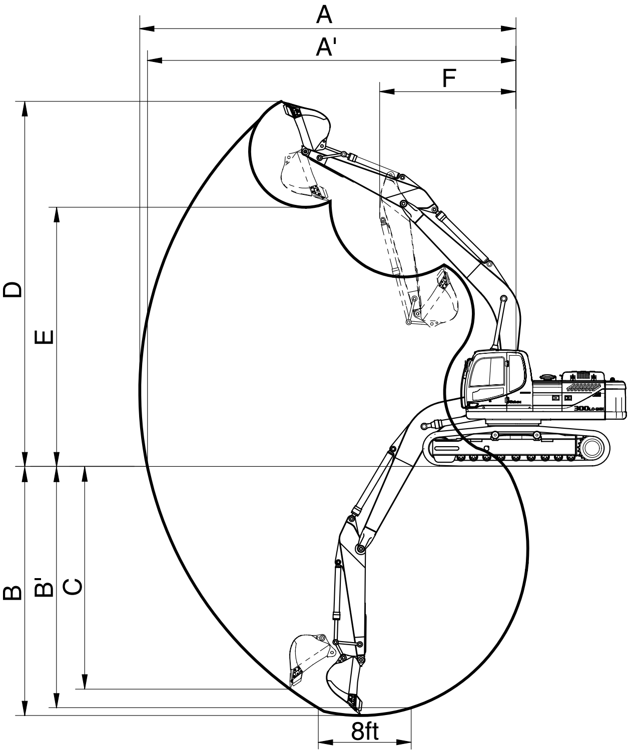


Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	30200 (66580)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m^3 (yd^3)	1.44(1.88)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	10453(34' 4")
Overall width, with 600mm shoe	B		3200 (10' 6")
Overall height	C		3350 (10' 12")
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")
Overall height of cab	E		3010 (9' 11")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1190 (3' 11")
Engine cover height	G		3190 (10' 6")
Minimum ground clearance	H		500 (1' 8")
Rear-end distance	I		3118 (10' 3")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		3196 (10' 5")
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")
Undercarriage width	L		3200 (10' 6")
Track gauge	M		2600 (8' 6")
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.2/5.6 (2.0/3.2)
Swing speed		rpm	10.2
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm^2 (psi)	0.58 (8.25)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	26500 (58422)

3. WORKING RANGE

1) R305LVS

·6.25 m (20' 6") BOOM



Description		2.85m (9' 4") Arm
Max digging reach	A	10590 mm (34' 9")
Max digging reach on ground	A'	10400 mm (34' 1")
Max digging depth	B	7180 mm (23' 7")
Max digging depth (8 ft level)	B'	6990 mm (22' 11")
Max vertical wall digging depth	C	6120 mm (20' 1")
Max digging height	D	10030 mm (32' 11")
Max dumping height	E	7000 mm (22' 12")
Min swing radius	F	4300 mm (14' 1")
Bucket digging force	SAE	168.7 [183.2] kN
		17200 [18670] kgf
		37920 [41170] lbf
	ISO	192.2 [208.7] kN
		19600 [21280] kgf
		43210 [46910] lbf
Arm digging force	SAE	139.3 [151.2] kN
		14200 [15420] kgf
		31310[33990] lbf
	ISO	145.1 [157.5] kN
		14800 [16070] kgf
		32630 [35430] lbf

[ ] : Power boost

4. WEIGHT

1) R305LVS

Item	R305LVS	
	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly	12604	27786
Main frame weld assembly	2757	6078
Engine assembly	556	1226
Main pump assembly	140	310
Main control valve assembly	220	485
Swing motor assembly	390	860
Hydraulic oil tank assembly	250	560
Fuel tank assembly	240	530
Counterweight	5200	11464
Cab assembly	490	1080
Lower chassis assembly	10740	23680
Track frame weld assembly	3765	8300
Swing bearing	433	955
Travel motor assembly	400	880
Turning joint	54	120
Track recoil spring	215.5	475
Idler	260	573
Carrier roller	35	80
Track roller	56.4	124.3
Track-chain assembly (600 mm standard triple grouser shoe)	1879	4143
Front attachment assembly (6.25 m boom, 2.85 m arm, 1.44 m^3 SAE heaped bucket)	5610	12370
6.25 m boom assembly	2385	5258
2.85 m arm assembly	1099	2423
1.44 m^3 SAE heaped bucket	1314	2897
Boom cylinder assembly	270	600
Arm cylinder assembly	360	790
Bucket cylinder assembly	220	485
Bucket control link assembly	110	240

5. LIFTING CAPACITIES

1) R305LVS

(1) 6.25 m (20' 6") boom, 2.85 m (9' 4") arm equipped with 1.44 m^3 (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe and 5200 kg (11464 lb) counterweight.

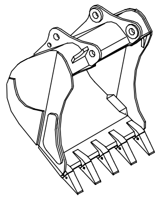
· : Rating over-front · : Rating over-side or 360 degree

Load point height		Load radius												At max. reach		
		1.5 m (5 ft)		3.0 m (10 ft)		4.5 m (15 ft)		6.0 m (20 ft)		7.5 m (25 ft)		9.0 m (30 ft)		Capacity		Reach
																m (ft)
7.5 m	kg													*4630	*3720	8.71
(25 ft)	lb													*10210	*8200	(28.6)
6.0 m	kg									*5180	*4830			*4780	2980	9.53
(20 ft)	lb									*11420	*10650			*10540	6570	(31.3)
4.5 m	kg							*6310	*6310	*5650	4620			*4490	2570	10.01
(15 ft)	lb							*13910	*13910	*12460	10190			*9900	5670	(32.8)
3.0 m	kg					*10520	*10200	*7670	6390	*6360	4340	*3820	3040	*4220	2370	10.21
(10 ft)	lb					*23190	*22490	*16910	14090	*14020	9570	*8420	6700	*9300	5220	(33.5)
1.5 m	kg					*12940	*9200	*8990	5880	*7020	4070	*4560	2900	4180	2320	10.16
(5 ft)	lb					*28530	*20280	*19820	12960	*15480	8970	*10050	6390	9220	5110	(33.3)
Ground	kg			*10120	*10210	*14190	*8730	*9820	5540	*6790	3860			4380	2430	9.84
Line	lb			*22310	*22310	*31280	*19250	*21650	12210	*14970	8510			9660	5360	(32.3)
-1.5 m	kg	*11650	*11650	*14830	*14830	*14410	*8600	*9650	5390	6680	3760			4900	2760	9.22
(-5 ft)	lb	*25680	*25680	*32690	*32690	*31770	*18960	*21270	11880	14730	8290			10800	6080	(30.2)
-3.0 m	kg	*15860	*15860	*20180	*20180	*13780	*8700	*9670	5410	6730	3810			6010	3460	8.23
(-10 ft)	lb	*34970	*34970	*44490	*44490	*30380	*19180	*21320	11930	14840	8400			13250	7630	(27.0)
-4.5 m	kg			*17240	*17240	*12070	*9020	*8740	*5640							
(-15 ft)	lb			*38010	*38010	*26610	*19890	*19270	*12430							

Note 1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE J1097 and ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the ROBEX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The load point is a hook located on the back of the bucket.
4. *indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.
5. *A device to prevent the boom from falling must be installed.

6. BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE

1) ROCK BUCKET



1.44 m^3 SAE
heaped bucket

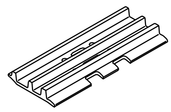
Capacity		Width		Weight	Recommendation
					6.25 m (20' 6") boom
SAE heaped	CECE heaped	Without side cutter	With side cutter		2.85 m arm (9' 4")
1.44 m^3 (1.88 yd^3)	1.26 m^3 (1.65 yd^3)	1480 mm (58.3")	-	1310 kg (2890 lb)	Applicable for materials with density of 1600 kgf/m^3 (2700 lbf/yd^3) or less

7. UNDERCARRIAGE

1) TRACKS

X-leg type center frame is integrally welded with reinforced box-section track frames. The design includes dry tracks, lubricated rollers, idlers, sprockets, hydraulic track adjusters with shock absorbing springs and assembled track-type tractor shoes with triple grousers.

2) TYPES OF SHOES

Model	Shapes		Triple grouser
			
R305LVS	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)
	Operating weight	kg (lb)	30200 (66580)
	Ground pressure	kgf/cm² (psi)	0.58 (8.25)
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	3200 (10' 6")

3) NUMBER OF ROLLERS AND SHOES ON EACH SIDE

Item	Quantity
Carrier rollers	2 EA
Track rollers	9 EA
Track shoes	48 EA

4) SELECTION OF TRACK SHOE

Suitable track shoes should be selected according to operating conditions.

Method of selecting shoes

Confirm the category from the list of applications in **table 2**, then use **table 1** to select the shoe. Wide shoes (categories B and C) have limitations on applications. Before using wide shoes, check the precautions, then investigate and study the operating conditions to confirm if these shoes are suitable.

Select the narrowest shoe possible to meet the required flotation and ground pressure. Application of wider shoes than recommendations will cause unexpected problem such as bending of shoes, crack of link, breakage of pin, loosening of shoe bolts and the other various problems.

※ Table 1

Track shoe	Specification	Category
600mm triple grouser	Standard	A

※ Table 2

Category	Applications	Precautions
A	Rocky ground, river beds, normal soil	· Travel at low speed on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees
B	Normal soil, soft ground	· These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees · Travel at high speed only on flat ground · Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles
C	Extremely soft ground (swampy ground)	· Use the shoes only in the conditions that the machine sinks and it is impossible to use the shoes of category A or B · These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees · Travel at high speed only on flat ground · Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles

8. SPECIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

1) ENGINE

Item	Specification
Model	HYUNDAI HE 6.7
Type	4-cycle turbocharged diesel engine
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	107× 124 mm (4.21" × 4.88")
Piston displacement	6700 cc (409cu in)
Compression ratio	17.2 : 1
Rated gross horse power (SAE J1995)	227 Hp at 1900 rpm (169 kW at 1900 rpm)
Maximum torque	97.0 kgf·m (701 lbf·ft) at 1400 rpm
Engine oil quantity	24 ℓ(6.3 U.S. gal)
Dry weight	556 kg (1226 lb)
High idling speed	1850± 50 rpm
Low idling speed	800± 100 rpm
Rated fuel consumption	166.3 g/Hp·hr at 1900 rpm
Starting motor	24 V-4.5 kW
Alternator	24 V-90 A
Battery	2 × 12 V × 160 Ah

2) MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement tandem axis piston pumps
Capacity	2 × 140 cc/rev
Maximum pressure	350 kgf/cm^2 (4980 psi) [380 kgf/cm^2 (5400 psi)]
Rated oil flow	2 × 252ℓ/min (66.6 U.S. gpm / 55.4 U.K. gpm)

[ ] : Power boost

3) GEAR PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Fixed displacement gear pump single stage
Capacity	15 cc/rev
Maximum pressure	40 kgf/cm^2 (570 psi)
Rated oil flow	27 ℓ/min (7.1 U.S. gpm / 5.9 U.K. gpm)

4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item		Specification
		R305LVS
Type		10 spools
Operating method		Hydraulic pilot system
Main relief valve pressure		350 kgf/cm^2 (4980 psi) [380 kgf/cm^2 (5400 psi)]
Port relief valve pressure	Boom	400 kgf/cm^2 (5690 psi)
	Arm	400 kgf/cm^2 (5690 psi)
	Bucket	400 kgf/cm^2 (5690 psi)

[ ]: Power boost

5) SWING MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Axial piston motor
Capacity	156.9 cc/rev
Relief pressure	300 kgf/cm^2 (4270 psi)
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Braking torque	84.4kgf·m (613 lbf·ft)
Brake release pressure	22.3~36.6 kgf/cm^2 (427~711 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 - stage planetary

6) TRAVEL MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement axial piston motor
Relief pressure	350 kgf/cm^2 (4980 psi)
Capacity	154.8/88.5 cc/rev
Reduction gear type	3-stage planetary
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Brake release pressure	9 kgf/cm^2 (128 psi)
Braking torque	40 kgf·m (290 lbf·ft)

7) CYLINDER

Item		Specification
Boom cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø140 × Ø100 × 1465 mm
	Cushion	Extend only
Arm cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø150 × Ø110 × 1765 mm
	Cushion	Extend and retract
Bucket cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø135 × Ø95 × 1185 mm
	Cushion	Extend only

※ Discoloration of cylinder rod can occur when the friction reduction additive of lubrication oil spreads on the rod surface.

※ Discoloration does not cause any harmful effect on the cylinder performance.

8) SHOE

Item		Width	Ground pressure	Link quantity	Overall width
R305LVS	Standard	600 mm (24")	0.58 kgf/cm^2 (8.25 psi)	48	3200 mm (10' 6")

9. RECOMMENDED OILS

Use only oils listed below. Do not mix different brand oil.
Please use HYUNDAI genuine oil and grease.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature℃(℉) -50 (-58), -30 (-22), -20 (-4), -10 (14), 0 (32), 10 (50), 20 (68), 30 (86), 40 (104)
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	24 (6.3)	★SAE 5W-40 SAE 10W-30 SAE 15W-40
Swing drive	Gear oil	6.0 (1.6)	★SAE 75W-90
Final drive	Gear oil	7.8×2 (2.1×2)	SAE 80W-90
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank; 190 (50) System; 330 (87)	★ISO VG 15 ISO VG 32 ISO VG 46 ISO VG 68
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel	560 (148)	★ASTM D975 NO.1 ASTM D975 NO.2
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required	★NLGI NO.1 NLGI NO.2
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and water 50 : 50	50 (13.2)	Ethylene glycol base permanent type ★Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)

SAE : Society of Automotive Engineers
API : American Petroleum Institute
ISO : International Organization for Standardization
NLGI : National Lubricating Grease Institute
ASTM : American Society of Testing and Material

★ : Cold region
Russia, CIS, Mongolia

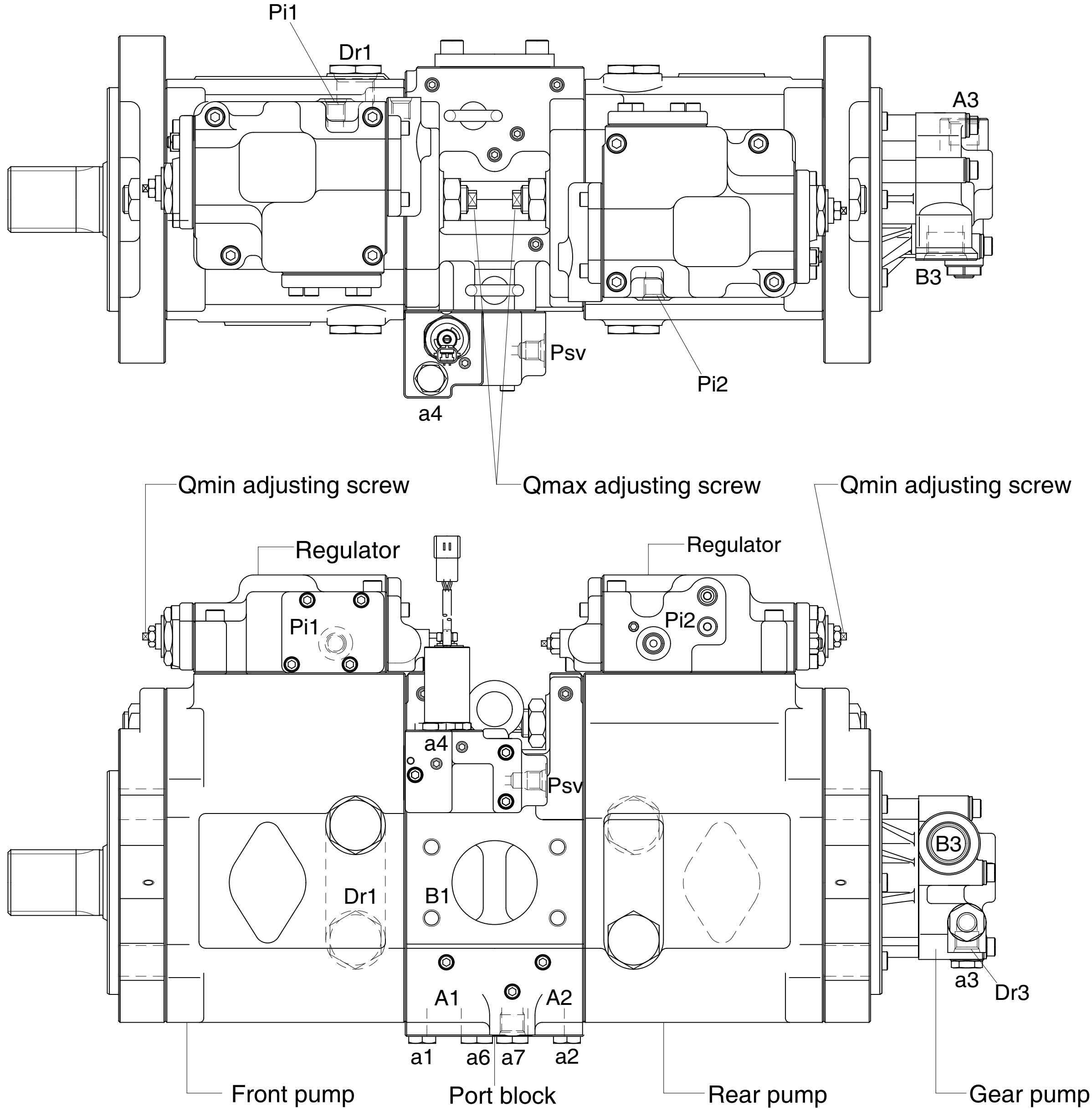
SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

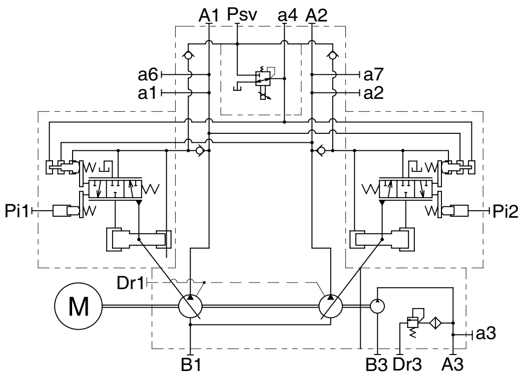
SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

GROUP 1 PUMP DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

The pump device consists of main pump, regulator and gear pump.

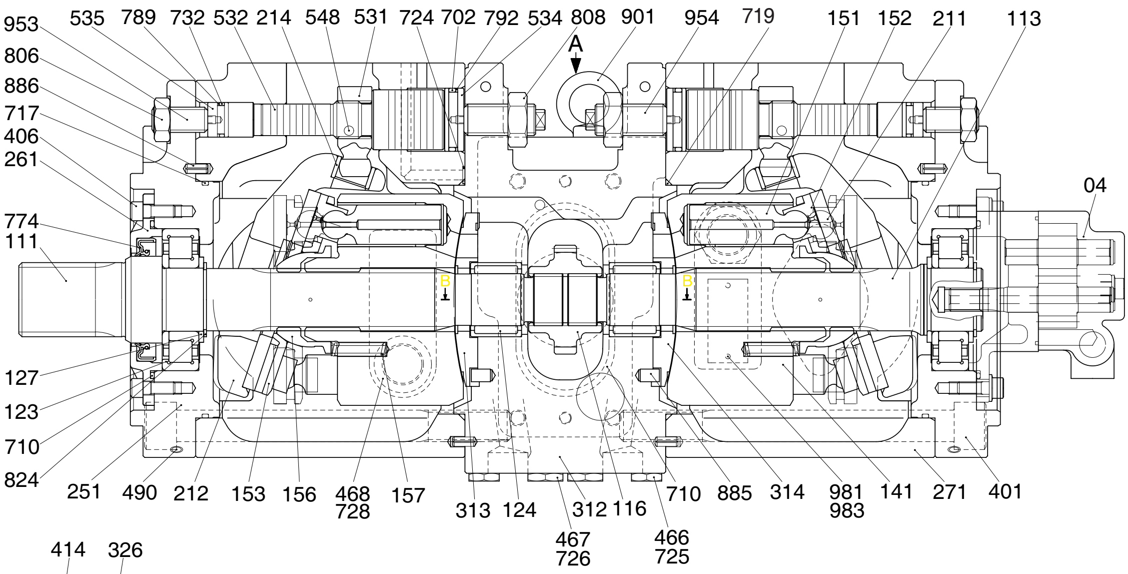


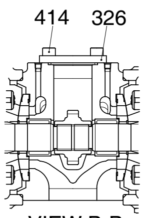


Port	Port name	Port size
A1, 2	Delivery port	SAE6000 psi 1"
B1	Suction port	SAE2500 psi 2 1/2"
Dr1	Drain port	G 3/4 - 20
Pi1, i2	Pilot port	G 1/4 - 15
Psv	Servo assist port	G 1/4 - 15
a1, 2, 4	Gauge port	G 1/4 - 15
a6, a7	Gauge port	G 3/8 - 17
a3	Gauge port	G 1/4 - 14
A3	Gear pump delivery port	G 1/2 - 19
B3	Gear pump suction port	G 3/4 - 20.5
Dr3	Gear pump drain port	G 3/8 - 15

1) MAIN PUMP(1/2)

The main pump consists of two piston pumps (front & rear) and valve block.





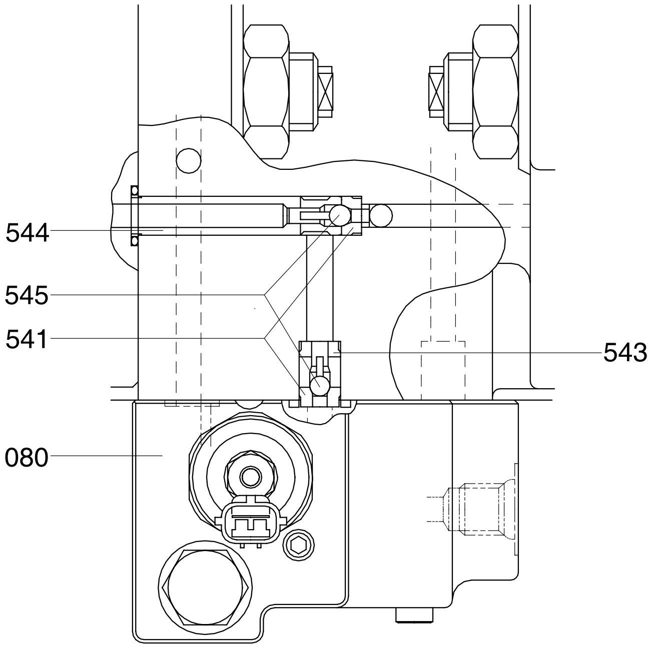
VIEW B-B

04 Gear pump
111 Drive shaft (F)
113 Drive shaft (R)
116 Gear
123 Roller bearing
124 Needle bearing
127 Bearing spacer
141 Cylinder block
151 Piston
152 Shoe
153 Set plate
156 Bushing
157 Cylinder spring
211 Shoe plate
212 Swash plate
214 Bushing
251 Swash plate support
261 Seal cover (F)
271 Pump casing

312 Valve block
313 Drive shaft (R)
314 Valve plate (L)
326 Cover
401 Hexagon socket bolt
406 Hexagon socket bolt
414 Hexagon socket bolt
466 VP plug
467 VP plug
468 VP plug
490 VP plug
531 Tilting pin
532 Servo piston
534 Stopper (L)
535 Stopper (S)
548 Pin
702 O-ring
710 O-ring
717 O-ring

719 O-ring
724 O-ring
725 O-ring
728 O-ring
732 O-ring
774 Oil seal
789 Back up ring
792 Back up ring
806 Hexagon head nut
824 Snap ring
885 Pin
886 Spring pin
901 Eye bolt
953 Set screw
954 Set screw
981 Name plate
983 Pin

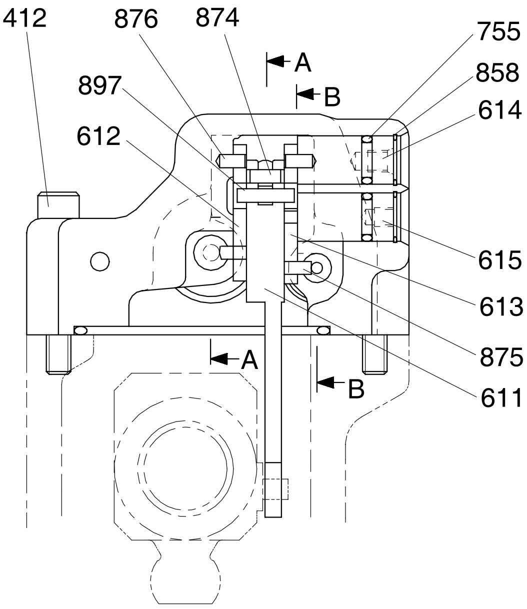
MAIN PUMP (2/2)

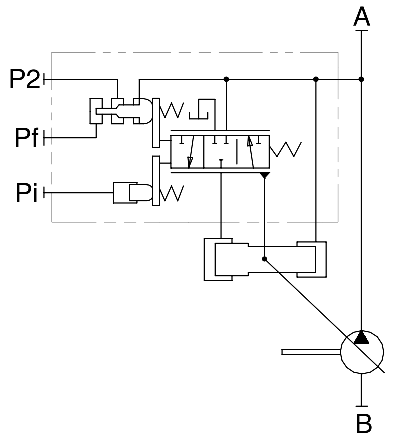


VIEW A

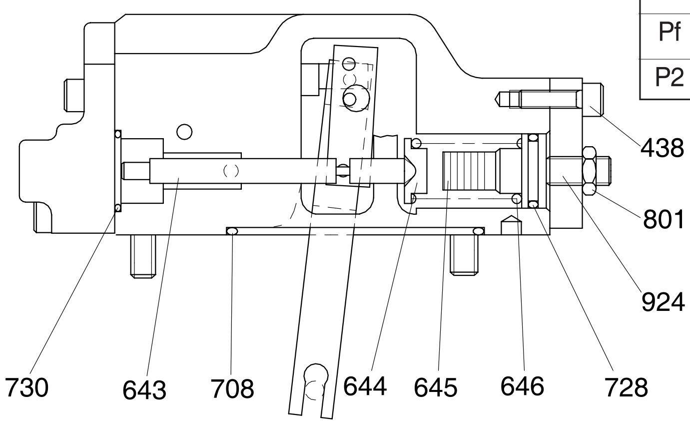
080	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) REGULATOR (1/2)

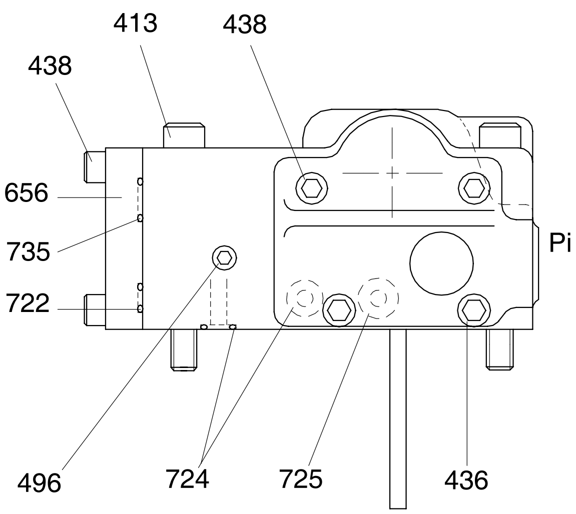




Port	Port name	Port size
A	Delivery port	1"
B	Suction port	2 1/2"
Pi	Pilot port	G 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-

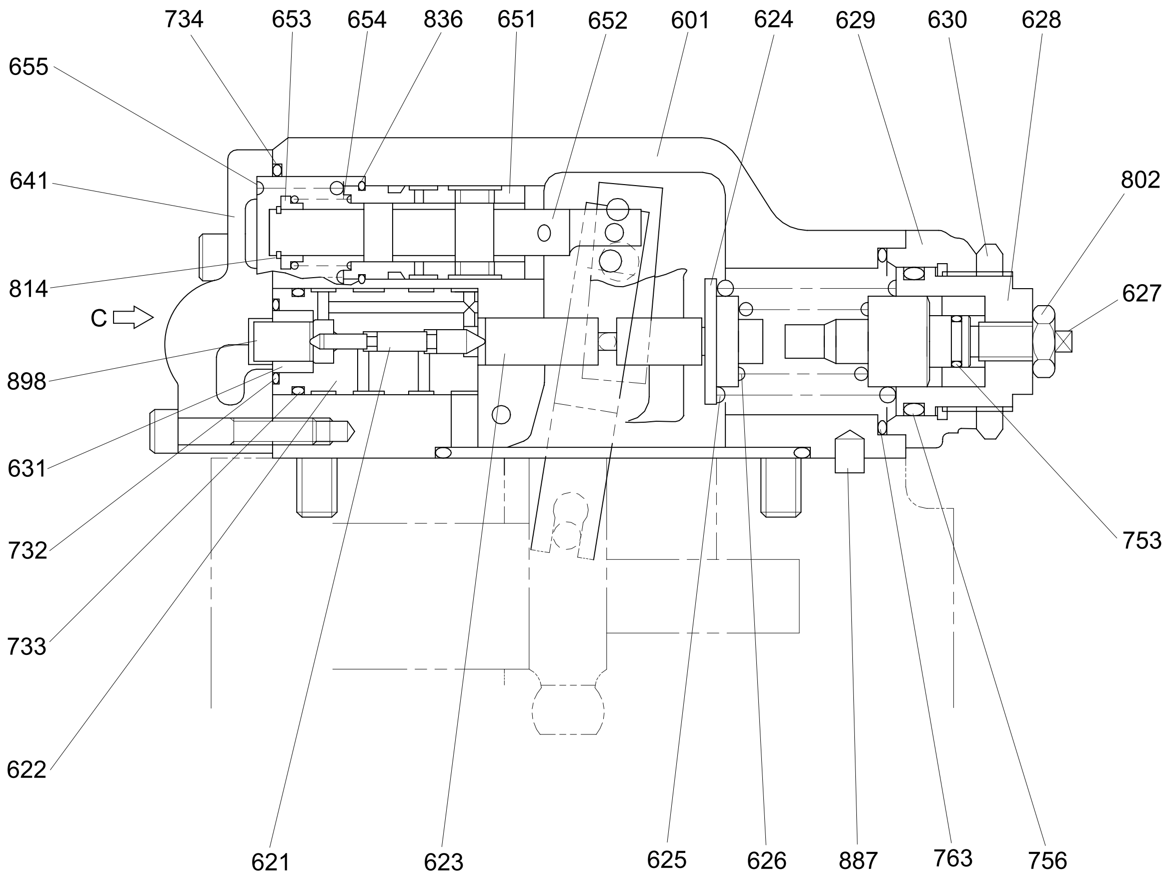


SECTION B-B



VIEW C

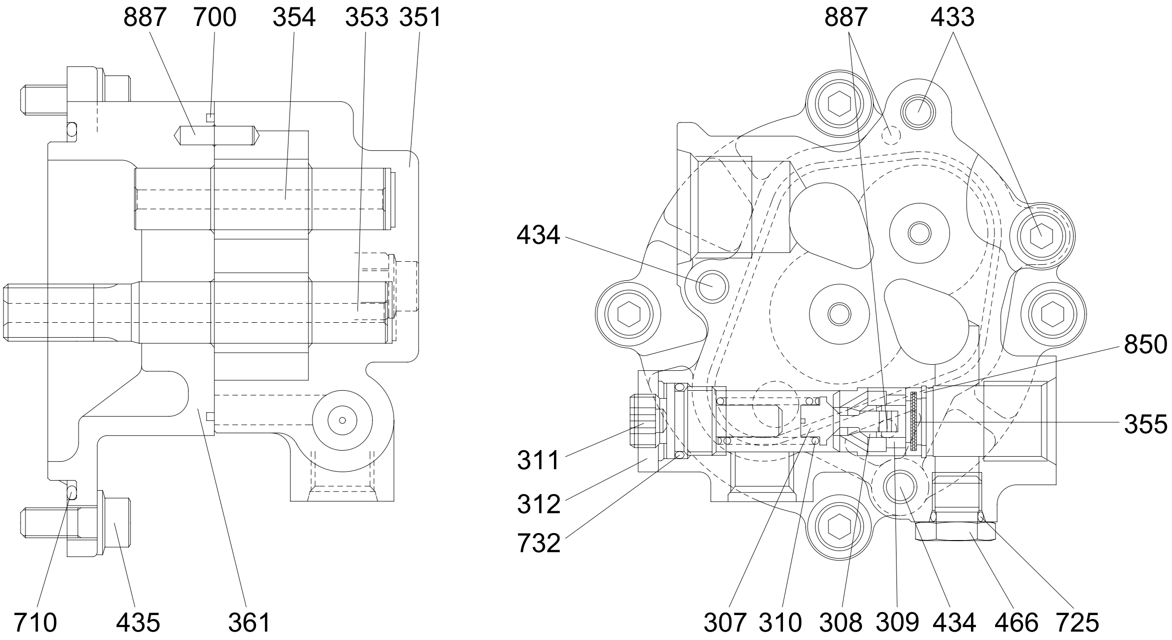
REGULATOR (2/2)



SECTION A-A

412 Hexagon socket screw
413 Hexagon socket screw
436 Hexagon socket screw
438 Hexagon socket screw
496 Plug
601 Casing
611 Feed back lever
612 Lever (1)
613 Lever (2)
614 Fulcrum plug
615 Adjust plug
621 Compensator piston
622 Piston case
623 Compensator rod
624 Spring seat (C)
625 Outer spring
626 Inner spring
627 Adjust stem (C)
628 Adjust screw (C)
629 Cover (C)
630 Lock nut
631 Sleeve, pf
641 Pilot cover
643 Pilot piston
644 Spring seat (Q)
645 Adjust stem (Q)
646 Pilot spring
651 Sleeve
652 Spool
653 Spring seat
654 Return spring
655 Set spring
656 Block cover
708 O-ring
722 O-ring
724 O-ring
725 O-ring
728 O-ring
730 O-ring
732 O-ring
733 O-ring
734 O-ring
735 O-ring
753 O-ring
755 O-ring
756 O-ring
763 O-ring
801 Nut
802 Nut
814 Snap ring
836 Snap ring
858 Snap ring
874 Pin
875 Pin
876 Pin
887 Pin
897 Pin
898 Pin
924 Set screw

3) GEAR PUMP



307	Poppet	353	Drive gear	466	Plug
308	Seat	354	Driven gear	700	Ring
309	Ring	355	Filter	710	O-ring
310	Spring	361	Front case	725	O-ring
311	Screw	433	Flange socket	732	O-ring
312	Nut	434	Flange socket	850	Snap ring
351	Gear case	435	Flange socket	887	Pin

2. FUNCTION

1) MAIN PUMP

The pumps may classified roughly into the rotary group performing a rotary motion and working as the major part of the whole pump function: the swash plate group that varies the delivery rates: and the valve cover group that changes over oil suction and discharge.

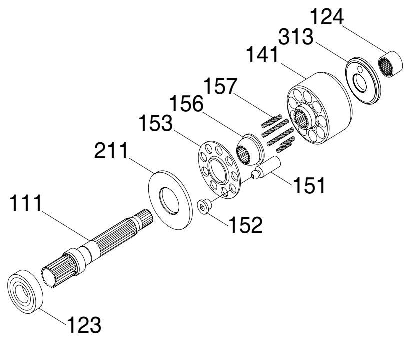
(1) Rotary group

The rotary group consists of drive shaft (F)(111), cylinder block (141), piston shoes (151,152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156), and cylinder spring (157). The drive shaft is supported by bearing (123,124) at its both ends.

The shoe is caulked to the piston to from a spherical coupling. It has a pocket to relieve thrust force generated by loading pressure and the take hydraulic balance so that it slides lightly over the shoe plate (211).

The sub group composed by a piston and a shoe is pressed against the shoe plate by the action of the cylinder spring via a retainer and a spherical bush.

Similarly, the cylinder block is pressed against valve plate (313) by the action of the cylinder spring.

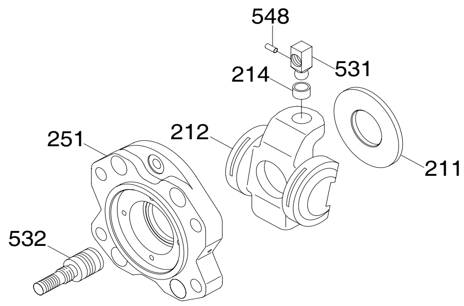


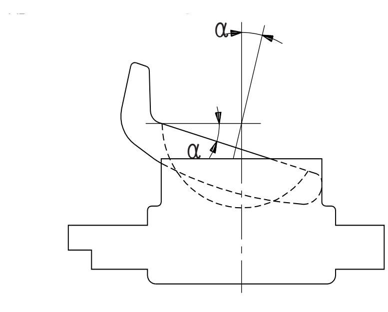
(2) Swash plate group

The swash plate group consists of swash plate (212), shoe plate (211), swash plate support (251), tilting bush (214), tilting pin (531) and servo piston (532).

The swash plate is a cylindrical part formed on the opposite side of the sliding surface of the shoe and is supported by the swash support.

If the servo piston moves to the right and left as hydraulic force controlled by the regulator is admitted to hydraulic chamber located on both sides of the servo piston, the swash plate slides over the swash plate support via the spherical part of the tilting pin to change the tilting angle (α)





(3) Valve block group

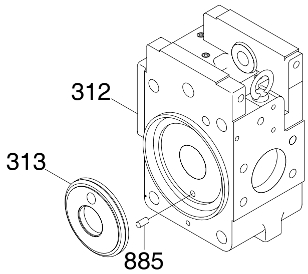
The valve block group consists of valve block (312), valve plate (313) and valve plate pin (885).

The valve plate having two melon-shaped ports is fixed to the valve block and feeds and collects oil to and from the cylinder block.

The oil changed over by the valve plate is connected to an external pipeline by way of the valve block.

Now, if the drive shaft is driven by a prime mover (electric motor, engine, etc), it rotates the cylinder block via a spline linkage at the same time. If the swash plate is tilted as in Fig (previous page) the pistons arranged in the cylinder block make a reciprocating motion with respect to the cylinder block, while they revolve with the cylinder block.

If you pay attention to a single piston, it performs a motion away from the valve plate (oil sucking process) within 180 degrees, and makes a motion towards the valve plate (or oil discharging process) in the rest of 180 degrees. When the swash plate has a tilting angle of zero, the piston makes no stroke and discharges no oil.



2) REGULATOR

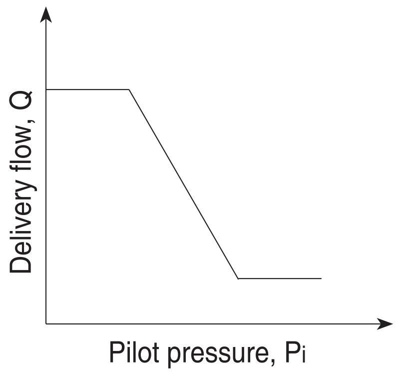
Regulator consists of the negative flow control, total horse power control and power shift control function.

(1) Negative flow control

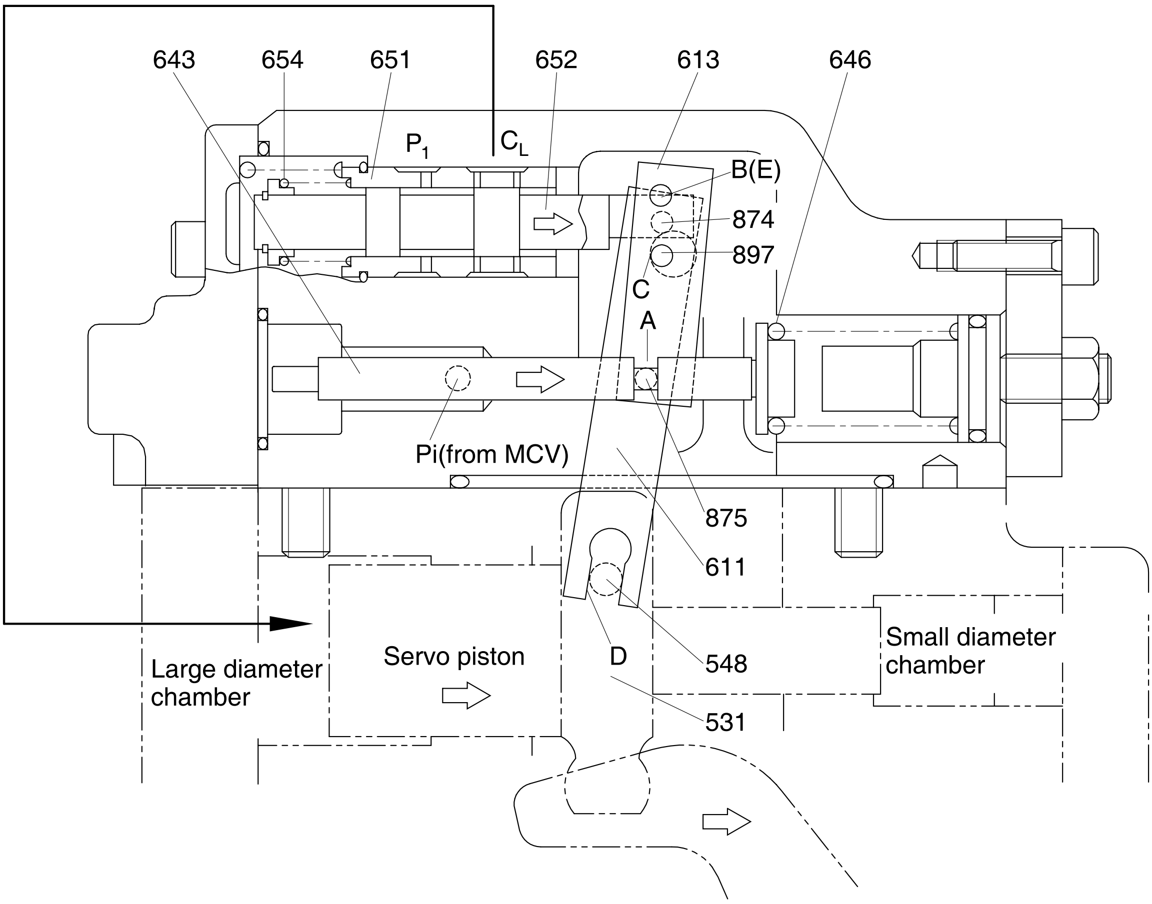
By changing the pilot pressure Pi, the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) is regulated arbitrarily, as shown in the figure.

This regulator is of the negative flow control in which the delivery flow Q decreases as the pilot pressure Pi rises.

With this mechanism, when the pilot pressure corresponding to the flow required for the work is commanded, the pump discharges the required flow only, and so it does not consume the power uselessly.



① Flow reducing function



As the pilot pressure Pi rises, the pilot piston (643) moves to the right to a position where the force of the pilot spring (646) balances with the hydraulic force.

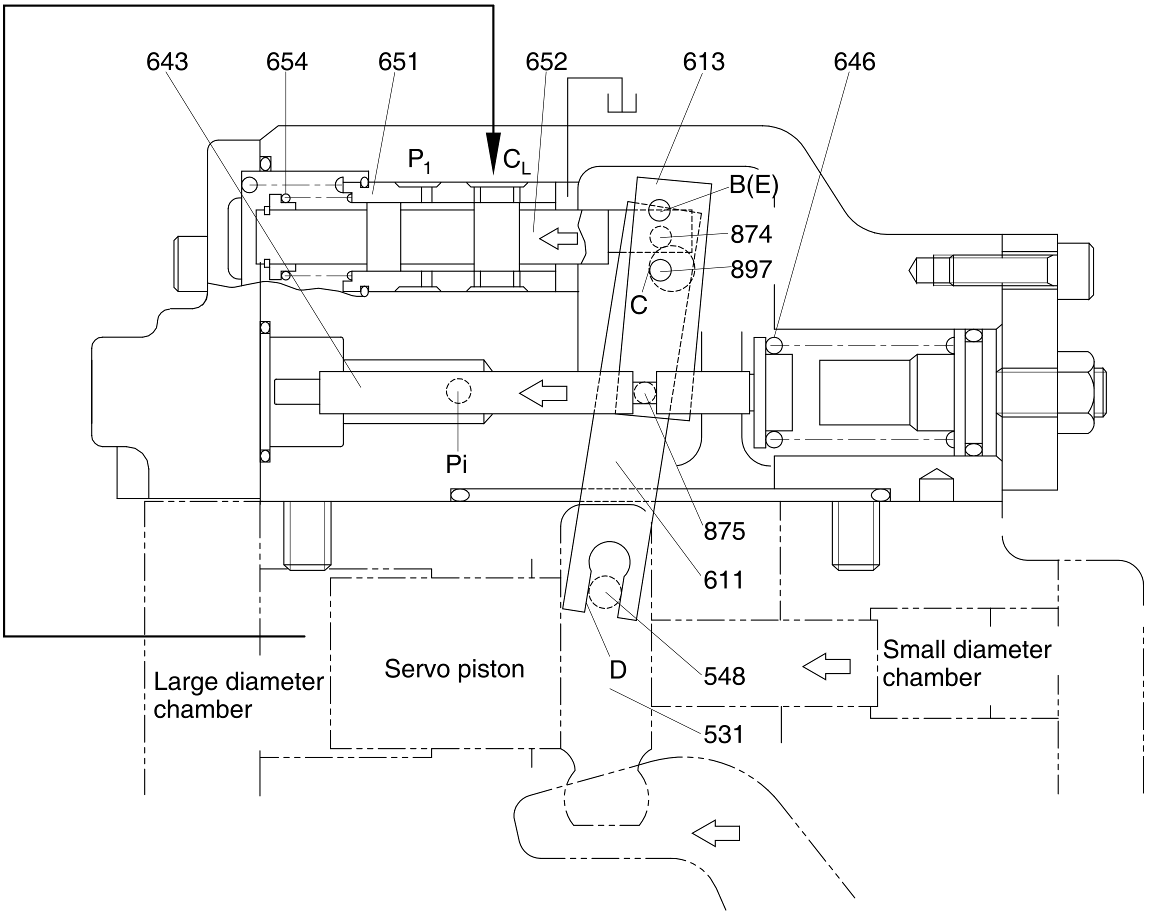
The groove (A) in the pilot piston is fitted with the pin (875) that is fixed to lever 2 (613). Therefore, when the pilot piston moves, lever 2 rotates around the fulcrum of point B [Fixed by the fulcrum plug (614) and pin (875)]. Since the large hole section (C) of lever 2 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the pin (897) moves to the right as lever 2 rotates. Since the opposing-flat section (D) of the feedback lever is fitted with the pin (548) fixed by the tilting pin (531) that swings the swash plate, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D, as the pin (897) moves.

Since the feedback lever is connected with the spool (652) via the pin (874), the spool moves to the right. The movement of the spool causes the delivery pressure P1 to connect to port CL through the spool and to be admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston. The delivery pressure P1 that is constantly admitted to the small diameter section of the servo piston moves the servo piston to the right due to the area difference, resulting in decrease of the tilting angle.

When the servo piston moves to the right, point D also moves to the right. The spool is fitted with the return spring (654) and is tensioned to the left at all times, and so the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2.

Therefore, as point D moves, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool is shifted to the left. This causes the opening between the sleeve (651) and spool (652) to close slowly, and the servo piston comes to a complete stop when it closes completely.

② Flow increasing function



As the pilot pressure Pi decreases, the pilot piston (643) moves to the left by the action of the pilot spring (646) and causes lever 2 (613) to rotate around the fulcrum of point B. Since the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2 by the action of the return spring (654) via the spool (652), pin (874), and feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 2 rotates, and shifts the spool to the left. Port CL opens a way to the tank port as the spool moves. This deprives the large diameter section of the servo piston of pressure, and shifts the servo piston to the left by the discharge pressure P1 in the small diameter section, resulting in an increase in the flow rate.

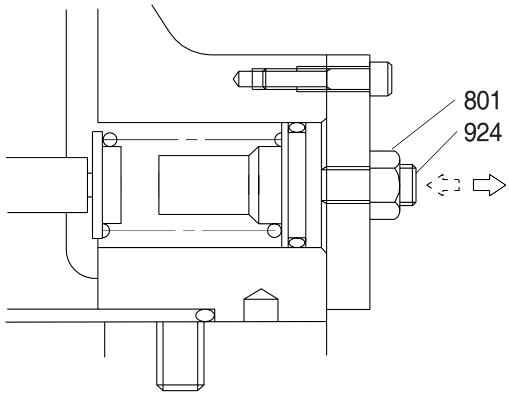
As the servo piston moves, point D also moves to the left, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool moves to the right till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ **Adjustment of flow control characteristic**

The flow control characteristic can be adjusted with the adjusting screw.

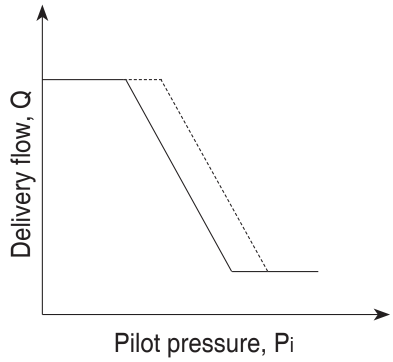
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (801) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head screw (924).

Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right as shown in the figure.



※ **Adjusting values are shown in table.**

Speed	Adjustment of flow control characteristic		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (924)	Flow control starting pressure change amount	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(ℓ/min)
1800	+1/4	+1.5	+14.6

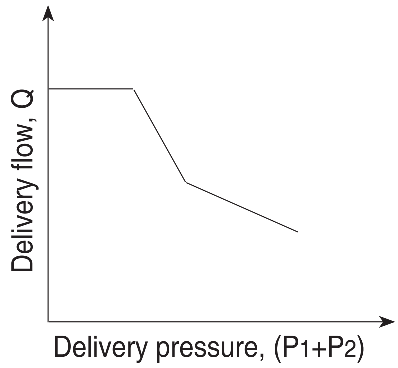


(2) Total horsepower control

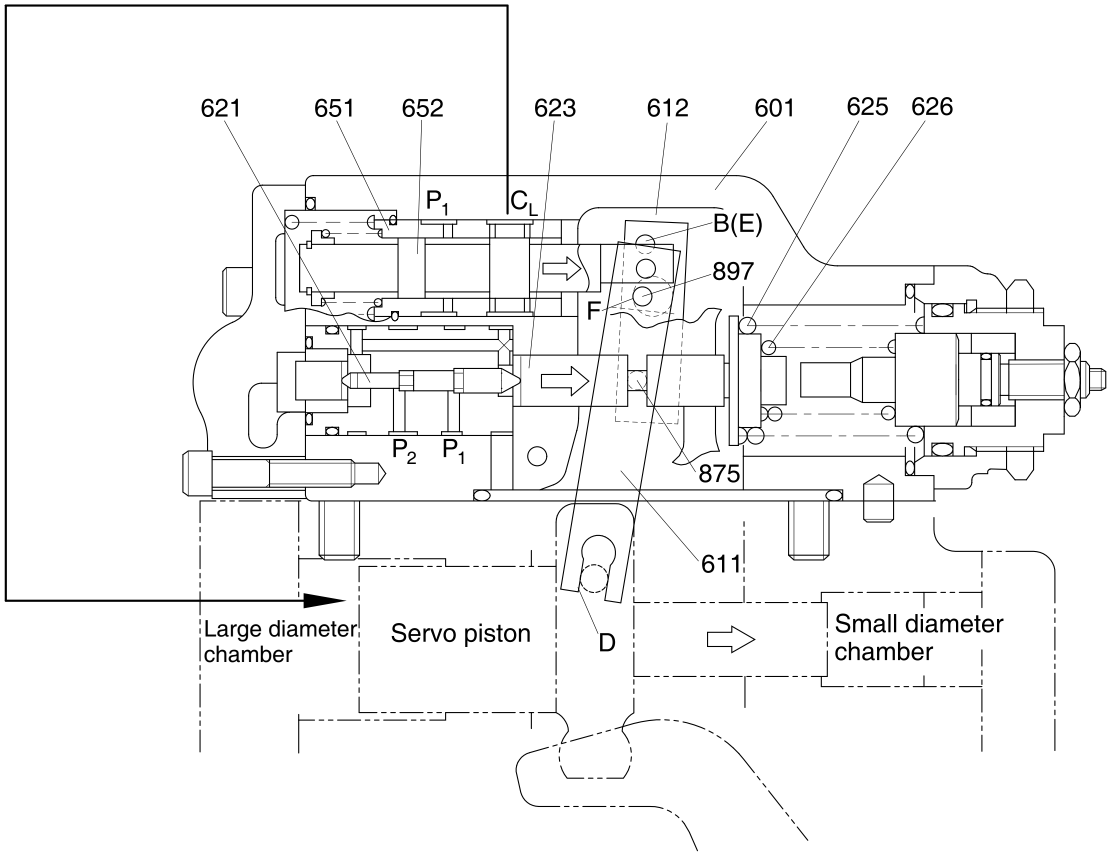
The regulator decreases the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) automatically to limit the input torque within a certain value with a rise in the delivery pressure P1 of the self pump and the delivery pressure P2 of the companion pump.
(The input horsepower is constant when the speed is constant.)
Since the regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type that operates by the sum of load pressures of the two pumps in the tandem double-pump system, the prime mover is automatically prevented from being overloaded, irrespective of the load condition of the two pumps, when horsepower control is under way.
Since this regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type, it controls the tilting angles (displacement volumes) of the two pumps to the same value as represented by the following equation :

$$Tin = P1 \times q / 2\pi + P2 \times q / 2\pi$$
$$= (P1+P2) \times q / 2\pi$$

The horsepower control function is the same as the flow control function and is summarized in the following. (for detailed behaviors of respective parts, refer to the section of flow control).

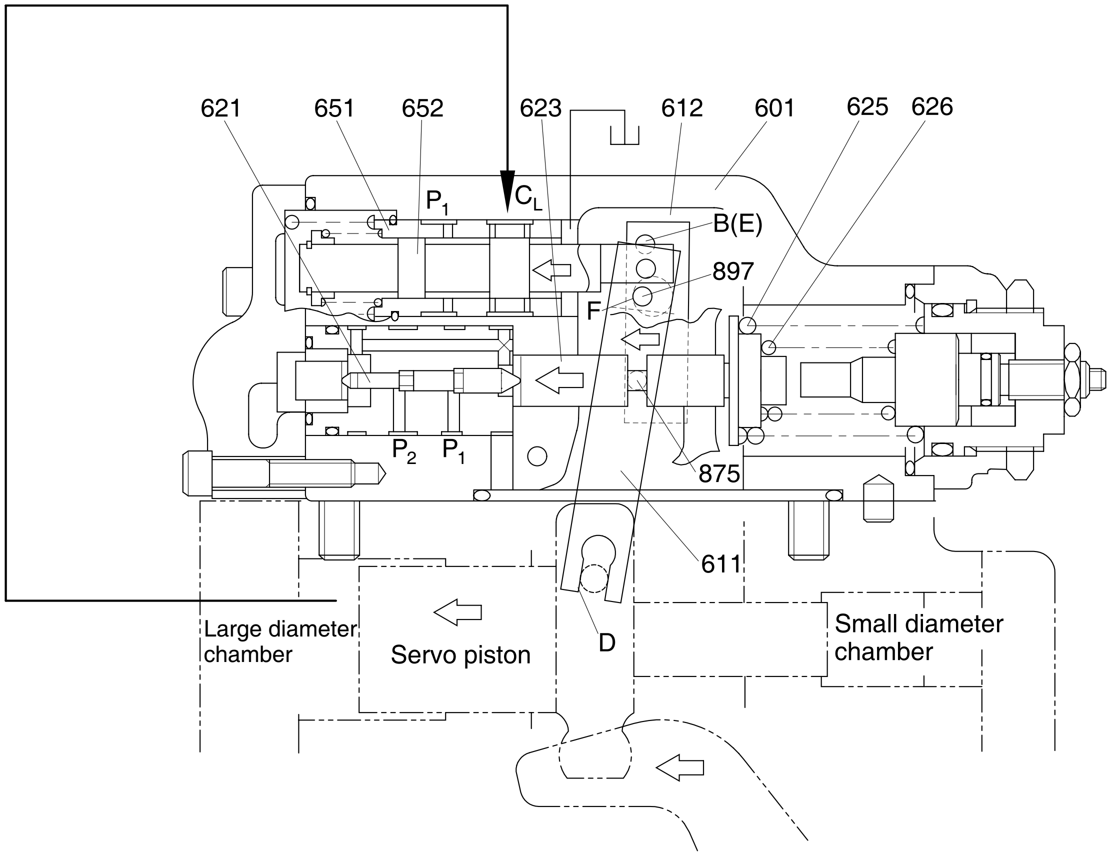


① Overload preventive function



When the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 rises, it acts on the stepped part of the compensating piston (621). It presses the compensating rod (623) to the right till the force of the outer spring (625) and inner spring (626) balances with the hydraulic force. The movement of the compensating rod is transmitted to lever 1 (612) via pin (875).
Lever 1 rotates around the pin (875) (E) fixed to the casing (601).
Since the large hole section (F) of lever 1 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 1 rotates, and then the spool(652) is shifted to the right. As the spool moves, the delivery pressure P1 is admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston via port CL, causes the servo piston move to the right, reduces the pump delivery, flow rate, and prevents the prime mover from being overloaded.
The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the feedback lever via point D. Then the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point F and the spool is shifted to the left. The spool moves till the opening between the spool (652) and sleeve (651) is closed.

② Flow reset function



As the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 decreases, the compensating rod (623) is pushed back by the action of the springs (625 & 626) to rotate lever 1 (612) around point E. Rotating of lever 1 causes the feedback lever (611) to rotate around the fulcrum of point D and then the spool (652) to move to the left. As a result, port CL opens a way to the tank port. This causes the servo piston to move to the left and the pump's delivery rate to increase.
The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the spool by the action of the feedback mechanism to move it till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ **Low tilting angle (low flow) command preferential function**

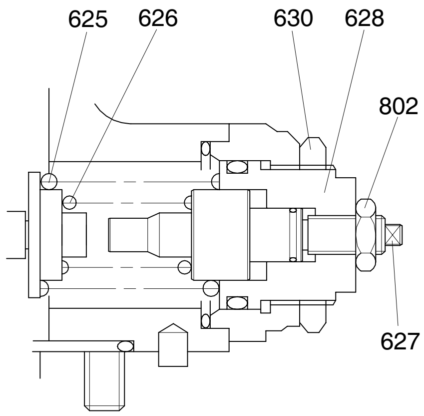
As mentioned above, flow control and horsepower control tilting angle commands are transmitted to the feedback lever and spool via the large-hole sections (C & F) of levers 1 and 2. However, since sections C and F have the pins (Ø4) protruding from the large hole (Ø8), only the lever lessening the tilting angle contacts the pin (897) ; the hole (Ø8) in the lever of a larger tilting angle command is freed without contacting the pin (897). Such a mechanical selection method permits preference of the lower tilting angle command of the flow control and horsepower control.

④ **Adjustment of input horsepower**

Since the regulator is of total cumulative horsepower type, adjust the adjusting screws of both the front and rear pumps, when changing the horsepower set values. The pressure change values by adjustment are based on two pumps pressurized at the same time, and the values will be doubled when only one pump is loaded.

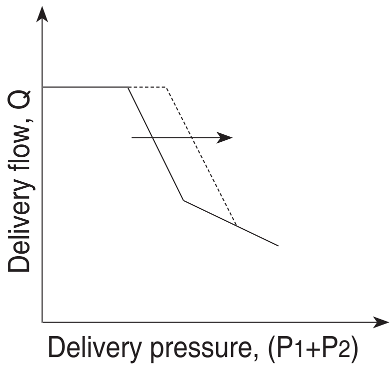
a. Adjustment of outer spring

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (630) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw C (628). Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right and increases the input horsepower as shown in the figure. Since turning the adjusting screw C by N turns changes the setting of the inner spring (626), return the adjusting screw QI (627) by N×A turns at first. (A=1.9)



※ **Adjusting values are shown in table.**

Speed	Adjustment of outer spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (C) (628)	Compensating control starting pressure change amount	Input torque change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(kgf·m)
1800	+1/4	+19.2	+6.3



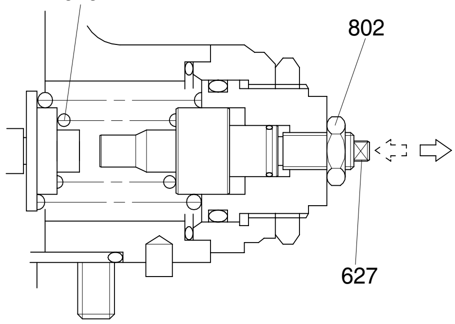
b. Adjustment of inner spring

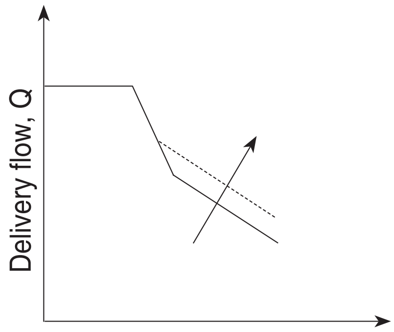
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (802) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw QI (627).

Tightening the screw increases the flow and then the input horsepower as shown in the figure.

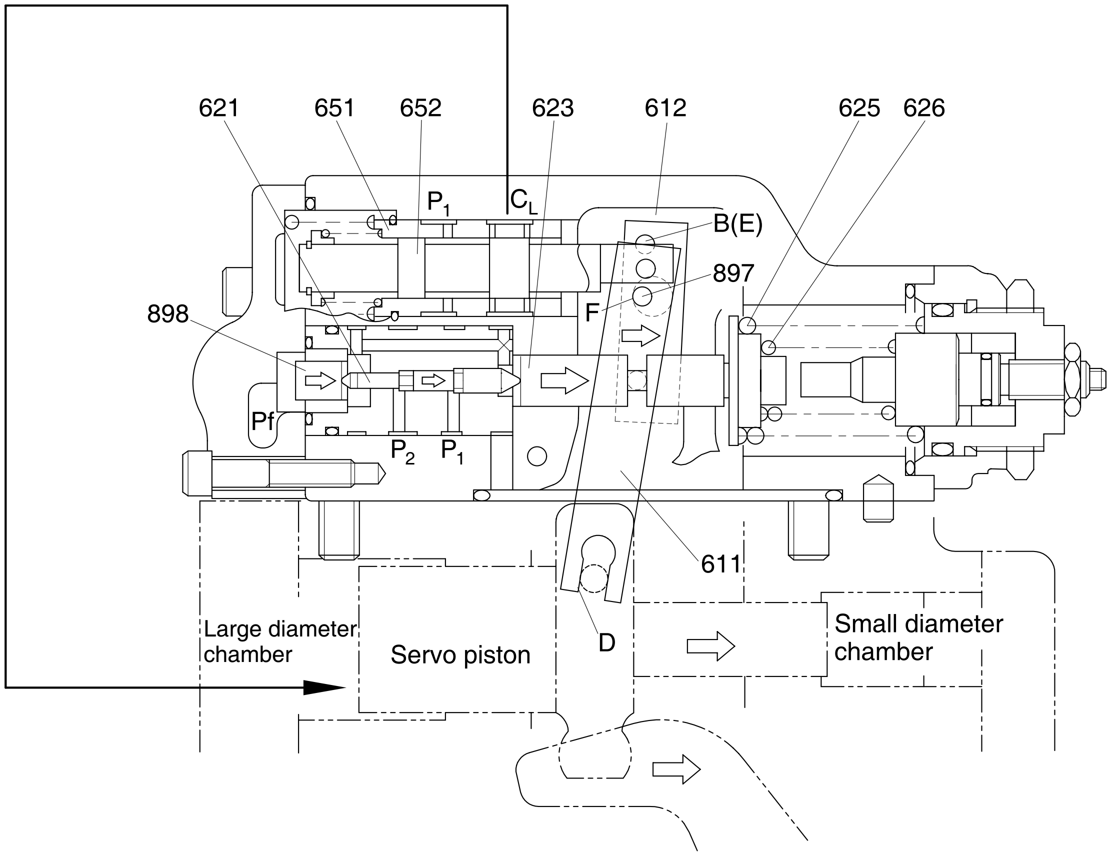
※ Adjusting valves are shown in table.

Speed	Adjustment of inner spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (QI) (627)	Flow change amount	Input torque change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(kgf·m)
1800	+1/4	+12.6	+6.4





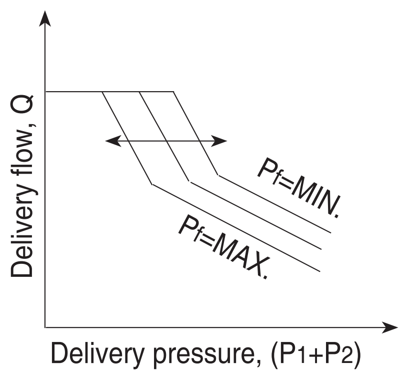
(3) Power shift control



The set horsepower valve is shifted by varying the command current level of the proportional pressure reducing valve attached to the pump.

Only one proportional pressure reducing valve is provided.

However, the secondary pressure Pf (power shift pressure) is admitted to the horsepower control section of each pump regulator through the pump's internal path to shift it to the same set horsepower level.



This function permits arbitrary setting of the pump output power, thereby providing the optimum power level according to the operating condition.

The power shift pressure Pf controls the set horsepower of the pump to a desired level, as shown in the figure.

As the power shift pressure Pf rises, the compensating rod (623) moves to the right via the pin (898) and compensating piston (621).

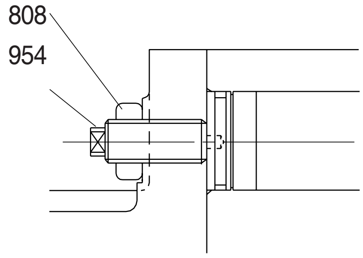
This decreases the pump tilting angle and then the set horsepower in the same way as explained in the overload preventive function of the horsepower control. On the contrary, the set horsepower rises as the power shift pressure Pf falls.

(4) Adjustment of maximum and minimum flows

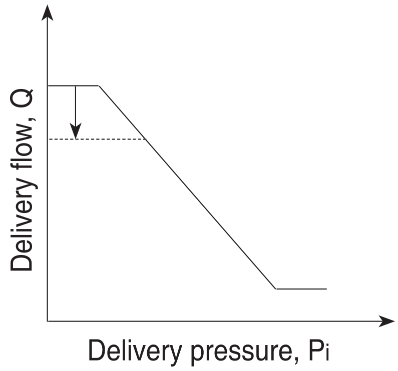
① **Adjustment of maximum flow**

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the set screw (954).

The maximum flow only is adjusted without changing other control characteristics.



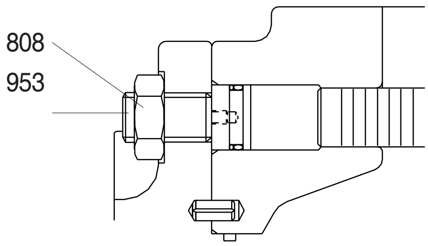
Speed	Adjustment of max flow	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (954)	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(ℓ/min)
1800	+1/4	-5.6



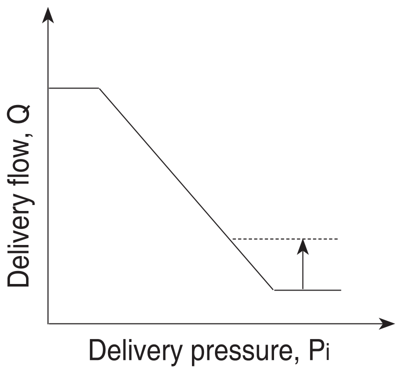
② **Adjustment of minimum flow**

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head set screw (953). Similarly to the adjustment of the maximum flow, other characteristics are not changed.

However, remember that, if tightened too much, the required horsepower during the maximum delivery pressure (or during relieving) may increase.

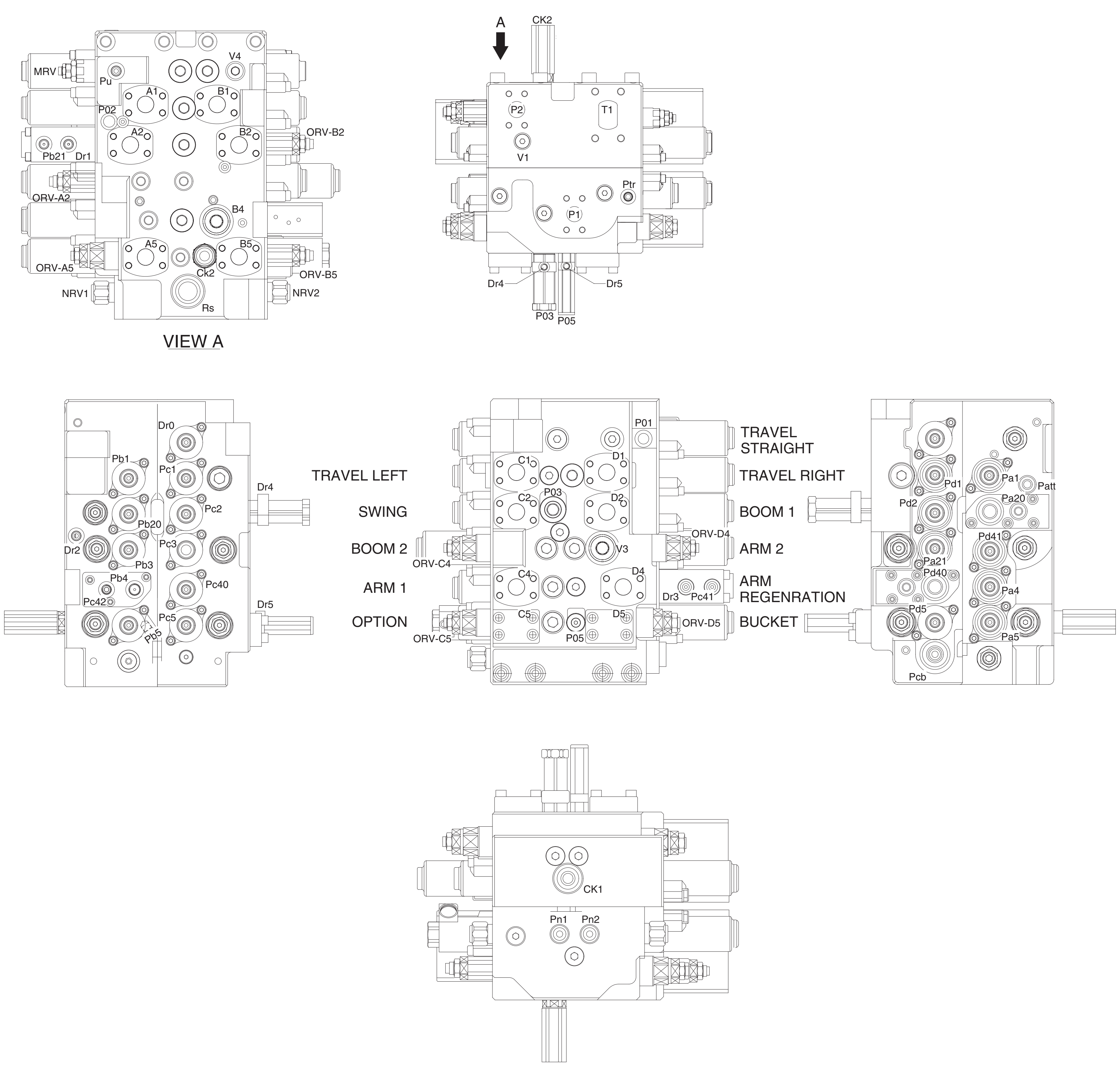


Speed	Adjustment of min flow	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (953)	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(ℓ/min)
1800	+1/4	+4.5

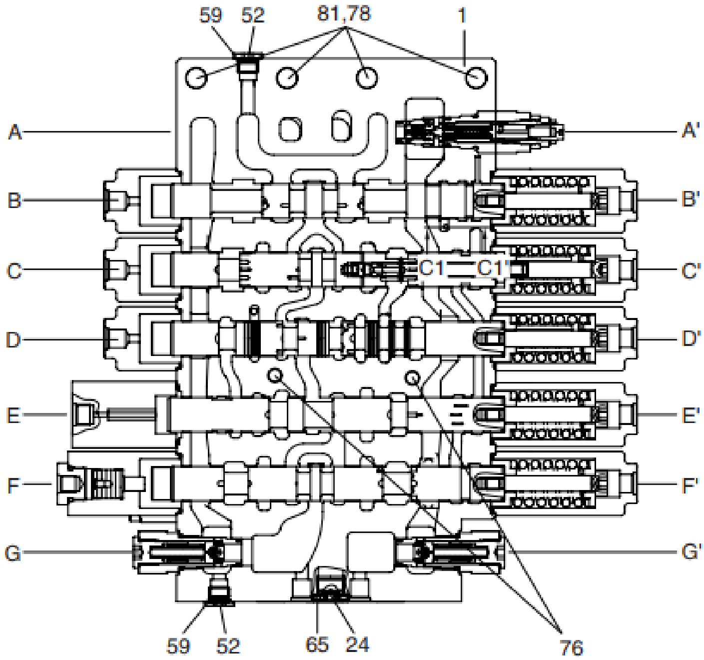


GROUP 2 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

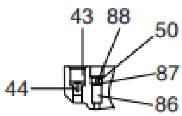
1. STRUCTURE



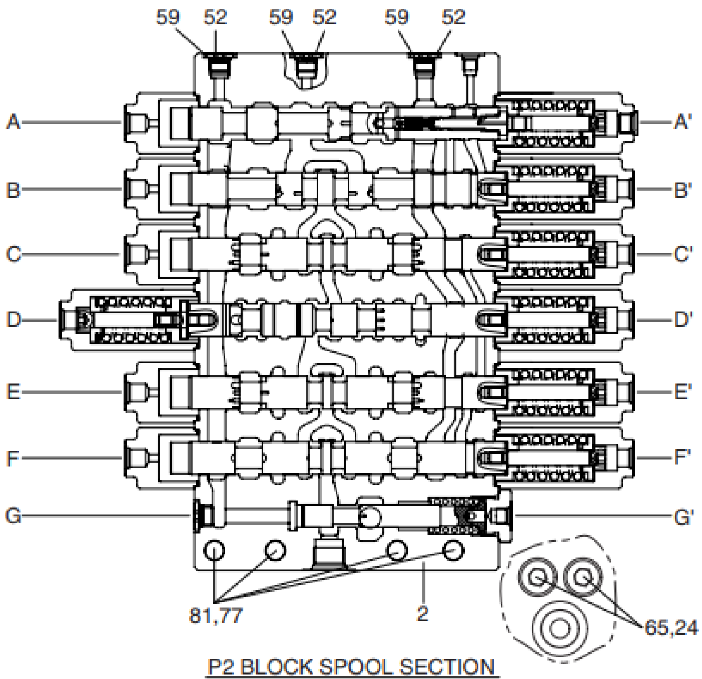
Mark	Port name	Port size	Tightening torque
Rs	Make up for swing motor	PF1	20~25 kgf·m (145~180 lbf·ft)
V3	Carry-over P port		
B4	Option A port (breaker)		
Patt	Auto idle signal-attachment	PF1/4	3.5~3.9 kgf·m (25.3~28.2 lbf·ft)
Pb21	Lock valve pilot port (boom)		
Pcb	Bucket in confluence pilot port		
P01	Pilot signal port		
P02	Pilot signal port		
P03	Swing logic pilot port		
P04	Bucket parallel orifice pilot port		
P05	Option B confluence pilot port		
Pc41	Lock valve pilot port (arm)		
Pc42	Arm in regen-cut signal selector port		
Ptr	Auto idle signal-travel		
Pu	Power boost		
Dr1	Drain port		
Dr2	Drain port		
Dr3	Drain por		
Ck1	Bucket confluence	PF3/4	17~19 kgf·m (123~137.4 lbf·ft)
Ck2	Bucket confluence		
Pa1	ATravel pilot port-LH (FW)	PF3/8	7~8 kgf·m (50.6~57.8 lbf·ft)
Pb1	Travel pilot port-LH (BW)		
Pc1	Travel pilot port-RH (BW)		
Pd1	Travel pilot port-RH (FW)		
Pa20	Boom up pilot port		
Pa21	Boom up confluence pilot port		
Pb20	Boom down pilot port		
Pc2	Swing pilot port (LH)		
Pd2	Swing pilot port (RH)		
Pb3	Arm in confluence pilot port		
Pc3	Swing priority pilot port		
Pa4	Option A pilot port (breaker)		
Pb4	Arm in regeneration cut port		
Pc40	Arm in pilot port		
Pd40	Arm out pilot port		
Pd41	Arm out confluence pilot port		
Pa5	Bucket in pilot port		
Pb5	Bucket out pilot port		
Pc5	Option B pilot port		
Pd5	Option B pilot port		
Dr0	Drain port		
Pn1	Negative control signal port (A2 port side)		
Pn2	Negative control signal port (A1 port side)		
V1	Carry-over port		
V4	Carry-over port		
A1	Travel motor port-LH (FW)	SAE 5000 psi 1"	7.5~9.2 kgf·m (54.2~66.5 lbf·ft)
B1	Travel motor port-LH (BW)		
C1	Travel motor port-RH (BW)		
D1	Travel motor port-RH (FW)		
A2	Boom up port		
B2	Boom down port		
C2	Swing motor port (LH)		
D2	Swing motor port (RH)		
C4	Arm in port		
D4	Arm out port		
A5	Bucket in port		
B5	Bucket out port		
C5	Option B port		
D5	Option B port		
P1	Pump port (A2 side)		
P2	Pump port (A1 side)		
Dr4	Drain port	PF1/8	1.5~1.9 kgf·m (10.8~13.7 lbf·ft)
Dr5	Drain port		
T1	Return port	SAE 3000 psi 2" (M12)	6.4~8.6 kgf·m (46.2~62.2 lbf·ft)



P1 BLOCK SPOOL SECTION

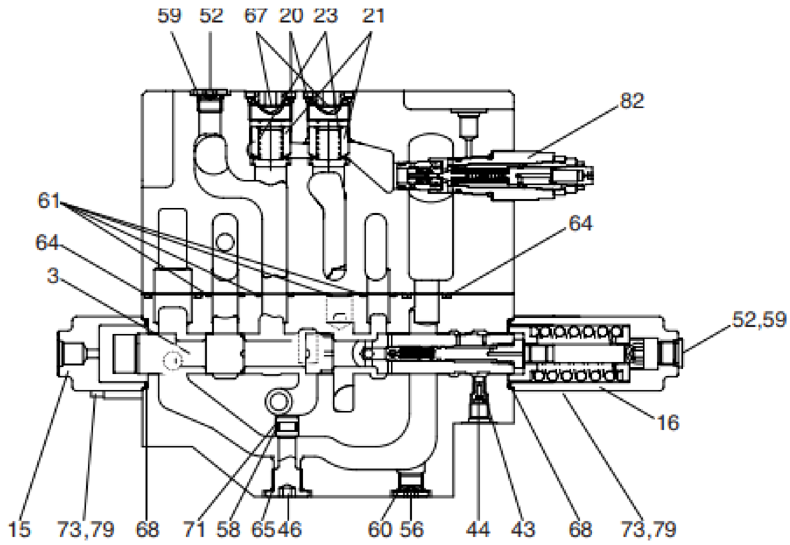


SECTION C1-C1'

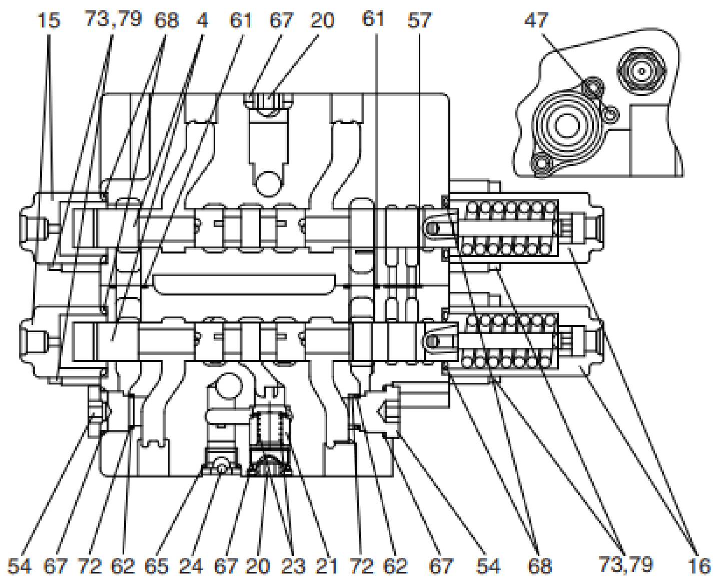


P2 BLOCK SPOOL SECTION

1	Housing (P1)
2	Housing (P2)
24	Plug
43	Orifice-signal
44	Coin type filter
50	O-ring
52	Plug
59	O-ring
65	O-ring
76	Hex socket head bolt
77	Hex socket head bolt
78	Hex socket head bolt
81	Spring washer
86	Poppet
87	Spring check
88	Plug

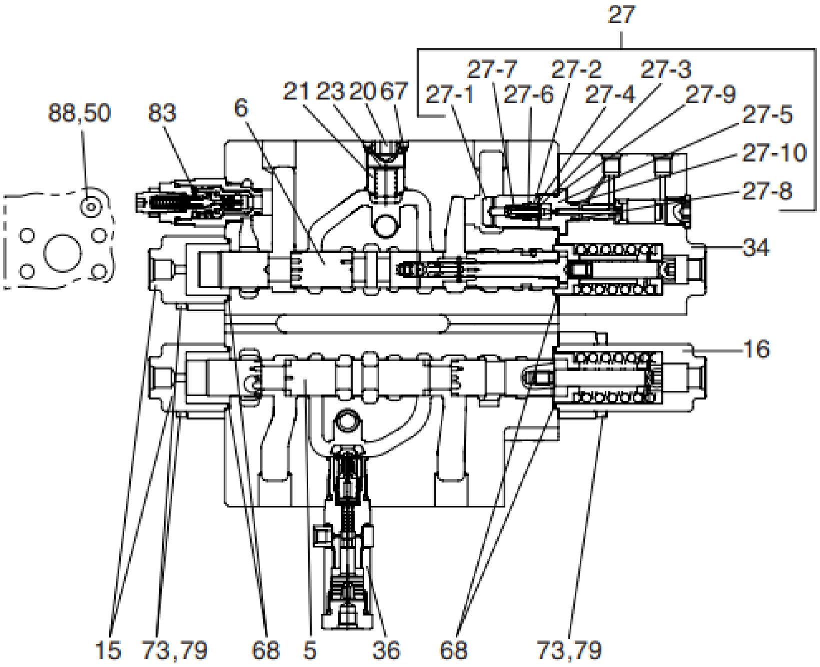


A-A' (STRAIGHT-TRAVEL & SUPPLY)

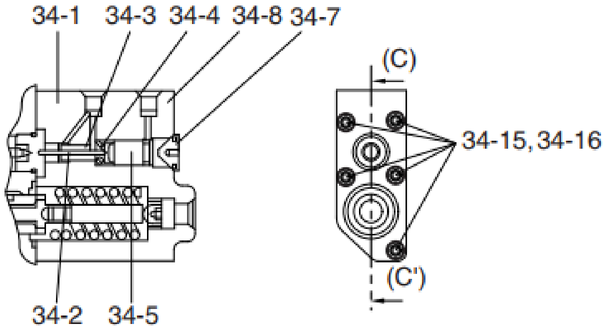


B-B' (TRAVEL RIGHT & LEFT)

3	Spool-straight
4	Spool-travel
15	Cover-pilot A
16	Cover-pilot B1
20	Plug
21	Poppet 1-check valve
23	Spring 1-check valve
24	Plug
43	Orifice-signal
44	Coin type filter
46	Plug
47	Plug
52	Plug
54	Plug
56	Plug
57	O-ring
58	O-ring
59	O-ring
60	O-ring
61	O-ring
62	O-ring
64	O-ring
65	O-ring
67	O-ring
68	O-ring
71	Back-up ring
72	Back-up ring
73	Hex socket head bolt
79	Washer
82	Main relief valve

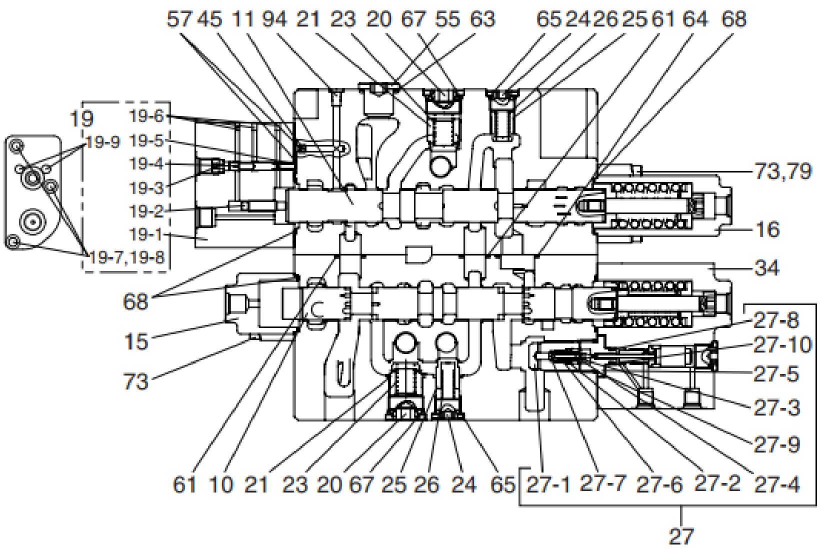


C-C' (SWING & BOOM 1)

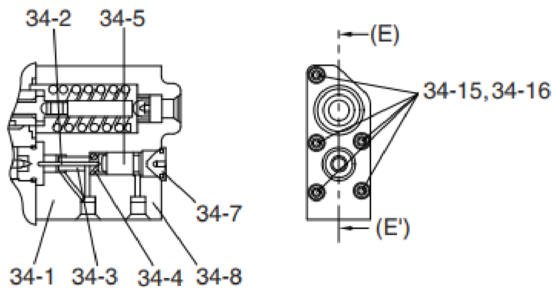


34 DETAIL (HOLDING ASSY)

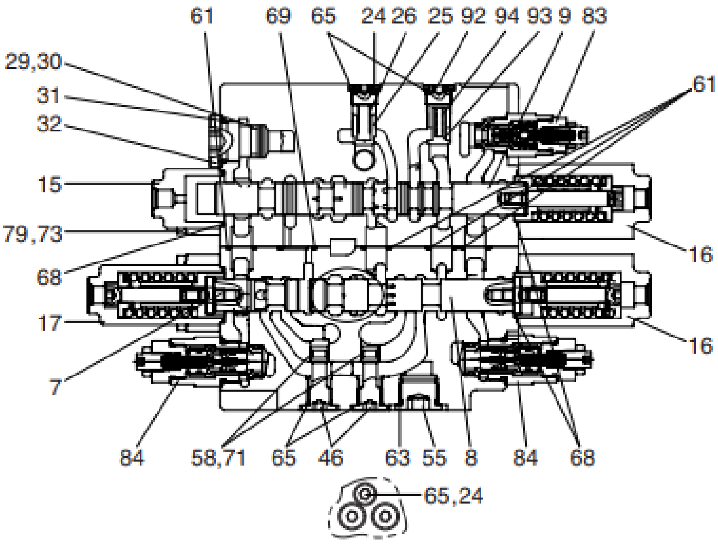
5	Spool-swing	27-7	Restrictor-lock valve	36	Logic valve
6	Spool-boom	27-8	O-ring	50	O-ring
15	Cover-pilot A	27-9	O-ring	67	O-ring
16	Cover-pilot B1	27-10	Back up ring	68	O-ring
20	Plug	34	Holding kit-A1	73	Hex socket head bolt
21	Poppet 1-check valve	34-1	Block-Holding P1	79	Washer
23	Spring 1-check valve	34-2	Piston 1-holding	83	Overload relief valve
27	Holding kit-B	34-3	Guide piston-holding	88	Plug
27-1	Poppet	34-4	Spring 1-lock valve		
27-2	Spring	34-5	Piston 2-holding		
27-3	Poppet guide	34-7	Plug		
27-4	Pilot poppet	34-8	Plug		
27-5	Poppet seat	34-15	Socket bolt		
27-6	C-ring	34-16	Spring washer		



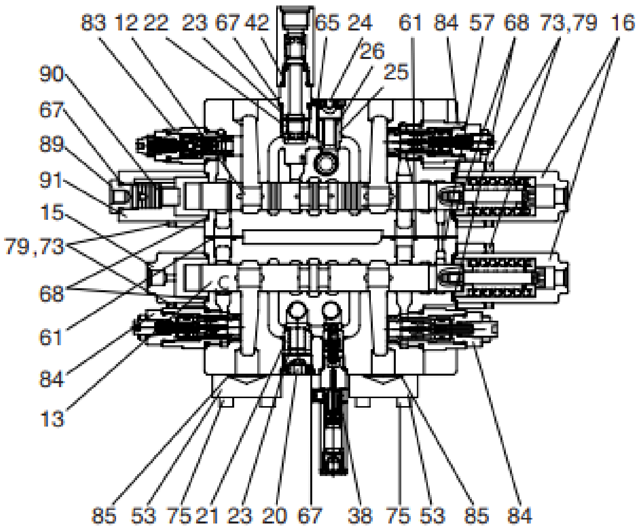
E-E' (ARM & ARM REGENRATION)



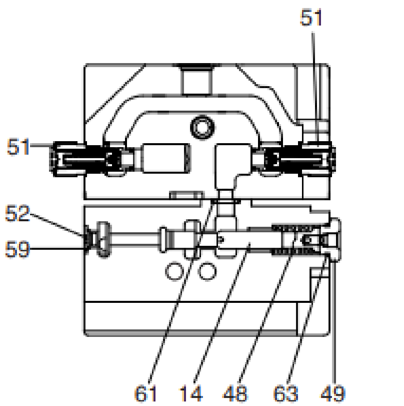
10	Spool-arm1	27	Poppet-lock valve	34-16	Spring washer
11	Spool-arm regeneration	27-1	Poppet	45	Orifice-plug
15	Cover-pilot A	27-2	Spring	55	Plug
16	Cover-pilot B1	27-3	Poppet guide	57	O-ring
19	Arm-regeneration	27-4	Pilot poppet	61	O-ring
19-1	Block-regeneration	27-5	Poppet seat	63	O-ring
19-2	Piston-cut off	27-6	C-ring	65	O-ring
19-3	Stopper-regeneration	27-7	Restrictor-lock valve	67	O-ring
19-4	Spool-regeneration	27-8	O-ring	68	O-ring
19-5	Spring-regeneration	27-9	O-ring	73	Hex socket head bolt
19-6	Plug	27-10	Back up ring	79	Washer
19-7	Socket bolt	34	Holding kit-A2	94	Plug
19-8	Spring wahser	34-1	Block-Holding P2		
19-9	Pin-regeneration	34-2	Piston 1-holding		
20	Plug	34-3	Guide piston-holding		
21	Poppet 1-check valve	34-4	Spring 1-lock valve		
23	Spring 1-check valve	34-5	Piston 2-holding		
24	Plug	34-7	Plug		
25	Poppet 2-check valve	34-8	Plug		
26	Spring 2-check valve	34-15	Socket bolt		



D-D' (SWING PRIORITY-BOOM2 & ARM2)



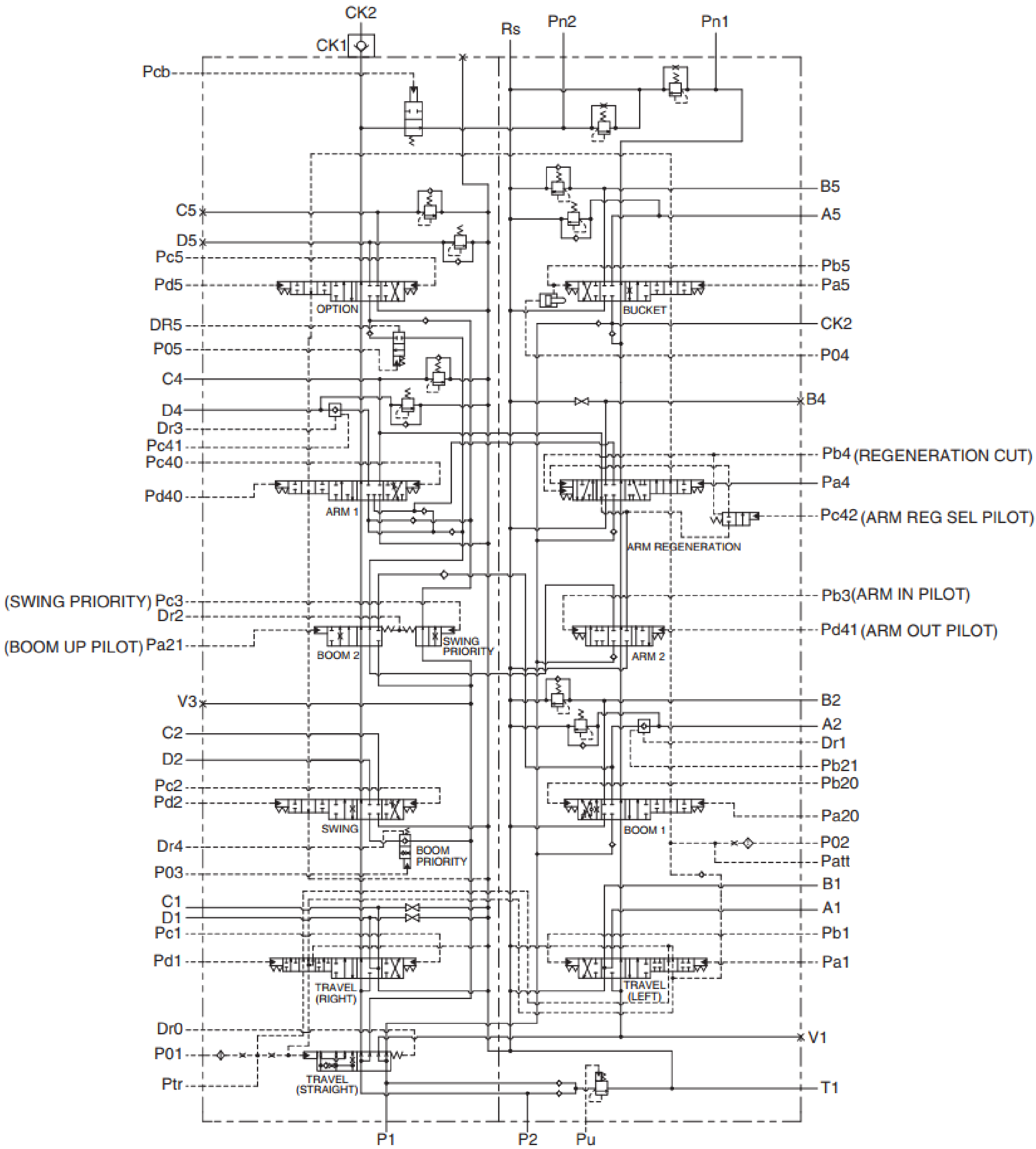
F-F' (OPTION & BUCKET)



G-G' (CENTER BYPASS CUT-OFF
& NEGATIVE CONTROL)

7	Spool-swing priority
8	Spool-boom 2
9	Spool-arm 2
12	Spool-bucket
13	Spool-option
14	Bypass cut-spool
15	Cover-pilot A
16	Cover-pilot B1
17	Cover-pilot B2
20	Plug
21	Poppet 1-check valve
22	Poppet L/C-bucket
23	Spring 1-check valve
24	Plug
25	Poppet 2-check valve
26	Spring 2-check valve
29	Back up ring
30	O-ring
31	O-ring
32	Plug
38	Load check valve assy
42	Check valve
46	Plug
48	Spring-Bypass cut spool
49	Plug-Bypass cut spool
51	Negative control valve
52	Plug
53	Flange
55	Plug
57	O-ring
58	O-ring
59	O-ring
61	O-ring
63	O-ring
65	O-ring
67	O-ring
68	O-ring
69	O-ring
71	Back-up ring
73	Hex socket head bolt
75	Socket bolt
79	Washer
83	Overload relief valve
84	Overload relief valve
85	O-ring
89	Plug
90	Piston
91	Pilot cover C1
92	Plug
93	Poppet
94	Spring

2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



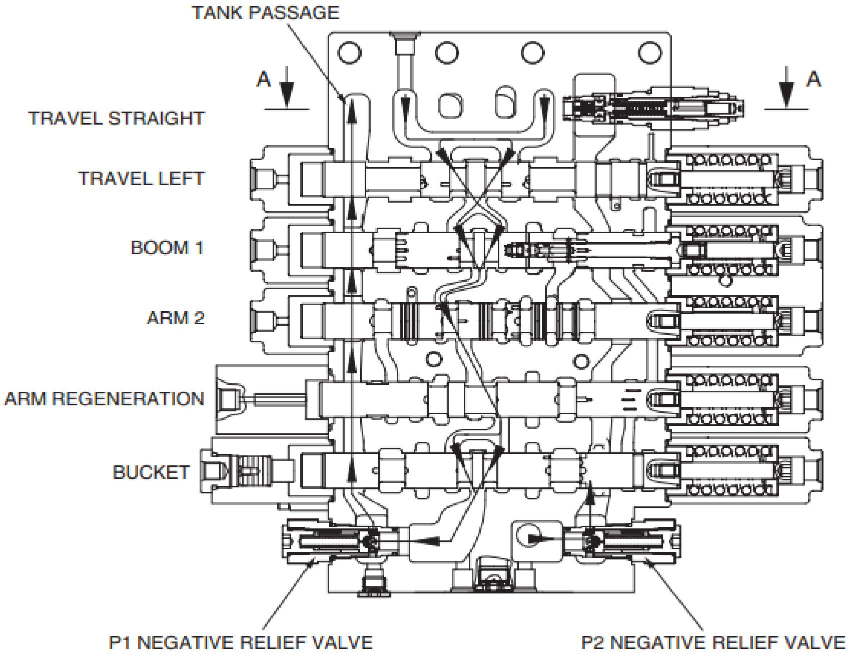
3. FUNCTION

1) CONTROL IN NEUTRAL

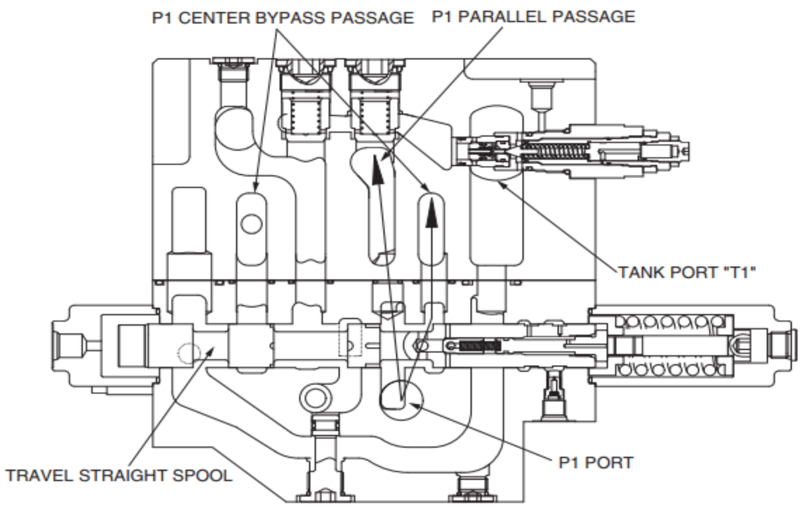
(1) P1 SIDE

The hydraulic fluid from pump flows into the main control valve through the inlet port "P1", pass the land of the travel straight spool, into the P1 bypass passage and P1parallel passage.

When the straight travel spool is in neutral position, the bypass passage is not shut off. Then the hydraulic fluid from the pump P1 is directed to the tank through the bypass passage of spools : travel right, boom 1, arm 2, arm regeneration & option A and bucket, the negative relief valve of P1, tank passage, and the tank port "T1"



P1 SPOOL SECTION

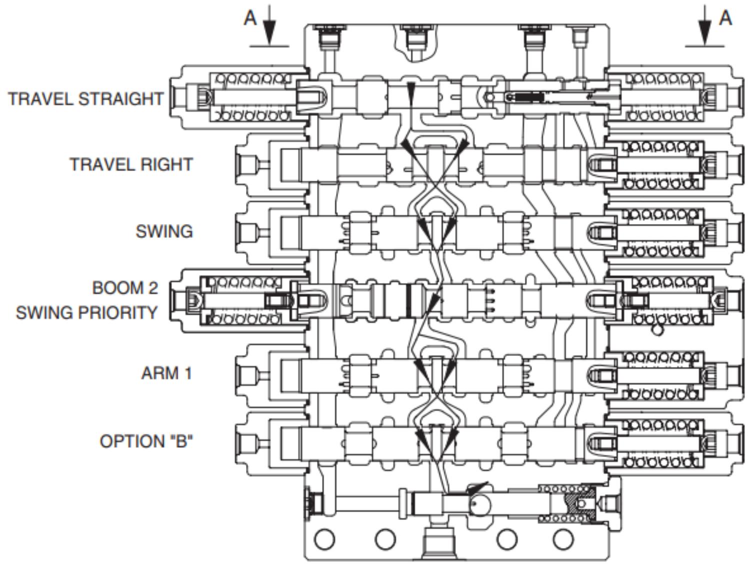


SECTION A - A

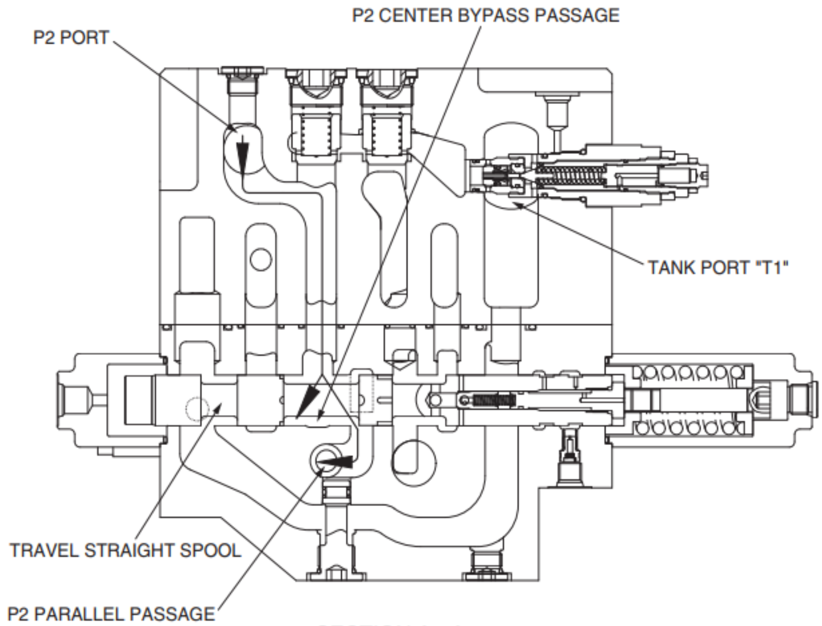
(2) P2 SIDE

The hydraulic fluid from pump flows into the main control valve through the inlet port "P2", pass the land of the straight travel spool, into the P2 bypass passage and P2 parallel passage.

When the straight travel spool is in neutral position, the bypass passage is not shut off. Then the hydraulic fluid from the pump P2 is directed to the tank through the bypass passage of spools : travel left, swing, boom 2 & swing priority, arm 1, option "B" and option "C" of bypass passage summation, and the negative relief valve of P2, the tank passage and the tank port "T1".



P2 SPOOL SECTION



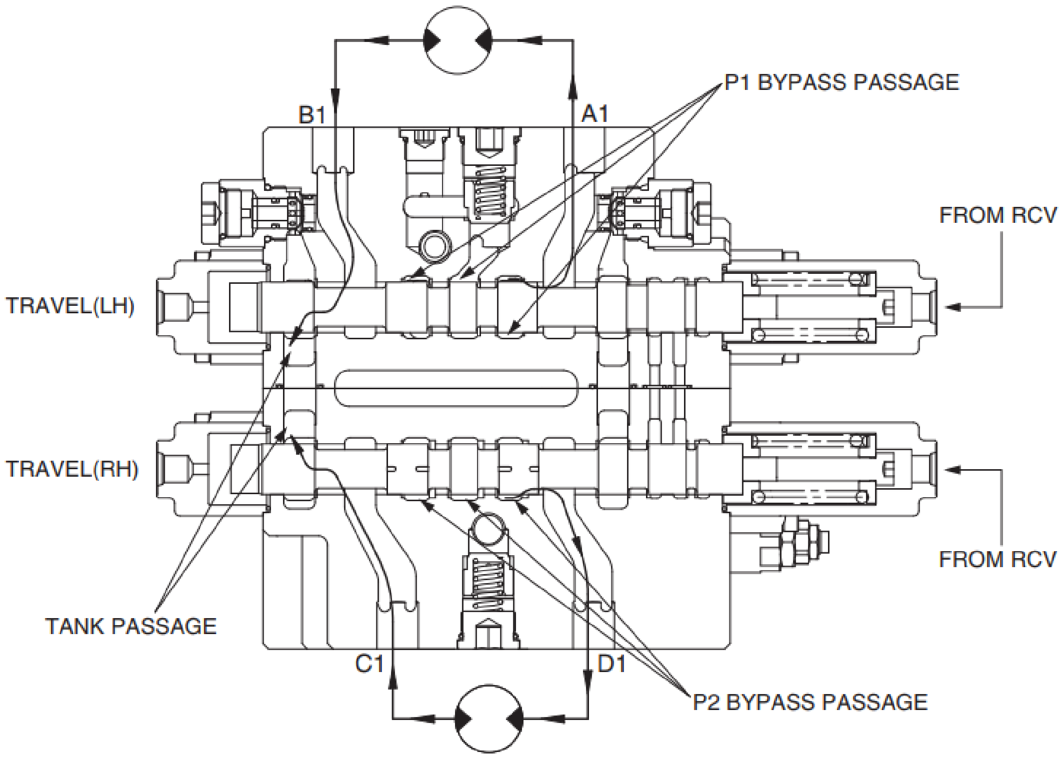
SECTION A - A

2) TRAVEL OPERATION

(1) TRAVEL FORWARD OPERATION

During the travel forward operation, the pilot pressure of RCV is supplied to the port of the spring side, and it shifts travel right and left spools in the left direction against springs. Hydraulic fluid from the pump flows into the bypass passage of travel spool through the land of the straight travel spool.

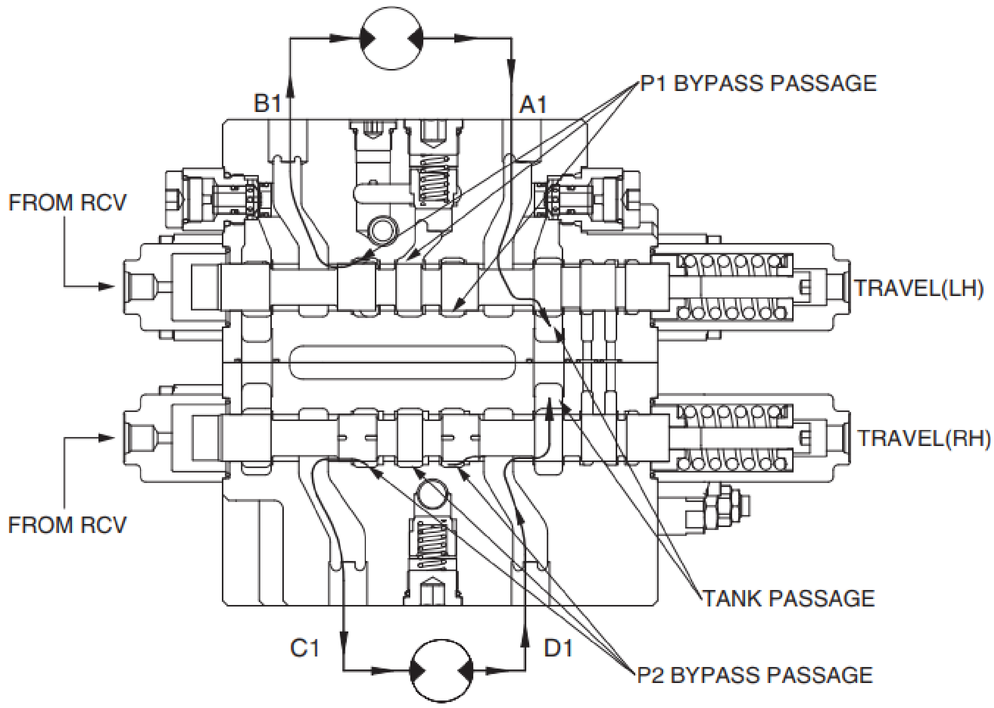
Then the bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool, they are directed to the each travel motor through port B1 and D1. At the same time, the hydraulic fluid from the each travel motor through port A1 and C1 returns to the tank passage through the travel spools.



(2) TRAVEL REVERSE OPERATION

During the travel reverse operation, the pilot pressure of RCV is supplied to the port of the spring opposite side, and it shifts travel right and left spools in the right direction against springs. Hydraulic fluid from the pump flows into the bypass passage of travel spool through the land of the straight travel spool.

Then the bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool, they are directed to the each travel motor through port A1 and C1. At the same time, the hydraulic fluid from the each travel motor through port B1 and D1 returns to the tank passage through the travel spools.



(3) TRAVEL STRAIGHT FUNCTION

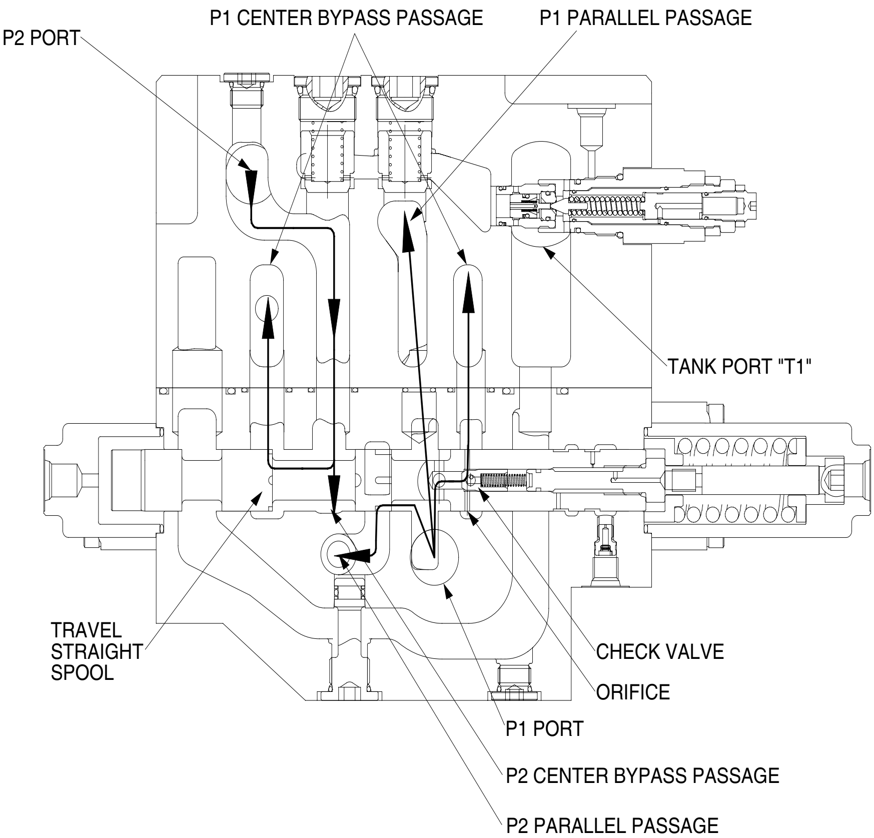
Straight travel valve is the valve for keeping traveling straight when boom, arm, bucket or swing is operated at the time of traveling. Therefore the oil from the P1 and P2 pump flows into the control valve through the each passage in neutral condition.

When the both travels and any of attachment is switched, the pilot pressure is applied the port of spring chamber and the travel straight spool is shifted.

When the straight travel spool is switched, the oil pressure from P1 is led to the each attachment switching section through the P1 and P2 parallel passage. Also some of oil id combined with bypass of P1 side by opening of check valve of spool inside through the orifice of the straight travel spool.

On the other hand, the oil from P2 is supplied to the both travel section through P1 and P2 bypass passage.

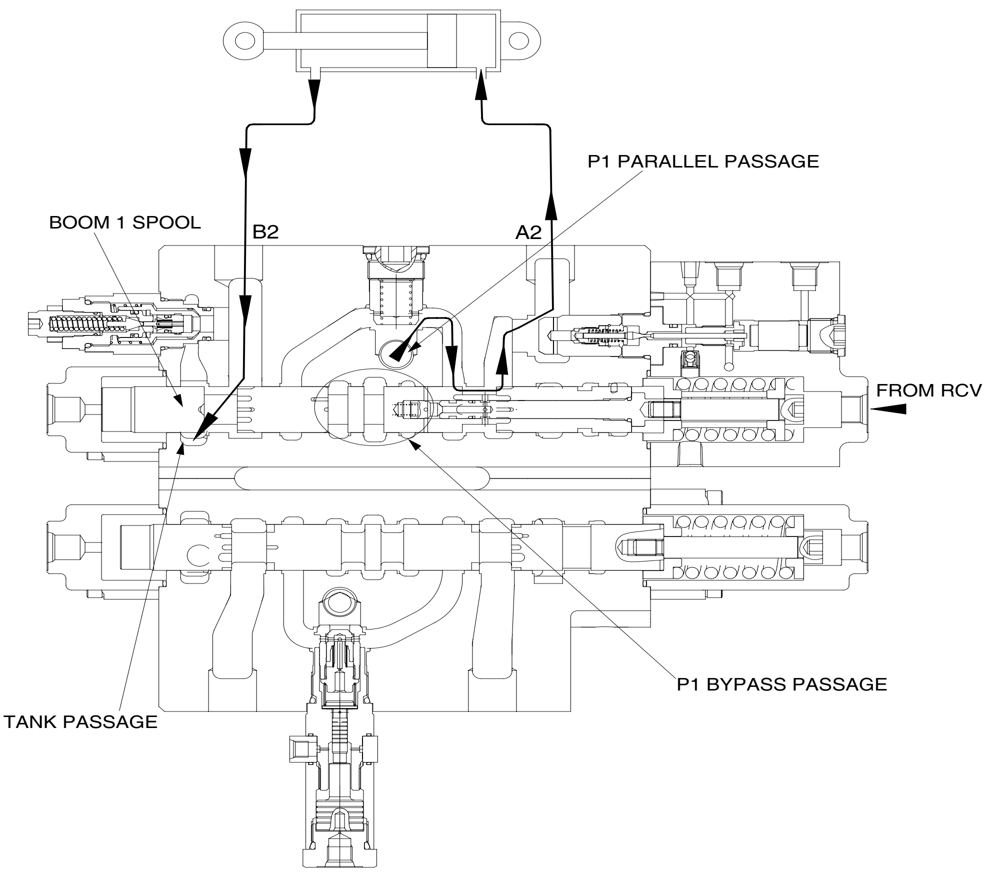
Therefore, when attachment is switched at the time of both travels, since the oil of P2 mainly flows to both travels, and the oil of P1 mainly flows to attachments, it can keep traveling straight.

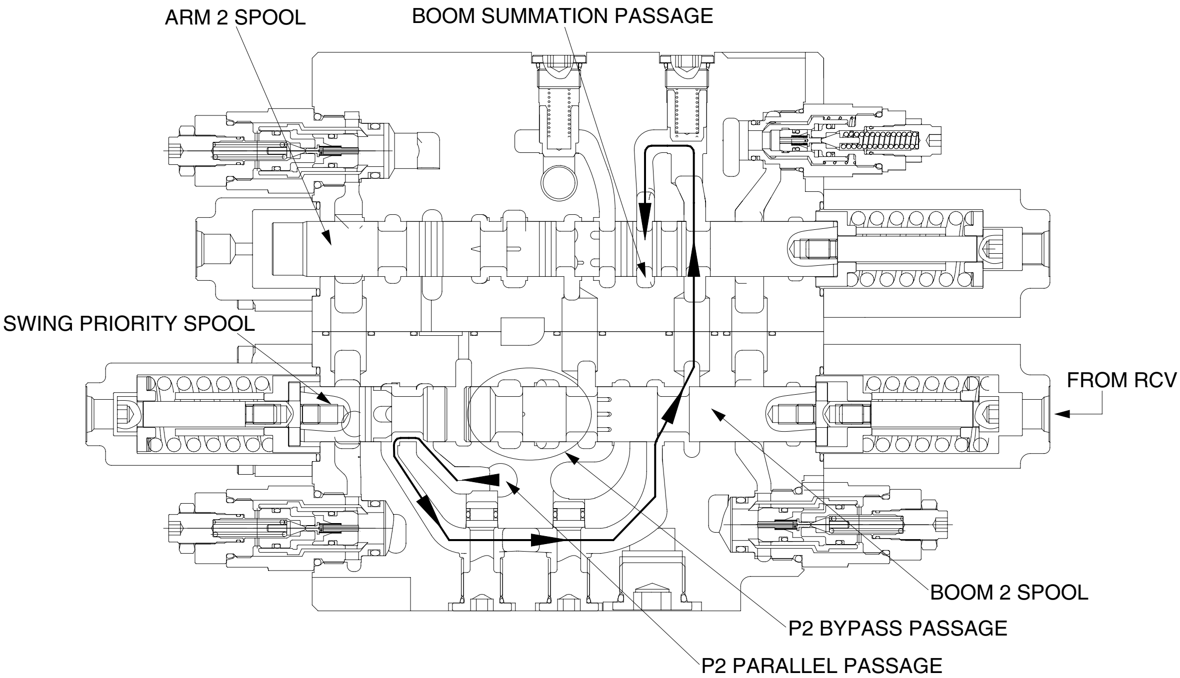


3) BOOM OPERATION

(1) BOOM UP OPERATION

During boom up operation, the pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of the spring side and shifts the boom 1 spool in the left direction. The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic oil fluid from pump P1 is entered P1 parallel passage and then passes through the load check valve, bridge passage and boom holding valve then flows into the port A2.
Following this it flows into the head side of the boom cylinder.
(In this case, the boom holding valve is free flow condition)
At the same time, the pilot pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of the spring side of boom 2 and shifts the boom 2 spool. The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic oil fluid from pump P2 entered boom summation passage via the P2 parallel passage, the land of the swing priority spool, notch of the boom 2 spool, arm 2 spool and the check. The flows combine in passage and are directed to port A2 and head side of boom cylinder.
At the same time, the flow from rod side of the boom cylinder return to the boom 1 spool through




ARM 2 SPOOL
BOOM SUMMATION PASSAGE
SWING PRIORITY SPOOL
FROM RCV
BOOM 2 SPOOL
P2 BYPASS PASSAGE
P2 PARALLEL PASSAGE

(2) BOOM DOWN OPERATION

During the boom lowing operation, the pilot pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of the spring opposite side and shifts the boom 1 spool in the right direction.

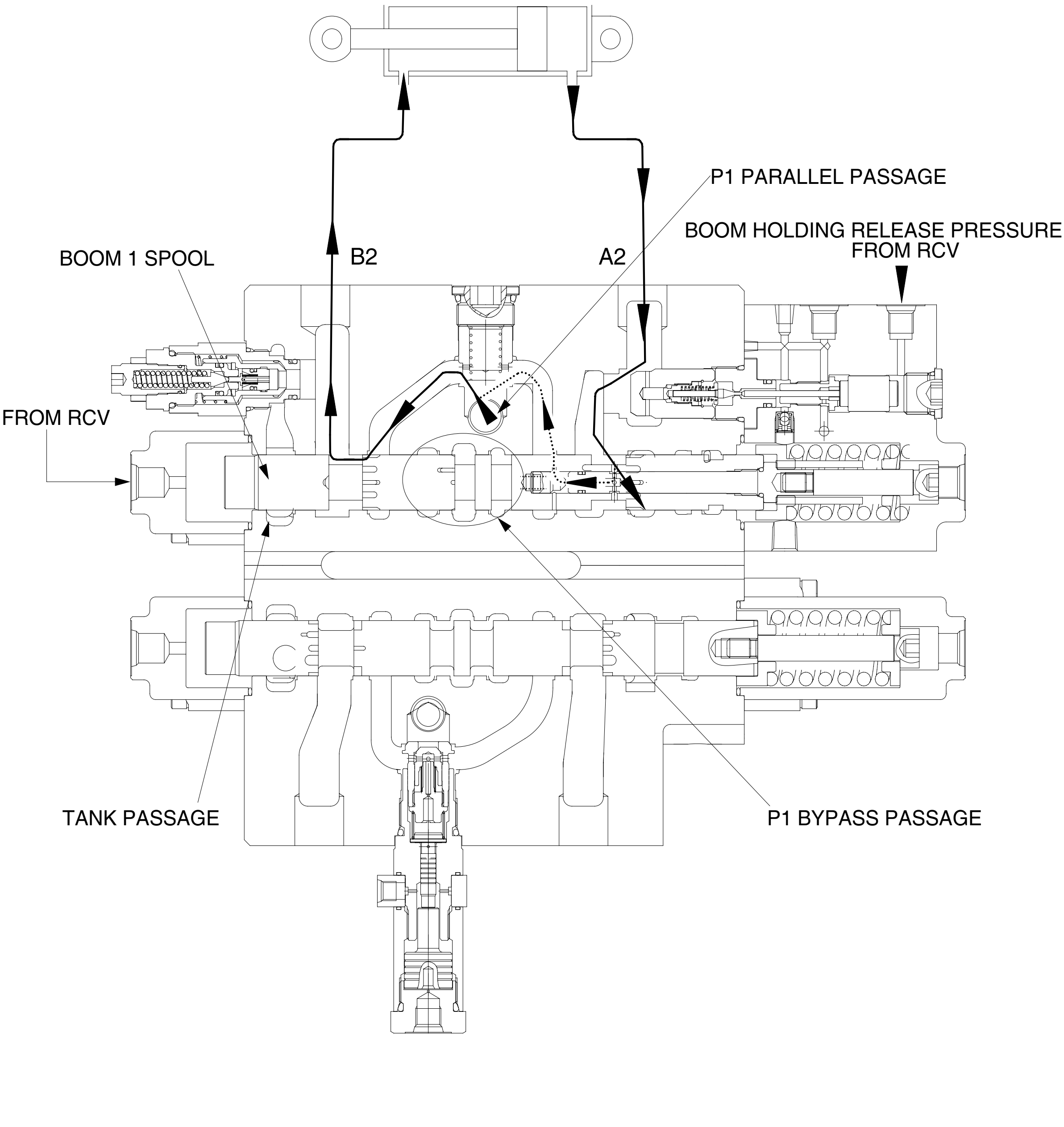
The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from the pump P1 enters the parallel passage and is directed to the port B2 through the load check valve. Following this, it flows into the rod side of the boom cylinder.

At the same time, the return flow from the head side of the boom cylinder returns to the port A2 and boom holding valve. And it is directed to the hydraulic oil tank through opened tank passage by movement of the boom 1 spool.

Meanwhile some of return flow is directed to P1 parallel passage through the internal passage of the boom 1 spool. (boom regeneration)

In this case, the holding valve is open condition, for details of the boom holding valve, see page following page.

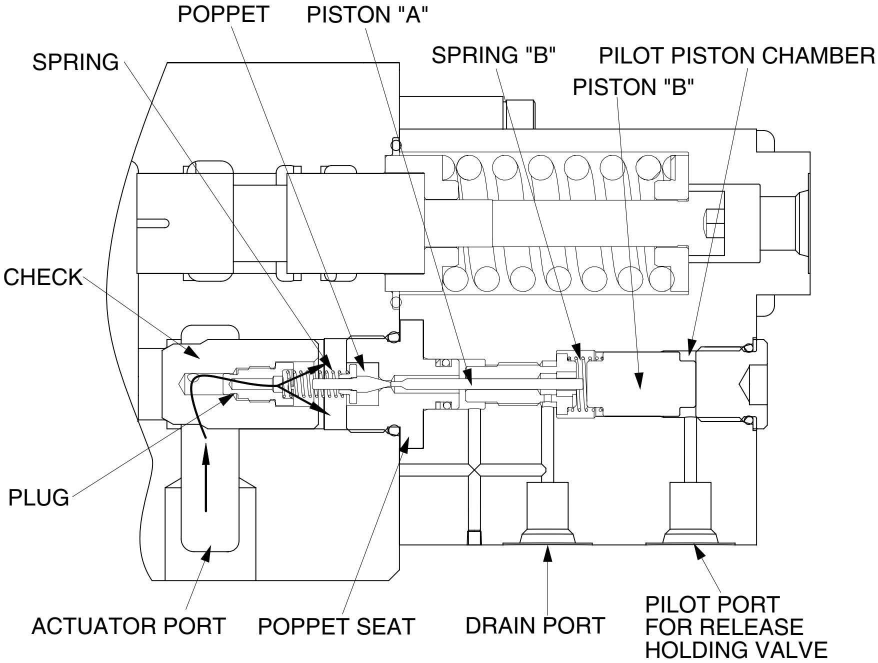
During the boom lowering operation, the fluid from P2 pump is not summation.



4) HOLDING VALVE OPERATION

(1) HOLDING OPERATION

At neutral condition, the pilot piston chamber is connected to drain port through the pilot port.
And the piston "B" is supported with spring "B".
Also, the pressured fluid from actuator entered to inside of the holding valve through the periphery hole of check, crevice of the check and the plug and the periphery hole of plug.
Then, this pressured oil pushed the poppet to the poppet seat and the check to the seat of body.
So the hydraulic fluid from actuator is not escaped and the actuator is not moved.

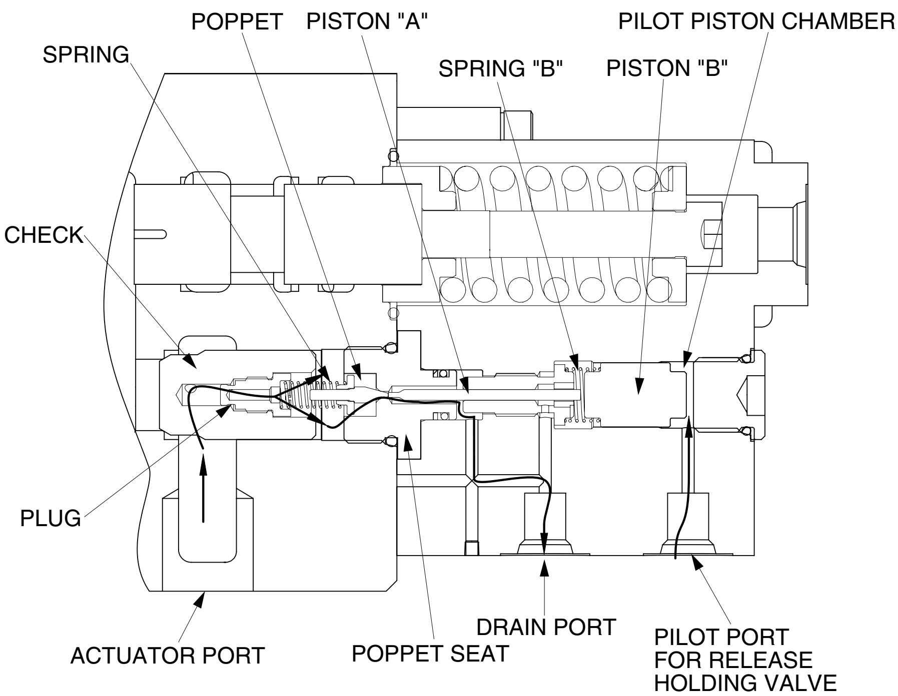


(2) RELEASE HOLDING OPERATION

The pilot pressure is supplied to the pilot port for release holding valve and shifts the piston "B" in the left direction against the spring "B", and shifts the poppet in the left direction through piston "B" and piston "A" against spring "B" and shifts the spool in the left side.

At same time, the return fluid from actuator returns to the drain port through the periphery hole of check, crevice of the check and the plug, the periphery hole of the plug, in side of holding valve, crevice of the poppet and the poppet seat, the periphery hole of the poppet seat, crevice of socket and spool and internal passage of spool.

When the poppet is opened, pressure of inside of holding valve is decreased and the return fluid from actuator returns to the tank passage through the notch of spool.



5) BUCKET OPERATION

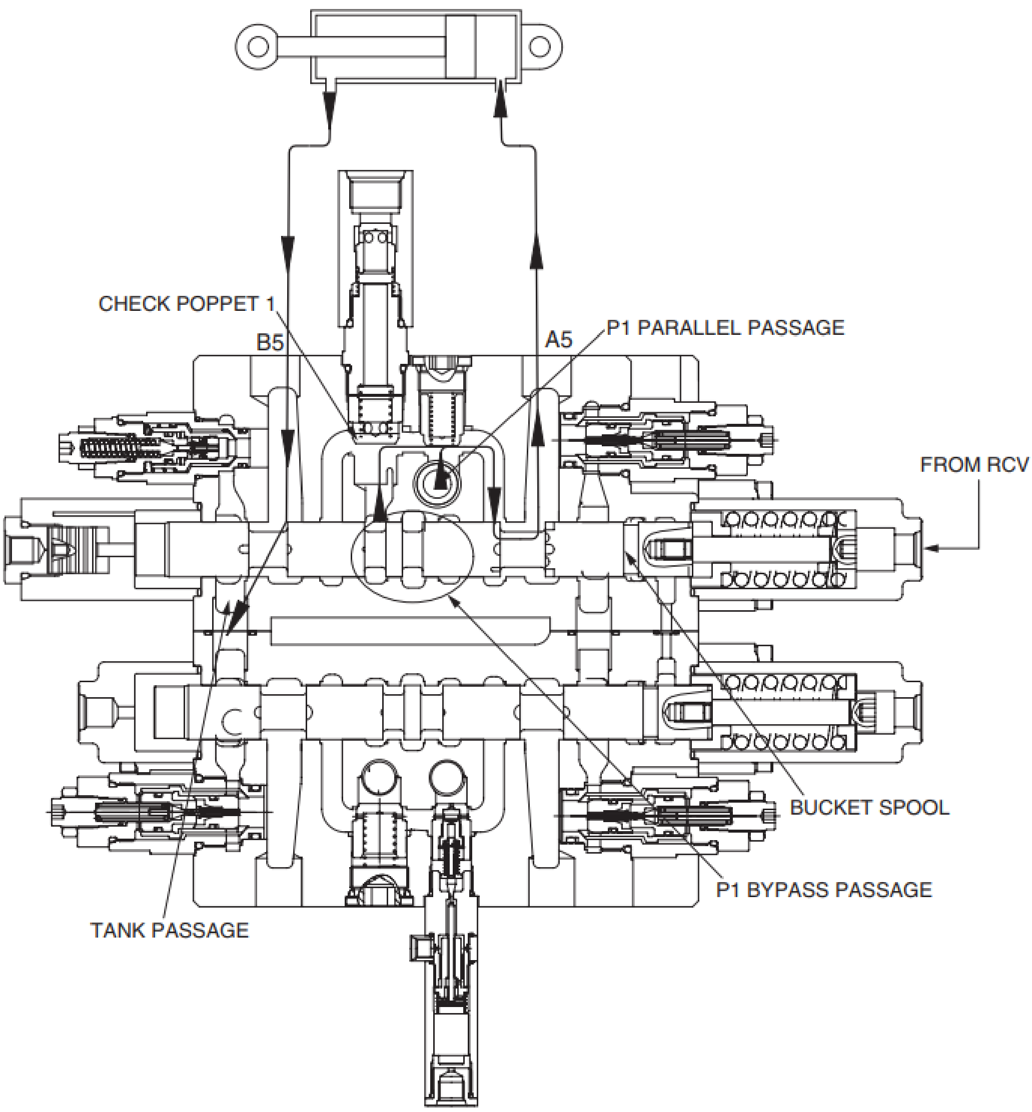
(1) BUCKET IN OPERATION

① Bucket operation only

During the bucket in operation, the pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to port of the spring side and shifts the bucket spool in the left direction.
The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from pump P1 entered P1 parallel passage and is directed to the port A5 through the check2.
At the same time, the hydraulic fluid from P1 bypass passage is directed to the port A5 through the check1.
Following this it flows into the head side of the bucket cylinder.
The return flow from the rod side of the bucket cylinder returns to the bucket spool through the port B5. Thereafter it is directed to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank passage.

② Bucket operation with arm or boom operation

When combined operation, mostly same as above but the fluid from bypass passage is empty. So only the fluid from parallel passage is supplied to the bucket cylinder. Also, parallel passage is installed the orifice for supplying the fluid from pump to the boom or the arm operation prior to the bucket operation.



(2) BUCKET OUT OPERATION

① Bucket operation only

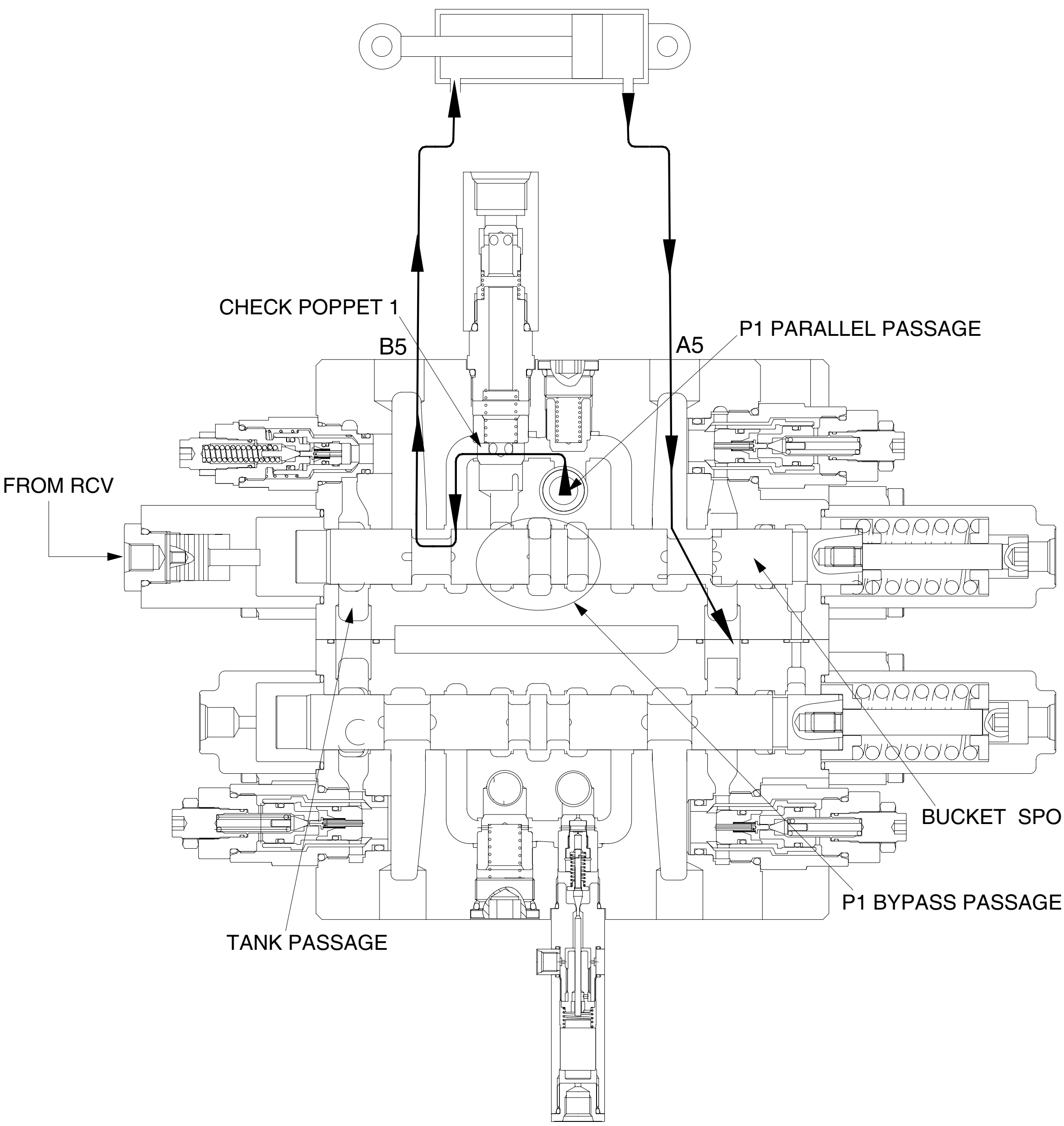
During the bucket out operation, the pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to port of the spring opposite side and shifts the bucket spool in the left direction.

The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from pump P1 entered P1 parallel passage and is directed to the port B5 through the check1.

The return flow from the rod side of the bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank passage and the port A5.

② Bucket operation with arm or boom operation

When combined operation, the same as above.

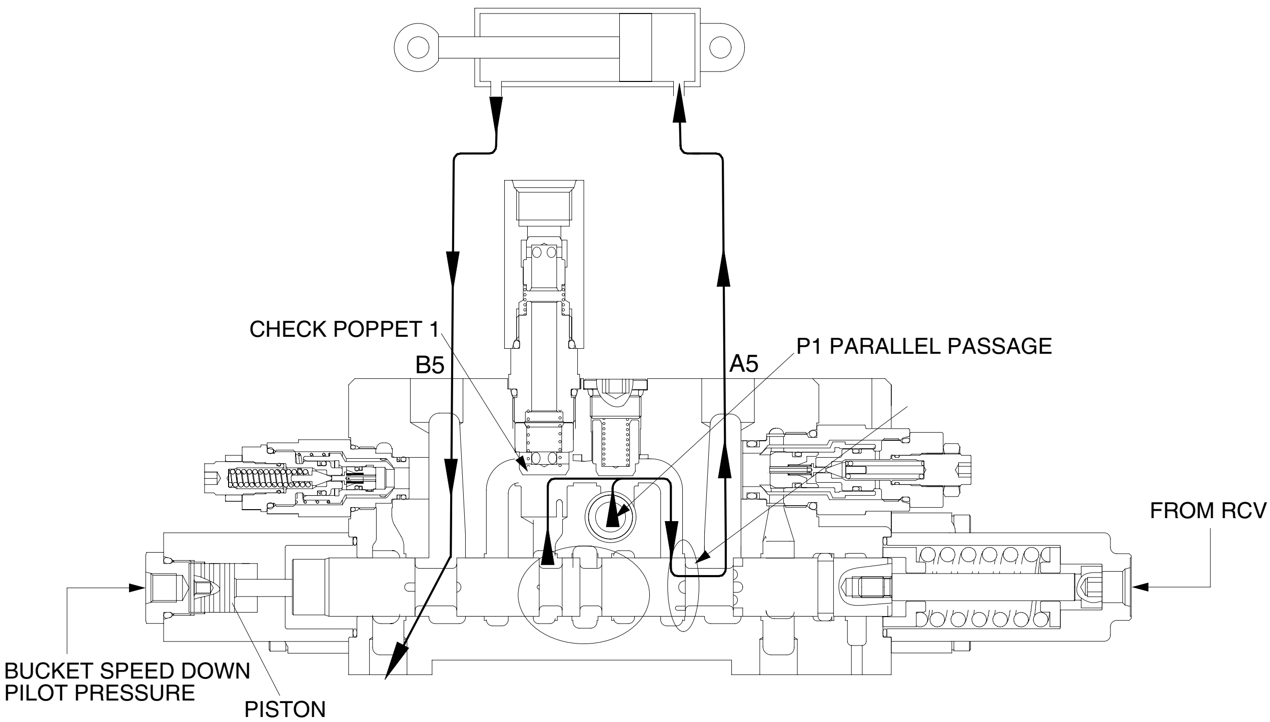


(3) BUCKET SLOW OPERATION

This function is used to speed up of the boom by reducing the bucket speed when bucket operation with boom operation simultaneously.

When the boom up operation, the boom up pilot pressure is supplied the pilot port of bucket spool stroke limit and the piston is shifted to the right and then the bucket spool stroke is limited and the open of the bucket spool is reduced.

Accordingly, the oil of the bucket spool is reduced and the boom speed up.



6) SWING OPERATION

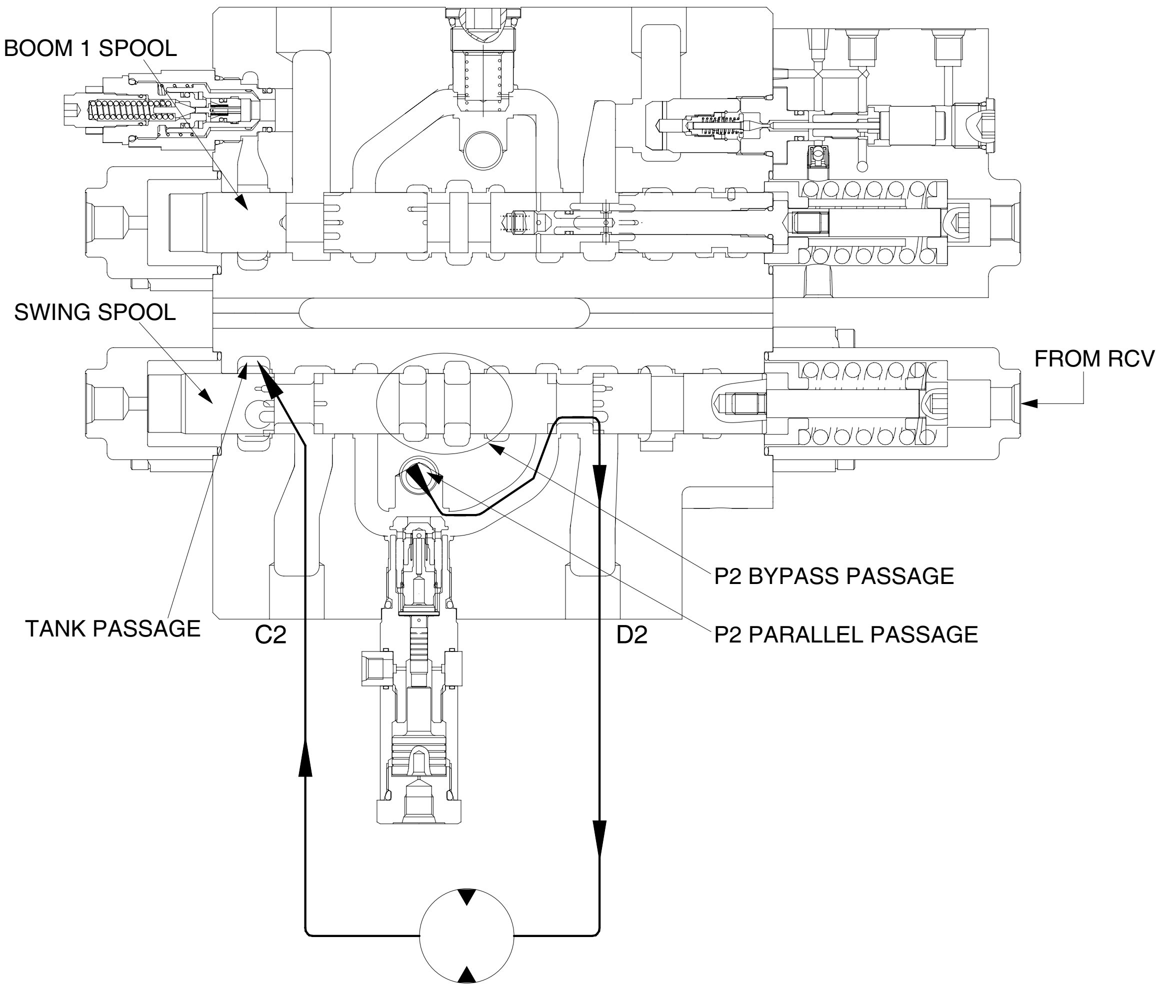
(1) SWING LEFT & RIGHT OPERATION

During the swing left operation, the pilot secondary pressure from the RCV is supplied to the port of the spring side and shift the swing spool in left direction. The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from pump P2 flows into swing spool through the parallel passage. Then it is directed to swing motor through the port D2.

As the result, swing motor turns and flow from the swing motor returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the port C2, swing spool and the tank passage.

In case of swing right operation, the operation is similar to swing left operation but the pilot secondary pressure from the RCV is supplied to the port of the spring opposite side.

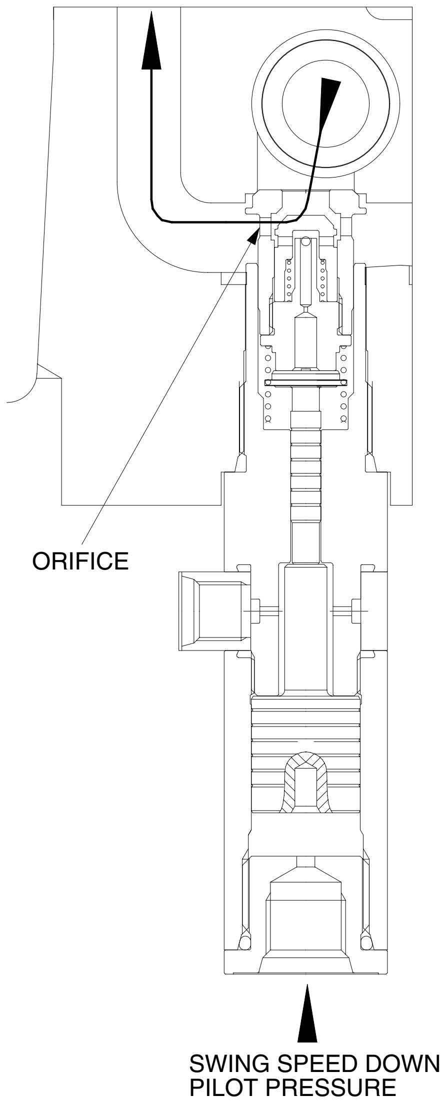
Accordingly, the hydraulic fluid from pump P2 flows into swing motor through the port C2 and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the port D2 and the tank passage.



(2) SWING SLOW DOWN OPERATION

This operation is used to speed up the boom or arm by reducing the swing speed when swing operation with boom or arm operation.

The poppet of swing logic valve is closed by the pilot pressure of swing speed down is supplied to the port, the fluid from the port P2 is drained through orifice. Accordingly, the fluid from the port P2 is reduced and swing speed is slow down.



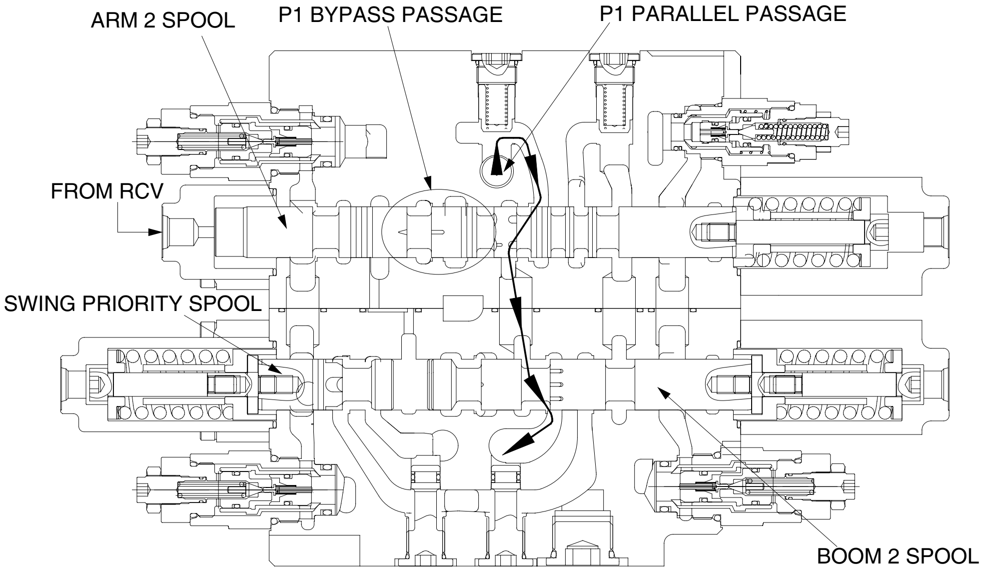
7) ARM OPERATION

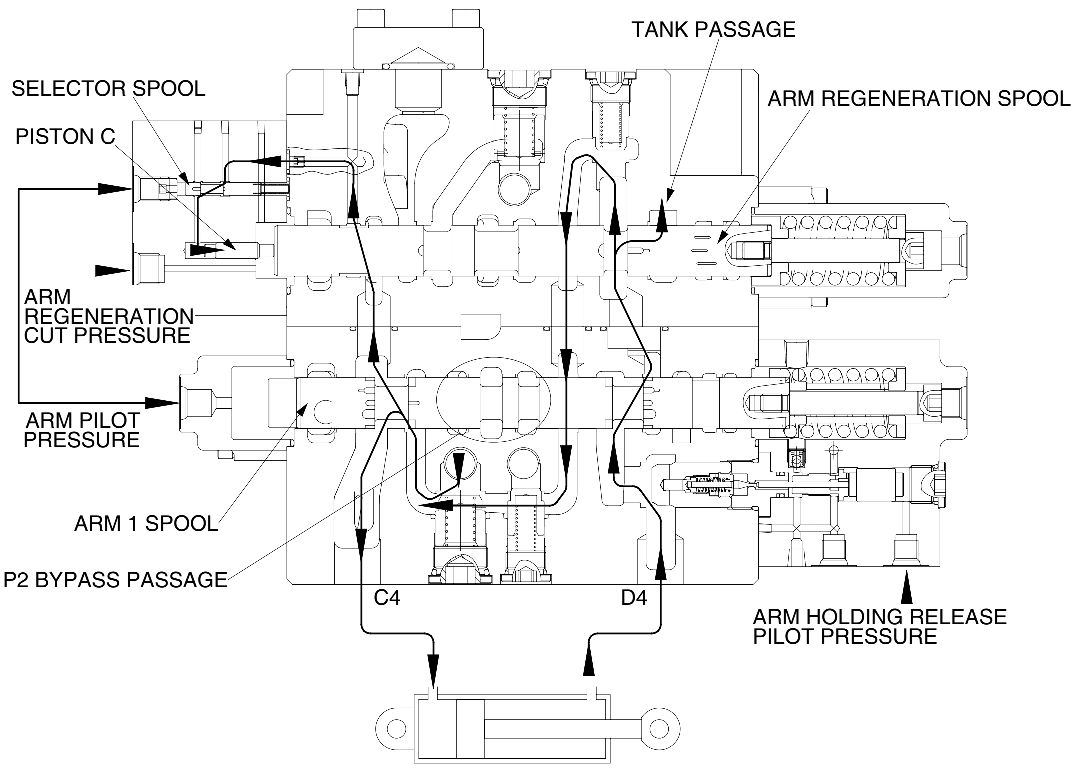
(1) ARM IN OPERATION

During arm in operation, the pilot secondary pressure from the RCV is supplied to the port of spring opposite side and shifts arm 1 spool in the right direction.

The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the arm 1 spool and the hydraulic oil from the pump P2 flows into the arm cylinder head side through P2 parallel passage, the load check valve, bridge passage and the port C4.

At same time, the pilot secondary pressure from the RCV is supplied to the port of spring opposite side and shifts arm 2 spool in the right direction. The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from the pump P1 flows into the arm summation passage through parallel passage, the check valve, the arm 2 spool and the boom 2 spool. Then it entered the arm cylinder head side with hydraulic fluid from arm 1 spool.



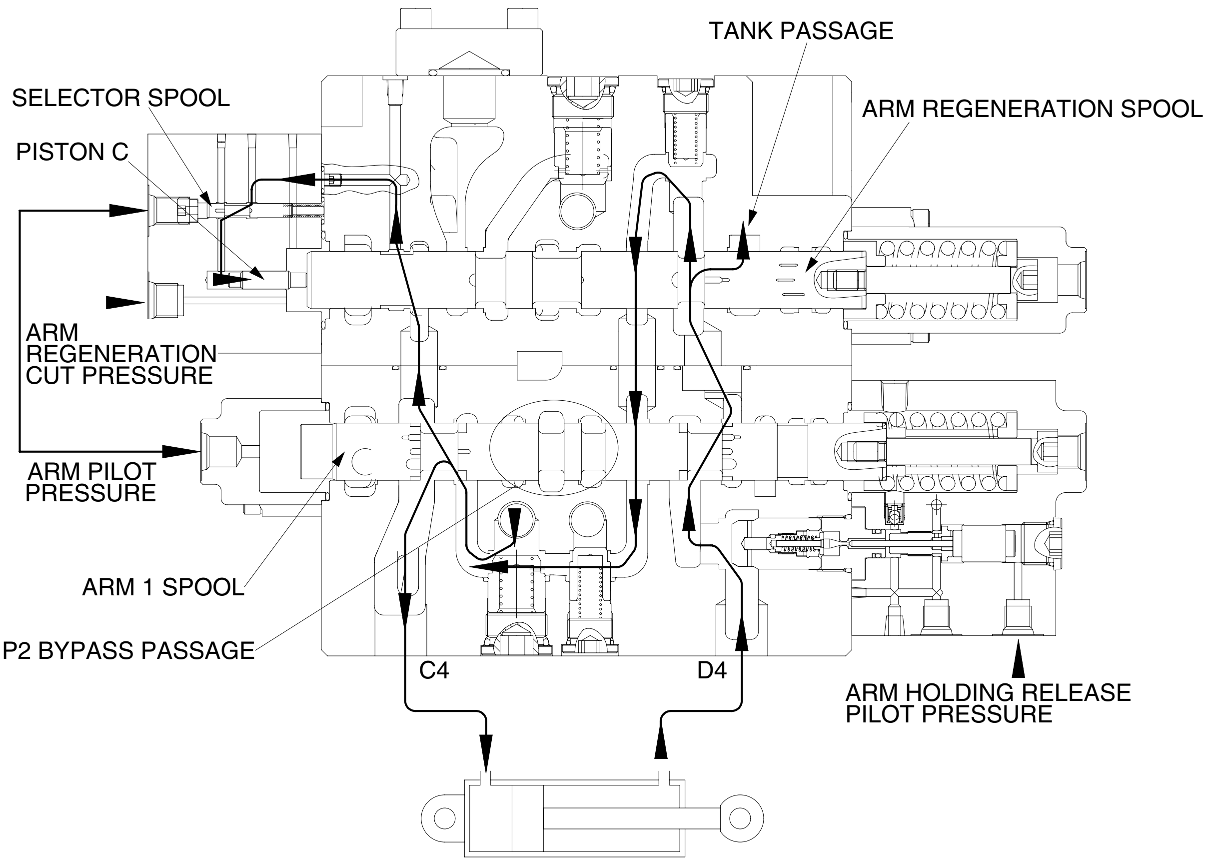


ARM REGENERATION

The return flow from the arm cylinder rod side is pressurized by self weight of arm and so, returns to port D4. The pressurized oil returning to port D4 enters the arm regeneration spool through the arm holding valve and the arm 1 spool. It is supplied the arm cylinder head through internal passage. This is called the arm regeneration function.

The amount of regeneration fluid is changed by movement of the arm regeneration spool. A few fluids after P2 parallel passage is push piston "C" through the notch of arm regeneration spool and selector spool. At this time, the selector spool is opened by pilot pressure from RCV.
Then, the arm regeneration spool shifts to right side and flow to tank pass increases and regeneration flow decreases. Therefore, pressure of arm cylinder head increases, then, arm regeneration flow decreases.

(CLUSTER TYPE 1 ONLY)
The arm regeneration cut pressure is supplied to the port of spring opposite side and arm regeneration spool is move into the right direction fully. The flow from the arm cylinder rod is returned to the hydraulic oil tank and regeneration function is not activated. (The return fluid is maximum condition)



(2) ARM OUT OPERATION

During arm out operation, the pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of spring side and shifts arm 1 spool in the left direction.

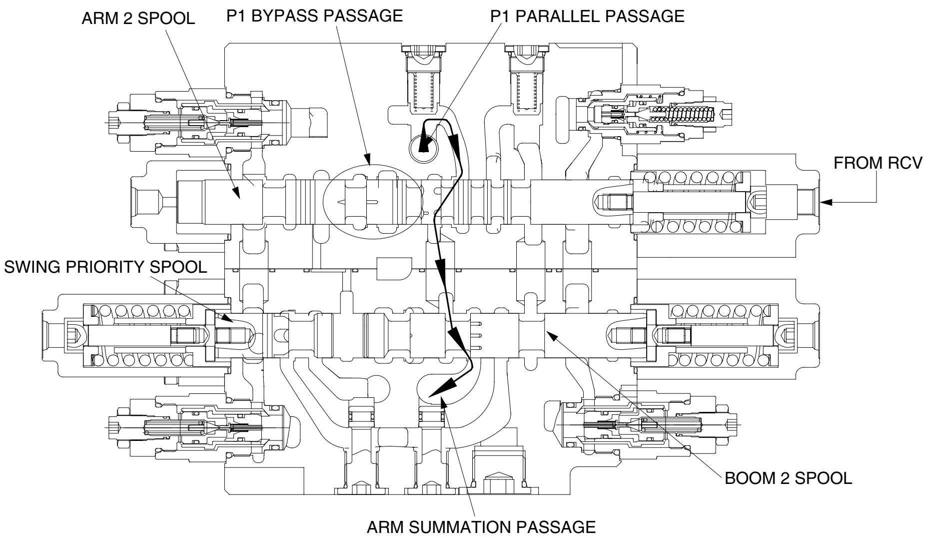
The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from pump P2 flows into arm 1 spool through the parallel passage. Then it enters into the arm cylinder rod side through the load check valve, bridge passage, arm holding valve and the port D4.

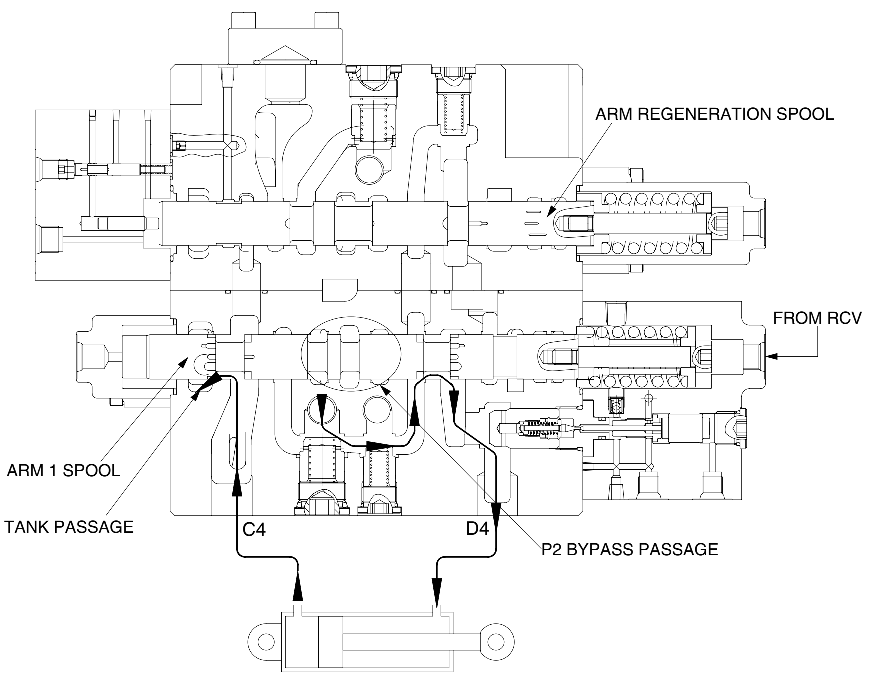
Also, the pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of spring side and shifts arm 2 spool in the left direction.

The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and some of the hydraulic fluid from pump P2 bypassed through bypass notch. The rest of hydraulic fluid from pump P2 flows into the arm summation passage through P1 parallel passage the check valve arm 2 spool and boom 2 spool.

Then it enters into the arm cylinder rod side with the fluid from the arm 1 spool.

The return flow from the arm cylinder head side returns to the hydraulic tank through the port C4 the arm 1 spool and tank passage.



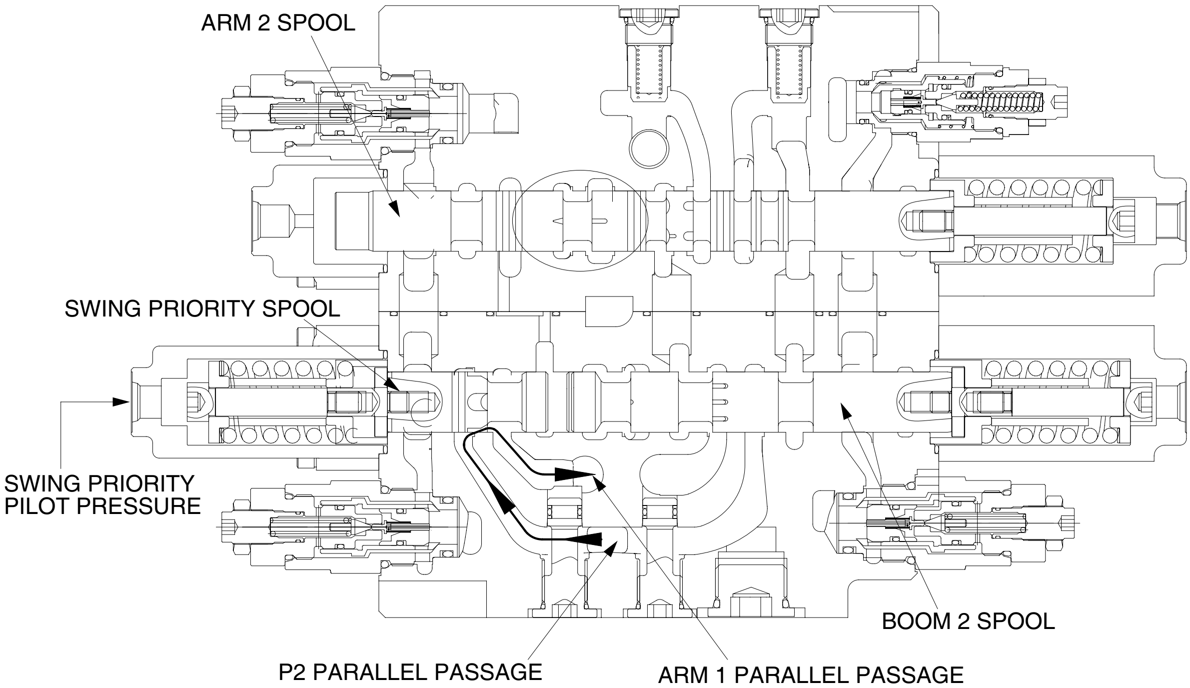


8) SWING PRIORITY FUNCTION

During swing priority operation, the pilot secondary pressure is supplied to the port of the spring side of the swing priority spool and shift swing priority spool in the right direction.

The hydraulic fluid from P2 parallel passage flows into the parallel passage of arm 1 side through swing priority spool and the passage "A" and also flows into the boom 2 spool.

When the swing priority spool is neutral condition, the passage is same as normal condition. But due to shifting of the swing priority spool, the fluid from pump P2 flows to swing side more then the boom 2, arm 1, option B and bucket summation spools to make the swing operation most preferential.



9) OPERATION OF OPTION

(1) OPERATION BY PUMP P2

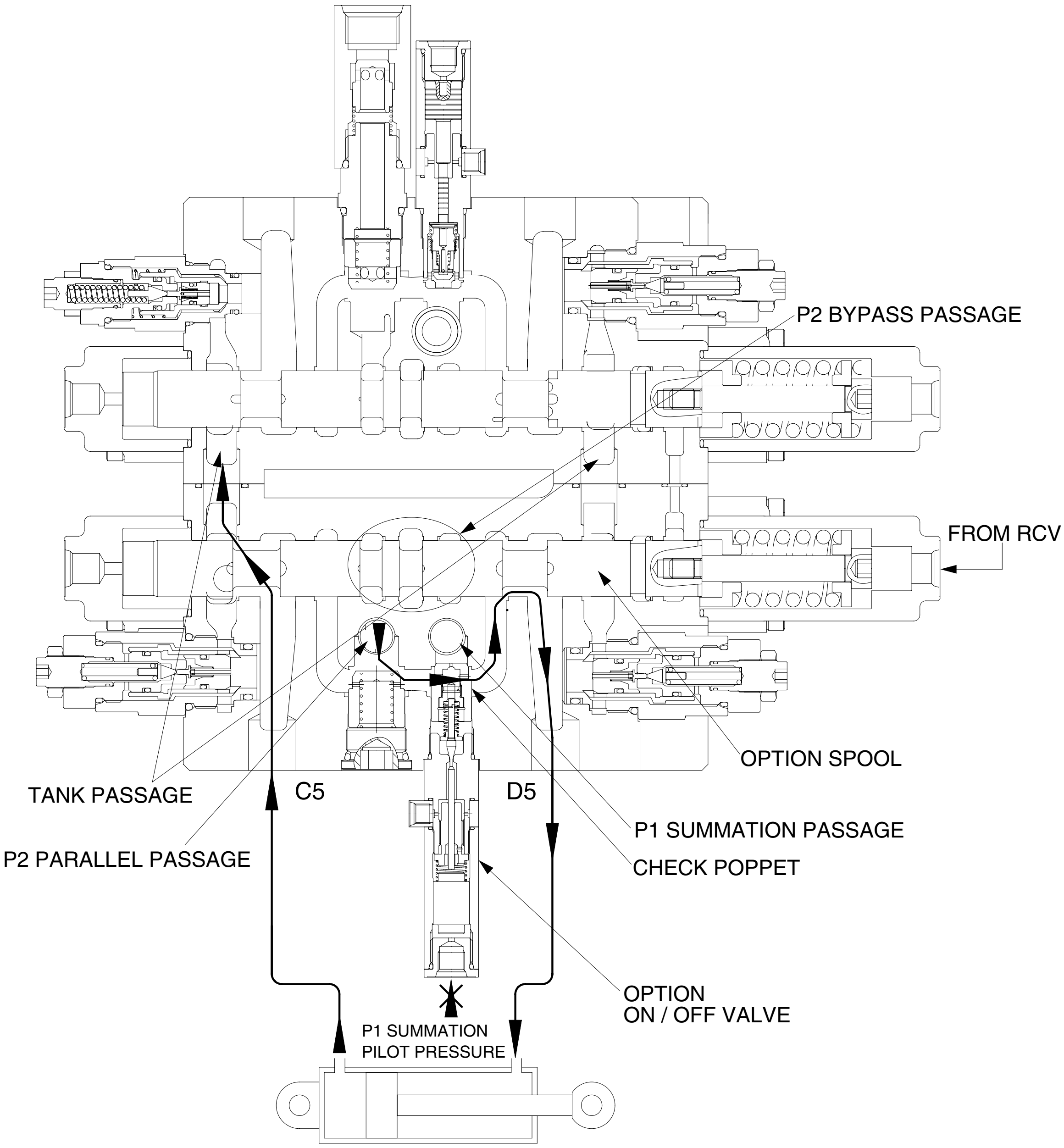
The pilot secondary pressure from RCV is supplied to the port of spring side and shifts option spool as the figure.

The bypass passage is shut off by the movement of the spool and the hydraulic fluid from pump P2 flows into actuator through the load check valve, bridge passage and port D5.

If the pilot pressure is not supplied to P1 summation pilot port and is not shifts arm 2 spool. Accordingly, the pump P1 fluid connected the parallel passage is not flowing the check poppet of option ON/OFF valve and the fluid from pump is not joined the fluid from P2.

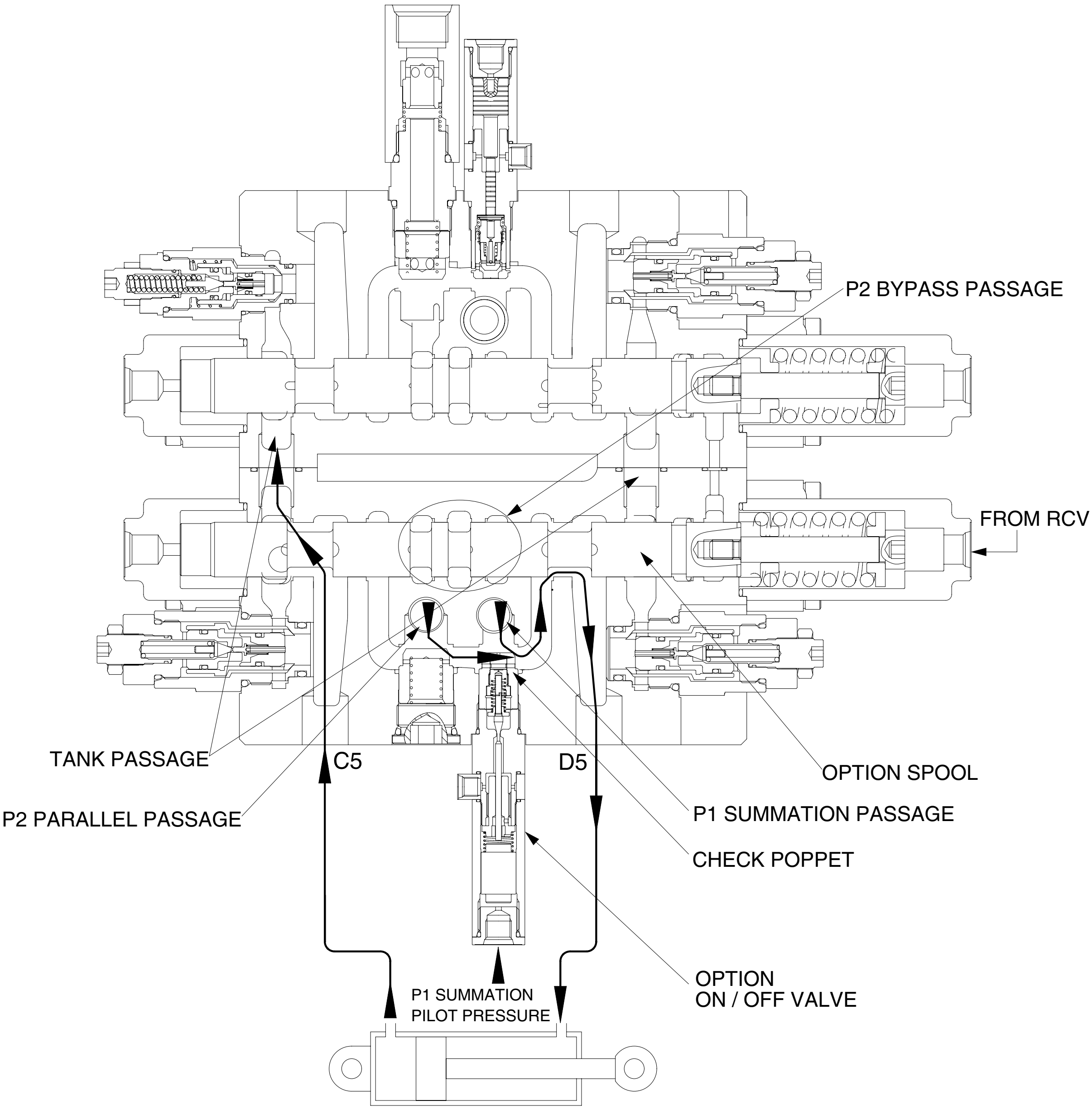
At the same time, the fluid from actuator returns to the tank passage through port C5 and notch of the option spool.

In case of reverse operation, the operating principle is same as above.



10) SUMMATION OPERATION WITH PUMP P1 (CLUSTER TYPE 1)

The pilot pressure from RCV is supplied to option pilot port and one of arm 2 pilot port at the same time, the fluid for the arm summation is build up. This fluid flows into the arm 1 spool priority but the arm is not operated, the fluid flows into P1 summation passage. Now the pilot pressure of RCV is supplied to the P1 summation pilot port of option ON/OFF valve, the fluid from pump P1 opens the load check valve and flows into port D5 with the fluid of pump P2.

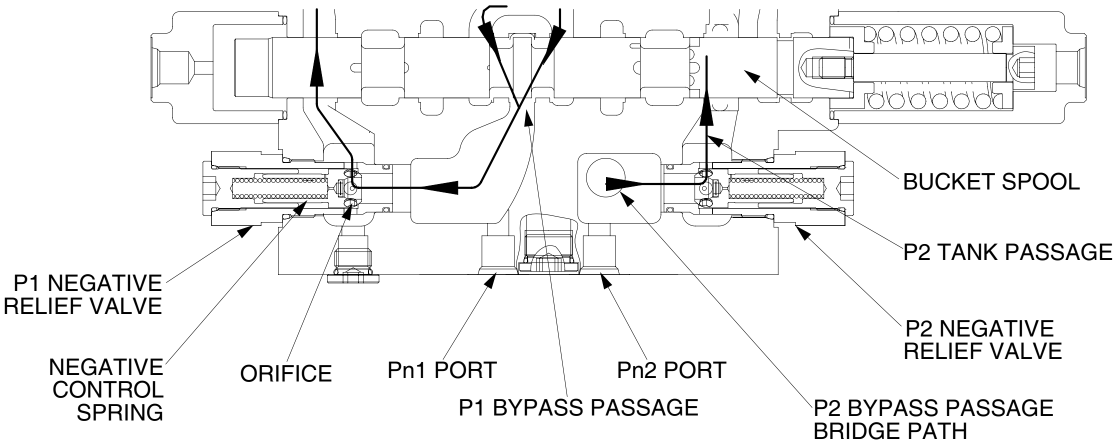


11) NEGATIVE RELIEF VALVE OPERATION

When no function is being actuated on P1 side, the hydraulic fluid from the pump P1, flows into the tank passage through the bypass passage and orifice. The restriction caused by this orifice thereby pressurizes. This pressure is transferred as the negative control signal pressure Pn1 to the pump P1 regulator. It controls the pump regulator so as to minimize the discharge of the pump P1.
The bypass passage is shut off when the shifting of one or more spools and the flow through bypass passage became zero. The pressure of negative control signal becomes zero and the discharge of the pump P1 becomes maximum.

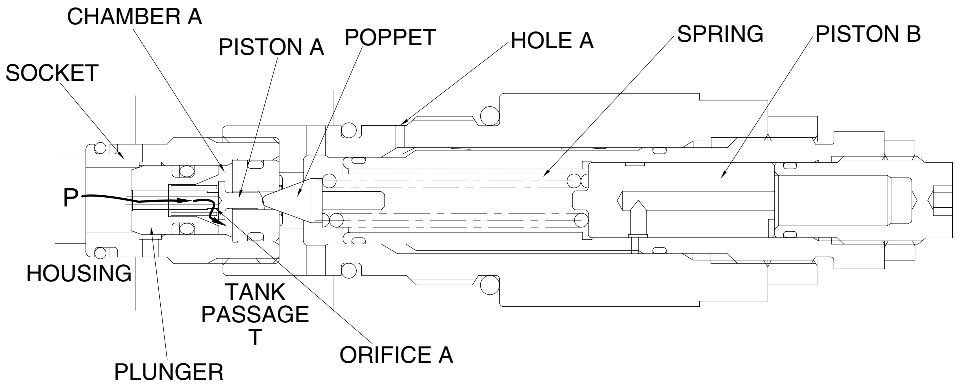
The negative control pressure reaches to the set level, the hydraulic fluid in the passage pushes open negative control valve and escapes into the return passage.

For the pump P2 the same negative control principle.

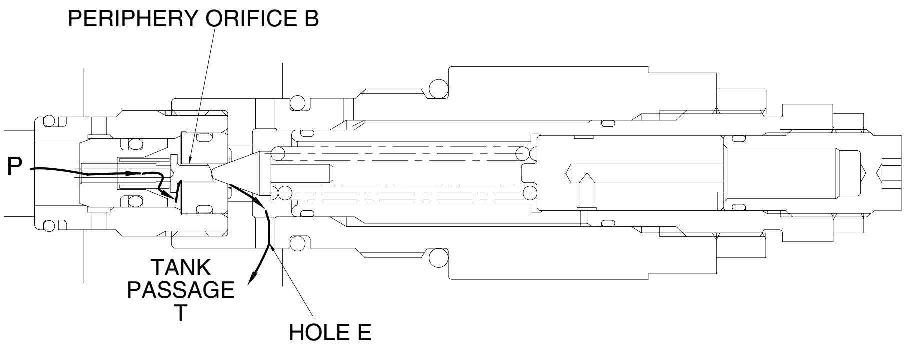


12) OPERATION OF MAIN RELIEF VALVE

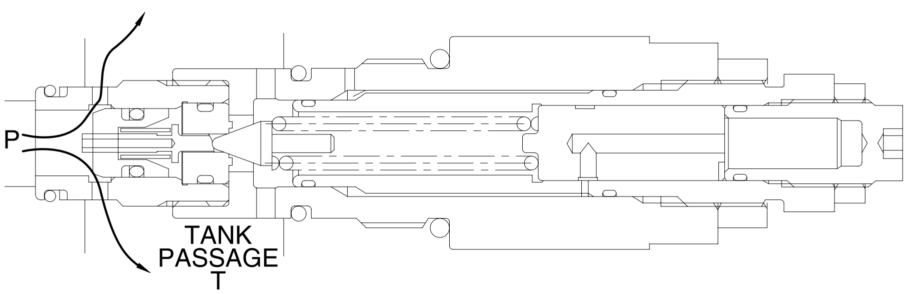
(1) The pressurized oil passes through the orifice (A) of the plunger is filled up in chamber A of the inside space, and seats the plunger against the housing securely.



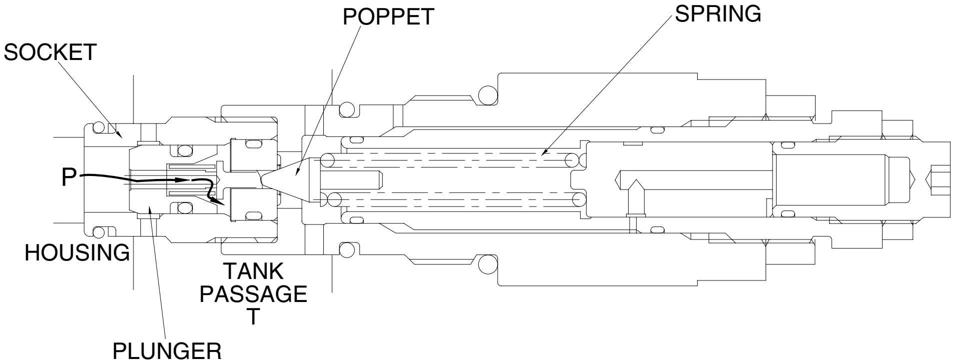
(2) When the pressure at (P) becomes equal to the set pressure of the spring the hydraulic oil passes through the piston (A) pushes open the poppet and flows to tank passage (T) through the plunger internal passage, periphery orifice A, chamber A, periphery orifice B and the hole (E).



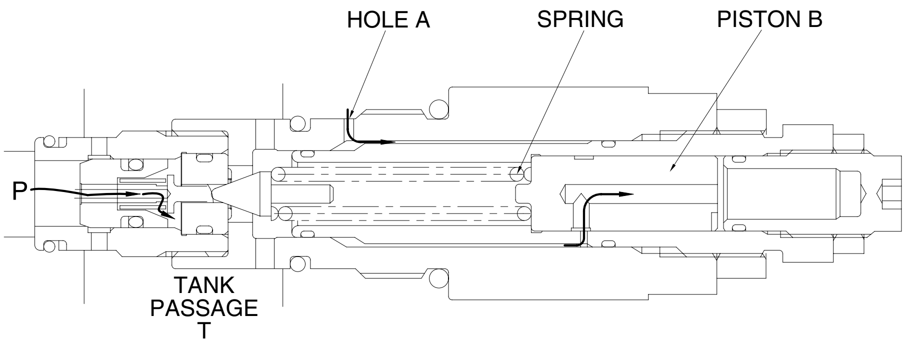
(3) Opening the poppet causes the pressure in chamber A to fall and the plunger to open. As the result the pressurized oil at port P runs into tank passage (T).



(4) The pressure at port P becomes lower than set pressure of the spring, the poppet is seated by spring force. Then the pressure at port P becomes equal to set pressure of the spring and the plunger is seated to the socket.



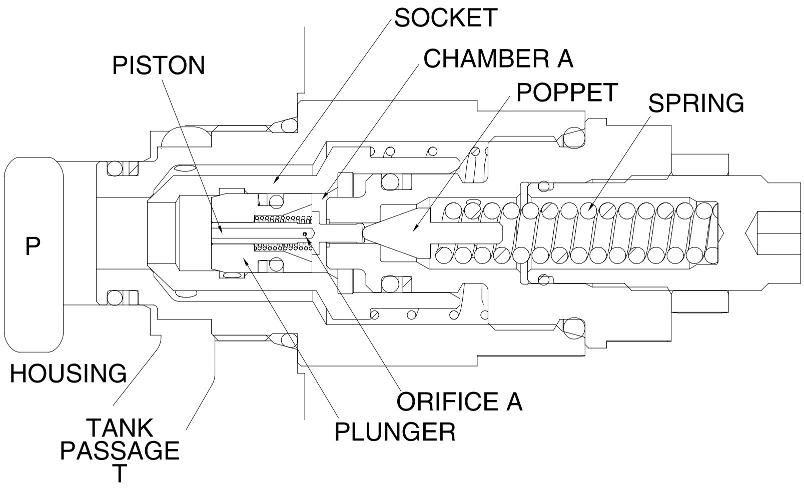
(5) When the power boost switch is ON, the pilot pressure enters through hole A.
It pushes the piston (B) in the left direction to increase the force of the spring and change the relief set pressure to the high pressure.



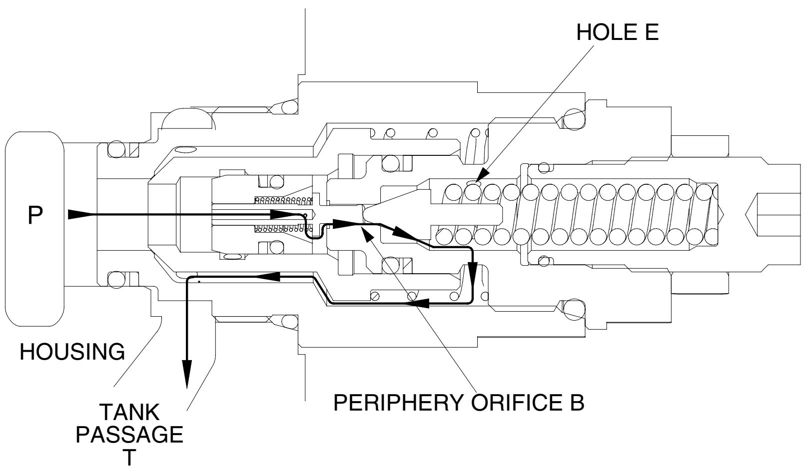
13) OPERATION OF OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

FUNCTION AS RELIEF VALVE

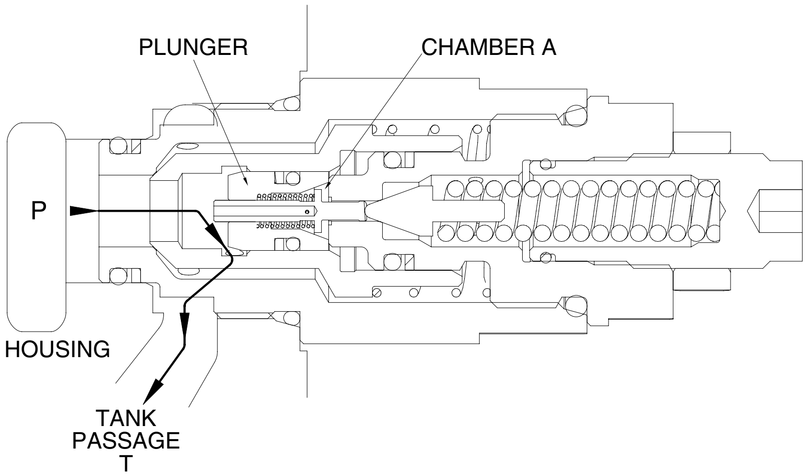
(1) The pressurized oil passes through the piston and orifice A is filled up in chamber A of the inside space and seat the plunger against the socket and the socket against the housing securely.



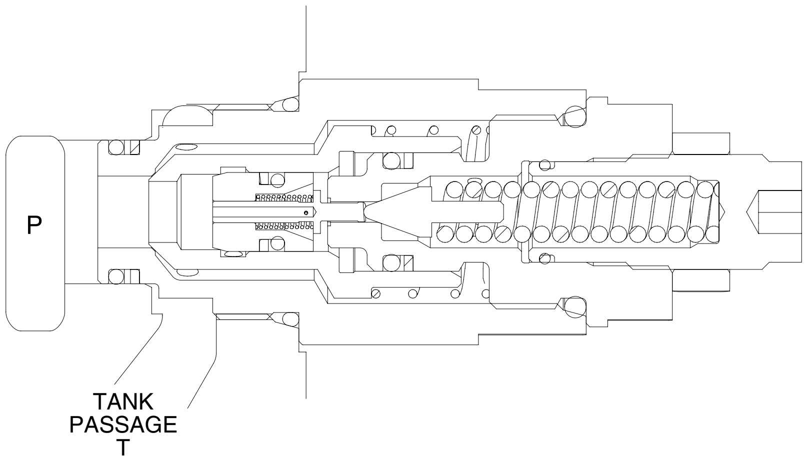
(2) When the pressure at port P becomes equal to the set pressure of the spring, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet and flows to tank passage (T) through the plunger internal passage, orifice A, chamber A, periphery orifice B and hole E.



(3) Opening of the poppet causes the pressure in chamber A to fall and the plunger to open. As the result the pressurized oil at port P runs into tank passage (T).

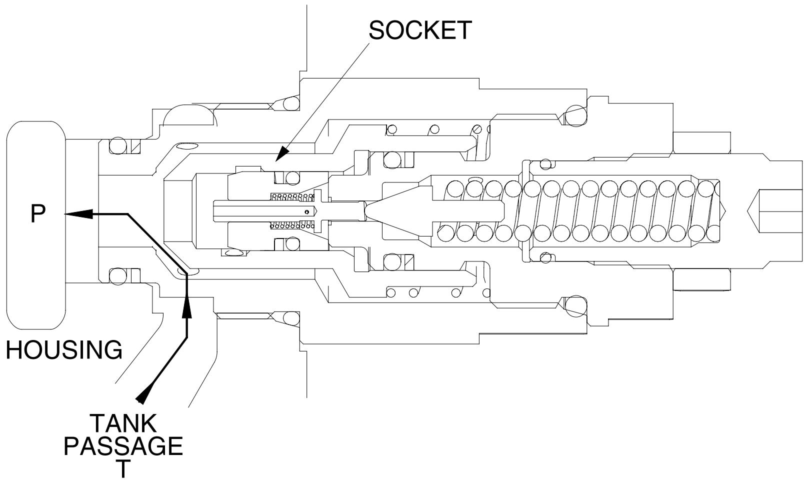


(4) The pressure at port P becomes lower than set pressure of the spring, the poppet is seated by spring force. Then the pressure at port P becomes equal to set pressure of the spring and the plunger is seated
t o the socket.



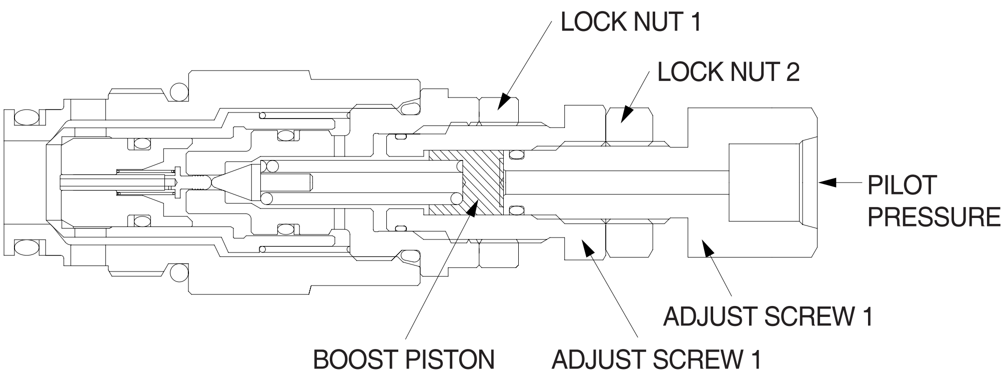
MAKE-UP FUNCTION

(5) When negative pressure exists at port P, the oil is supplied through tank passage (T). When the pressure at tank passage (T) becomes higher than that of at port P, the socket moves in the right direction. Then, sufficient oil passes around the socket from tank passage (T) to port P and fills up the space.



14) BREAKER OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE FUNCTION

(1) The structure and function of 2 stage relief valve is similar with the overload relief but it can set the higher pressure by pilot pressure.



Boost function

(1) When the pilot pressure is supplied, the spring is a little compressure by moving of the boost piston and the set pressure is higher as length of spring compressed.

Pressure set method

(2) Loosen lock nut 1 and 2 and then full tighten adjust screw 2.

(3) Set the high pressure by adjusting the adjust screw 1 and 2 and then fix it by the lock nut 1. Keep the adjust screw 1 do not move when fixing the lock nut 1.

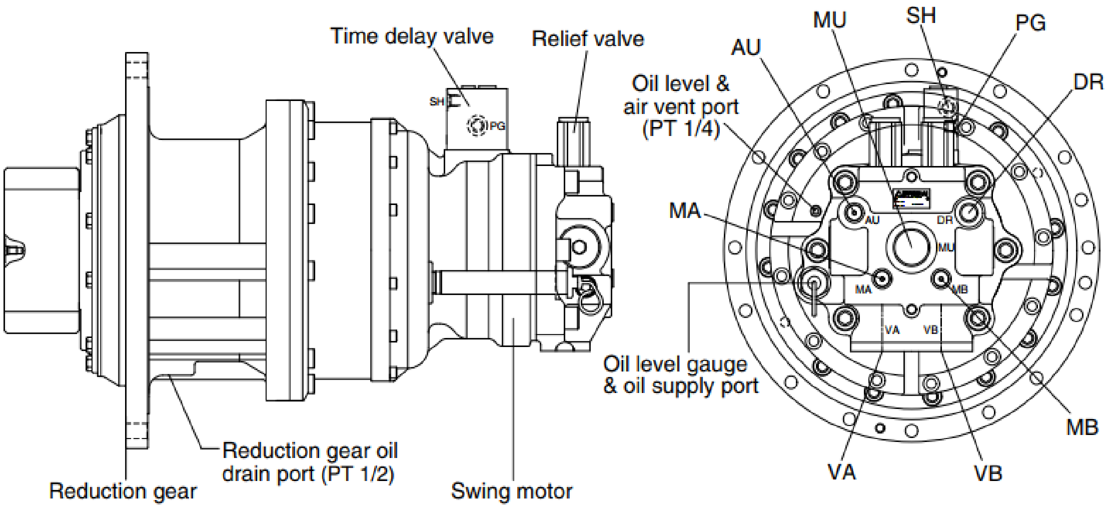
(4) Set the low pressure by adjusting the adjust screw 2 and then fix it by the lock nut 2. Keep the adjust screw 2 do not move when fixing the lock nut 2.

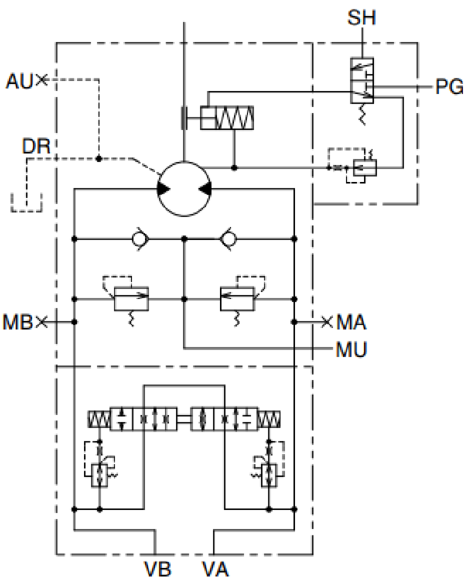
GROUP 3 SWING DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

Swing device consists swing motor, swing reduction gear.

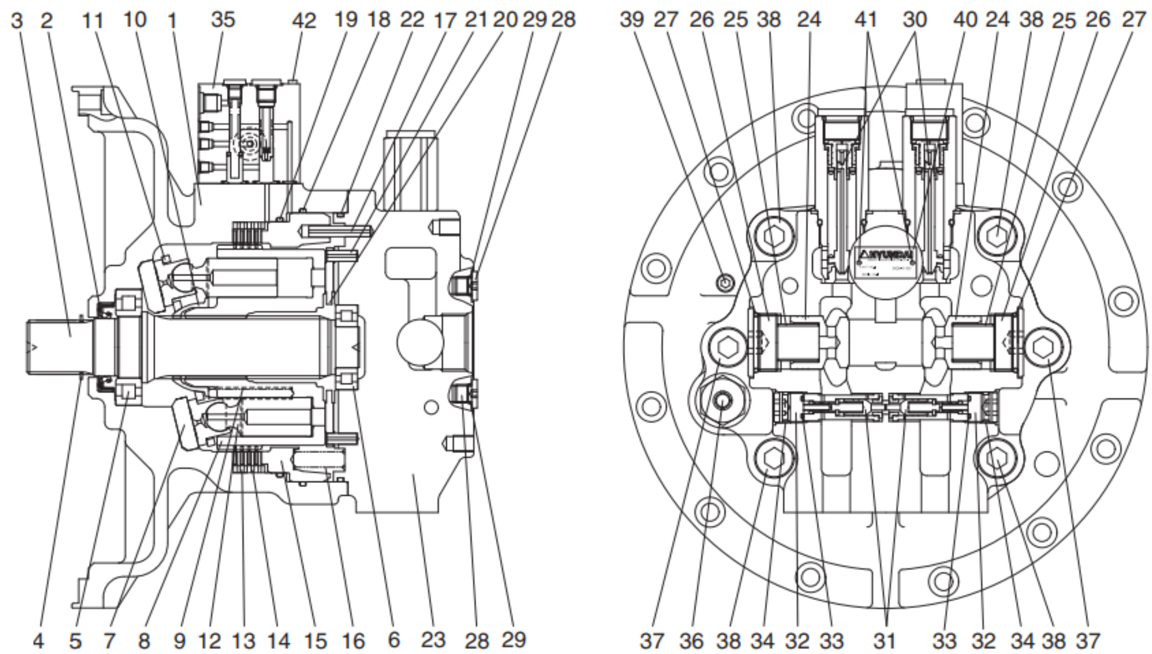
Swing motor include mechanical parking valve, relief valve, make up valve and time delay valve.





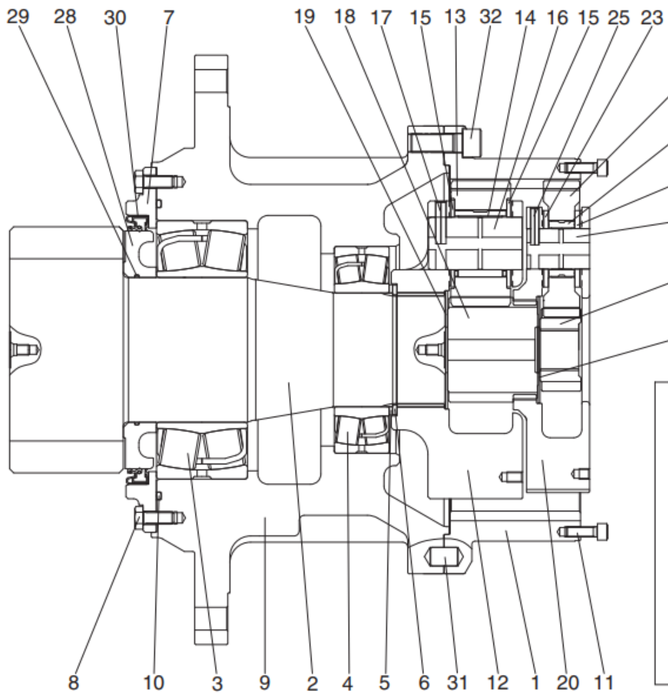
Port	Port name	Port size
A, B	Main port	Ø20
DR	Drain port	PF 1/2
Mu	Make up port	PF 1 1/4
MA, MB	Gauge port	PF 1/4
PG	Brake release stand by port	PF 1/4
SH	Brake release pilot port	PF 1/4
AU	Air vent port	PF 1/4

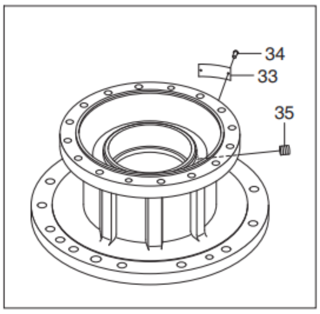
1) SWING MOTOR



1 Casing
2 Oil seal
3 Shaft
4 Snap ring
5 Roller bearing
6 Needle bearing
7 Swash plate
8 Cylinder block
9 Spring
10 Ball guide
11 Retainer plate
12 Piston assy
13 Friction plate
14 Separate plate
15 Parking piston
16 Brake spring
17 Spring pin
18 O-ring
19 O-ring
20 Valve plate
21 Spring pin
22 O-ring
23 Valve casing
24 Check valve
25 Spring
26 Plug
27 O-ring
28 Plug
29 O-ring
30 Relief valve assy
31 Reactionless valve assy
32 Plug
33 O-ring
34 O-ring
35 Time delay valve assy
36 Level gauge
37 Socket bolt
38 Socket bolt
39 Plug
40 Name plate
41 Rivet
42 Socket bolt

2) REDUCTION GEAR





1	Ring gear	13	Planetary gear 2	25	Spring pin 1
2	Drive shaft	14	Needle bearing 2	26	Sun gear 1
3	Bearing	15	Thrust washer 2	27	Thrust plate 1
4	Bearing	16	Carrier pin 2	28	Sleeve
5	Thrust plate	17	Spring pin 2	29	O-ring
6	Snap ring	18	Sun gear 2	30	Oil seal
7	Cover	19	Thrust plate 2	31	Parallel pin
8	Hex head bolt	20	Carrier 1	32	Hex socket head bolt
9	Casing	21	Planetary gear 1	33	Name plate
10	O-ring	22	Needle bearing 1	34	Rivet
11	Hex socket head bolt	23	Thrust washer 1	35	Plug
12	Carrier 2	24	Carrier pin 1		

2. PRINCIPLE OF DRIVING

1) Generating the turning force

The high hydraulic supplied from a hydraulic pump flows into a cylinder block (8) through valve casing of motor (1), and valve plate (20).

The high hydraulic is built as flowing on one side of Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of piston (12).

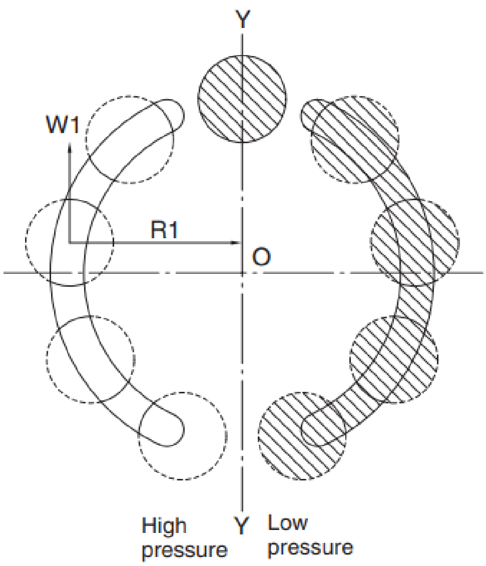
The high hydraulic can generate the force, F1=P×A (P : supplied pressure, A : water pressure area), like following pictures, working on a piston.

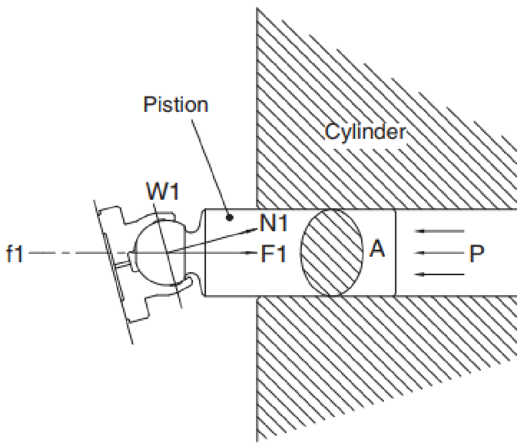
This force, F1, is divided as N1 thrust partial pressure and W1 radial partial pressure, in case of the plate of a tilt angle.

W1 generates torque, T=W1×R1, for Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of the piston as following pictures.

The sum of torque (ΣW1×R1), generated from each piston (4~5 pieces) on the side of a high hydraulic, generates the turning force.

This torque transfers the turning force to a cylinder (8) through a piston; because a cylinder is combined with a turning axis and spline, a turning axis rotates and a turning force is sent.





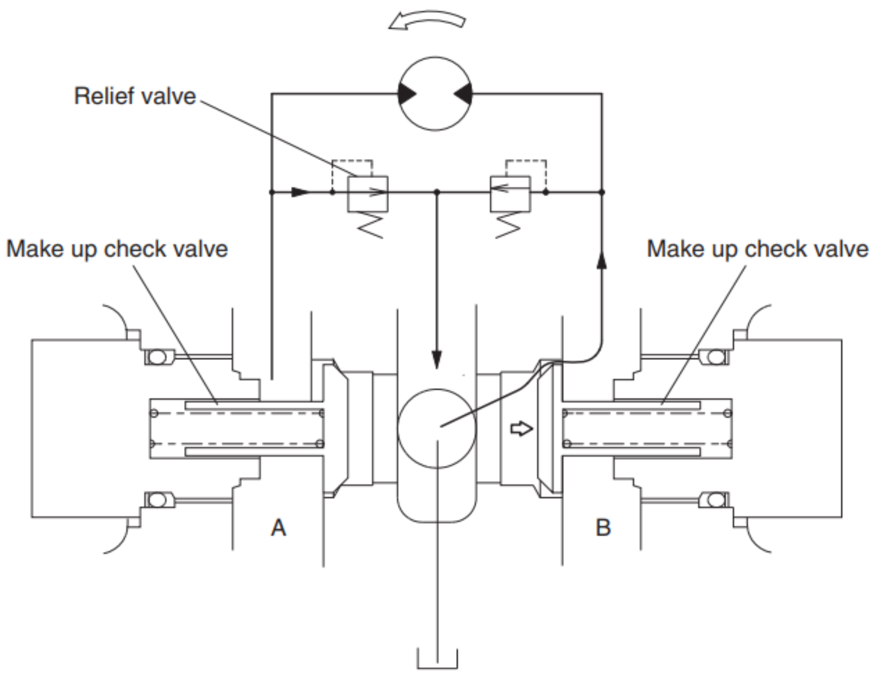
2) MAKE UP VALVE

In the system using this type of motor, there is no counter balance functioning valve and there happens the case of revolution exceeding hydraulic supply of motor. To prevent the cavitation caused by insufficient oil flow there is a make up valve to fill up the oil insufficiency.

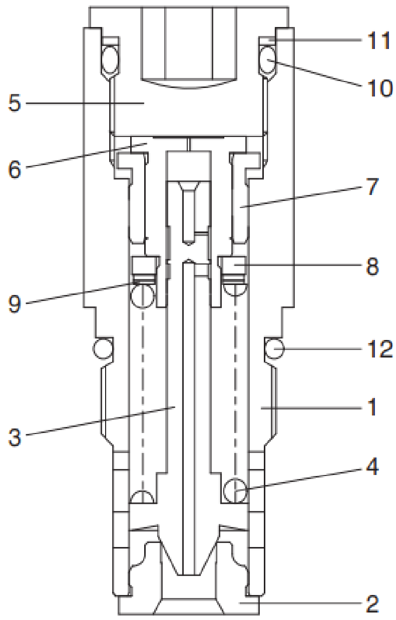
A make up valve is provided immediately before the port leading to the hydraulic oil tank to secure feed pressure required when the hydraulic motor makes a pumping action. The boost pressure acts on the hydraulic motor's feed port via the make up valve.

Pressurized oil into the port B, the motor rotate counterclockwise.

If the plunger of MCV moves neutral position, the oil in the motor is drain via left relief valve, the drain oil run into motor via right make up valve, which prevent the cavitation of motor



3) RELIEF VALVE



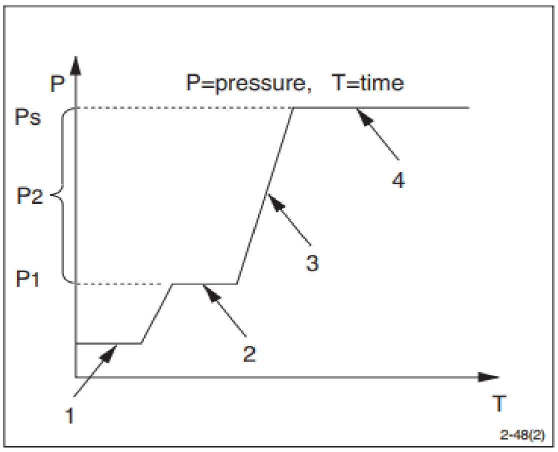
1 Body
2 Seat
3 Plunger
4 Spring
5 Adjusting screw
6 Piston
7 Bushing
8 Spring seat
9 Shim
10 O-ring
11 Back up ring
12 O-ring

(1) Construction of relief valve

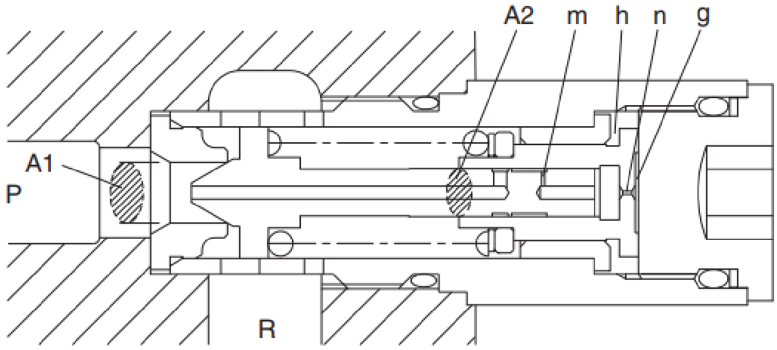
The valve casing contains two cartridge type relief valves that stop the regular and reverse rotations of the hydraulic motor. The relief valves relieve high pressure at start or at stop of swing motion and can control the relief pressure in two steps, high and low, in order to insure smooth operation.

(2) Function of relief valve

Figure illustrates how the pressure acting on the relief valve is related to its rising process. Here is given the function, referring to the figure following page



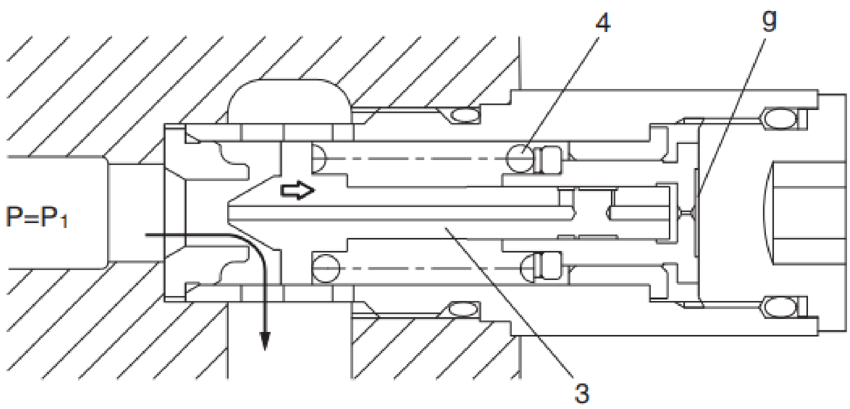
① Ports (P,R) at tank pressure



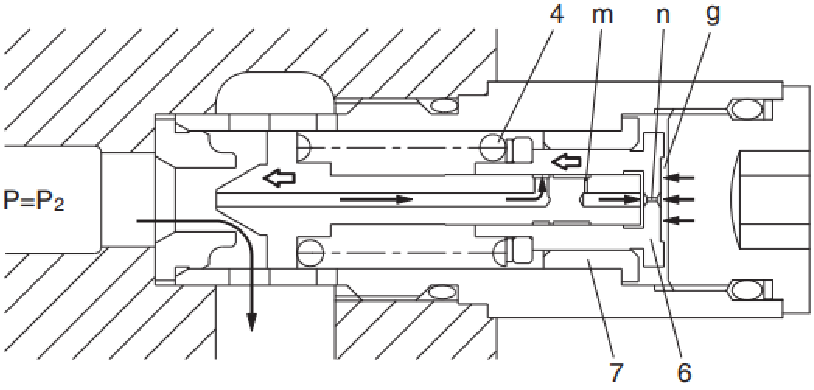
② When hydraulic oil pressure (P×A1) reaches the preset force (FSP) of spring (4), the plunger (3) moves to the right as shown.

$$P1 \times A1 = Fsp + Pg \times A2$$

$$P1 = \frac{Fsp + Pg \times A2}{A1}$$



③ The oil flow chamber g via orifice m and n. When the pressure of chamber g reaches the preset force (FSP) of spring (4), the piston (6) moves left and stop the piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7)



④ When piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7), it stops moving to the left any further. As the result, the pressure in chamber (g) equals (Ps).

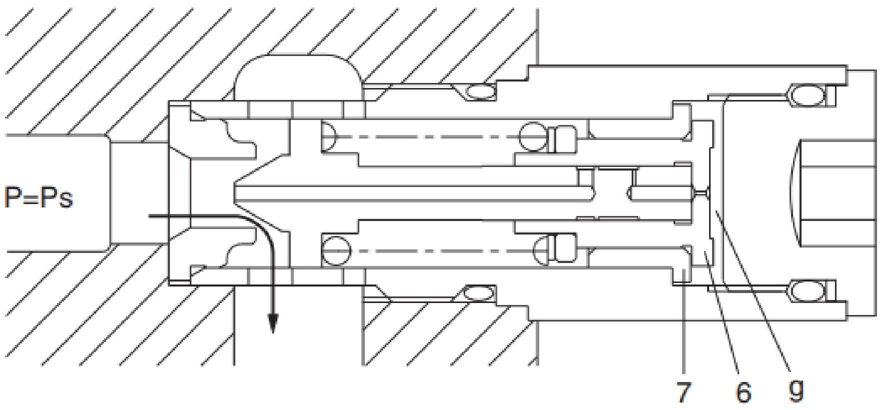
Ps×A1=Fsp+Ps×A2

Fsp+Pg×A2

P1=——————

A1-A2

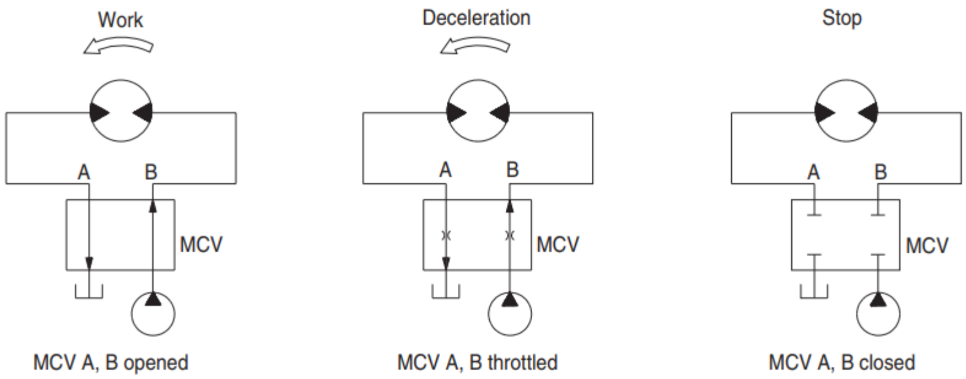
A1



3) BRAKE SYSTEM

(1) Control valve swing brake system

This is the brake system to stop the swing motion of the excavator during operation.
In this system, the hydraulic circuit is throttled by the swing control valve, and the resistance created by this throttling works as a brake force to slow down the swing motion.

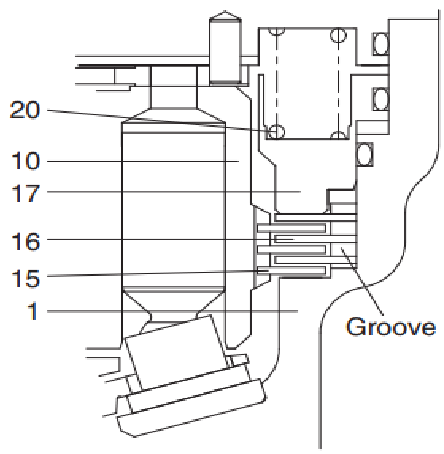


(2) Mechanical swing parking brake system

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

① Brake assembly

Circumferential rotation of separate plate (16) is constrained by the groove located at housing (1). When housing is pressed down by brake spring (20) through friction plate (15), separate plate (16) and brake piston (17), friction force occurs there.
Cylinder block (10) is constrained by this friction force and brake acts, while brake releases when hydraulic force exceeds spring force.
Thus, it swings as the bypass orifice and the path are blocked up.

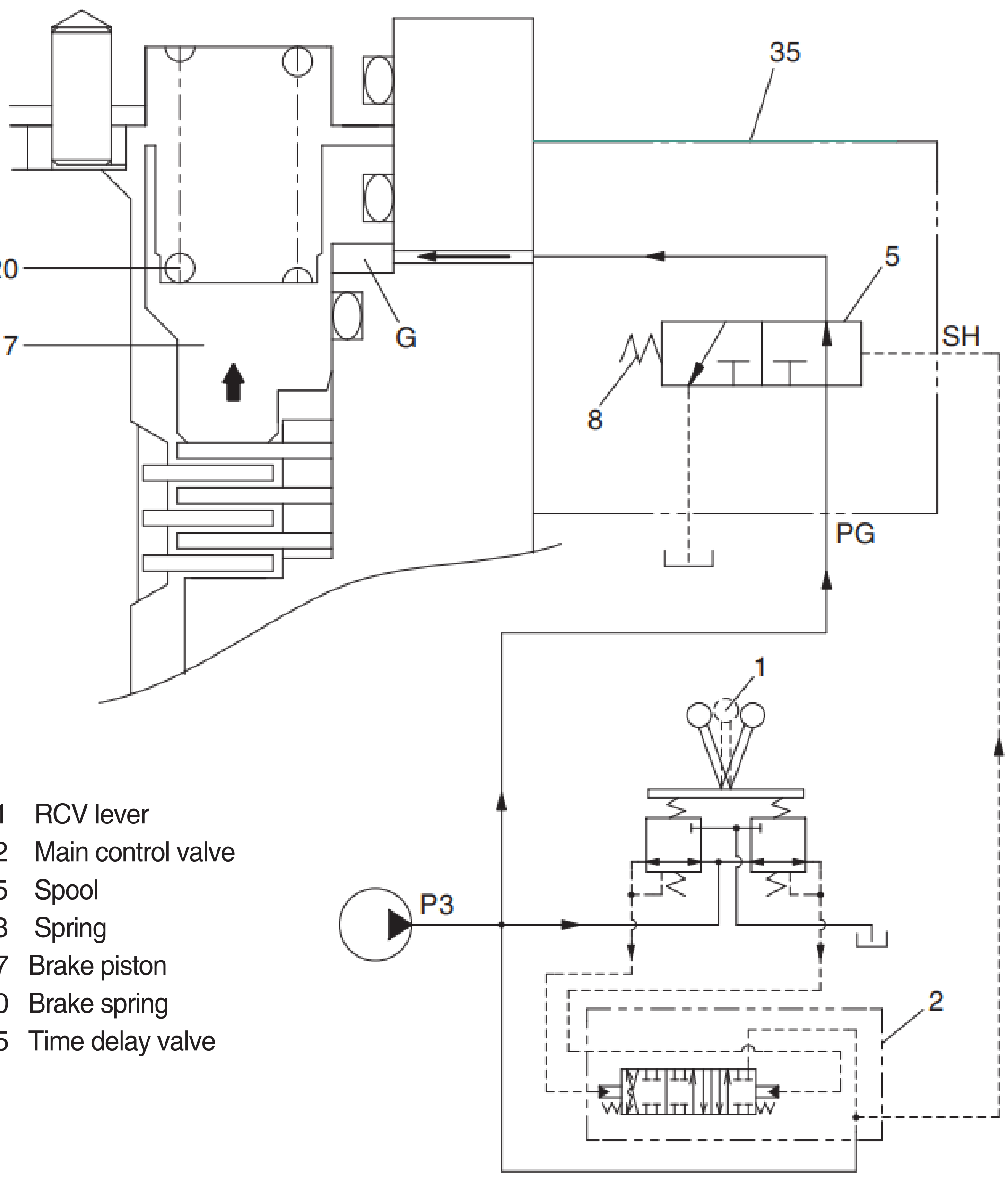


1	Housing	16	Separate plate
10	Cylinder block	17	Brake piston
15	Friction plate	20	Spring

① **Operating principle**

When one of the RCV lever (1) is set to the operation position, the each spool is shifted to left or right and the pilot oil flow is blocked. Then the pilot oil go to SH of the time delay valve (35). This pressure moves spool (5) to the leftward against the force of the spring(8), so pilot pump charged oil (P3) goes to the chamber G through port PG.

This pressure is applied to move the piston (17) to the upward against the force of the spring (20). Thus, it releases the brake force.



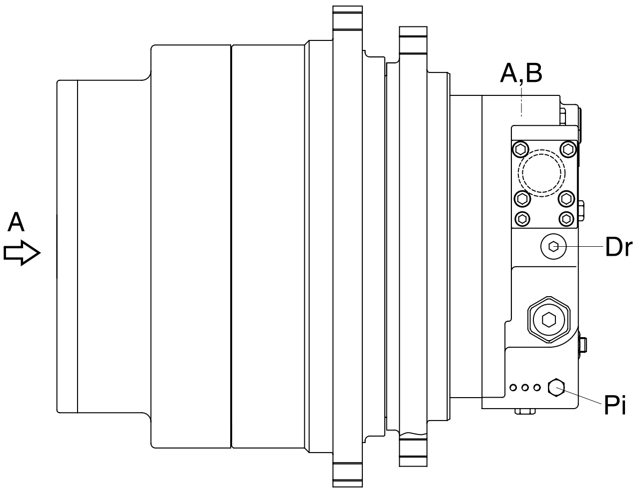
1 RCV lever
2 Main control valve
5 Spool
8 Spring
17 Brake piston
20 Brake spring
35 Time delay valve

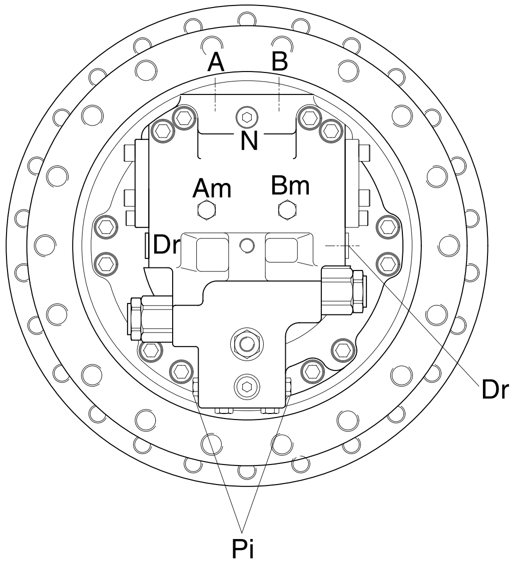
GROUP 4 TRAVEL DEVICE

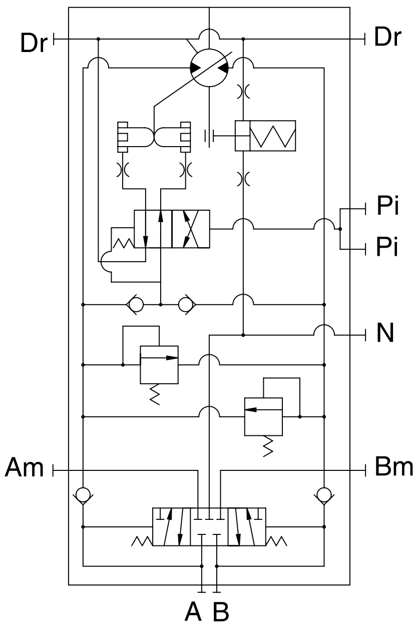
1. CONSTRUCTION

Travel device consists travel motor and gear box.

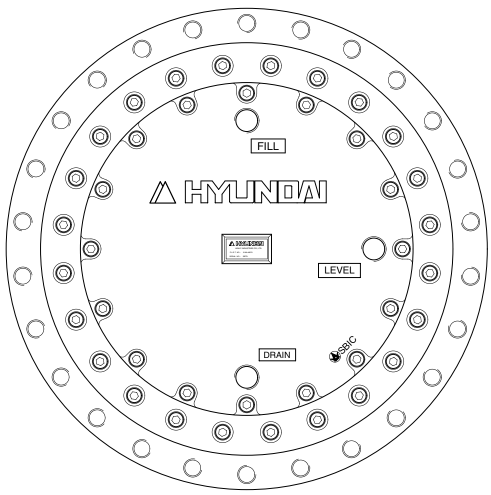
Travel motor includes brake valve, parking brake and high/low speed changeover mechanism.







Hydraulic circuit

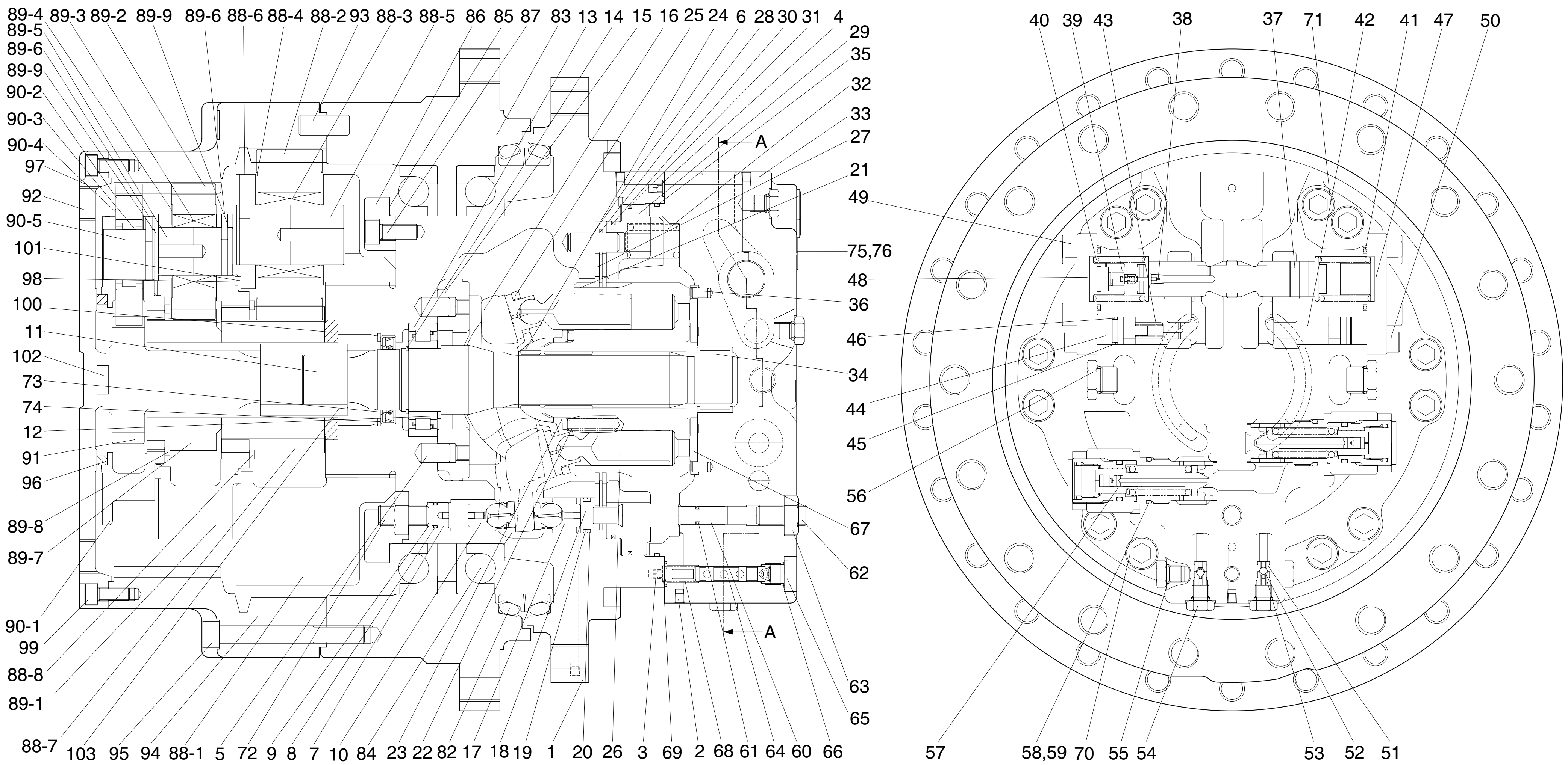


VIEW A

Port	Port name	Port size
A, B	Valve port	PF 1
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4
Dr	Drain port	PF 1/2
Am, Bm	Gage port	PF 1/4
N	Parking release port	PF 1/4

2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR



SECTION A-A

1	Casing	16	Plate	31	Ring	46	Back up ring	61	O-ring	83	Housing	89-1	Carrier No.2	91	Sun gear No.1
2	Plug	17	Piston	32	Spring	47	Cap	62	Lock screw	84	Bearing	89-2	Planetary gear No.2	92	Plug
3	Screw	18	Stopper	33	Valve casing	48	Cap	63	Nut	85	Shim	89-3	Needle No.2	93	Lock pin
4	Screw	19	O-ring	34	Needle bearing	49	Bolt	64	Spool	86	Retainer	89-4	Thrust washer No.2	94	Ring gear
5	Pin	20	Back up ring	35	O-ring	50	Socket bolt	65	Plug	87	Bolt	89-5	Pin No.2	95	Bolt
6	Pin	21	Cylinder block	36	Pin	51	Seat	66	O-ring	88	Carrier No.3	89-6	Spring pin No.2	96	Thrust ring No.1
7	Stopper	22	Cylinder spring	37	Spool	52	Steel ball	67	Valve plate	88-1	Carrier No.3	89-7	Sun gear No.2	97	Cover
8	O-ring	23	Spacer	38	Screw	53	Stopper	68	Spring	88-2	Planetary gear No.3	89-8	Snap ring No.2	98	Thrust ring No.2
9	Back up ring	24	Guide	39	Damping check	54	Plug	69	O-ring	88-3	Needle No.3	89-9	Spring pin No.2	99	Bolt
10	Piston	25	Plate	40	Spring	55	O-ring	70	Socket bolt	88-4	Thrust washer No.3	90	Carrier No.1	100	Motor ring
11	Shaft	26	Piston & Shoe assy	41	O-ring	56	Plug	71	Socket bolt	88-5	Pin No.3	90-1	Carrier No.1	101	Thrust ring No.3
12	Spacer	27	Plate	42	Plunger	57	Relief valve	72	Lock screw	88-6	Spring pin No.3	90-2	Planetary gear No.1	102	Pad
13	Roller bearing	28	Plate	43	Spring	58	O-ring	73	Oil seal	88-7	Sun gear No.3	90-3	Needle bearing No.1	103	Coupling
14	Stop ring	29	Brake	44	Stopper	59	Back up ring	74	Lock ring	88-8	Snap ring No.3	90-4	Thrust washer No.1		
15	Support	30	Ring	45	O-ring	60	Rod	82	Floating Seal	89	Carrier No.2	90-5	Pin No.1		

3. PRINCIPLE OF DRIVING

1) WORKING OF ROTARY GROUP

The high pressurized hydraulic oil which is supplied from a hydraulic pump is flows into a cylinder (21) through the valve casing (33) of motor, and valve plate (67).

The rotary group has a construction that the above high pressurized hydraulic oil is flow only one side of the line Y-Y which connect the upper and lower dead point of the piston (26).

This high pressurized hydraulic oil works on the piston and generating the force F1, F1 = P * A (P : supplied pressure, A : pressure receving area), like following pictures.

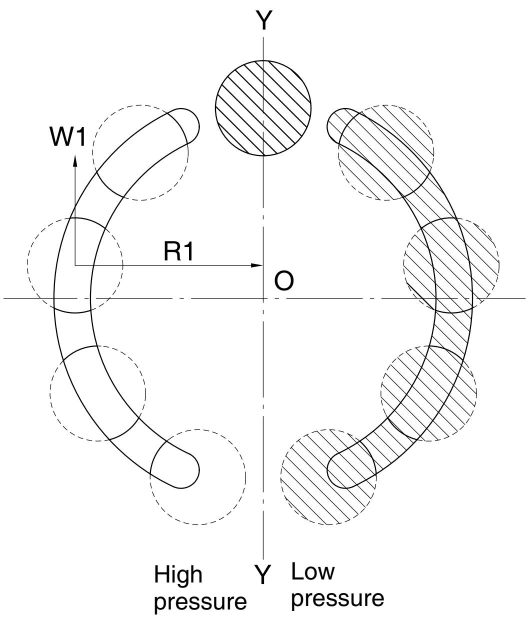
This force, F1, is devided by the swash plate (16) having a tilting angle into the thrust component N1 and radial component W1.

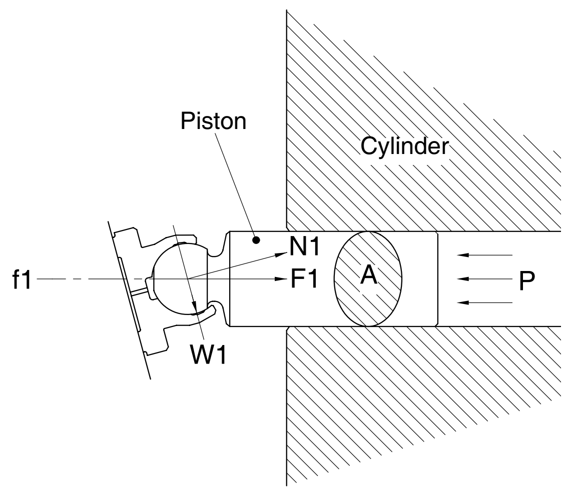
The W1 generates torque, T = W1 * R1, in respect to the line Y-Y.

This torque generated by each piston on the high pressurized hydraulic oil side is summed up onto a resultant torque (W1 * R1), which prodeces torque for rotation.

This torque transfers the rotation force to the cylinder (21) through the pistons.

Since the cylinder block is spline-coupled with the shaft, the rotation force is transmitted to the shaft accordingly.





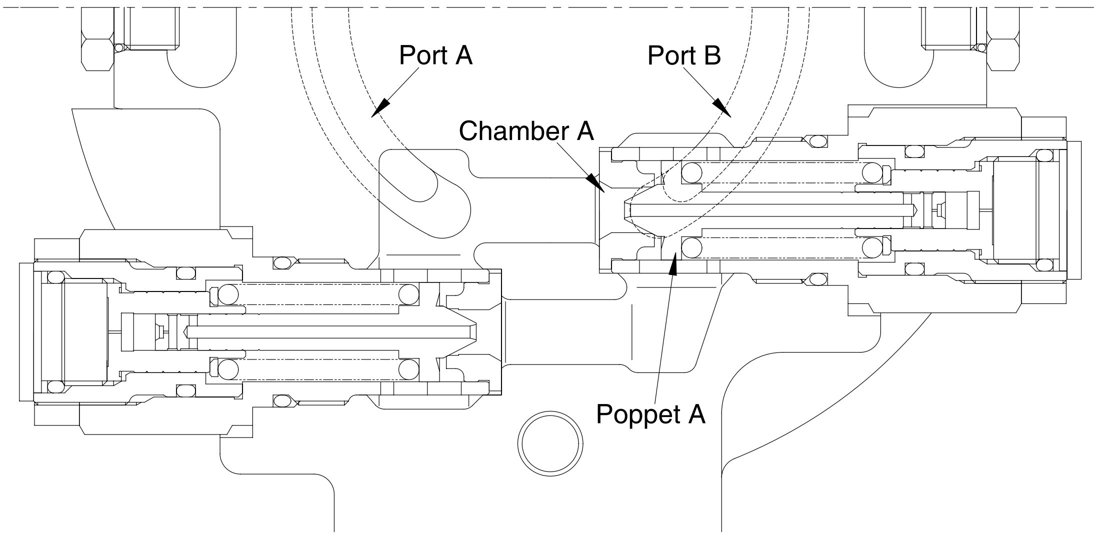
2) WORKING OF RELIEF VALVE

Relief valve carries on two function of following.

(1) Relief valve is to keep the starting pressure of the hydraulic motor at a constant value and bypass to the return line excessive oil generated at the motor inlet depending upon the acceleration speed of the inertia object.

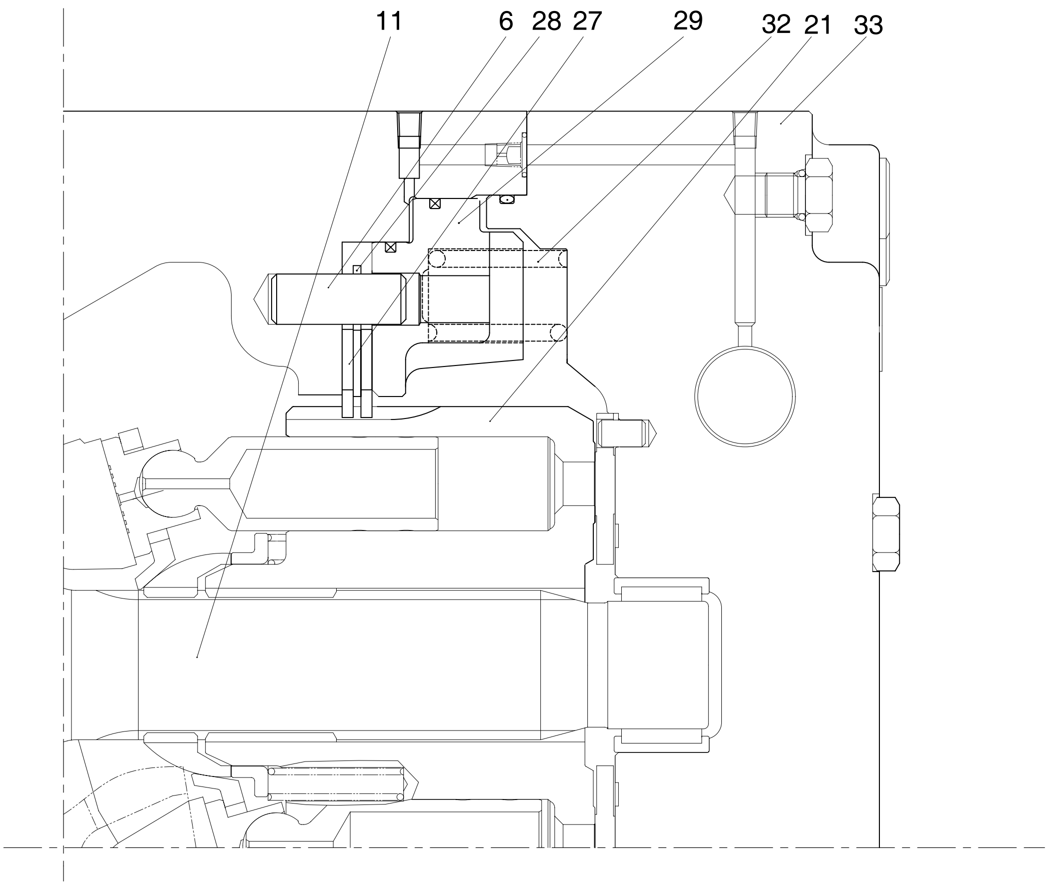
(2) In case of an inertia object stopped, relief valve is generating a break pressure at the outlet and stop it forcedly.

The chamber A is always connect with port A of a motor. When the pressure at port A increase and the force pushing poppet A is higher than the pressure of the spring, then poppet A is pushed up from the contact surface of seat A, and oil flows from chamber A to port B.



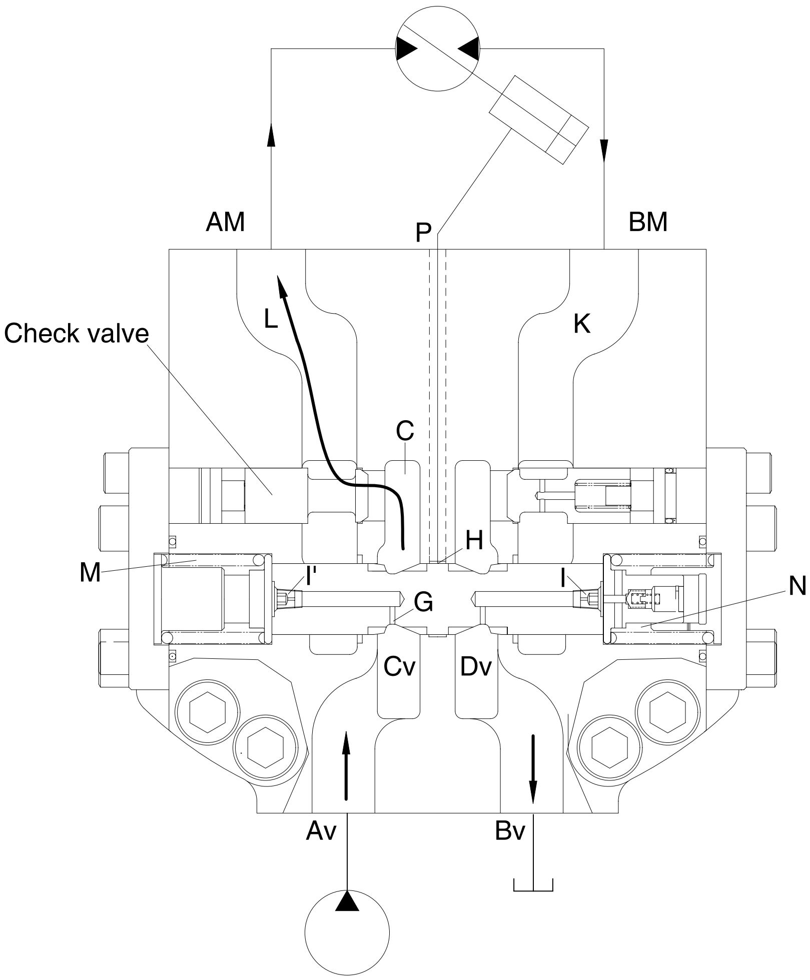
3) WORKING OF NEGATIVE BRAKE

The negative brake is released applying to the brake piston (29) the pressure led through built in the valve casing (33) spool. With no pressure working, the brake force is always ensured.
The brake force is generated by the frictional force among a plate (28) fixed by pin (6) and shaft casing, brake piston (29) and a frictional plate (27) connected through spline outside the cylinder block (21).
Without pressure being applied to the brake piston, the brake piston is pushed by ten brake springs (32) and the friction plate and separator plate are held between the brake piston and casing. This friction force restrains the shaft (11) spline-coupled with the cylinder block, and thus functions the brake.



4) COUNTERBALANCE VALVE

Av port is connected to a hydraulic pump : Bv port is connected to a tank.
The oil supplied from the hydraulic pump passed through Av → Cv → C sequence, pushed up the poppet of the check valve, passed through L to port AM, and is supplied to the hydraulic motor to turn it. But the brake is operated. Therefore, the pump discharge oil pressure is increases. And the pressure is led via passage G to spring room M. When the pressure in room M exceed the value equivalent to the force of the spring which holds the spool at its neutral position, the spool begins to move right.
The oil in room N is sent to room Dv by orifice I and discharged from Bv port to a tank. So spool moves to the right. The oil flows as the way of K → Dv → Bv sequence. Also according to the oil path as composed way Cv → H → P sequence, the pressure of Av pump is provided to the port P. An working oil in room N is discharged through orifice and a gap. Therefore the switching operation of spool is driving slowly.
When the pump discharge pressure fall, spool moves to the left side by a spring at the side of room N. Also spool moves to the left, the hydraulic oil in room M is sent to Cv room through orifice I' and discharged to the Av port.
When the pressure at port Av fall down to the tank pressure, the pressure of room M is as the same as that the tank pressure and becomes equal to that in room N, and so the spool returns to its neutral position.

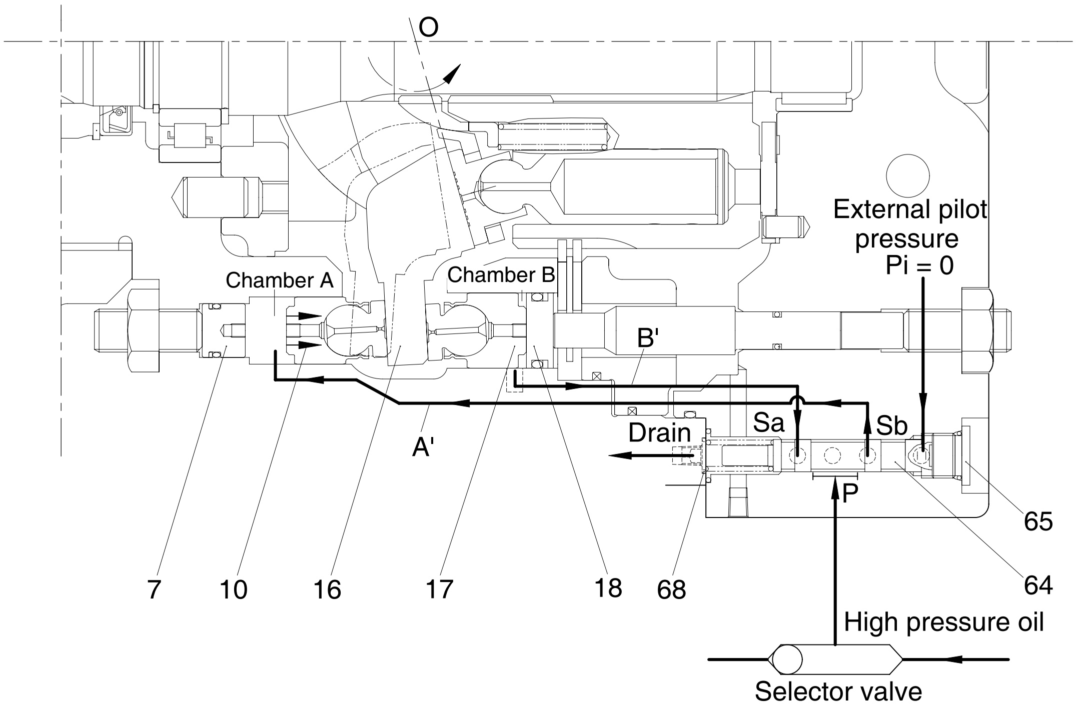


5) WORKING OF DISPLACEMENT CHANGEOVER

The capacity of the travel motor is changed by changing the tilting angle of this swash plate (16).
The tilting angle changes by displacement changeover valve.

(1) External pilot pressure : Pi = 0 (large displacement)

By means of the built-in high pressure selector mechanism in the valve casing (33), the high pressure oil working on the motor function to port P of the displacement-changeover valve.
A the spool (64) assembled in the displacement changeover valve is pressed to plug (65) by the spring (68), the high pressure oil at port P flows to port Sb.
This high pressure oil flows through oil passage (passage A') of valve casing (33) and shaft casing works to chamber A.
This oil in chamber B flows through passage B' and port Sa into the drain line. The displacement changeover piston (17) is pushed right and the swash plate (16) moves in the arrowed direction around rotation center 'O'. The swash plate moves until it touched stopper (18), and then is fixed there.



(2) External pilot pressure : Pi ≥ 20kgf/cm^2 (small displacement)

If the force operating on spool (64) of the displacement changeover valve is stronger than the spring (68), and the spool moves to the left side.

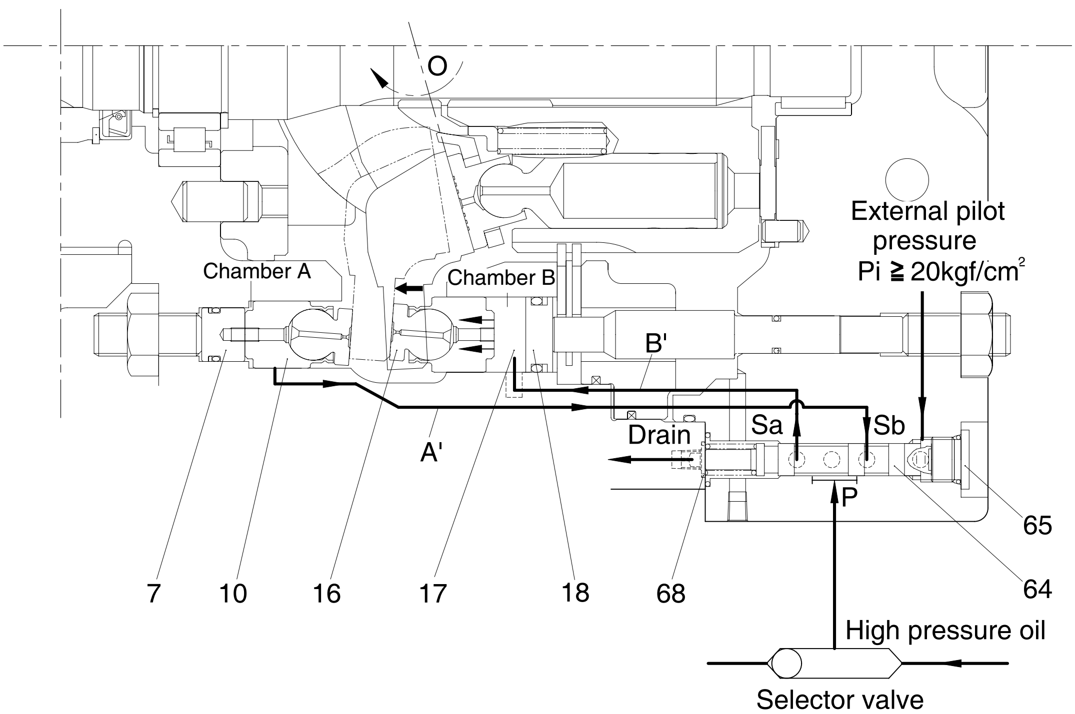
The high pressure oil is works on room B through passage Sa → B' from port P.

The oil in chamber A flows into the drain line through the passage A' → Sb.

The displacement changeover piston (17) is pushed left and the swash plate (16) moves in the arrowed direction around rotation center 'O'. The swash plate moves until it touches stopper (7), and then is fixed there.

If the load increase while the motor is working with its small displacement (Pi ≥ 20kgf/cm^2, 2nd speed) until the motor inlet port pressure reaches the preset value, the motor increase its displacement in response to the load, while maintaining the pressure at the preset value (automatic 2 -speed function). As motor inlet port pressure reaches the preset value and then spool (64) moves right side, inlet pressure oil flows into chamber A through port Sb and the swash plate moves until it touches stopper (17). If the load further increase until the displacement of the motor reaches the maximum value, the inlet port pressure increase further.

If the load decreases under this condition, the motor continues reducing its displacement in the reverse sequence. As the load and inlet port pressure decreases and reaches the preset value, spool (64) moves left side by the pilot pressure (Pi). Therefore inlet port pressure flow into chamber B through port Sa and the swash plate moves until it touches stopper (10).



6) REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Planetary gear mechanism

Reduction unit slows down the rotating speed of motor and converts motor torque to strong rotating force.

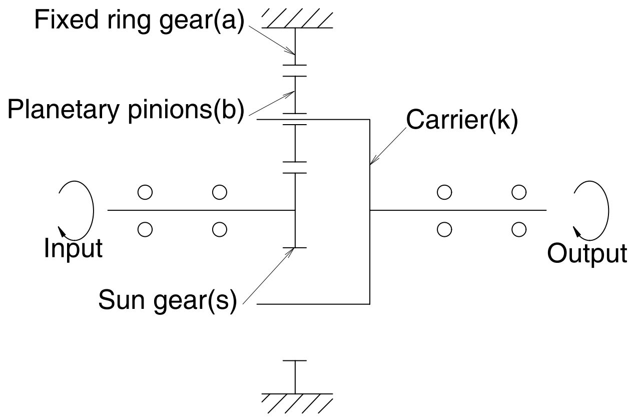
This reduction unit utilizes two stages, planetary reduction system.

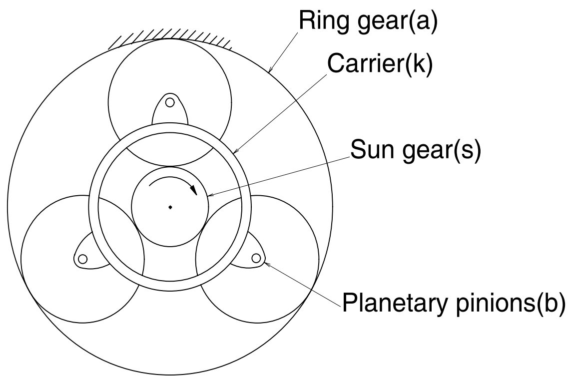
Planetary reduction system consists of sun gear, planetary gears, carriers and ring gear.

When the sun gear (s) is driven through input shaft, planetary pinions (b), rotating on their center, also move, meshing with fixed ring gear (a), around sun gears (s).

This movement is transferred to carrier (k) and deliver the torque.

This mechanism is called planetary gear mechanism.

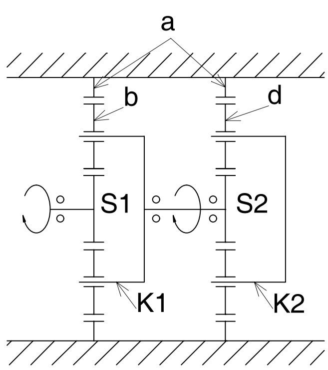




(2) Two stages reduction gear

When the sun gear S1 is driven by input shaft, planetary action occurs among gears S1, a and b and revolution of gear b transfers the rotation of carrier K1 to second sun gear S2, and also evokes planetary action between gear S2, a and d.

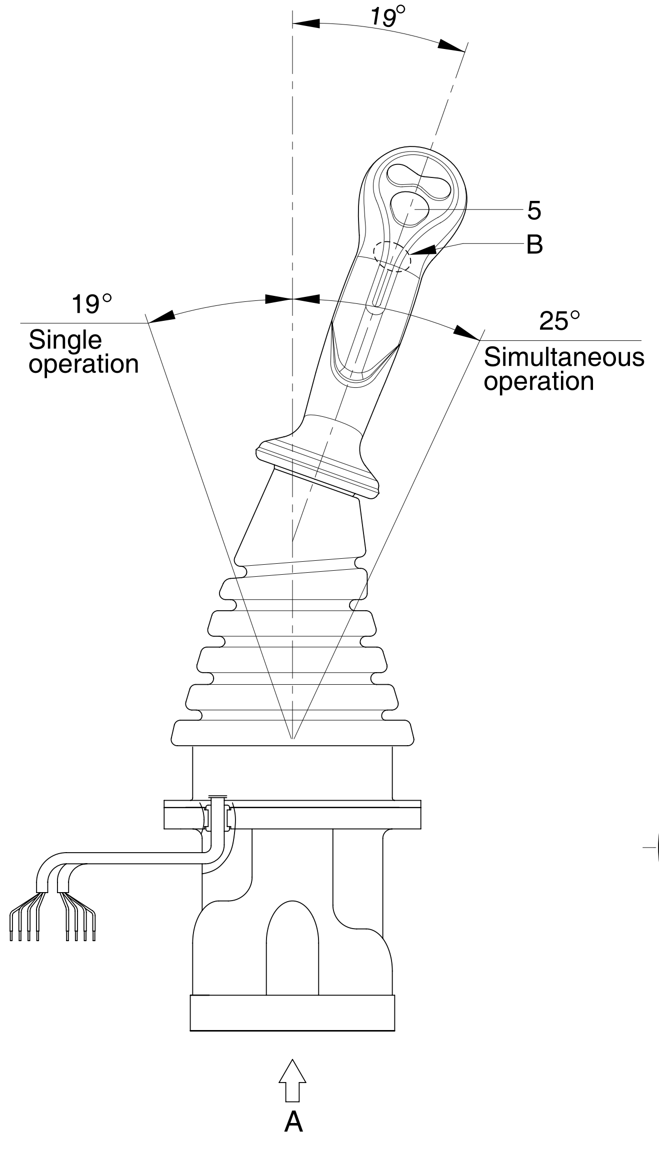
This time, because carrier K2 is fixed to frame, gear d drives ring gear a and then ring gear a rotates to drive sprocket.



GROUP 5 RCV LEVER

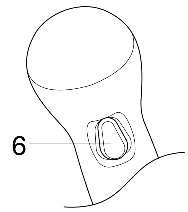
1. STRUCTURE

The casing has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure) and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.

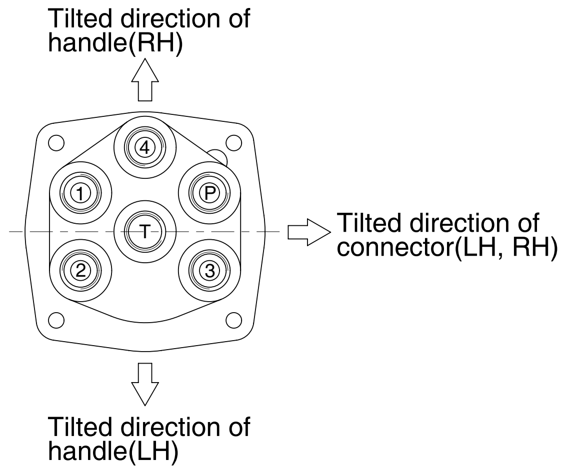


Switches

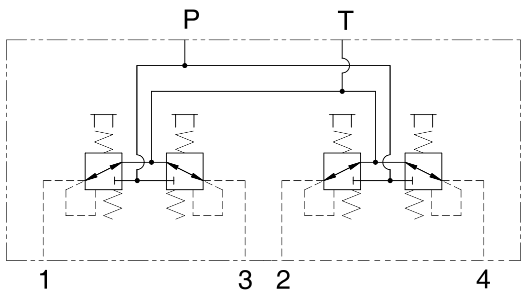
No.	LH	RH
5	One touch decel	Horn
6	Power boost	Breaker



DETAIL B



VIEW A



Hydraulic circuit

Port	LH	RH	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 3/8
T	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	
2	Arm in port	Boom down port	
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm out port	Boom up port	

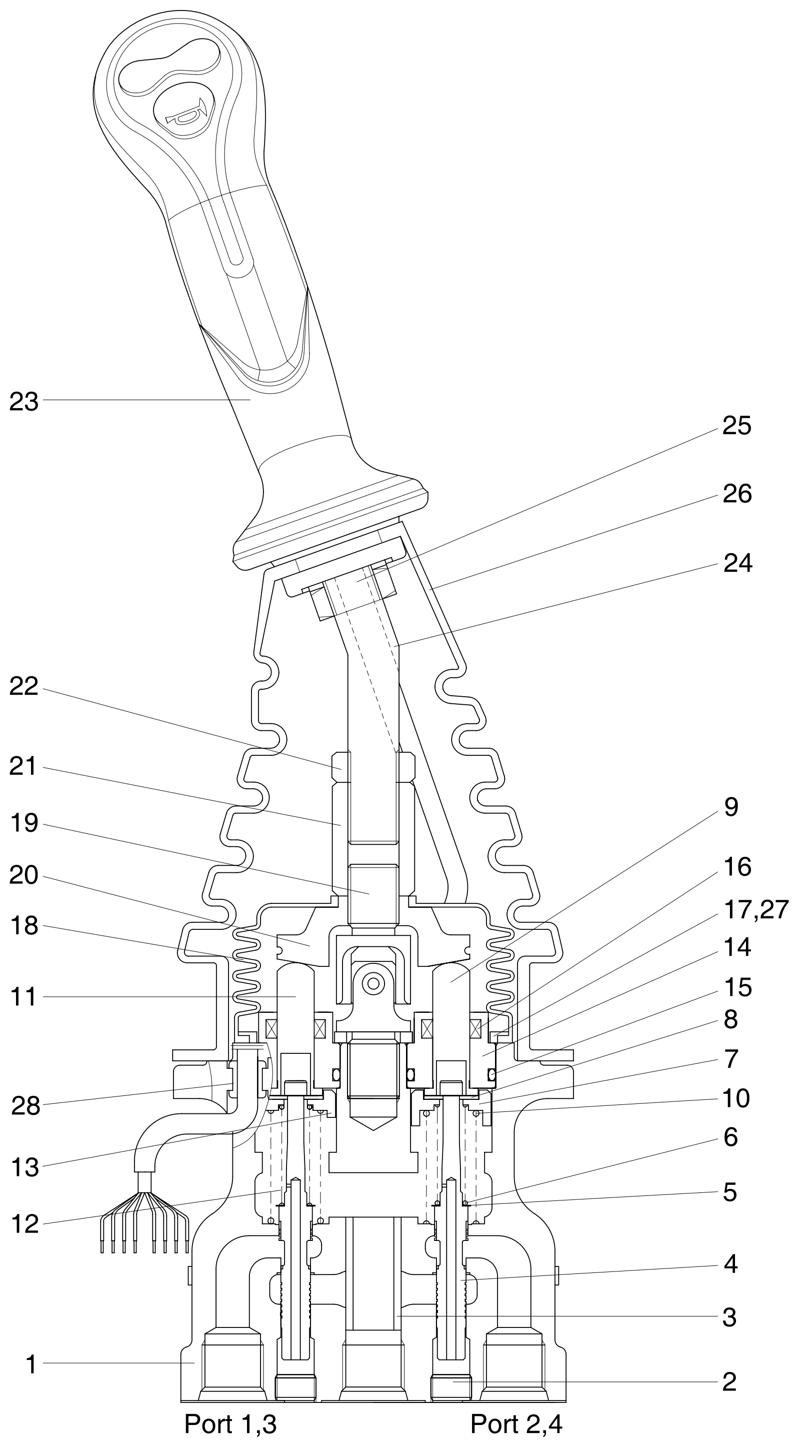
CROSS SECTION

The construction of the pilot valve is shown in the attached cross section drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (4), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (8), spring seat (7, 13) and shim (5). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 20.5 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (9, 11) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting the handle, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.

CROSS SECTION



1	Case	8	Stopper	15	O-ring	22	Lock nut
2	Plug	9	Push rod	16	Rod seal	23	Handle assembly
3	Bushing	10	Spring	17	Plate	24	Handle bar
4	Spool	11	Push rod	18	Boot	25	Nut
5	Shim	12	Spring	19	Joint assembly	26	Boot
6	Spring	13	Spring seat	20	Swash plate	27	Spring pin
7	Spring seat	14	Plug	21	Adjusting nut	28	Bushing

2. FUNCTIONS

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve that controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output ports (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port or tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (4) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output port pressure oil to tank port T.

The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (9,11) is inserted and can slide in the plug (14).

For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the swash plate (20) and adjusting nut (21) are provided the handle (23) that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the universal joint (19) center.

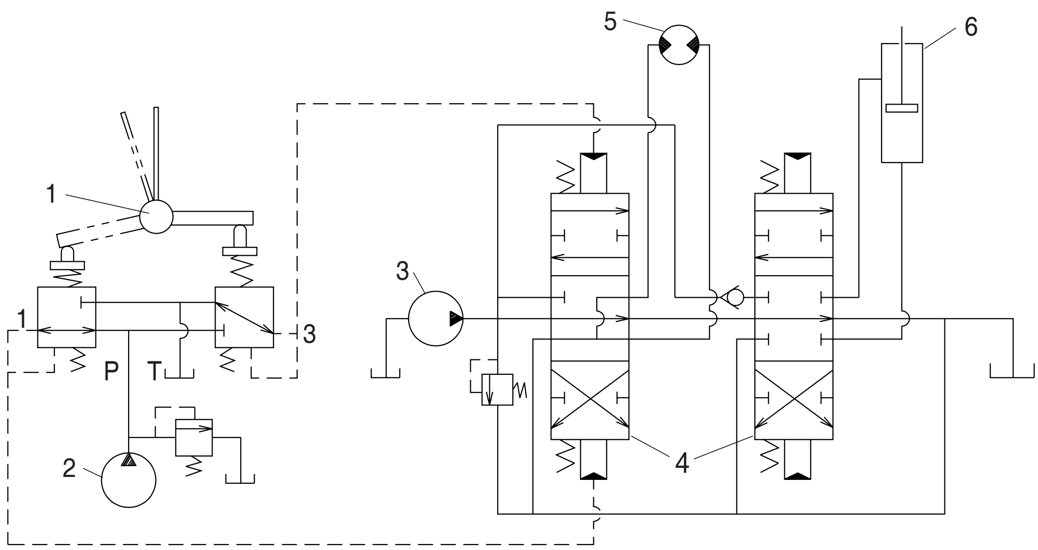
The spring (10) works on the case (1) and spring seat (7, 13) and tries to return the push rod (9,11) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

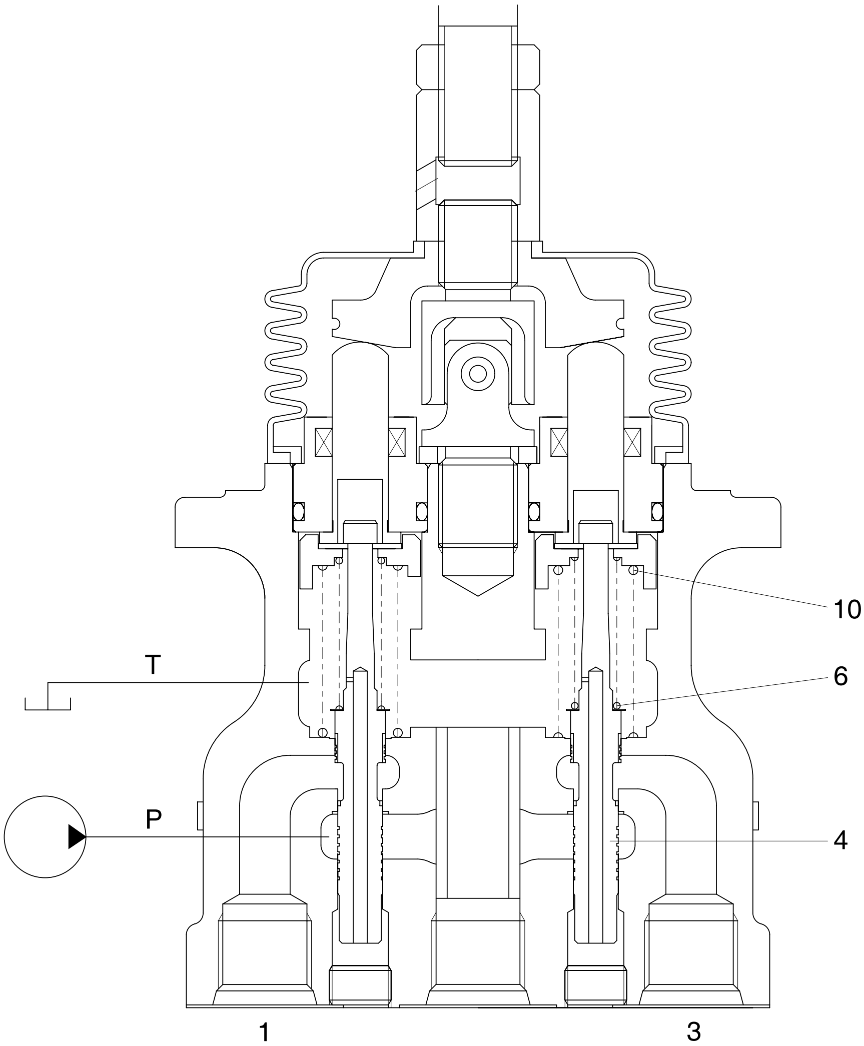
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below and the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



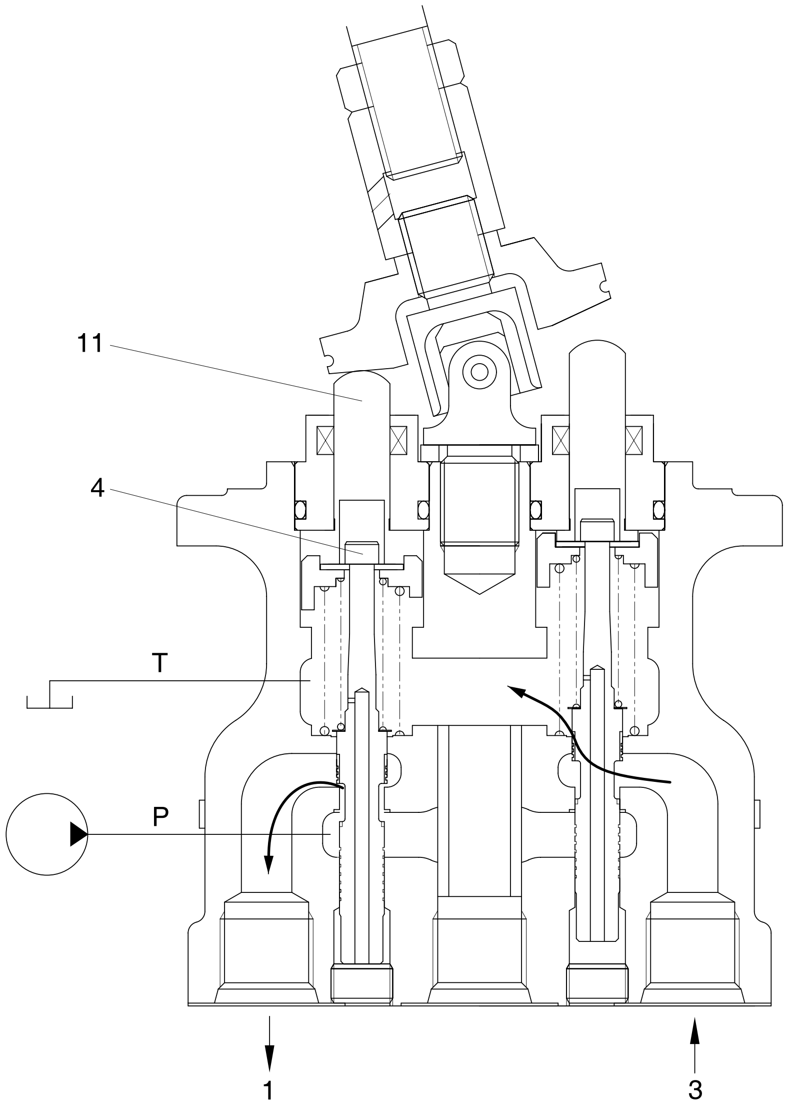
1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

(1) Case where handle is in neutral position



The force of the spring (6) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (4). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (10) to the position of port (1, 3) in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where handle is tilted



When the push rod (11) is stroked, the spool (4) moves downwards.

Then port P is connected with port (1) and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port (1) to generate the pressure.

When the pressure at port (1) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (1). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (1) and port T is disconnected from port 1.

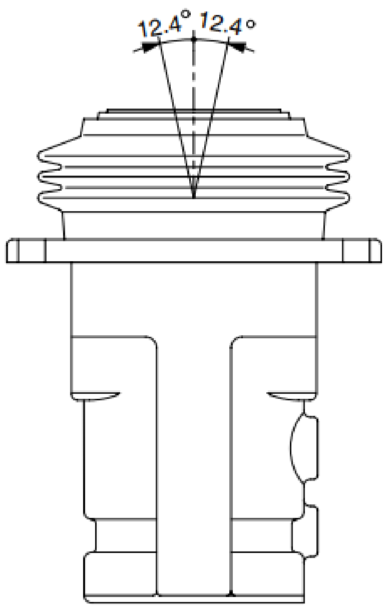
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.

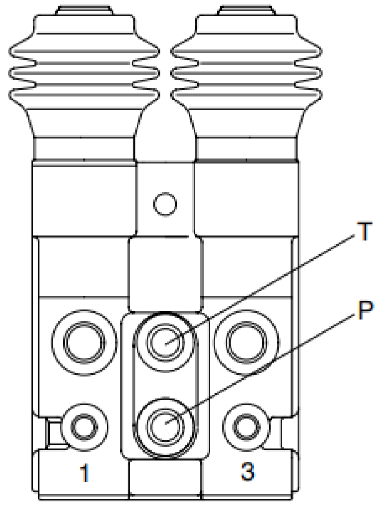
Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with the inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

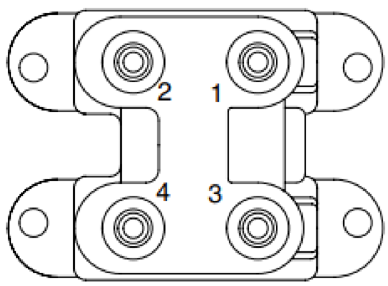
GROUP 6 RCV PEDAL

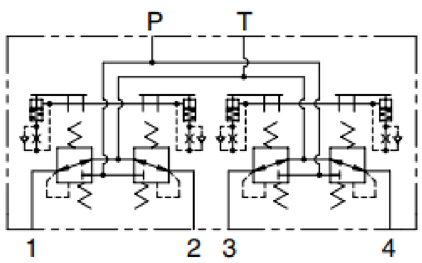
1. STRUCTURE

The casing (spacer) has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure), and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.









Hydraulic circuit

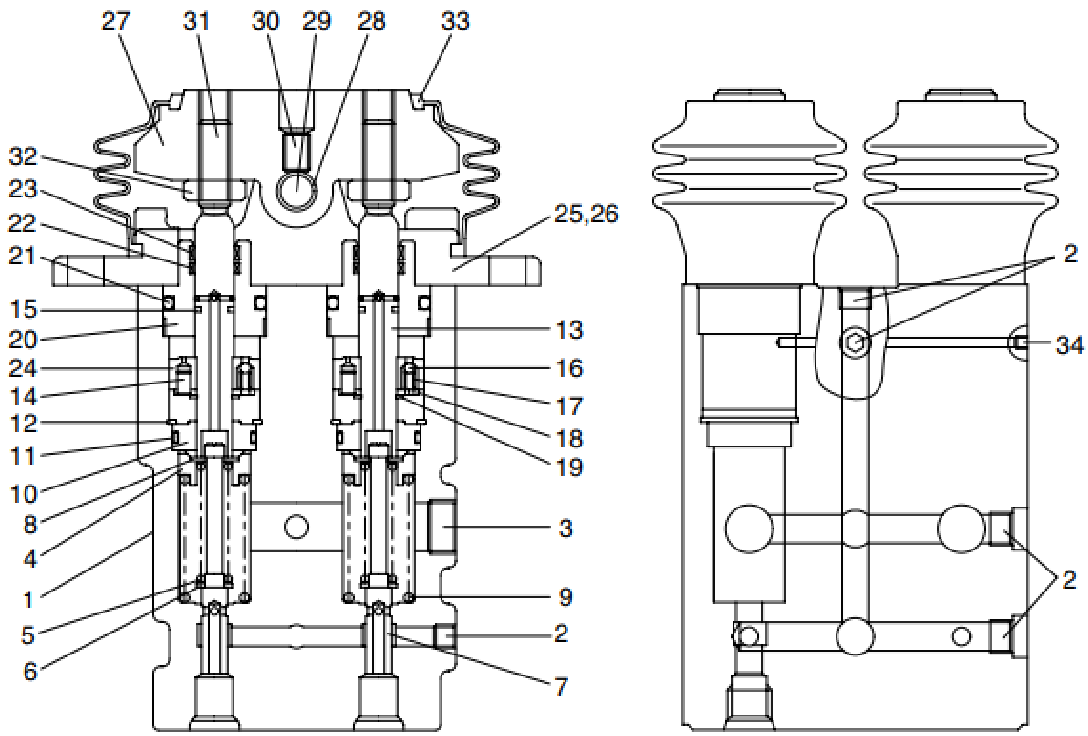
Port	Port	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 1/4
T	Pilot oil return port	
1	Travel (LH, Forward)	
2	Travel (LH, Backward)	
3	Travel (RH, Forward)	
4	Travel (RH, Backward)	

CROSS SECTION

The construction of the RCV pedal is shown in the below drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (8), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (9), and spring seat (7). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 19 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (14) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting pedal, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.



1	Body	13	Push rod	25	Cover
2	Plug	14	Spring pin	26	Wrench bolt
3	Plug	15	Seal	27	Cam
4	Spring seat	16	Steel ball	28	Bushing
5	Spring	17	Spring	29	Cam shaft
6	Spring seat	18	Plate	30	Set screw
7	Spool	19	Snap ring	31	Set screw
8	Stopper	20	Plug	32	Hex nut
9	Spring	21	O-ring	33	Bellows
10	Rod guide	22	Rod seal	34	Expand
11	O-ring	23	Dust seal	35	Name plate
12	Snap ring	24	Piston		

2. FUNCTION

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output port (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (8) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output spool to determine the output pressure.

The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (14) is inserted and can slide in the plug (21).

For the purpose of changing th displacement of the push rod through the cam (27) and adjusting nut (32) are provided the pedal that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the cam (27) center.

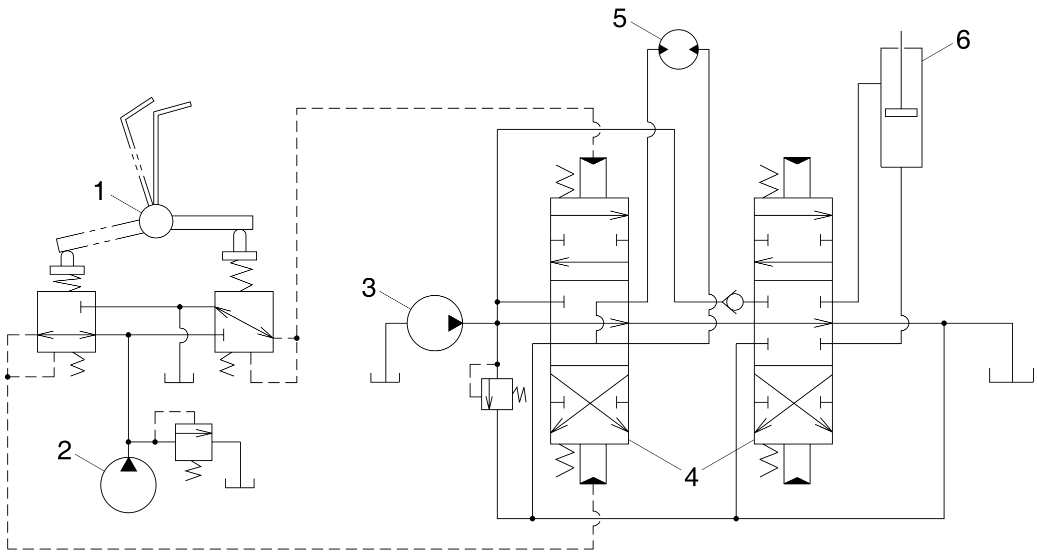
The spring (10) works on the casing (1) and spring seat (7) and tries to return the push rod (14) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

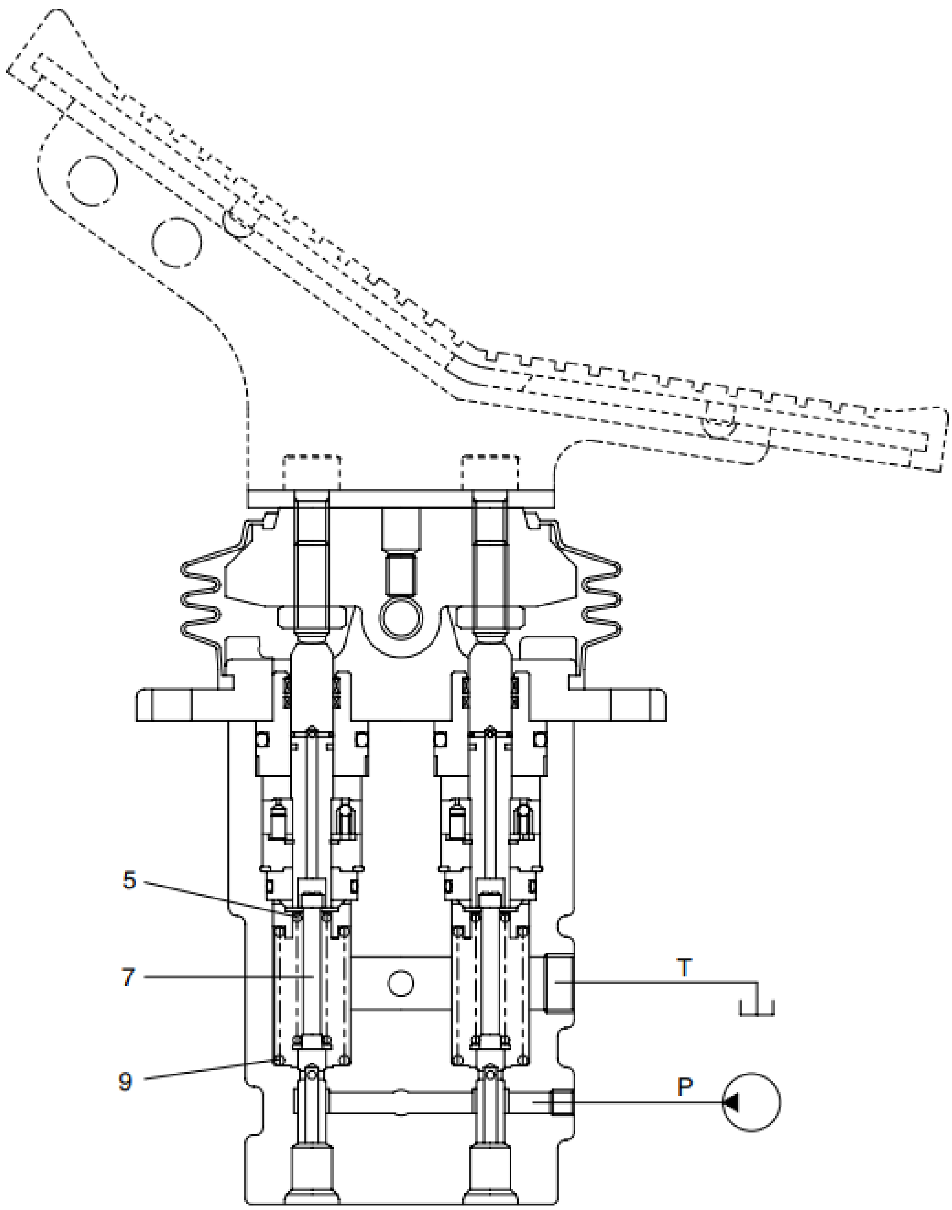
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below ant the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



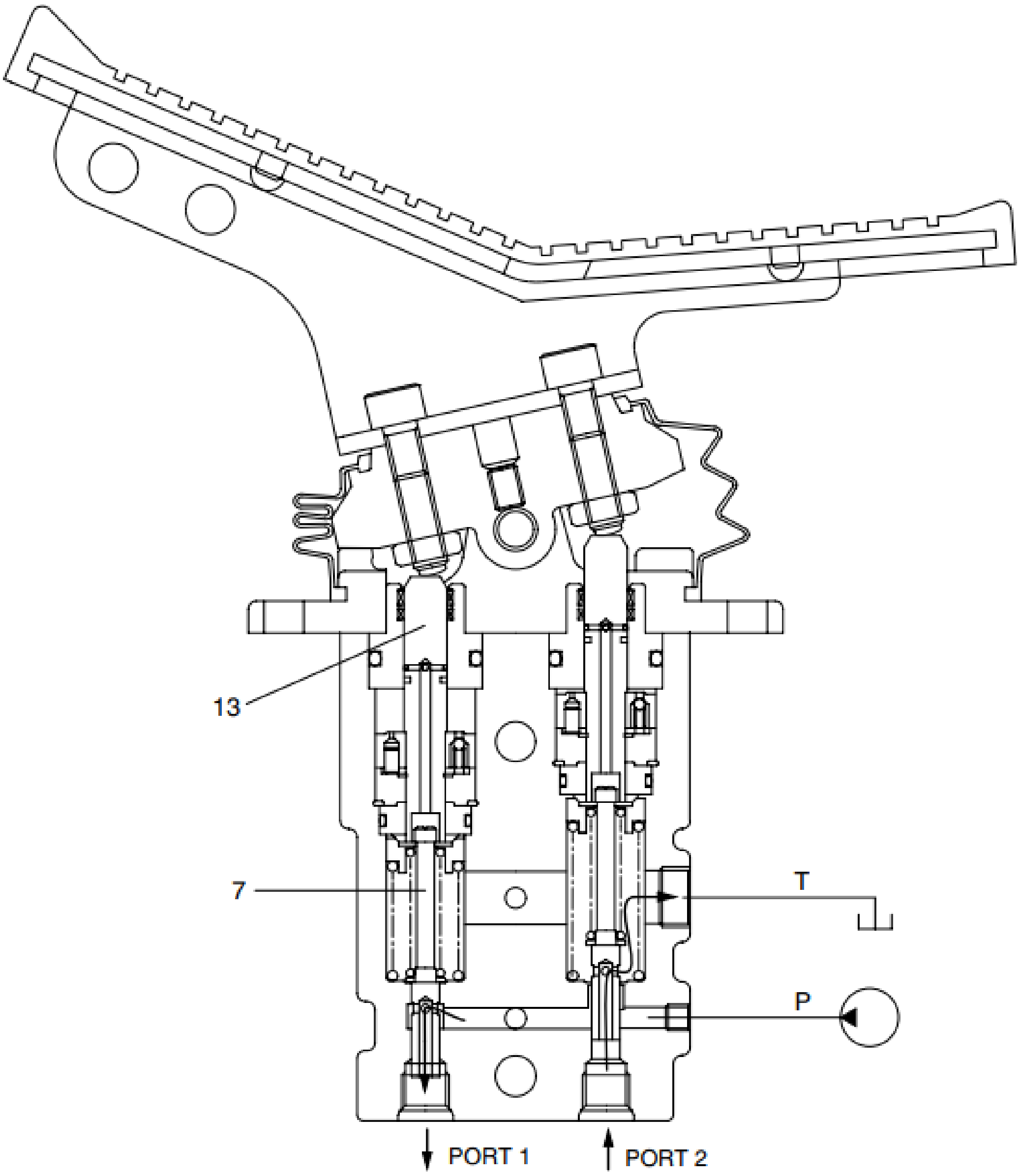
1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

(1) Case where pedal is in neutral position



The force of the spring (5) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (7). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (9) to the position of port 2 in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

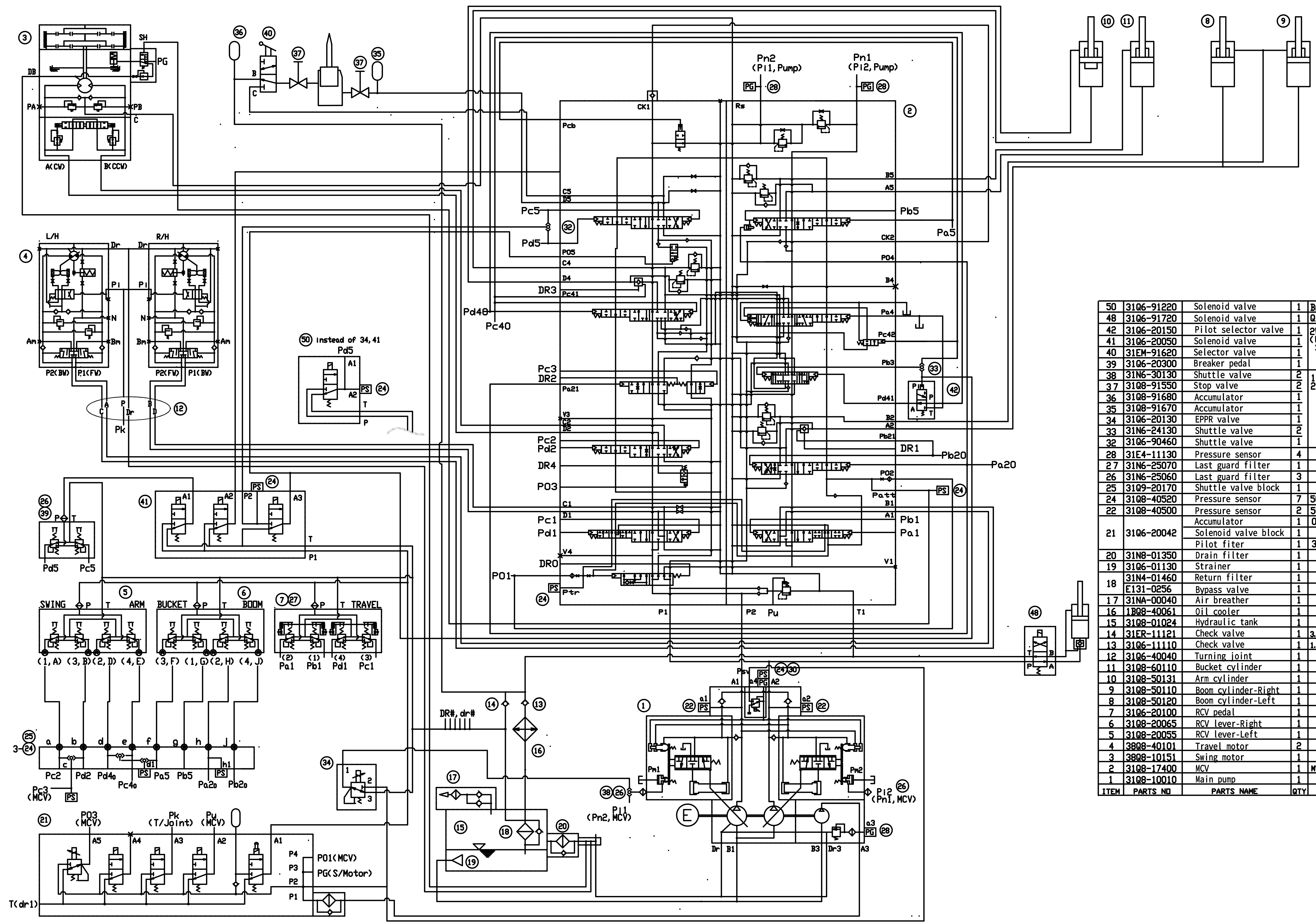
(2) Case where pedal is tilted



When the push rod (13) is stroked, the spool (7) moves downwards.
Then port P is connected with port 1, and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port 1 to generate the pressure.
When the pressure at port 1 increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port 1 increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port 1 and port T is connected with port 1. If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port 1 and port T is disconnected from port 1.
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.
Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

GROUP 1 HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

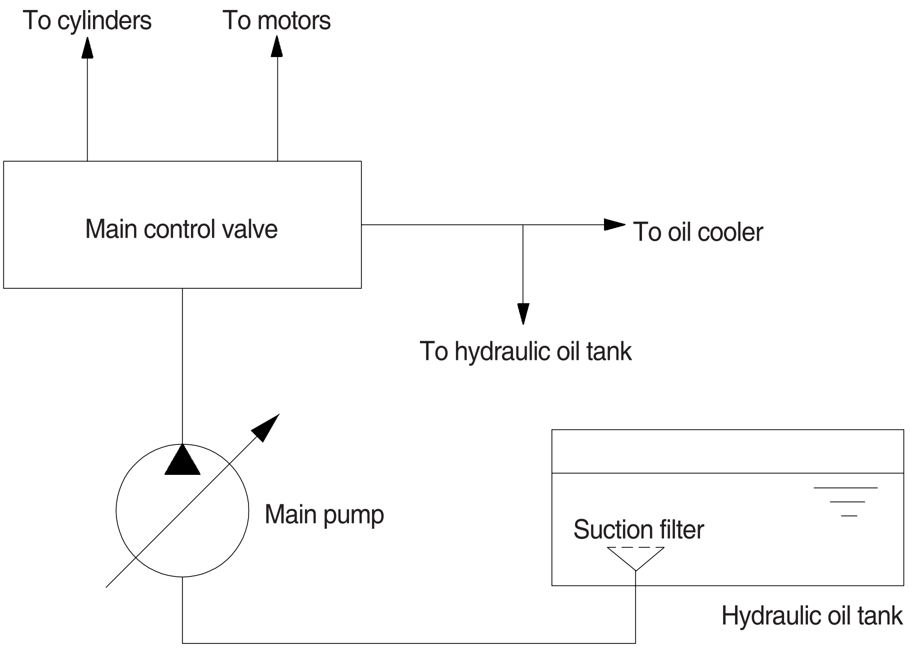


ITEM	PARTS NO	PARTS NAME	QTY	
50	31Q6-91220	Solenoid valve	1	Breaker
48	31Q6-91720	Solenoid valve	1	Q/Coupler
42	31Q6-20150	Pilot selector valve	1	2Way (Upto Flow Sum)
41	31Q6-20050	Solenoid valve	1	
40	31EM-91620	Selector valve	1	
39	31Q6-20300	Breaker pedal	1	
38	31N6-30130	Shuttle valve	2	1Way
37	31Q8-91550	Stop valve	2	2Way
36	31Q8-91680	Accumulator	1	
35	31Q8-91670	Accumulator	1	
34	31Q6-20130	EPPR valve	1	
33	31N6-24130	Shuttle valve	2	
32	31Q6-90460	Shuttle valve	1	
28	31E4-11130	Pressure sensor	4	
27	31N6-25070	Last guard filter	1	
26	31N6-25060	Last guard filter	3	
25	31Q9-20170	Shuttle valve block	1	
24	31Q8-40520	Pressure sensor	7	50k
22	31Q8-40500	Pressure sensor	2	500k
21	31Q6-20042	Accumulator	1	0.7L 15k
		Solenoid valve block	1	
		Pilot fiter	1	31Q6-20320
20	31N8-01350	Drain filter	1	
19	31Q6-01130	Strainer	1	
18	31N4-01460	Return filter	1	
	E131-0256	Bypass valve	1	
17	31NA-00040	Air breather	1	
16	1BQ8-40061	Oil cooler	1	
15	31Q8-01024	Hydraulic tank	1	
14	31ER-11121	Check valve	1	3.0k
13	31Q6-11110	Check valve	1	1.5k
12	31Q6-40040	Turning joint	1	
11	31Q8-60110	Bucket cylinder	1	
10	31Q8-50131	Arm cylinder	1	
9	31Q8-50110	Boom cylinder-Right	1	
8	31Q8-50120	Boom cylinder-Left	1	
7	31Q6-20100	RCV pedal	1	
6	31Q8-20065	RCV lever-Right	1	
5	31Q8-20055	RCV lever-Left	1	
4	38Q8-40101	Travel motor	2	
3	38Q8-10151	Swing motor	1	
2	31Q8-17400	MCV	1	MV00
1	31Q8-10010	Main pump	1	

GROUP 2 MAIN CIRCUIT

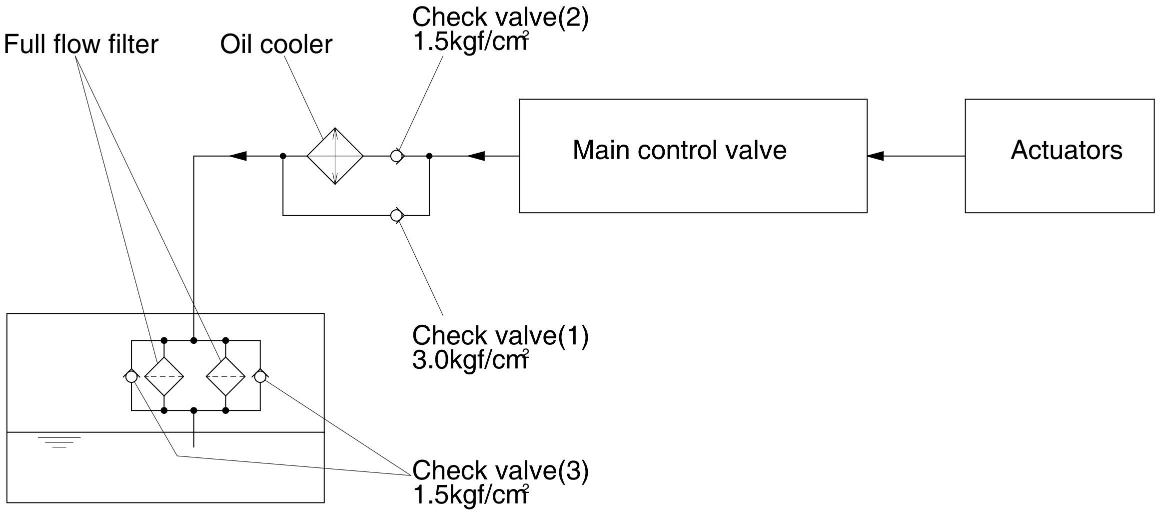
The main hydraulic circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit, return circuit and drain circuit.
The hydraulic system consists of one main pump, one control valve, one swing motor, four cylinders and two travel motors.
The swash plate type variable displacement tandem axial piston pump is used as the main pump and is driven by the engine at ratio 1.0 of engine speed.

1. SUCTION AND DELIVERY CIRCUIT



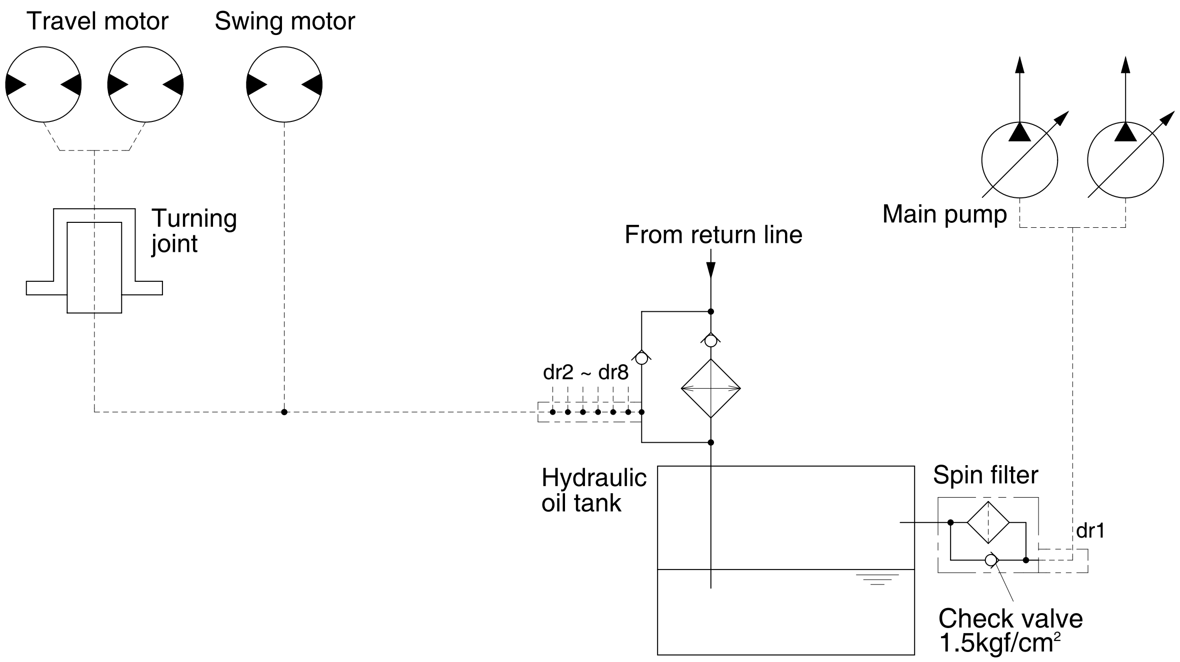
The pumps receive oil from the hydraulic tank through a suction filter. The discharged oil from the pump flows into the control valve and goes out the tank ports.
The oil discharged from the main pump flows to the actuators through the control valve.
The control valve controls the hydraulic functions.
The return oil from the actuators flows to the hydraulic tank through the control valve and the oil cooler.

2. RETURN CIRCUIT



All oil from each actuator returns to the hydraulic tank through the control valve.
The bypass check valves are provided in the return circuit.
The setting pressure of bypass check valves are 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi) and 3.0 kgf/cm^2 (43psi). Usually, oil returns to the hydraulic tank from the left side of control valve through oil cooler.
When oil temperature is low, viscosity becomes higher and flow resistance increases when passing through the oil cooler. The oil pressure exceeds 3.0 kgf/cm^2 (43psi), the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank, resulting in the oil temperature being raised quickly at an appropriate level.
When the oil cooler is clogged, the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank through bypass check valve (1).
The full-flow filter and bypass relief valve are provided in the hydraulic tank.
The oil from right and left side of control valve is combined and filtered by the return filter. A bypass relief valve is provided in the full-flow filter.
When the filter element is clogged, the bypass relief valve opens at 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi) differential pressure.

3. DRAIN CIRCUIT



Besides internal leaks from the motors and main pump, the oil for lubrication circulates. These oil have to be fed to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter and full flow filter in the hydraulic tank. When the drain oil pressure exceed 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi), the oil returns to the hydraulic tank directly.

1) TRAVEL MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the right and left travel motors comes out of the drain ports provided in the respective motor casing and join with each other. These oils pass through the turning joint and return to the hydraulic tank after being filtered by full flow filter in the hydranlic tank.

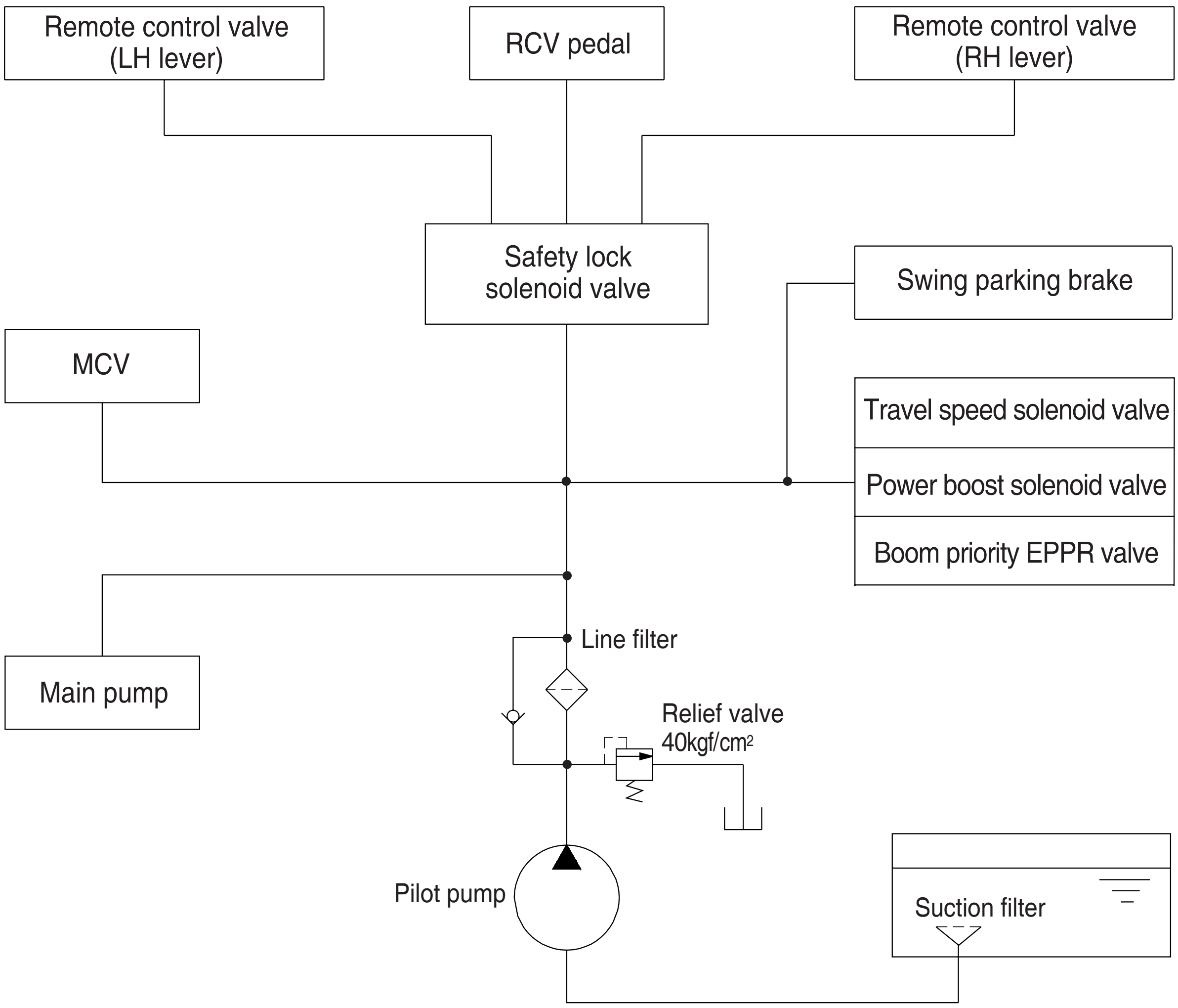
2) SWING MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the swing motor come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through a spin filter.

3) MAIN PUMP DRAIN CIRCUIT

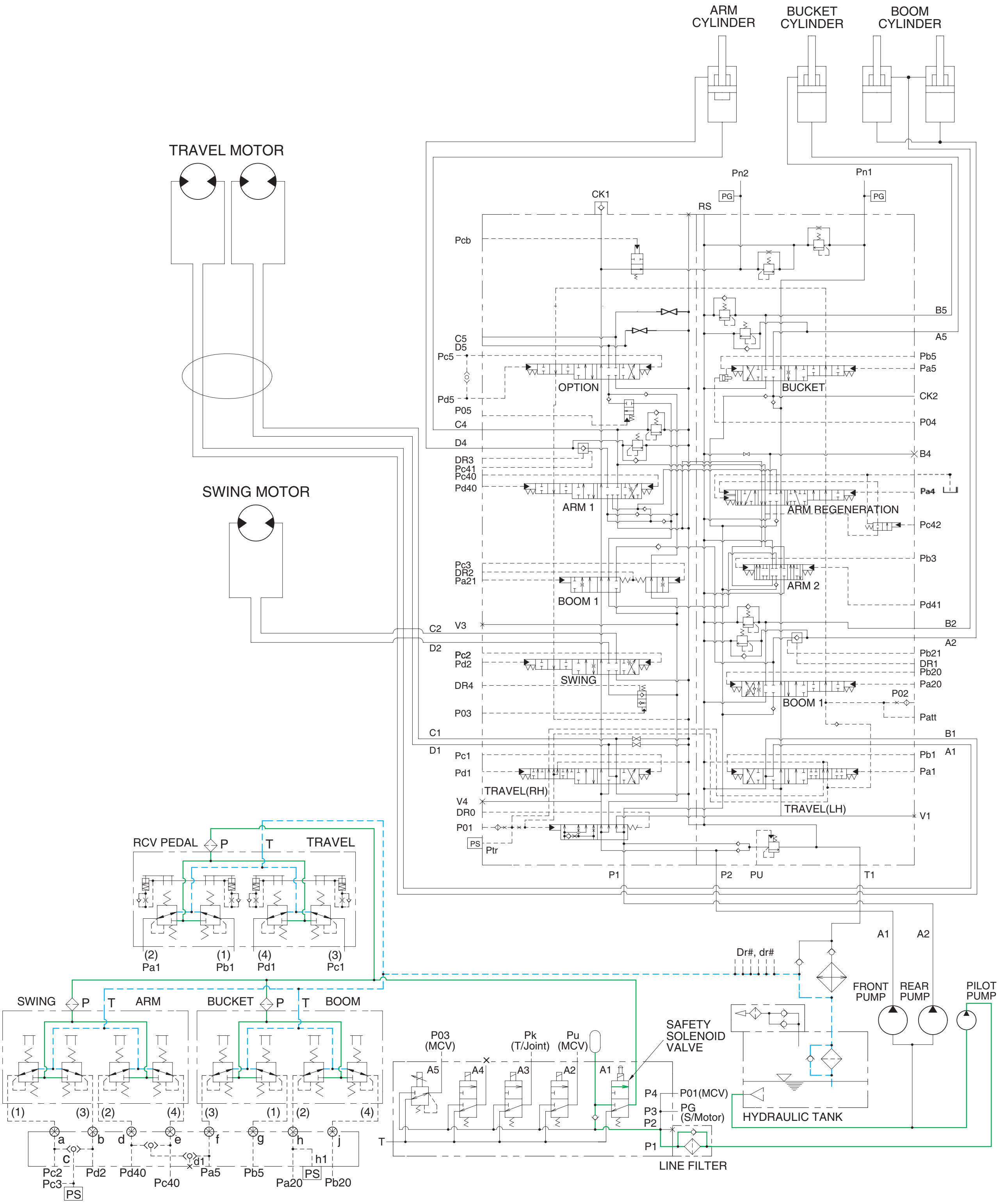
Oil leaking from main pump come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter.

GROUP 3 PILOT CIRCUIT



The pilot circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit and return circuit.
The pilot pump is provided with relief valve, receives the oil from the hydraulic tank through the suction filter.
The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the remote control valve through line filter, EPPR valve, solenoid valve assemblies, swing parking brake, main control valve and safety lock solenoid valve.

1. SUCTION, DELIVERY AND RETURN CIRCUIT

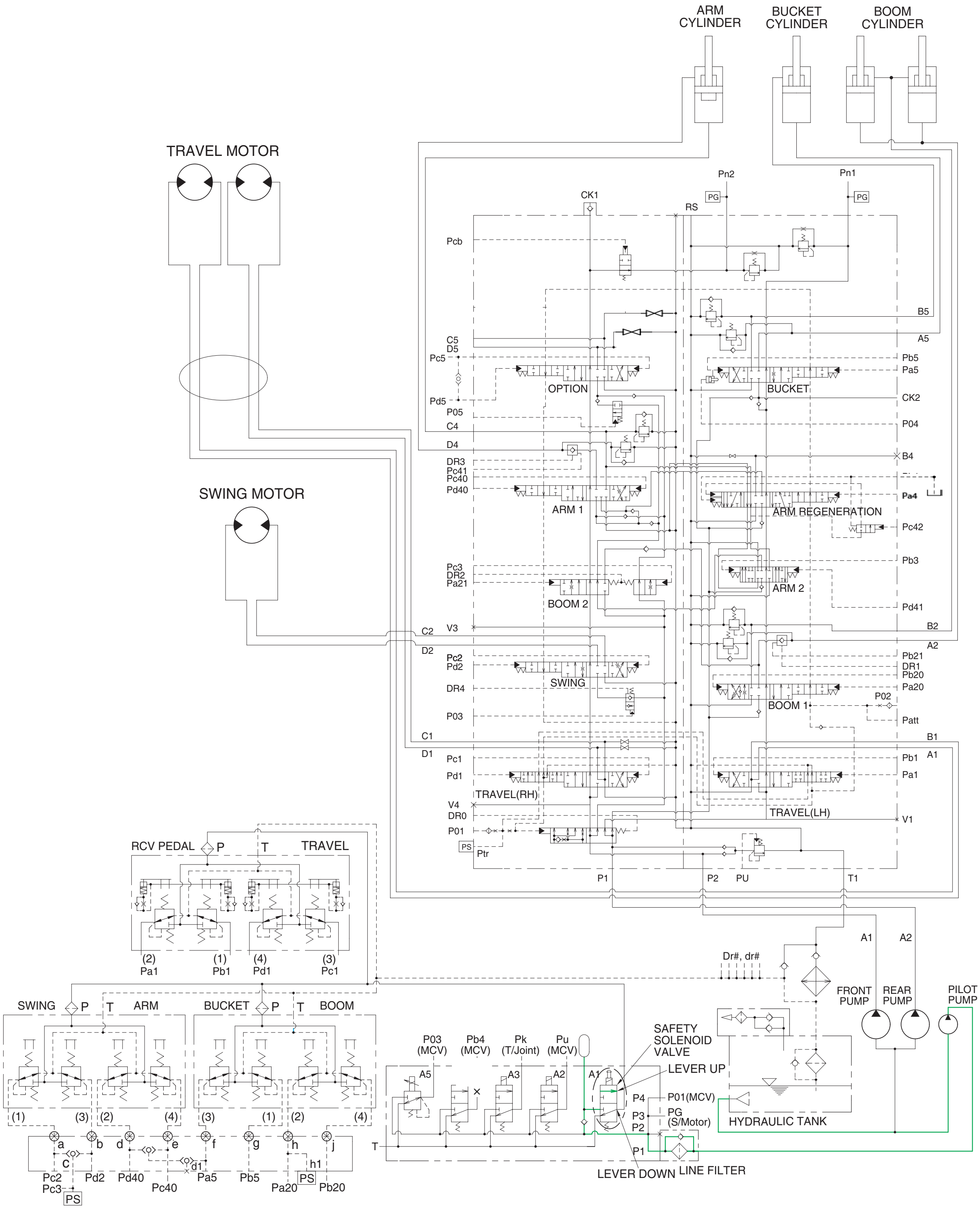


The pilot pump receive oil from the hydraulic tank. The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the safety solenoid valve through the line filter. The oil is filtered by the line filter. The pilot relief valve is provided in the pilot pump for limiting the pilot circuit pressure.

The oil filtered by line filter flows remote control valve through safety solenoid valve.

The return oil from remote control valve returned to hydraulic tank.

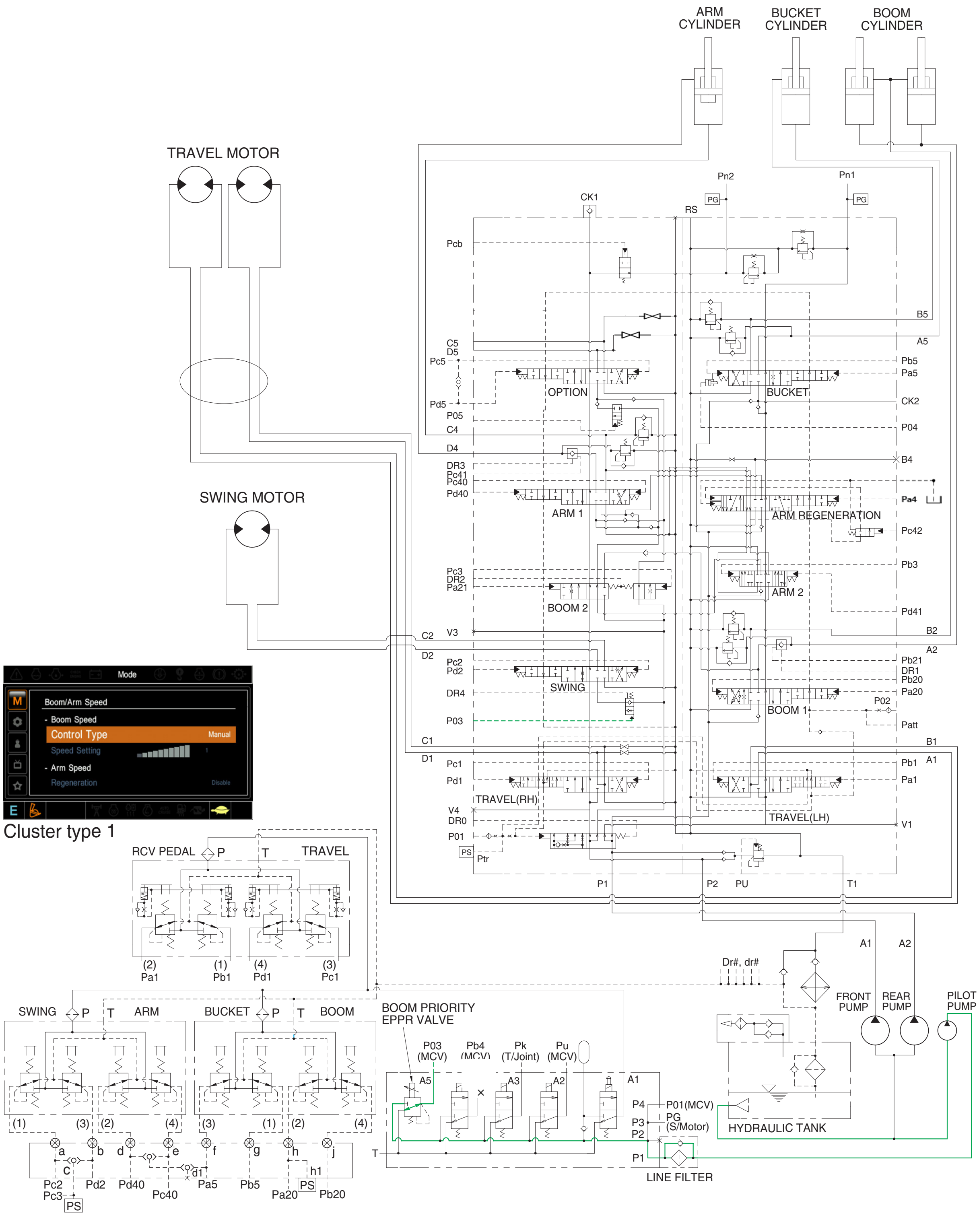
2. SAFETY SOLENOID VALVE (SAFETY LEVER)



When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved downward, oil flows into the remote control valve through solenoid valve and line filter.

When the lever of the safety solenoid valve moved upward, oil does not flows into the remote control valve, because of blocked by the spool.

3. BOOM PRIORITY SYSTEM



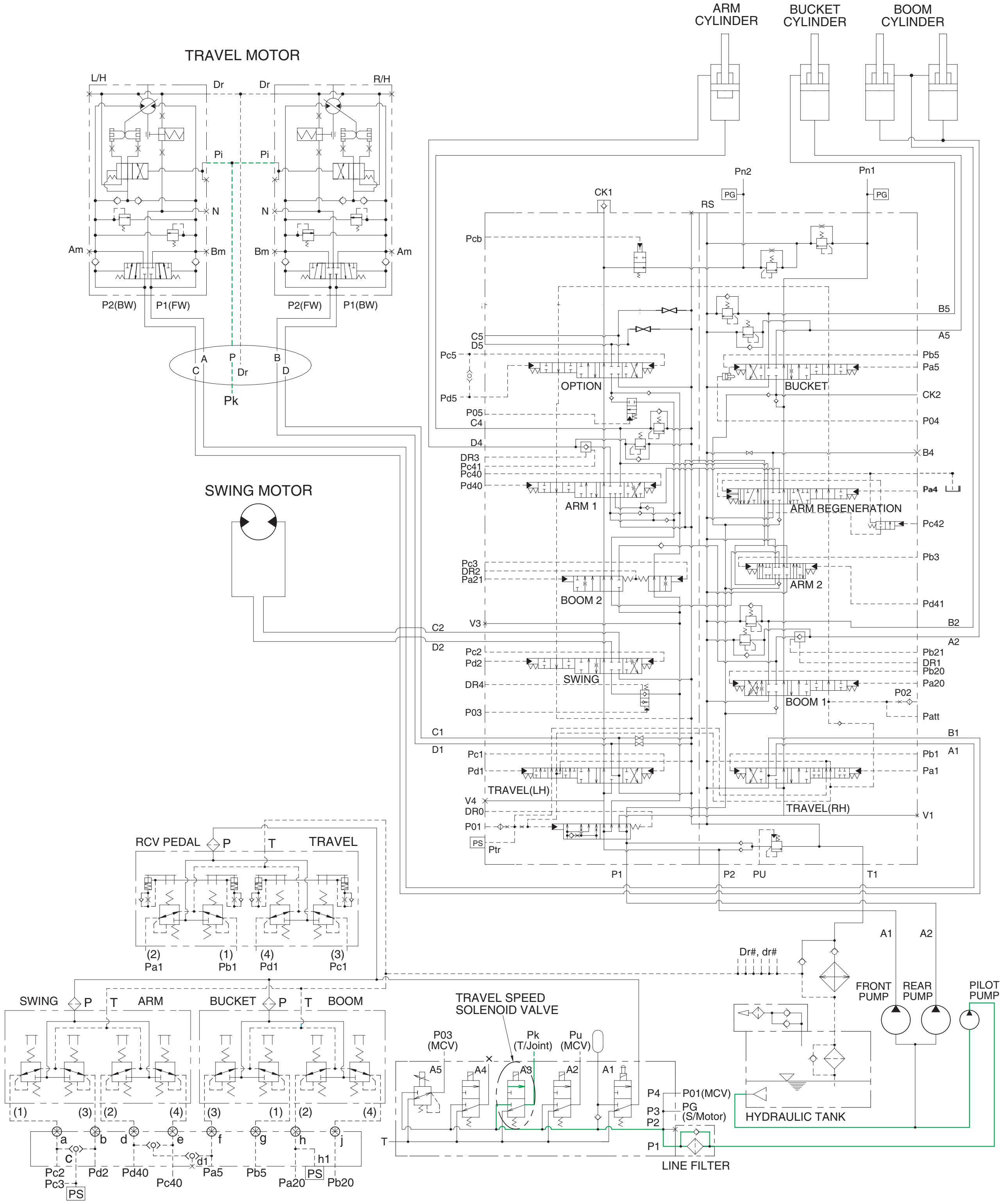
When carrying out the combined operation of swing and boom up, the boom up operating speed is lowered then normal operation.

To increase working efficiency, swing speed reducing system is used.

The pilot oil from pilot pump flow into P03 port in main control valve through boom EPPR valve. P03 oil pressure moves swing reducing spool to upper position and oil flow rate to the swing motor decreased.

Then, the boom up speed is increased. This is called the boom priority system.

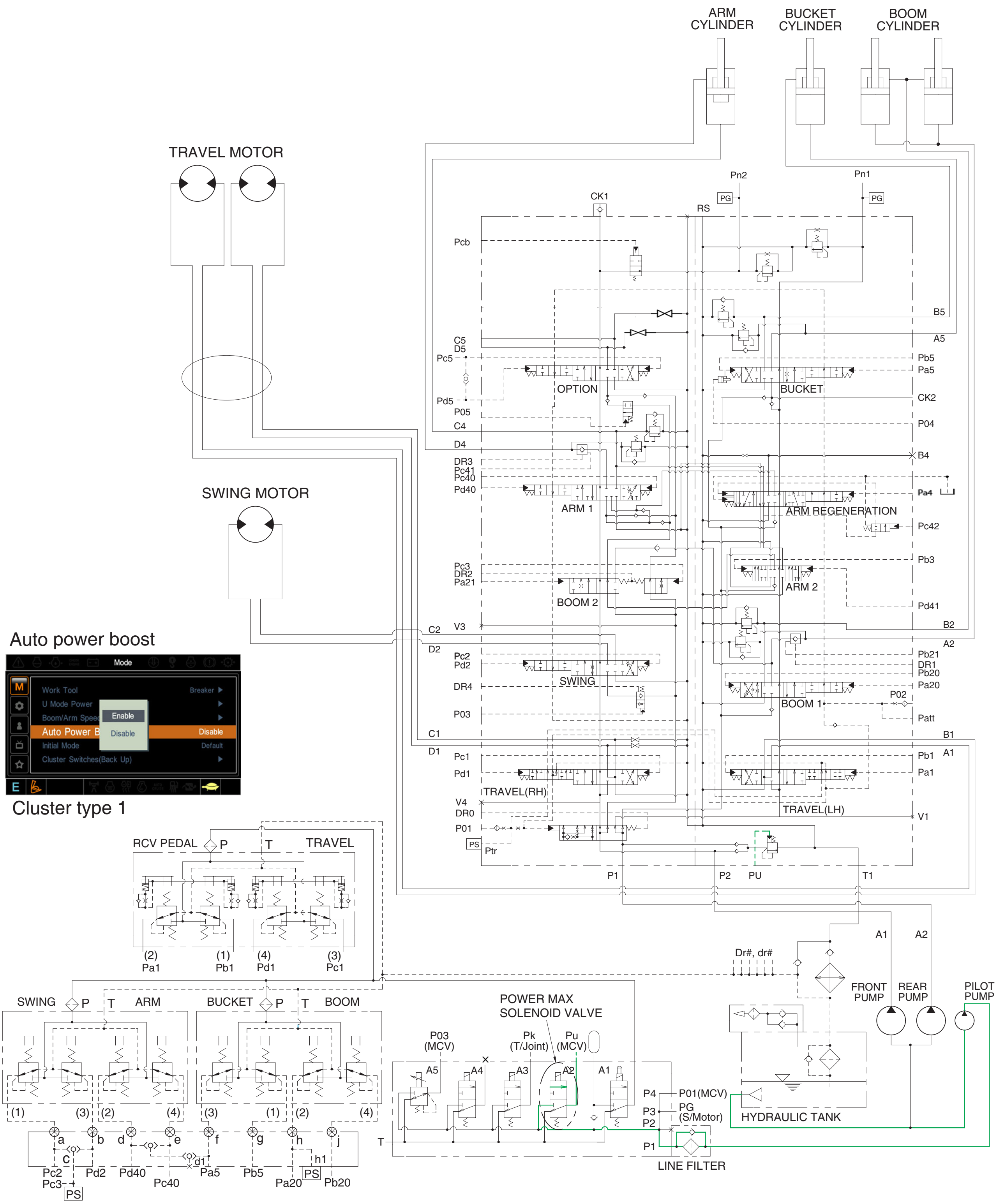
4. TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



When the travel speed solenoid valve was placed in the Hi position, the pressure oil from pilot pump through line filter flows to port **Pk** of travel speed change over valve, and the control piston is pushed up, thus minimizing the displacement.

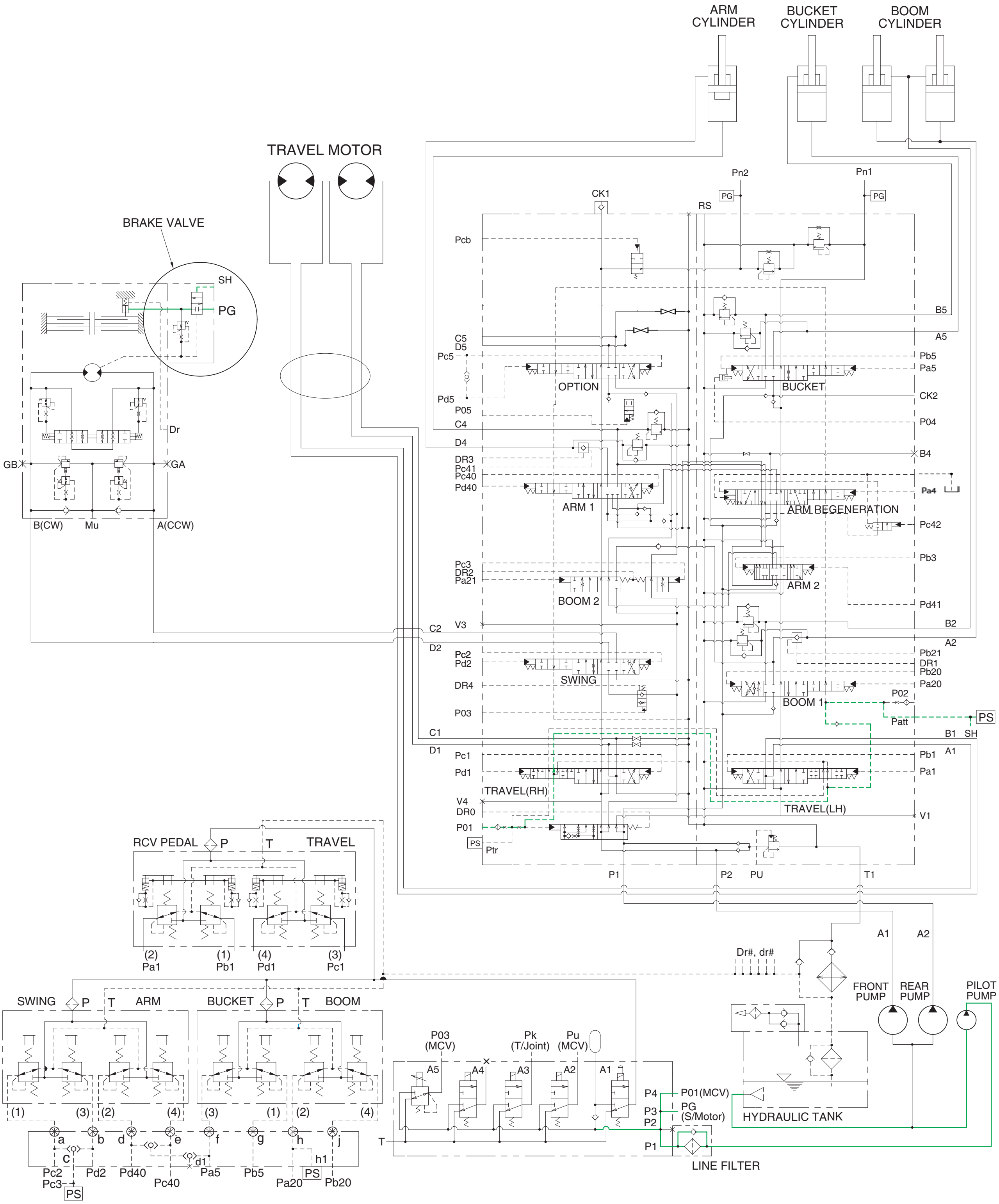
When the travel speed solenoid valve was placed in the Lo position, the oil of **Pk** port return to the tank and the control piston is returned, thus maximizing the displacement.

5. MAIN RELIEF PRESSURE CHANGE CIRCUIT



When the power max switch on the left control lever is pushed ON, the power max solenoid valve is actuated, the discharged oil from the pilot pump into Pu port of the main relief valve of main control valve ; Then the setting pressure of the main control valve is raises from 350 kgf/cm^2 to 380 kgf/cm^2 for increasing the digging power. And even when press continuously, it is canceled after 8 seconds.

6. SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE



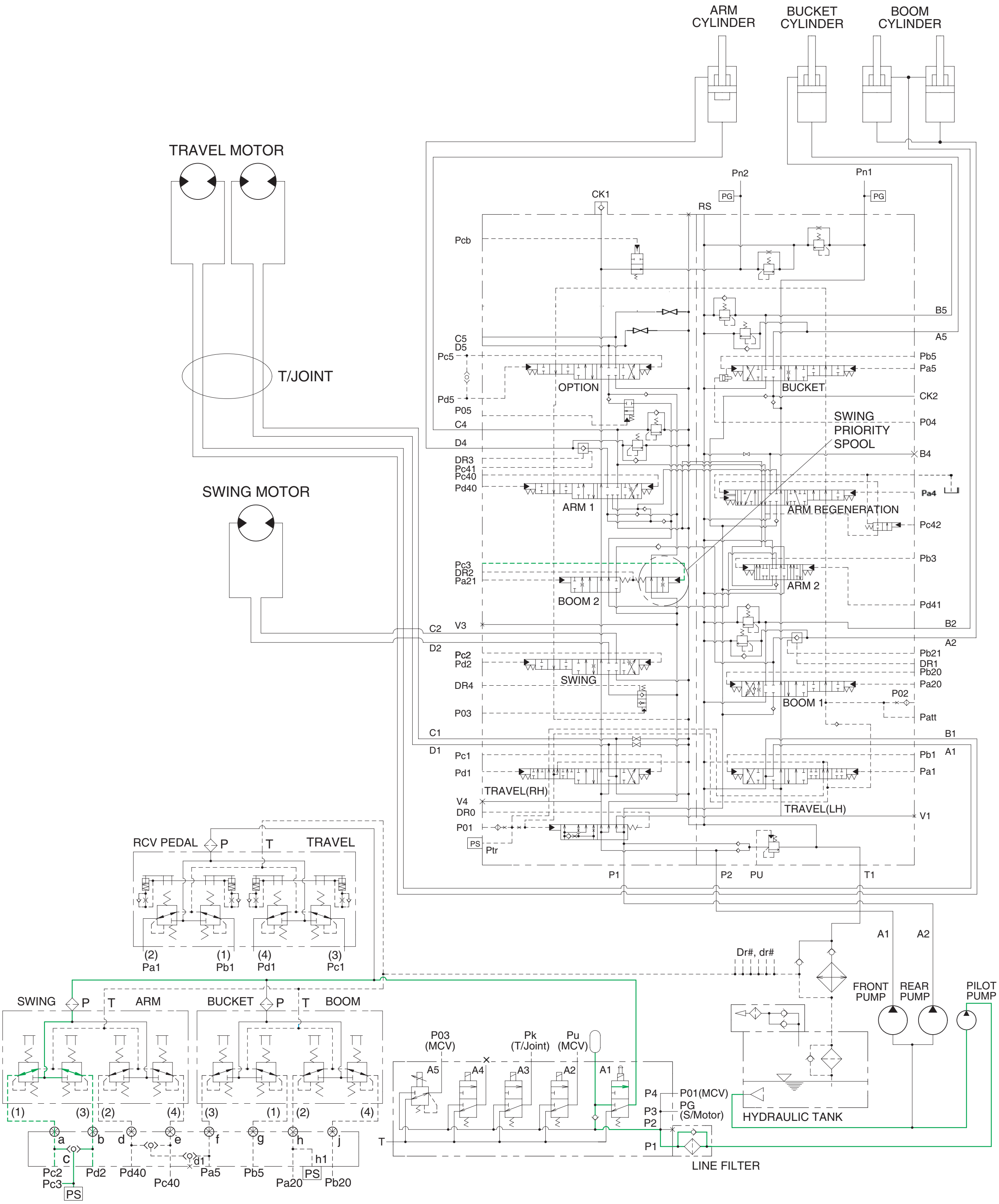
When one of the RCV lever (except travel lever) is tilted, the pilot oil flows into SH port through main control valve.

This pressure moves spool so, discharged oil from pilot valve flows to swing motor PG port.

This pressure is applied to swing motor disc, thus the brake is released.

When all of the RCV lever are set in the neutral position, oil in the swing motor disc cylinder is drained, thus the brake is applied.

7. SWING PRIORITY SYSTEM



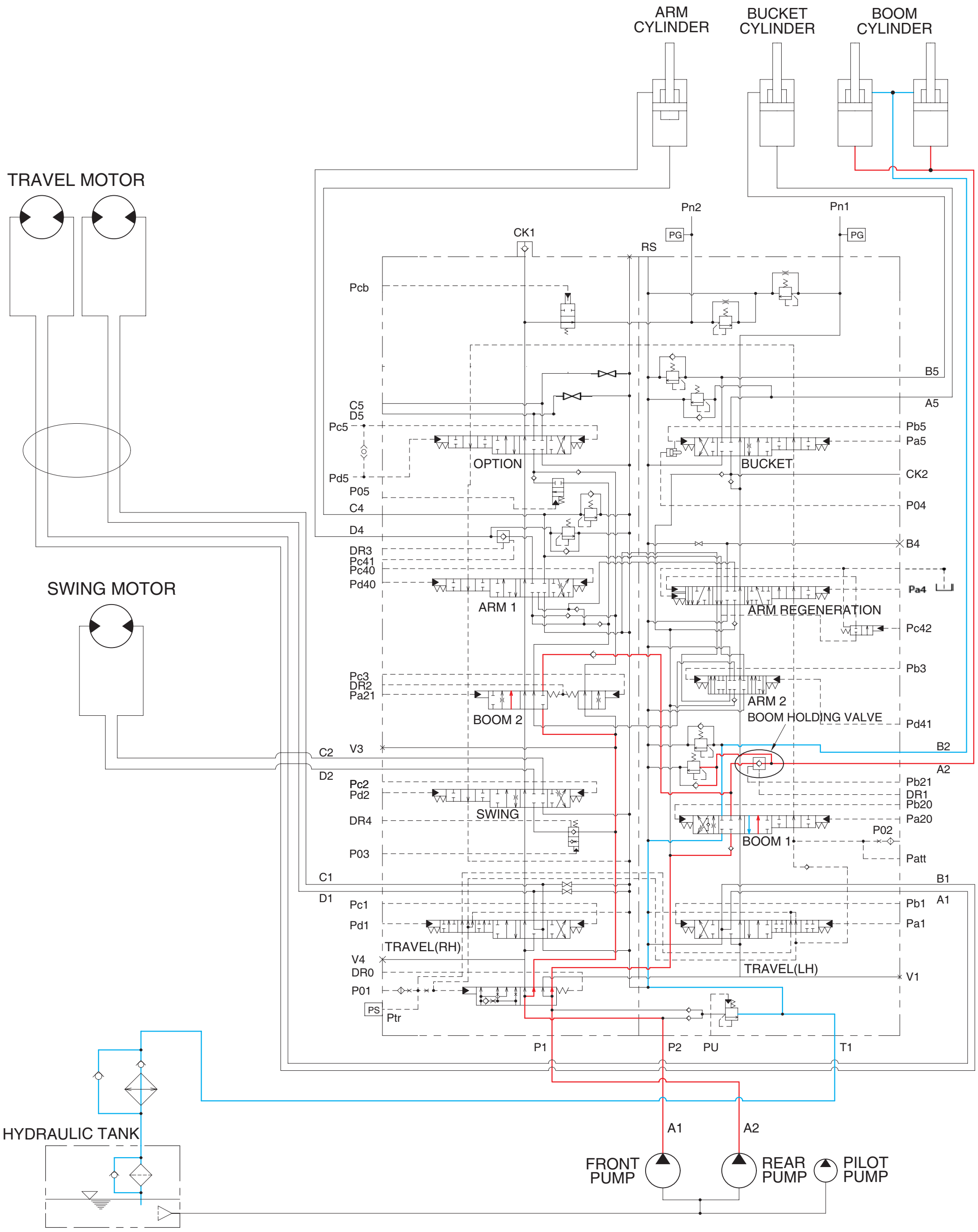
When carrying out the combined operation of swing and arm of the left control valve, the swing speed can be lowered than operating speed of arm.

Pc3 pressure from the swing shuttle block change the swing priority spool and decreases the oil flow rate to the next section to make the swing operation most preferential.

This is called the swing priority system. For details, refer to page 2-45.

GROUP 4 SINGLE OPERATION

1. BOOM UP OPERATION



When the RH control lever is pulled back, the boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the up position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of boom cylinders.

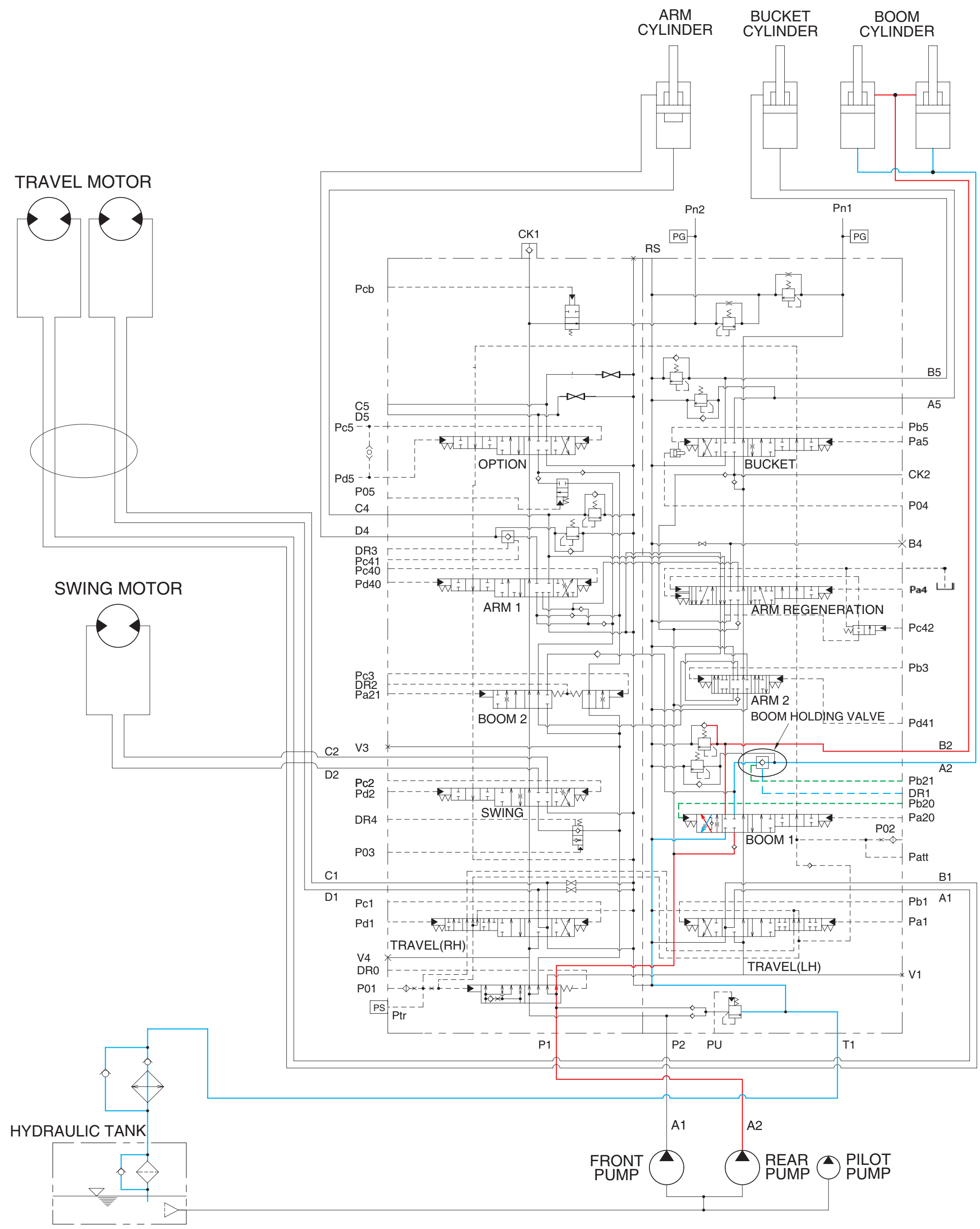
At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the boom goes up.

The excessive pressure in the boom cylinder bottom end circuit is prevented by relief valve.

When the boom is up and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the bottom end of the boom cylinder is closed by the boom holding valve.

This prevents the hydraulic drift of boom cylinder.

2. BOOM DOWN OPERATION



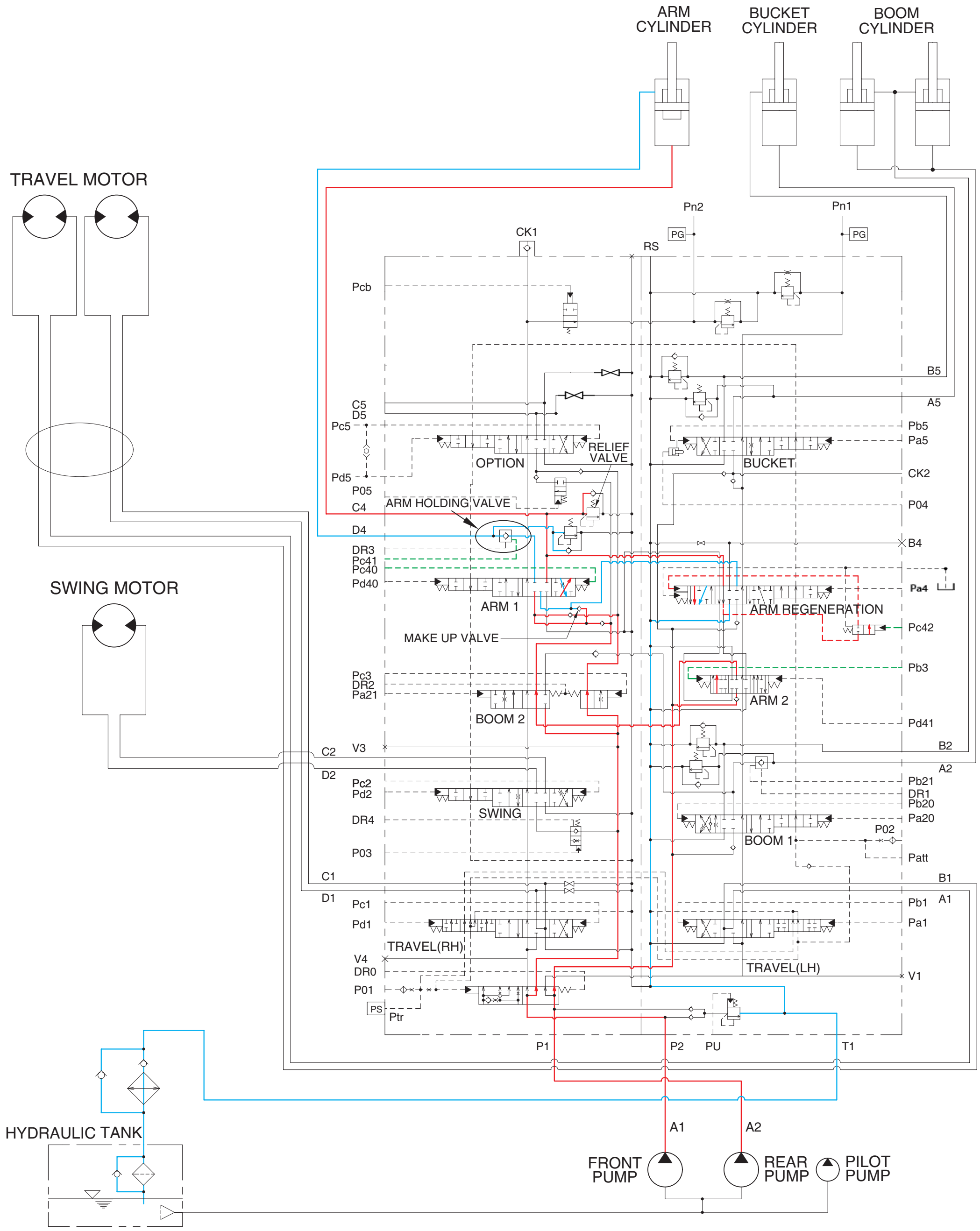
When the RH control lever is pushed forward, the boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the down position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of boom cylinders. At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic tank through the boom spool in the main control valve.

When the down speed of boom is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the rear pump, and flows into the small chamber of the boom cylinder.

This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the rear pump flow can not match the boom down speed. And the excessive pressure in the boom cylinder rod end circuit is prevented by the relief valve.

3. ARM IN OPERATION



When the LH control lever is pulled back, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of arm cylinder.

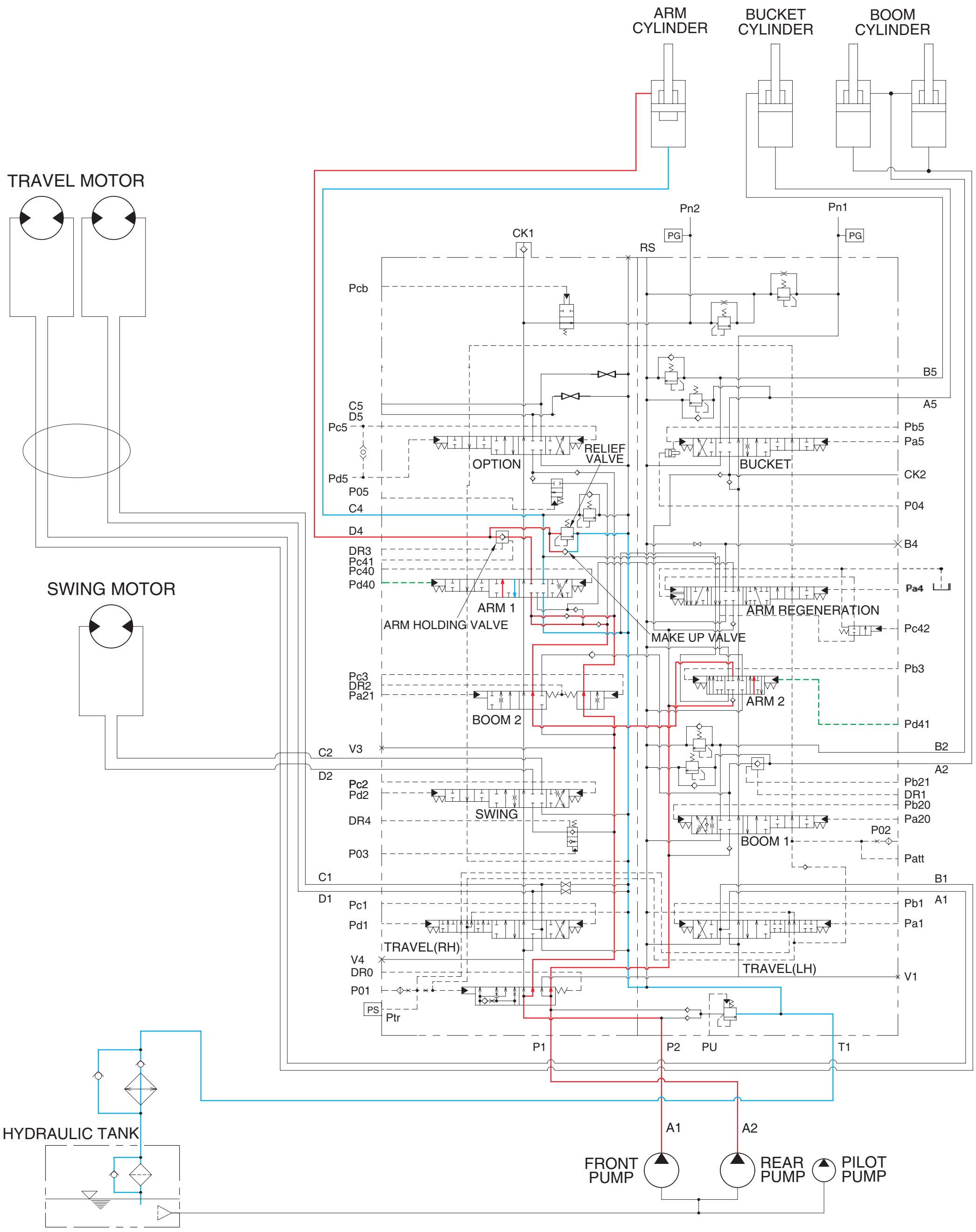
At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm roll in.

When the roll in speed of arm is faster, the oil returned from the small chamber of arm cylinder combines with the oil from both pump, and flows into the large chamber of the arm cylinder by a make up valve.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder bottom end circuit is prevented by relief valve.

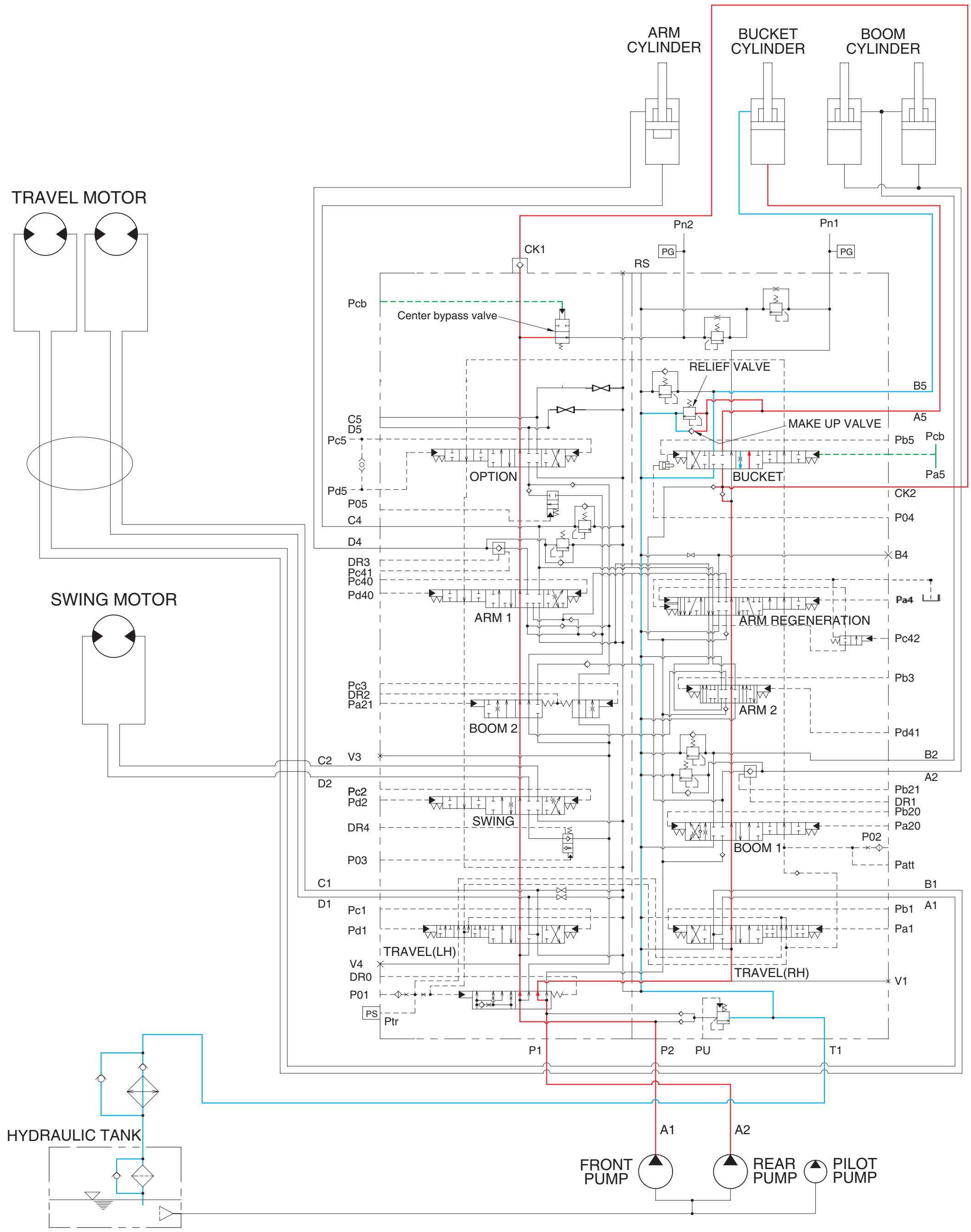
Refer to page 3-12 for the arm regeneration.

4. ARM OUT OPERATION



When the LH control lever is pushed forward, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.
The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of arm cylinder. At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spool in the main control valve.
When this happens, the arm roll out. When the roll out speed of arm is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of arm cylinder combines with the oil from both pump, and flows into the small chamber of the arm cylinder by a make up valve.
The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder rod end circuit is prevented by relief valve.
When the arm is rolled out and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the rod end of the arm cylinder is closed by the arm holding valve.
This prevents the hydraulic drift of arm cylinder.

5. BUCKET IN OPERATION



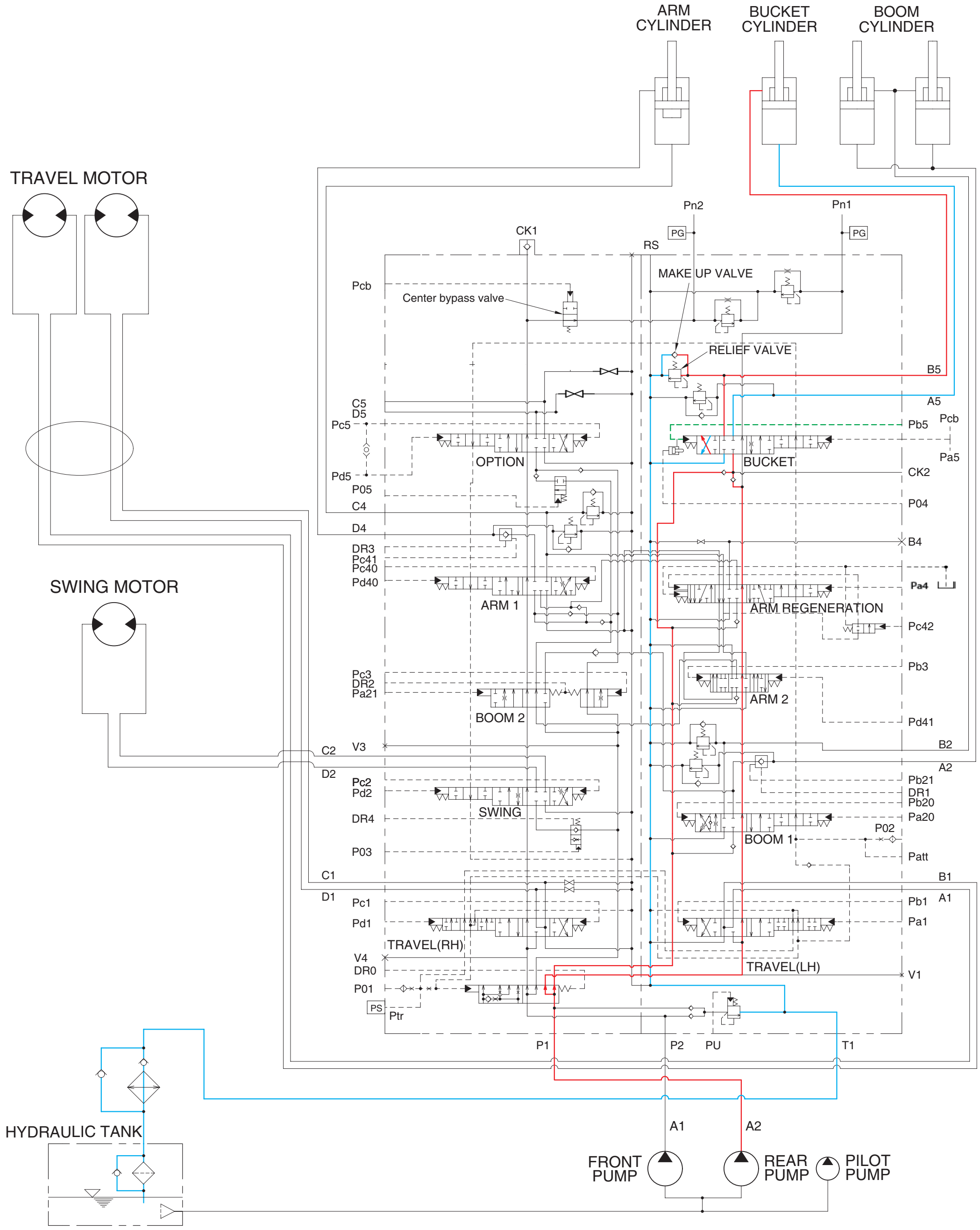
When the RH control lever is manually placed in the bucket roll in position. Then the oil flows from pilot pump through the pilot valve to bucket section of the main control valve. Here the spool position is moved to bucket roll in position.

The center bypass valve is change over by the pilot pressure (Pcb) and then the oil from A2 pump is joint to the flow of A1 pump via check 1 and external piping.

The oil flows from both pump through rod end of the cylinder through the bucket section returned to the hydraulic tank.

The cavitation which will happen to the bottom of the bucket cylinder is prevented by a make up valve, on other hand. The excessive pressure is also prevented by an overload relief valve in the main control valve.

6. BUCKET OUT OPERATION



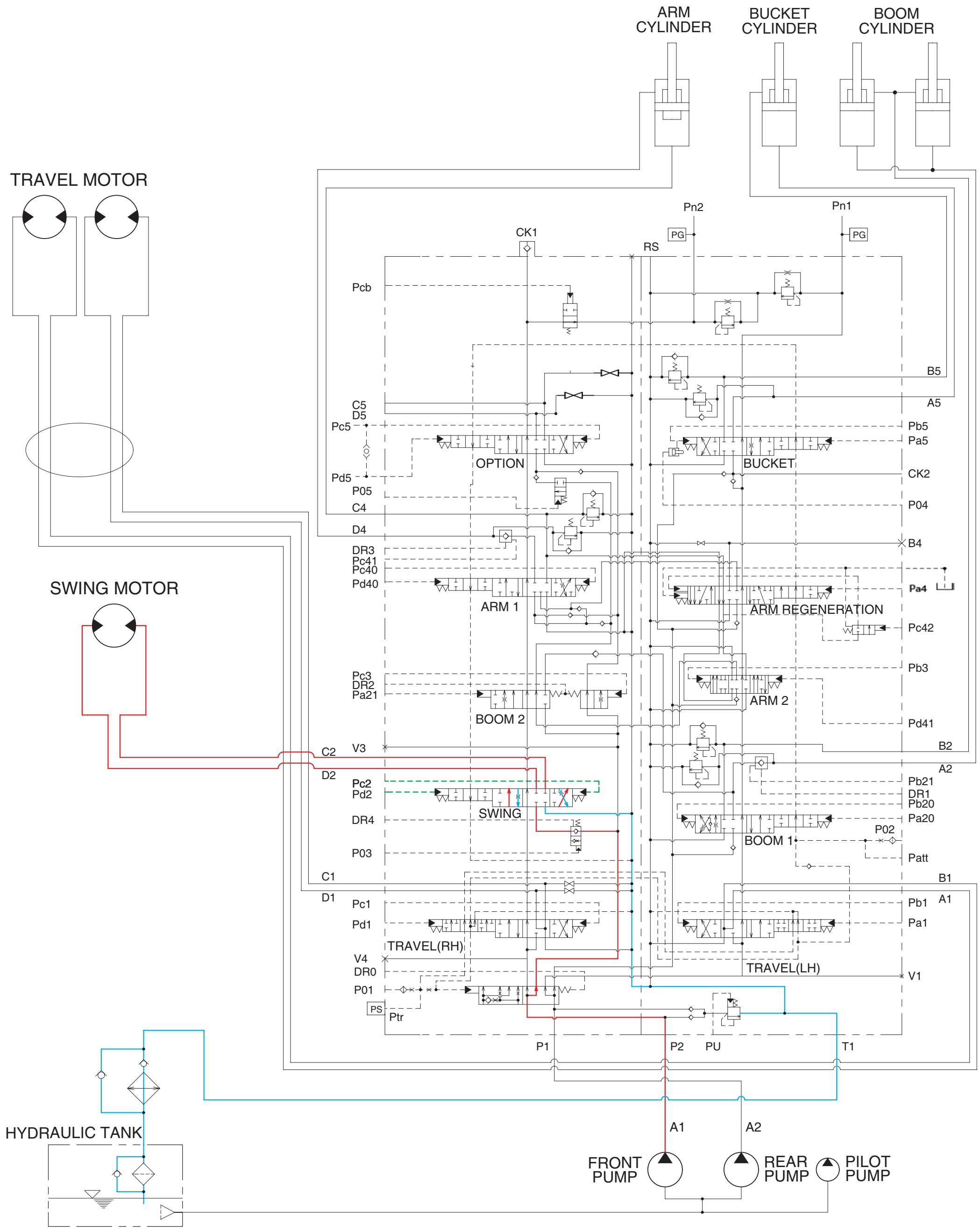
When the RH control lever is manually placed in the bucket roll out position. Then the oil flows from pilot pump through the pilot valve to bucket section of the main control valve. Here the spool position is moved to bucket roll out position.

The oil flows from A2 pump through bucket section of main control valve to the rod end of the bucket cylinder, and to roll out bucket.

The return oil flows from the bottom end of the cylinder through the bucket section returned to the hydraulic tank.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod of the bucket cylinder is prevented by a make up valve, on other hand. The excessive pressure is also prevented by an overload relief valve in the main control valve.

7. SWING OPERATION

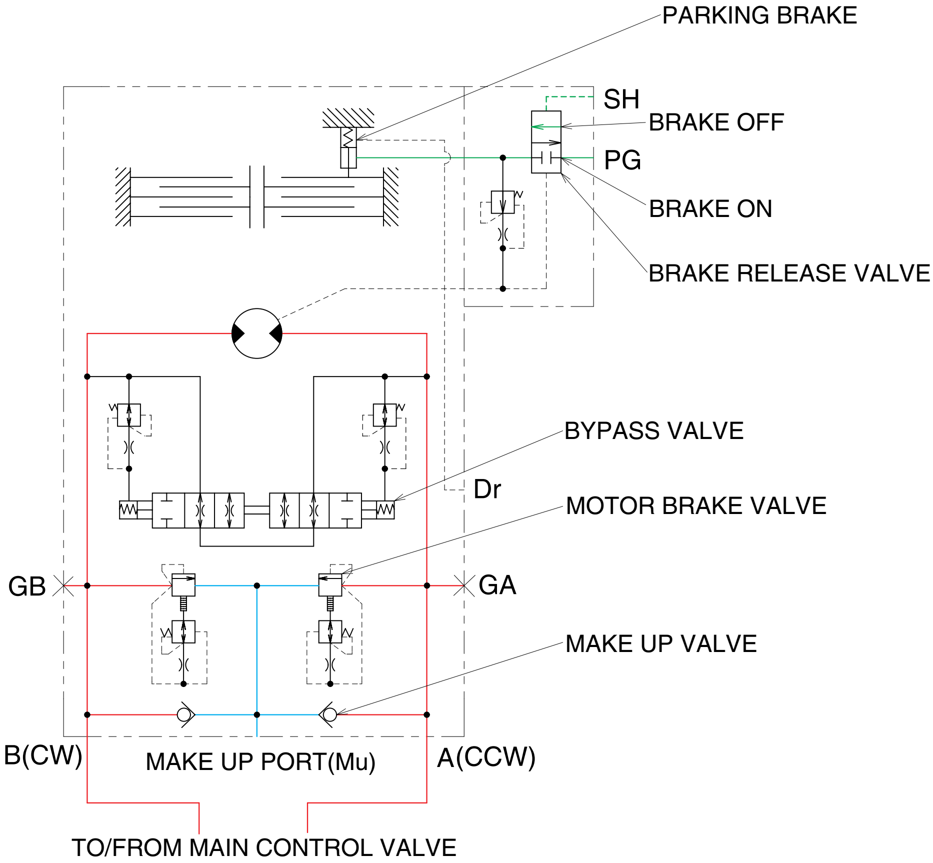


When the LH control lever is manually placed in the left (right) swing position. Then the oil flows from A1 pump through the swing section of the main control valve to swing motor to left (right) swing the superstructure. The return oil flows from swing motor through the swing section of the main control valve returned to the tank.

When the control lever placed in the neutral position, the pressure of the pilot oil passage down.

Then the brake release valve returned to the neutral position and the oil is returned from the brake piston to the tank. And the brake is set to "ON". The swing parking brake, make up valve and the overload relief valve are provide in the swing motors. The cavitation which will happen to the swing motor is prevented by the make up valve in the swing motor itself.

SWING CIRCUIT OPERATION



1) MOTOR BRAKE VALVE

Motor brake valve for the swing motor limits to cushion the starting and stopping pressure of swing operation.

2) MAKE UP VALVE

The make up valves prevent cavitation by supplying return oil to the vacuum side of the motor.

3) PARKING BRAKE

In case that the parking, of the machine at slope is required during operation, there is the danger of involuntary swing caused by the self weight of the machine. The brake is connected to prevent this involuntary swing.

PARKING BRAKE "OFF" OPERATION

The parking brake is released by the pilot pressure oil from the pilot pump.
When the left control lever placed in the swing position, the pilot pressure at the shuttle valve is transferred to the brake release valve and the brake release valve is change over. Then the pilot pressure lift the brake piston and release the parking brake.

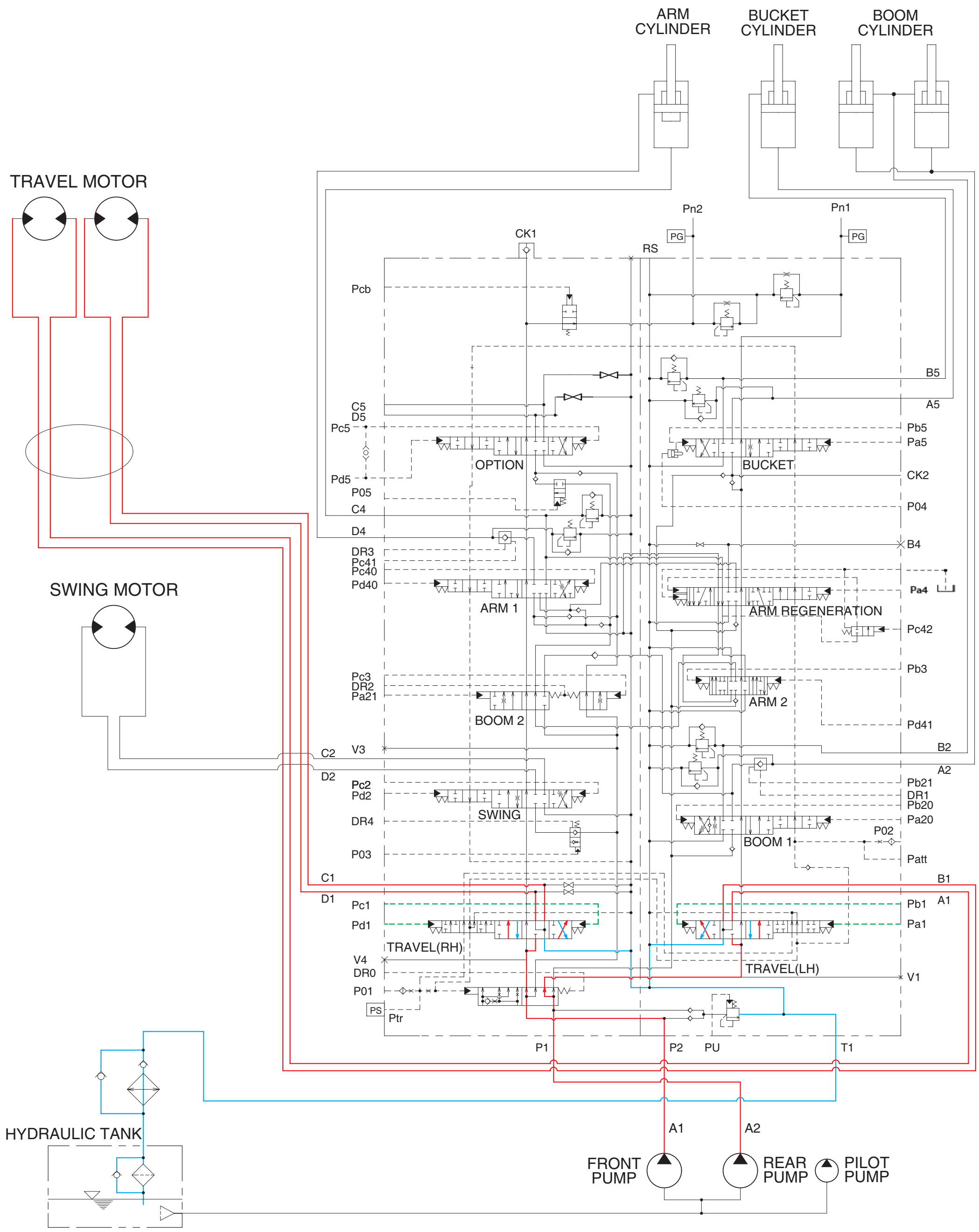
PARKING BRAKE "ON" OPERATION

When the control lever placed in the neutral position, the pressure of the pilot oil passage down.
Then the brake release valve returned to the neutral position and the oil is returned from the brake piston to the tank. And the brake is set to 'ON".

4) BYPASS VALVE

This bypass valve absorbs shocks produced as swing motion stops and reduced oscillation cause by swing motion.

8. TRAVEL FORWARD AND REVERSE OPERATION

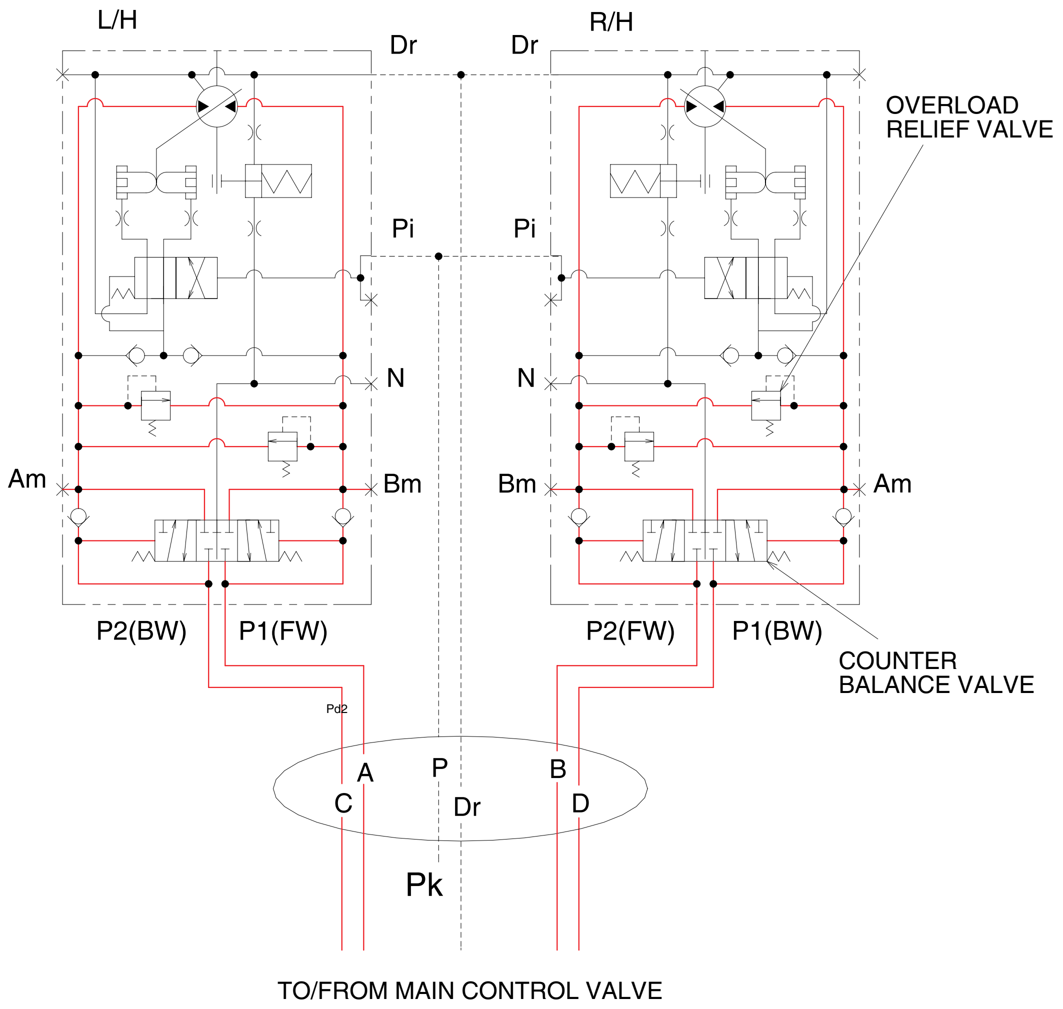


When the right and left travel levers are manually placed to the forward or reverse position, the oil flows from pilot pump through the pilot valve to travel sections of the main control valve.

Here, spool position is moved to forward and reverse position. The oil flows from A2 pump through the travel (RH) section of the main control valve and turning joint to the right travel motor and oil flows from A1 pump through the travel (LH) section of the main control valve and turning joint to the left travel motor and move the machine forward or reverse.

The return oil flows from both travel motor through the turning joint and travel (RH, LH) sections returned to the tank.

TRAVEL CIRCUIT OPERATION



Valves are provided on travel motors to offer the following functions.

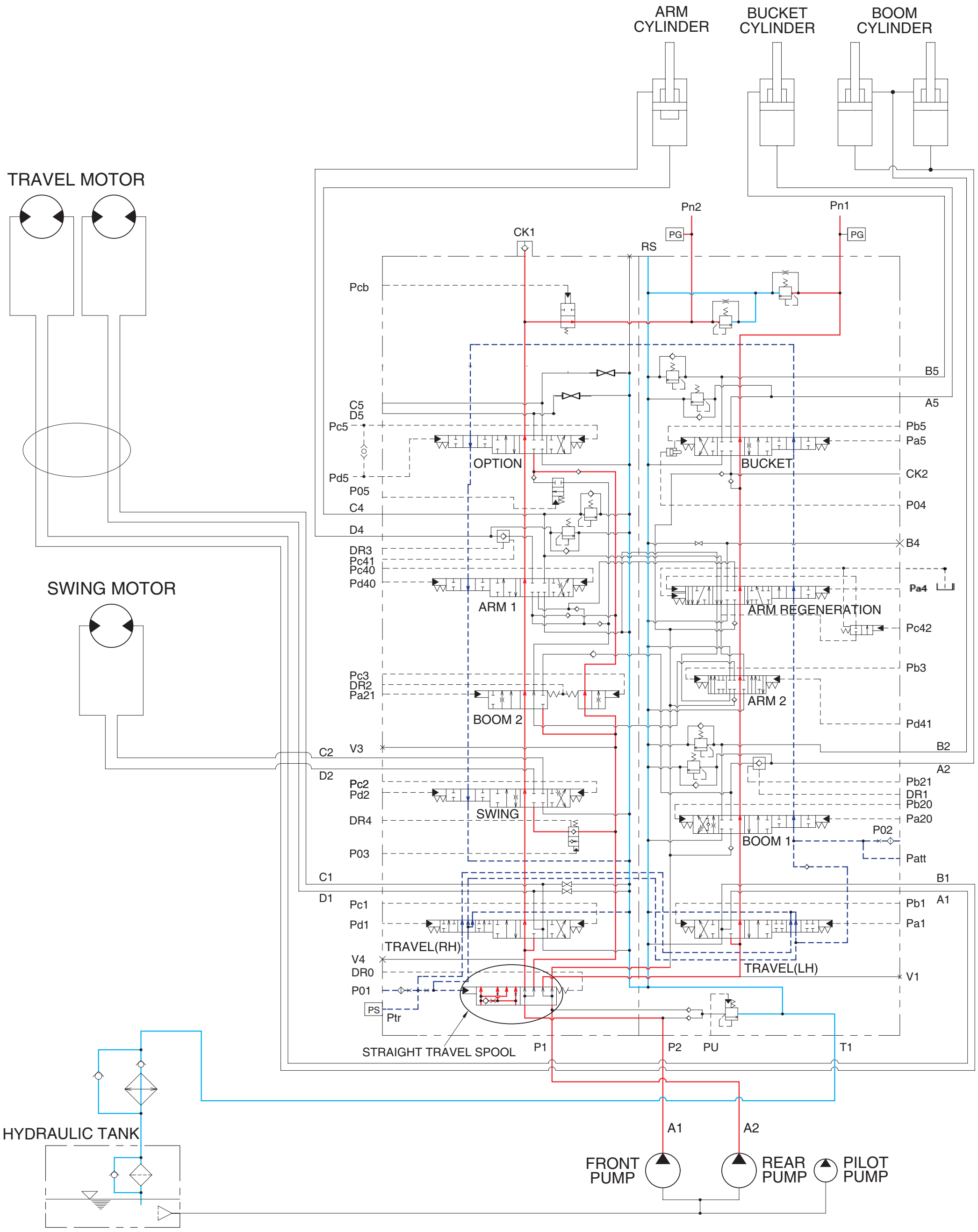
1) COUNTER BALANCE VALVE

When stopping the motor of slope descending, this valve to prevent the motor over run.

2) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

Relief valve limit the circuit pressure below 380 kgf/cm² to prevent high pressure generated at a time of stopping the machine. Stopping the motor, this valve sucks the oil from lower pressure passage for preventing the negative pressure and the cavitation of the motor.

1. OUTLINE



The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows through the neutral oil passage, bypass oil passage and confluence oil passage in the main control valve. Then the oil goes to each actuator and operates them. Check valves and orifices are located on these oil passage in the main control valve. These control the oil from the main pumps so as to correspond to the operation of each actuator and smooth the combined operation.

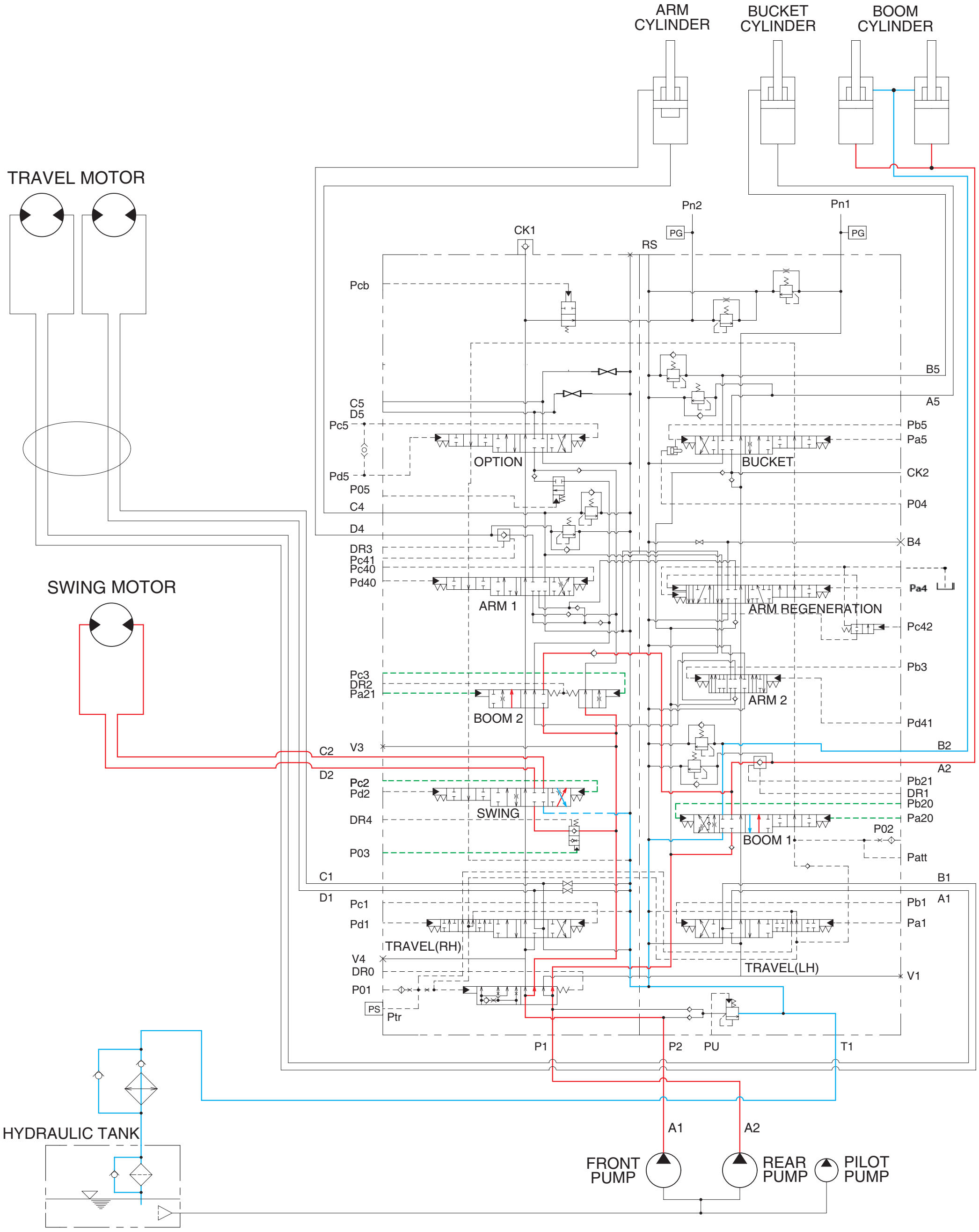
STRAIGHT TRAVEL SPOOL

This straight travel spool is provided in the main control valve.

If any actuator is operated when traveling, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

Consequently, the left and right travel oil supply passage are connected, and equivalent amount of oil flows into the left and right travel motors. This keeps the straight travel.

2. COMBINED SWING AND BOOM UP OPERATION



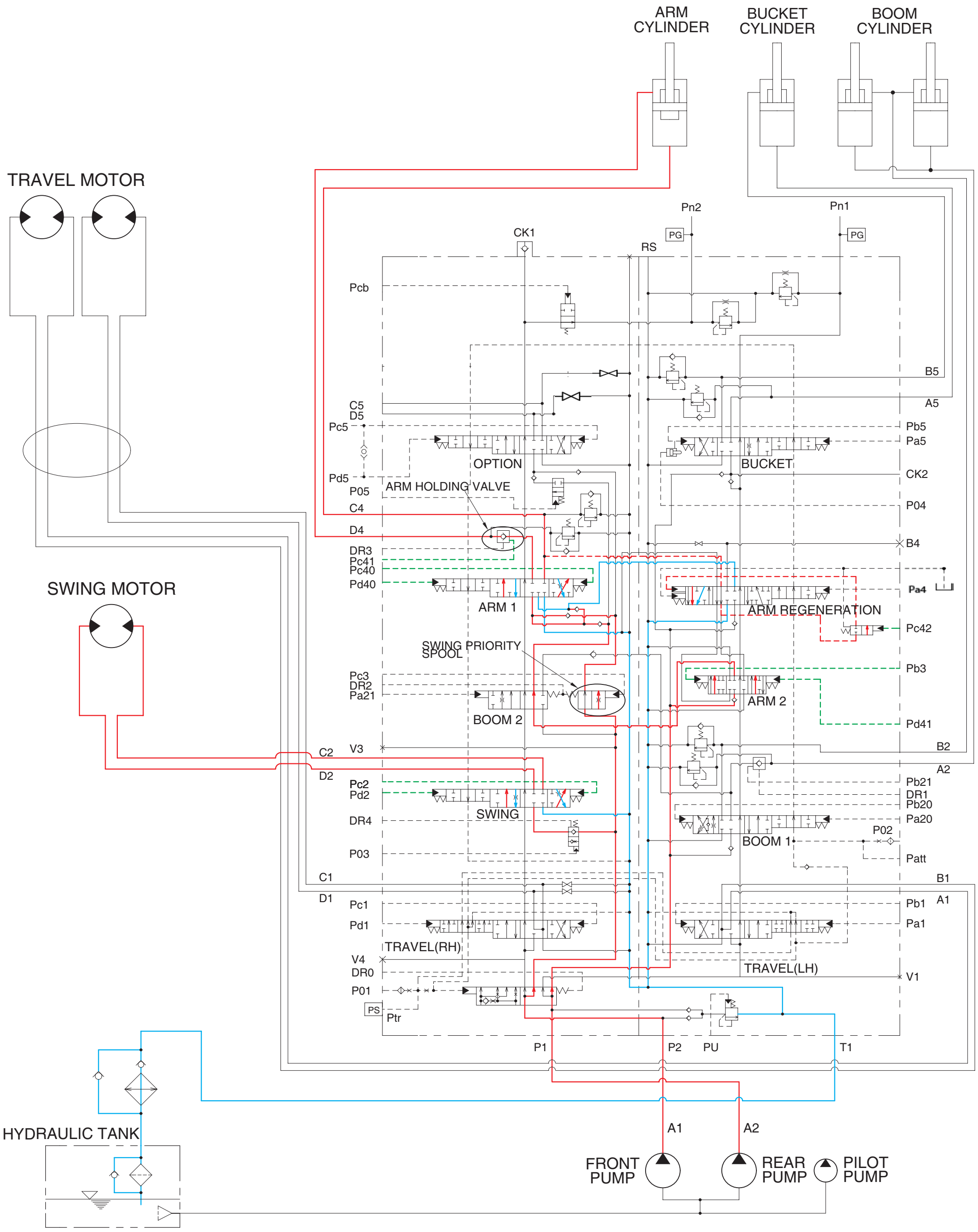
When the swing and boom up functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and boom spools changed. The oil flows from the A2 pump through boom1 section of the main control valve to boom cylinders and the boom functions.

The oil flows from A1 pump flow into swing motor through swing spool and the boom cylinder through boom 2 spool.

The upper structure swing and the boom is up.

Refer to page 3-8 for the boom priority system.

3. COMBINED SWING AND ARM OPERATION

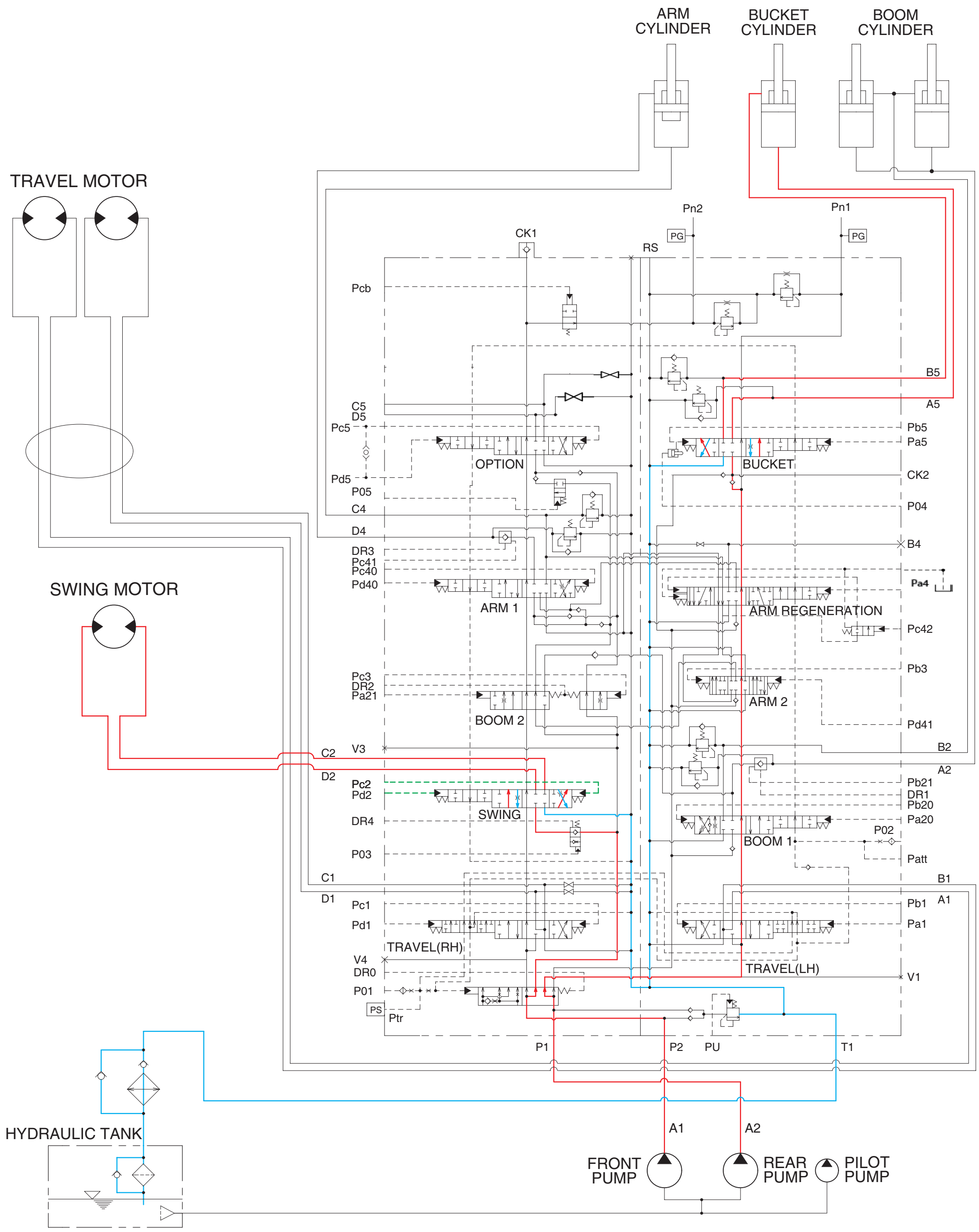


When the swing and arm functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the arm cylinder through arm 1 spool.

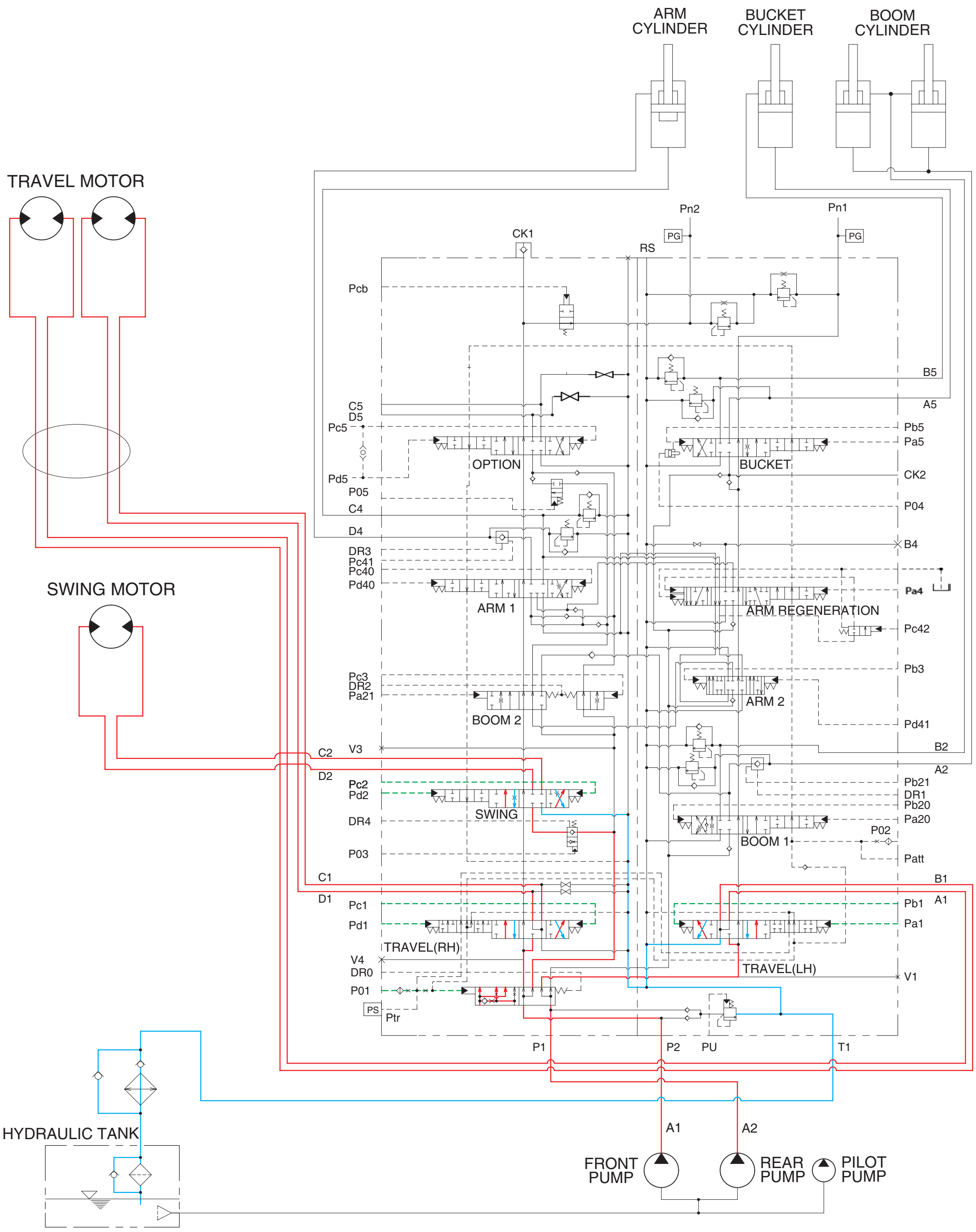
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinder through the arm 2 spool of the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the arm is operated.

4. COMBINED SWING AND BUCKET OPERATION



When the swing and bucket functions are operated, the swing and bucket spools changed. The oil flows from the A2 pump through the bucket section of the main control valve to the bucket cylinder and the bucket functions. The oil flows from A1 pump through swing section of the main control valve to the swing motor and swing the superstructure.

5. COMBINED SWING AND TRAVEL OPERATION

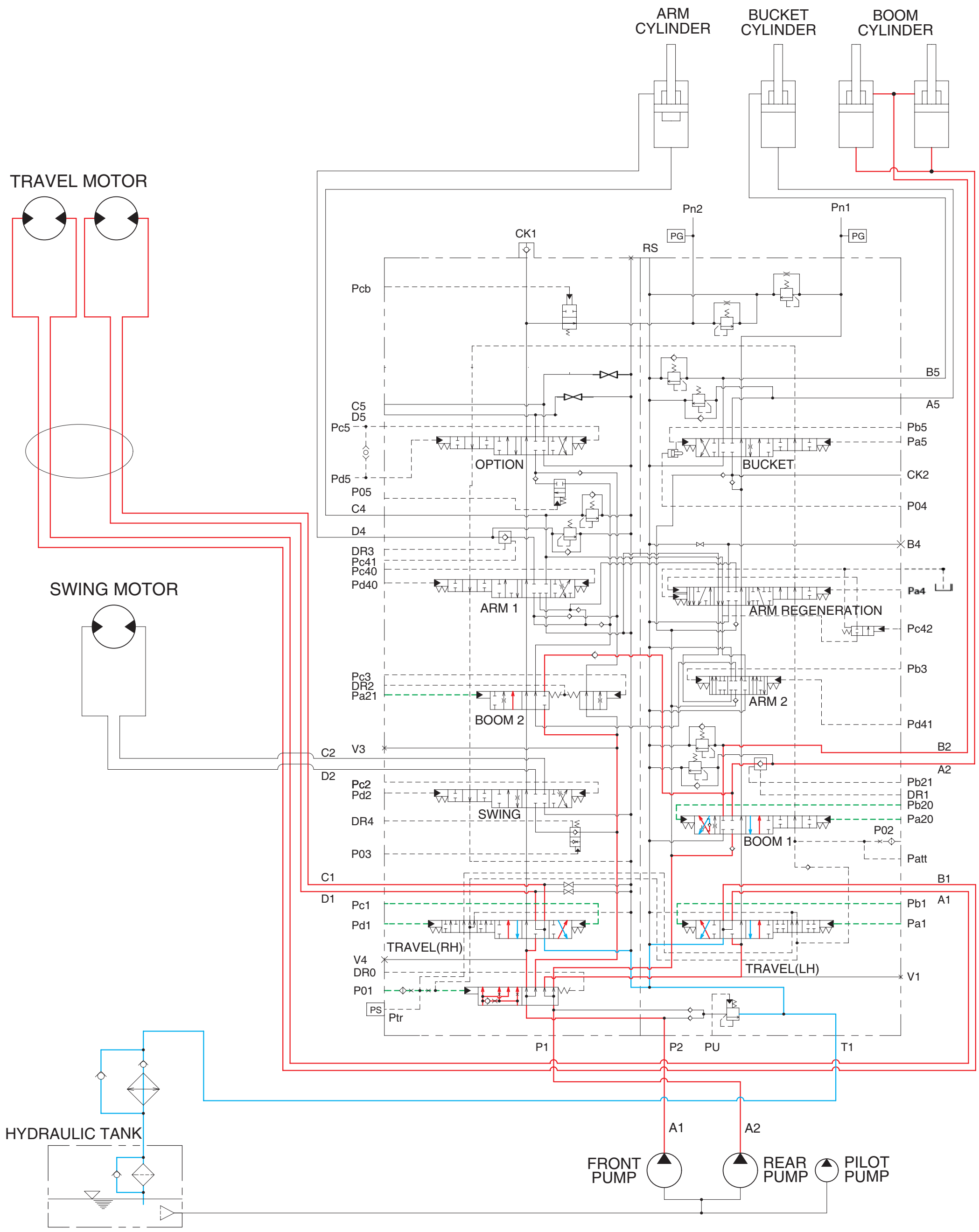


When the swing and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. At the same time, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motor through the RH travel spool of the right control valve and the LH travel spool of the left control valve via the straight travel spool.

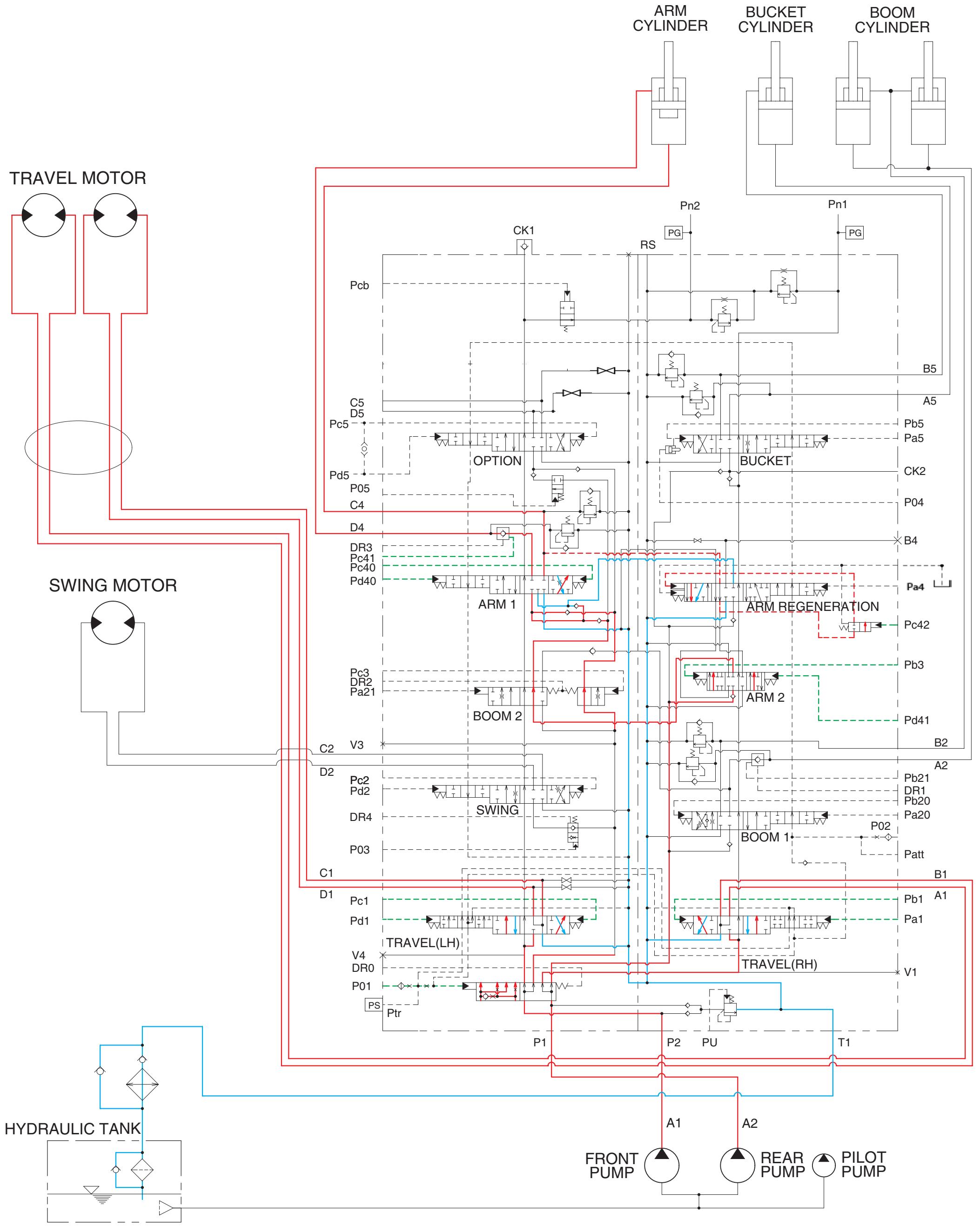
The superstructure swings and the machine travels straight.

6. COMBINED BOOM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



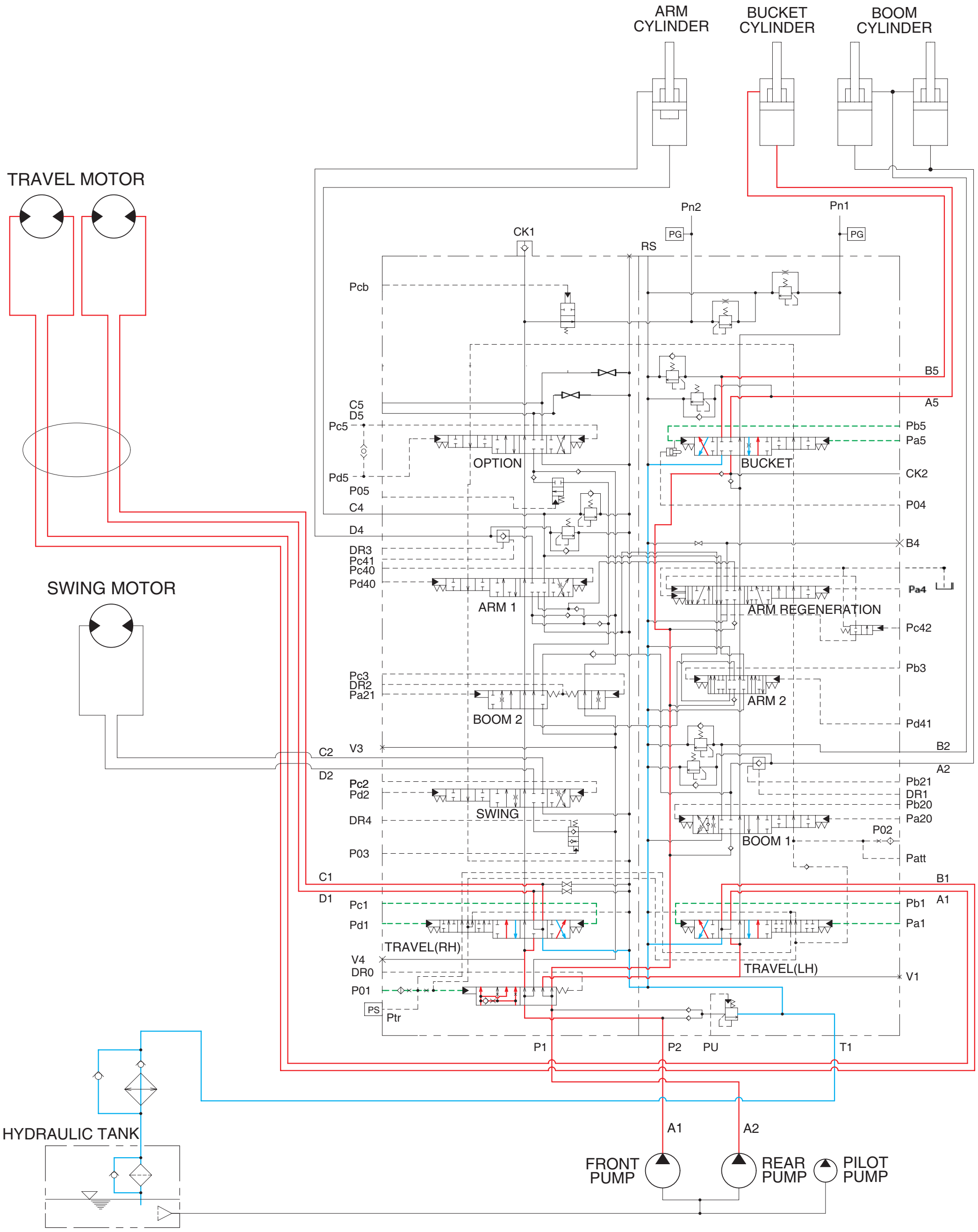
When the boom and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the boom spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. At the same time, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool and boom 1 spool via the parallel and confluence passage in case boom up operation. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the right control valve and the LH travel spool of the left control valve via the straight travel spool.

7. COMBINED ARM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



When the arm and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the arm spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. At the same time, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinders through the arm 1 spool and arm 2 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the right control valve and the LH travel spool of the left control valve via the straight travel spool.

8. COMBINED BUCKET AND TRAVEL OPERATION



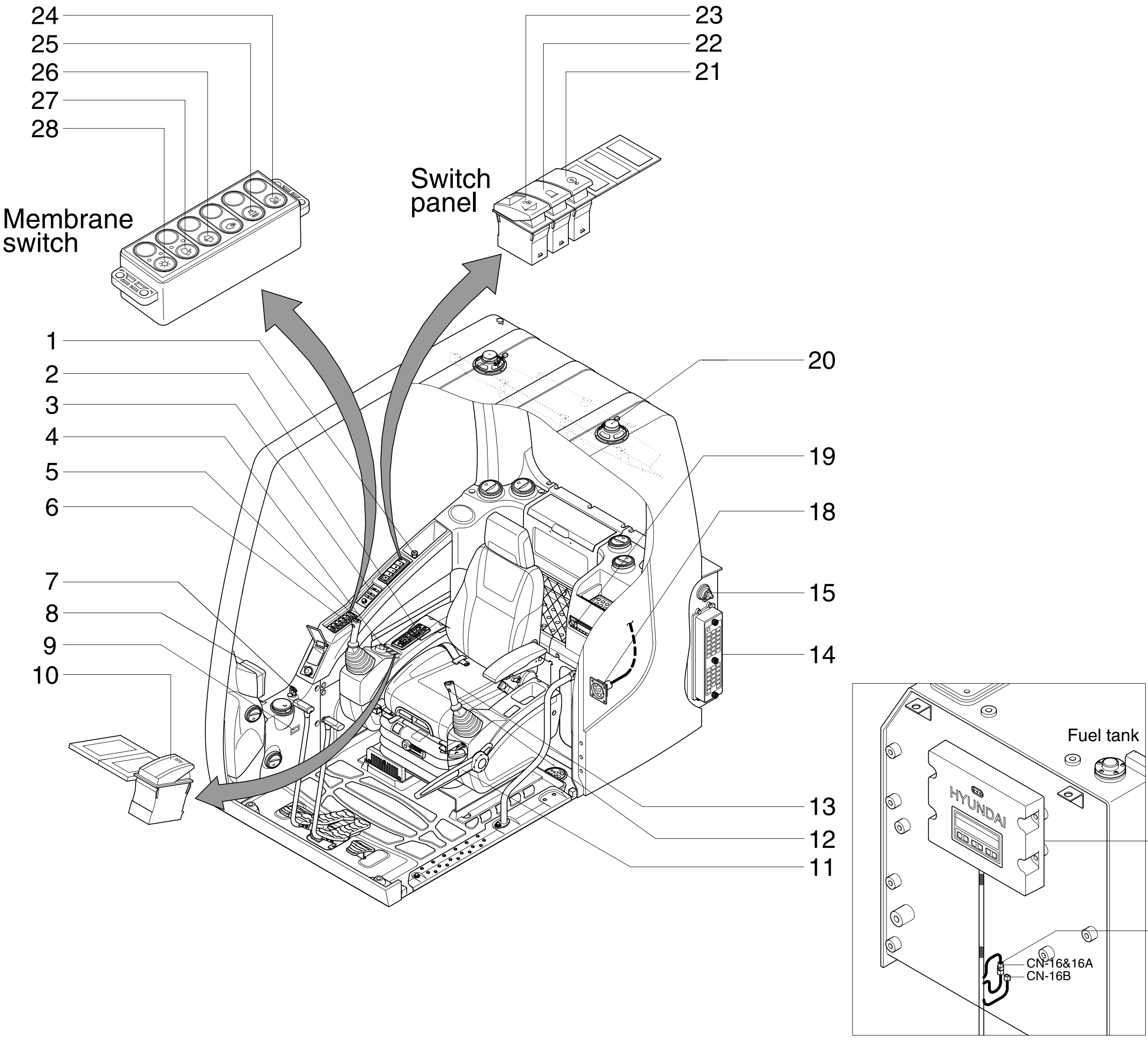
When the bucket and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the bucket spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. At the same time, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool via the confluence oil passage. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the right control valve and the LH travel spool of the left control valve via the straight travel spool of the control valve.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

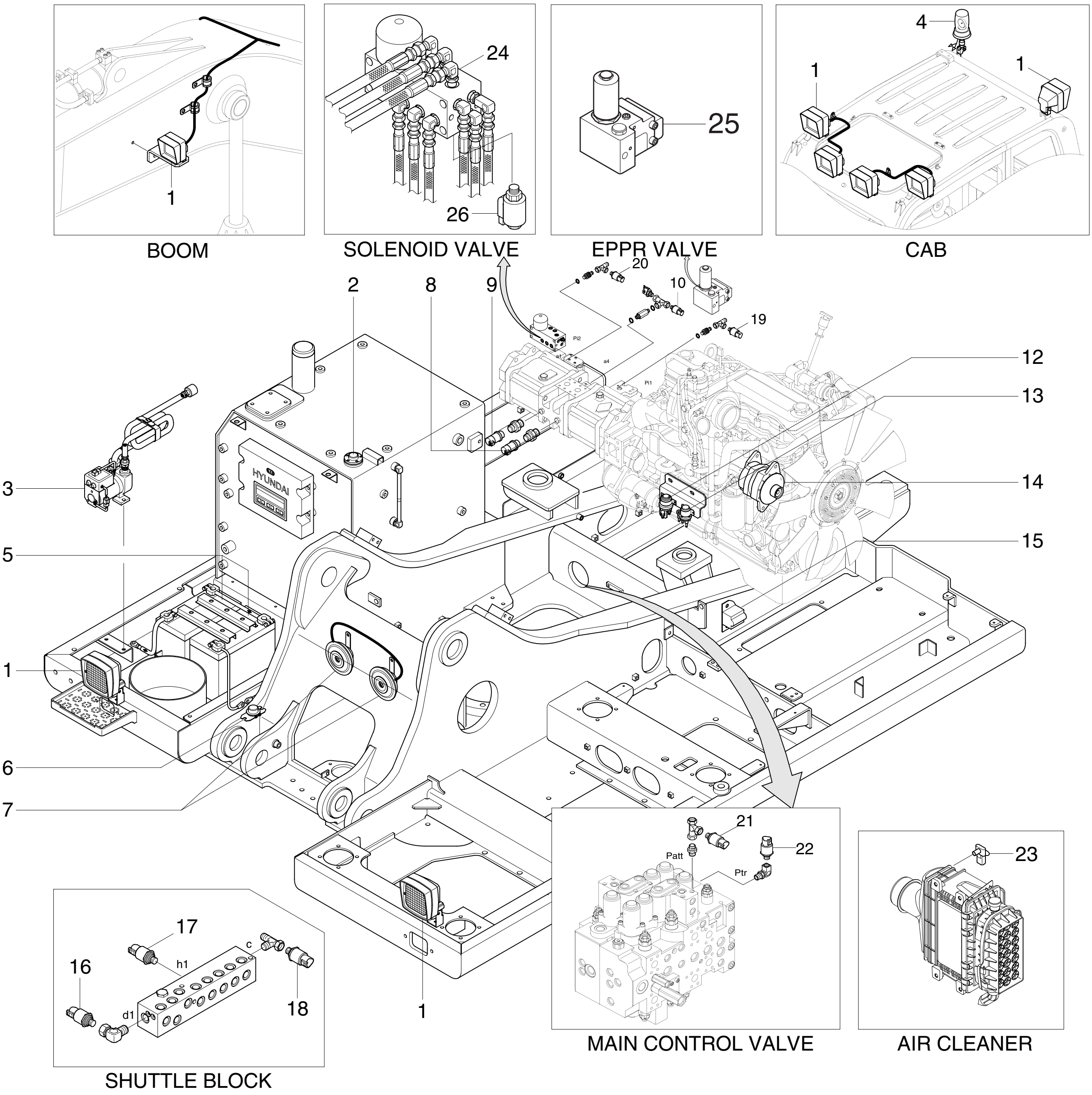
GROUP 1 COMPONENT LOCATION

1. LOCATION 1

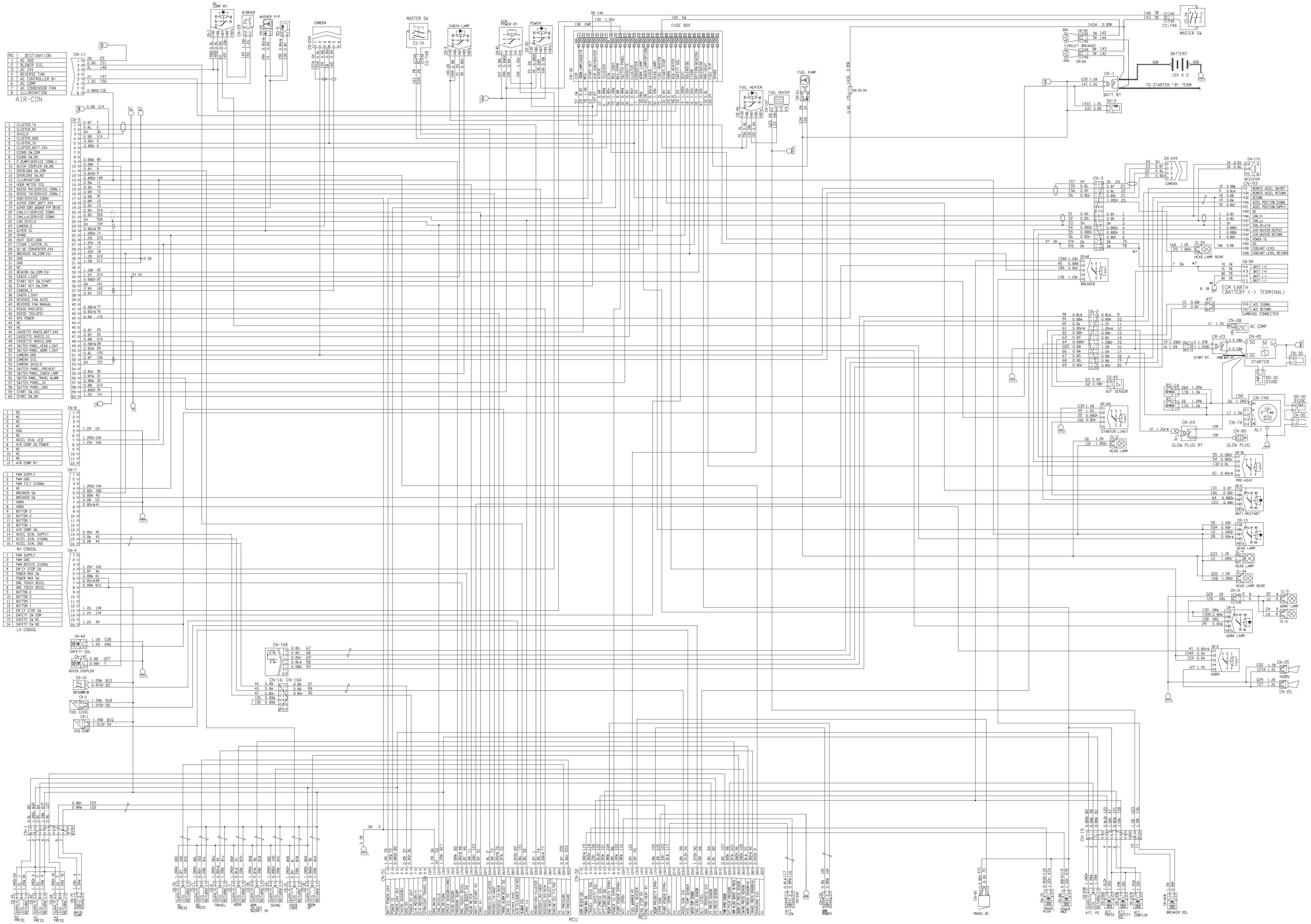


1	Cigar lighter	10	Air compressor switch(option)	20	Speaker
2	Air conditioner switch	11	Safety lever	21	Overload switch(option)
3	Remote controller	12	Power max switch	22	Beacon switch(option)
4	Accel dial switch	13	One touch decel switch	23	Quick clamp switch(option)
5	Horn switch	14	Fuse & relay box	24	Cab light switch
6	Breaker operation switch (option)	15	Master switch	25	Travel alarm switch
7	Start switch	16	Emergency engine connector	26	Washer switch
8	Cluster	17	Machine control unit	27	Wiper switch
9	Hour meter	18	RS232 & J1939 service socket	28	Main light switch
		19	Radio & USB player		

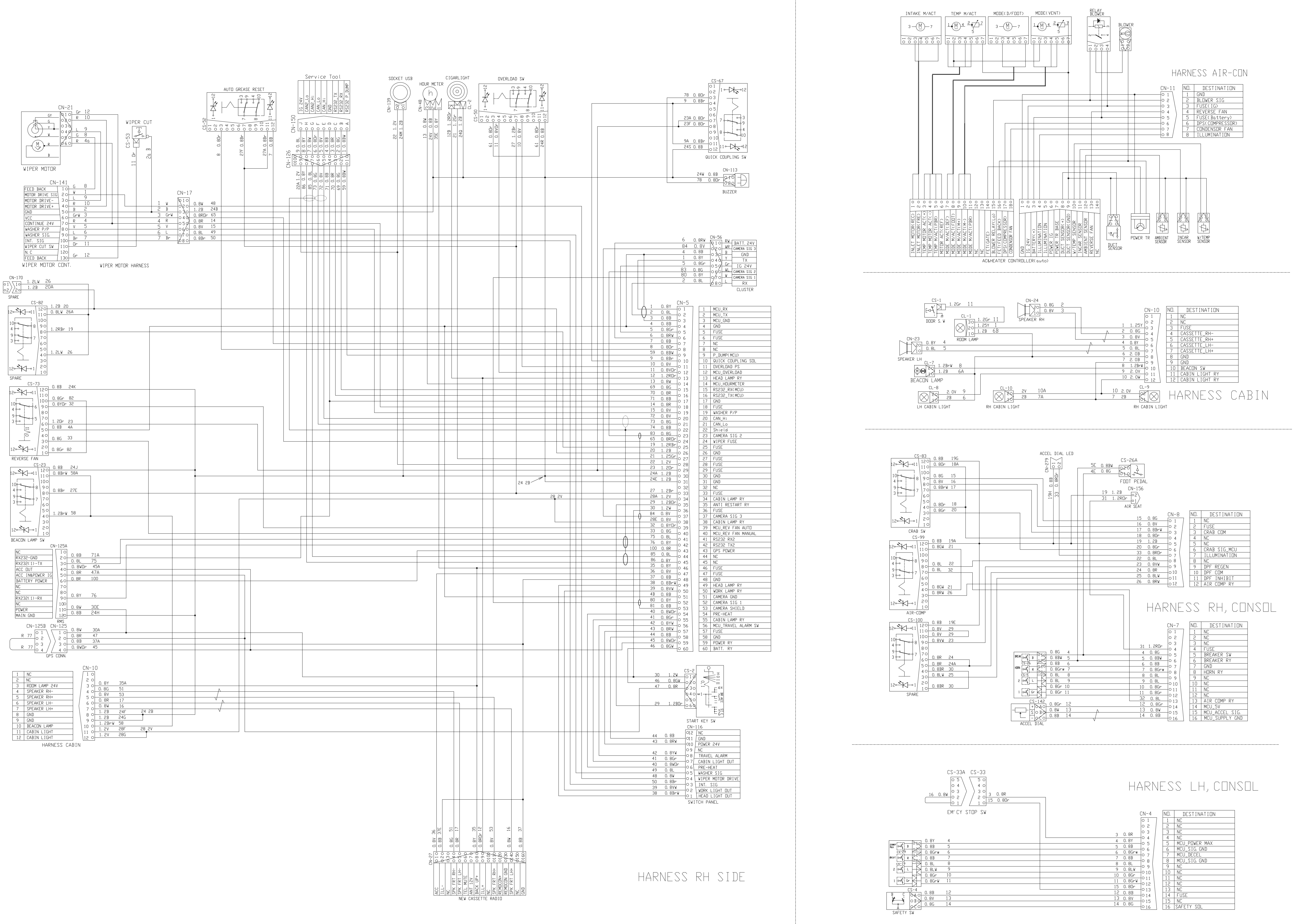
2. LOCATION 2



1	Lamp	10	EPPR pressure sensor	20	Posi-nega 2 pressure sensor
2	Fuel sender	12	Start relay	21	Attach pressure sensor
3	Fuel filler pump	13	Heater relay	22	Travel pressure sensor
4	Beacon lamp	14	Alternator	23	Air cleaner sensor
5	Battery	15	Travel alarm buzzer	24	Solenoid valve
6	Battery relay	16	Arm/Bucket in pressure sensor	25	Pump EPPR valve
7	Horn	17	Boom up pressure sensor	26	Boom priority EPPR valve
8	P1 pressure sensor	18	Swing pressure sensor		
9	P2 pressure sensor	19	Posi-nega 1 pressure sensor		



· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/2)



MEMORANDUM

HYUNDAI HEAVY INDUSTRIES CO., LTD
CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT DIV.

1. POWER CIRCUIT

The negative terminal of battery is grounded to the machine chassis through master switch.

When the start switch is in the OFF position, the current flows from the positive battery terminal as shown below.

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery → Battery relay → Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74]

→ Fuse box [No.1] → I/conn[CN-3(7,14,15)] → ECM [CN-94 (1,3,5)]

→ Fuse box [No.2] → I/conn [CN-5 (46)] → I/conn [CN -10 (3)] → Room lamp [CL-1 (2)]
- → Cassette radio [CN-27 (8)]
- → Hour meter [CN-48 (1)]

→ Fuse box [No.3] → MCU controller [CN-51 (1)]

→ Fuse box [No.4]
- → Master switch [CS-74B] → I/conn [CN-5 (36)]
  - → Start switch [CS-2 (1)]
  - → RMS [CN-125A (11)]
  - → GPS CONN [CN-125 (1)]
- → ECM POWER RELAY [CR-45 (3)]
- → POWER RELAY [CR-35 (30)]

→ Fuse box [No.5] → I/conn [CN-11 (5)]
- → AC & Heater controller (3)
- → Blower relay (3)

→ Fuse box [No.6] → I/conn [CN-5 (18)] → I/conn [CN-17 (5)]
- → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (7)]
- → Wiper motor [CN-21 (6)]

→ Fuse box [No.7] → I/conn [CN-5 (6)] → Cluster[CN-56 (1)]

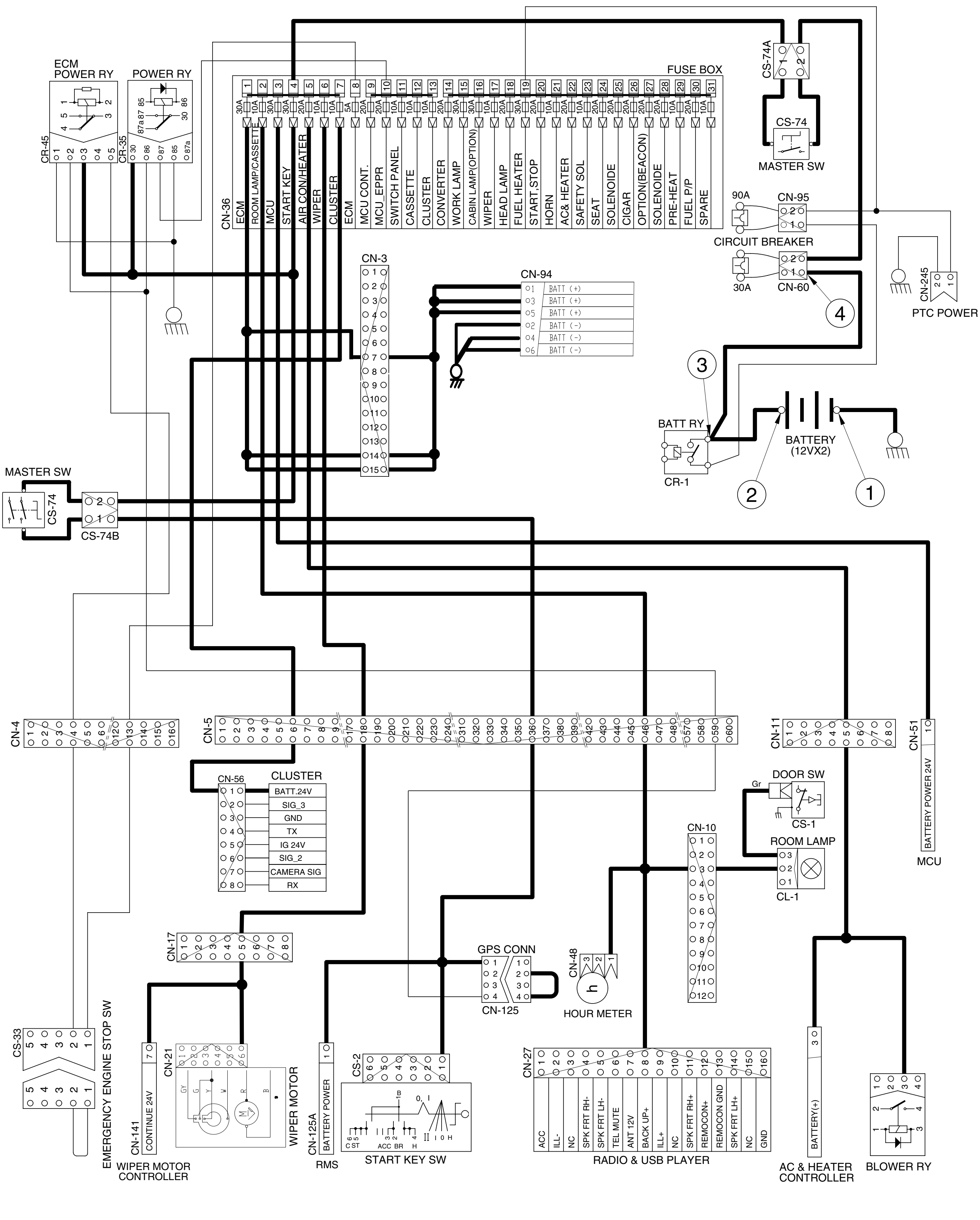
※ I/conn : Intermediate connector

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	OFF	① - GND (battery 1EA)	10~12.5V
		② - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		③ - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		④ - GND (fusible link)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

POWER CIRCUIT



2. STARTING CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery(+) terminal → Battery relay [CR-1] → Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74] → Fuse box [No.4] → I/conn [CN-5(36)] → Start switch [CS-2(1)]

(1) When start key switch is in ON position

→ Start switch ON [CS-2 (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (60)] → Battery relay [CR-1]
→ Battery relay operating (all power is supplied with the electric component)
→ Start switch ON [CS-2 (3)] → RMS [CN-125A (5)]
→ RMS conn [CN-125 (2)→(4)] → I/conn [CN-5 (59)]

→ Power relay [CR-35 (86) → (87)] Fuse box [No.9,10,11,12,13]
→ ECM power relay [CR-45 (2) → (5)] I/conn [CN-4 (4)]
→ Emergency engine stop sw [CN-33 (2) → (1)] → I/conn [CN-4 (13)] → Fuse box [No. 8]

(2) When start key switch is in START position

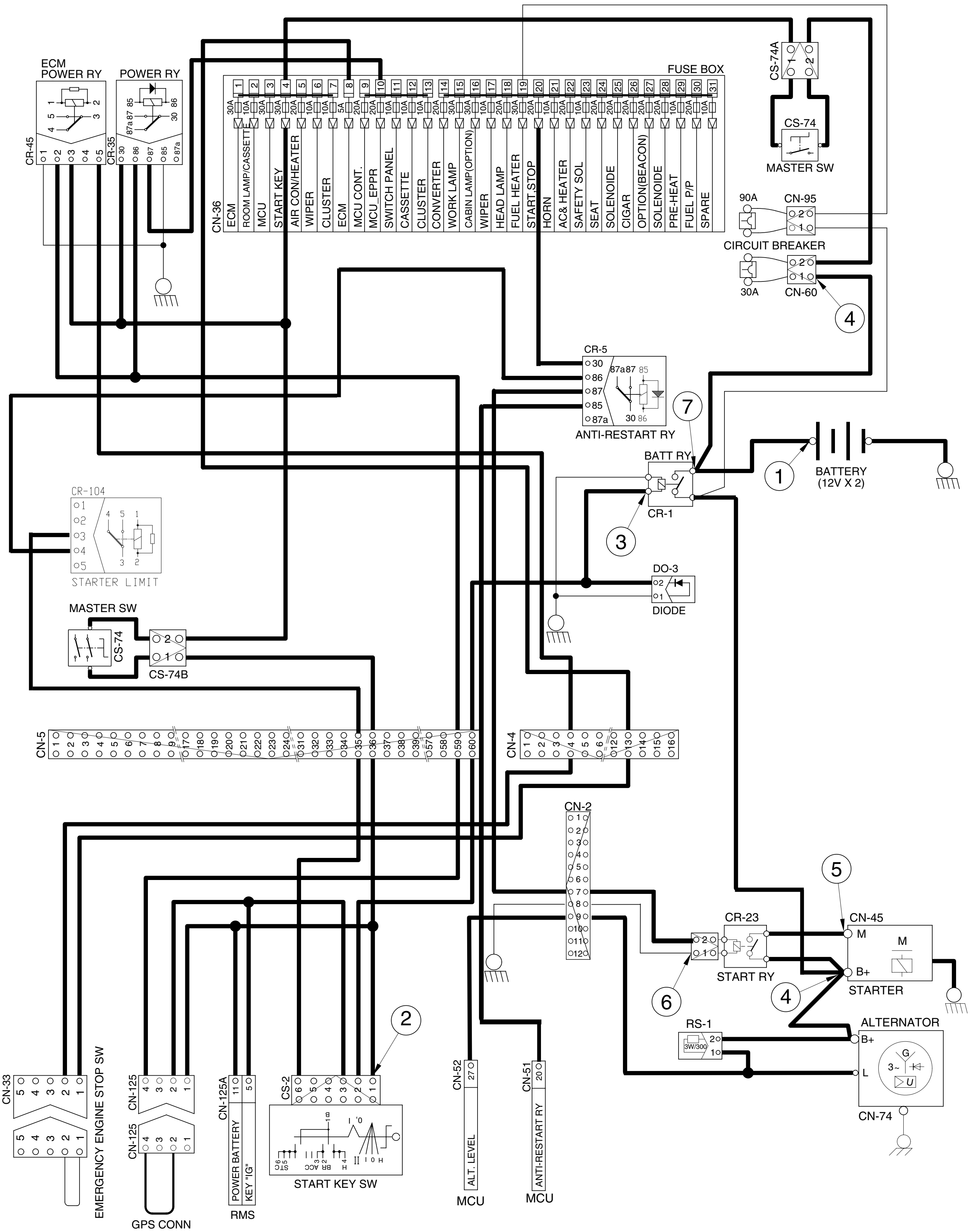
Start switch START [CS-2 (6)] →i/conn [CN-5 (35)] →Stater limit relay [CR-104(3) →(4)] →Anti-restart relay [CR-5 (86)→(87)]→I/conn [CN-2 (7)]→start relay [CR-23(2)] → Starter motor operating

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OPERATING	START	① - GND (battery) ② - GND (start key) ③ - GND (battery relay M4) ④ - GND (starter B^+) ⑤ - GND (starter M) ⑥ - GND (start relay) ⑦ - GND (battery relay M8)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

STARTING CIRCUIT



3. CHARGING CIRCUIT

When the starter is activated and the engine is started, the operator releases the key switch to the ON position.

Charging current generated by operating alternator flows into the battery through the battery relay [CR-1].

The current also flows from alternator to each electrical component and controller through the fuse box.

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Warning flow

Alternator "I" terminal → I/conn [CN-2 (9)] → MCU alternator level [CN-52 (27)]

Cluster charging warning lamp(Via serial interface)

(2) Charging flow

Alternator "B^+" terminal → Battery relay → Battery(+) terminal

→ Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74]

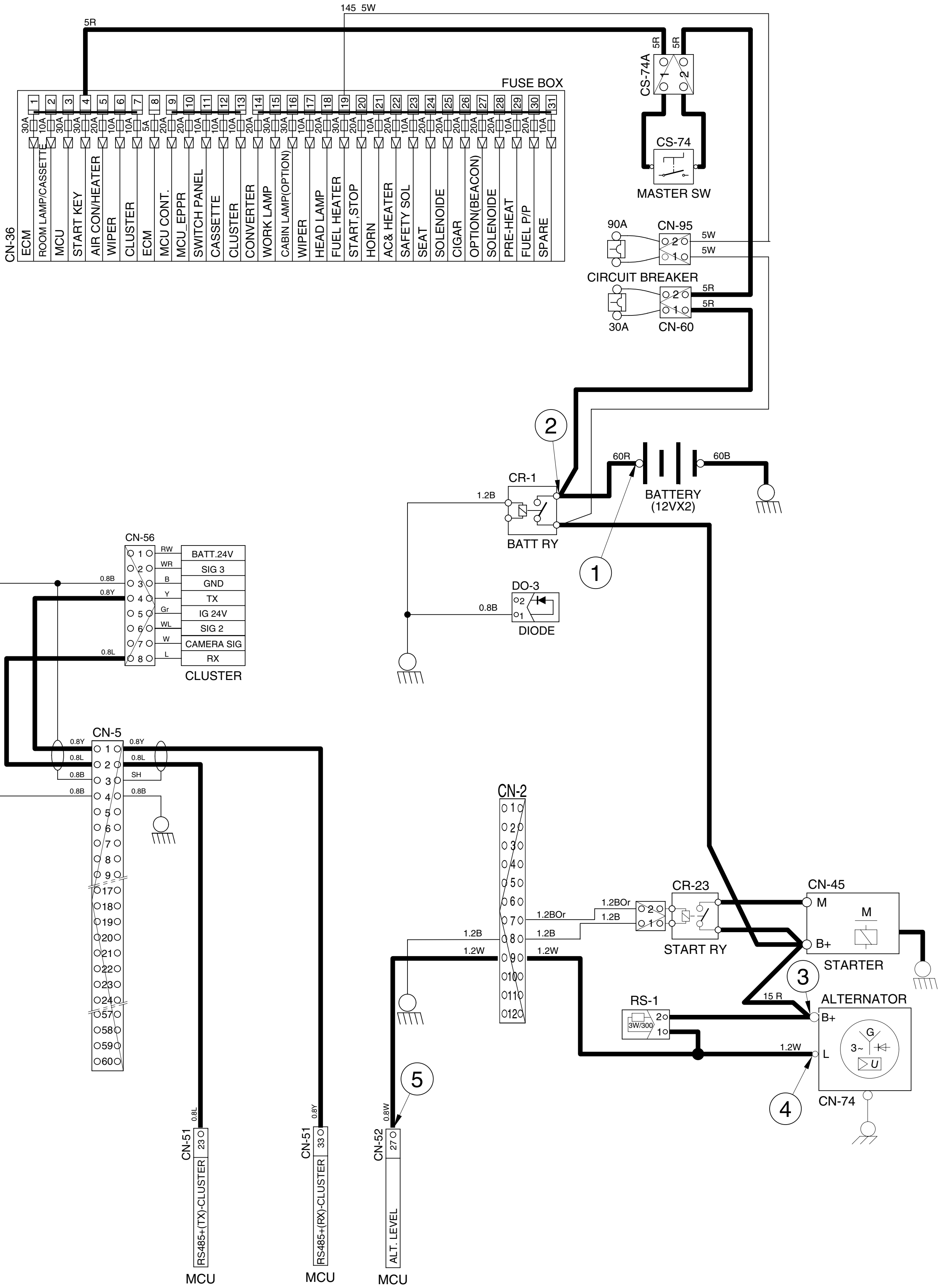
→ Fuse box

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
Run	ON	① - GND (battery voltage) ② - GND (battery relay) ③ - GND (alternator B^+ terminal) ④ - GND (alternator I terminal) ⑤ - GND (MCU)	20~30V

※ GND : Ground

CHARGING CIRCUIT



4. HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.15) → Work light relay [CR-4 (30, 86)]
Fuse box (No.18) → Head light relay [CR-13 (30, 86)]

(1) Head light switch ON

Head light switch ON [CN-116 (1)] → I/conn [CN-5 (49)] → Head light relay [CR-13 (85) → (87)]
→ Head light ON [CL-3 (1), CL-4 (1)]
→ I/conn [CN-11 (8)] → AC&Heater controller (4)
→ I/conn [CN-5 (13)] → Radio [CN-27 (9)]
→ Cigar light [CL-2]
→ I/conn [CN-8 (7)] → CN-279(2)

(2) Work light switch ON

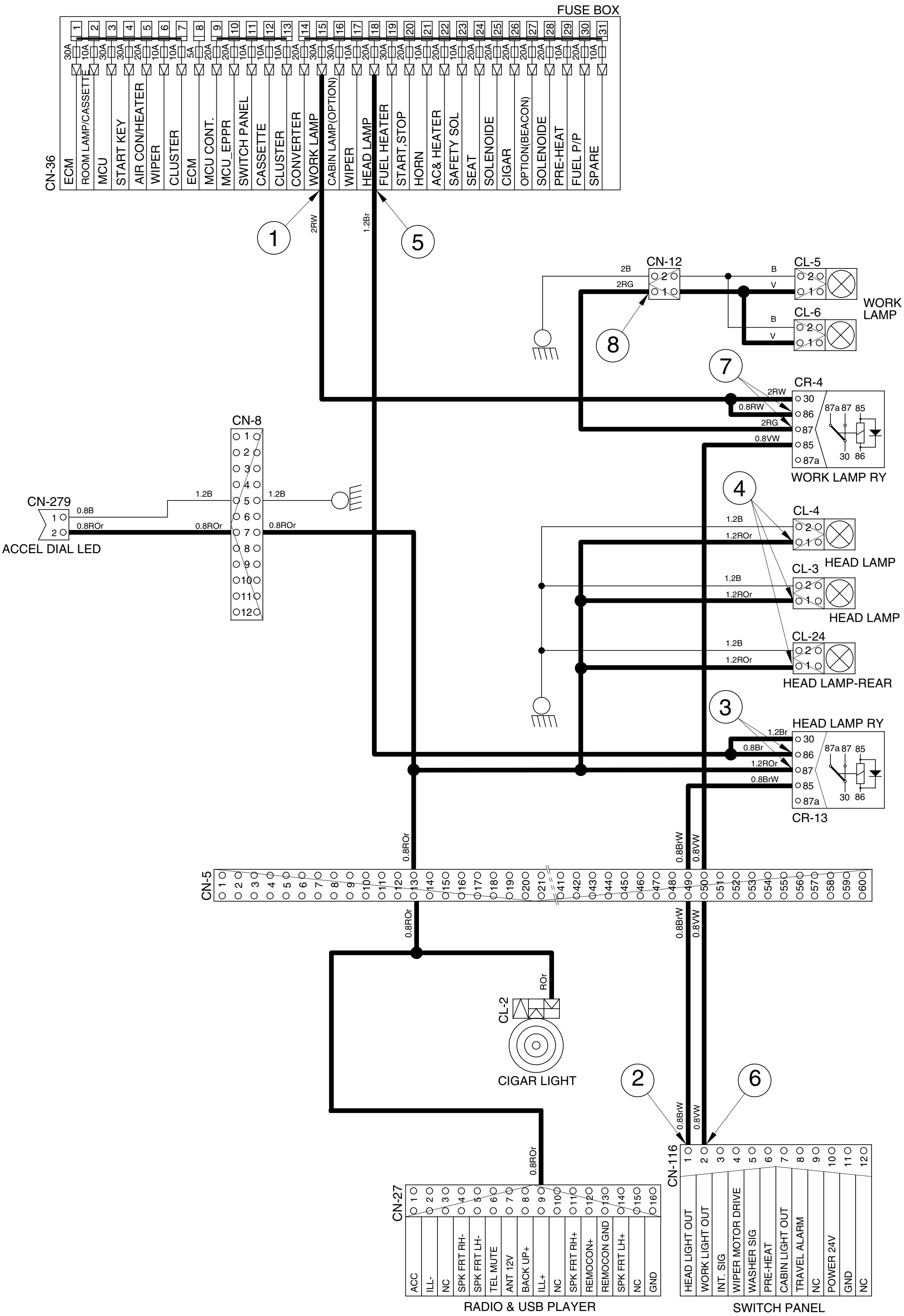
Work light switch ON [CN-116 (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (50)] → Work light relay [CR-4 (85) → (87)]
→ I/conn [CN-12 (1)] → Work light ON [CL-5 (1), CL-6 (1)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power output) ③ - GND (head light relay) ④ - GND (head light) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (switch power output) ⑦ - GND (work light relay) ⑧ - GND (work light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT



5. BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No. 27) → I/conn [CN-5 (33)] → Beacon lamp switch [CS-23 (8)]
Fuse box (No.16) → Cab light relay [CR-9 (30, 86)]

(1) Beacon lamp switch ON

Beacon lamp switch ON [CS-23 (4)] ┬→ Switch indicator lamp ON [CS-23 (11)]
└→ I/conn [CN-10 (10)] → Beacon lamp ON [CL-7]

(2) Cab light switch ON

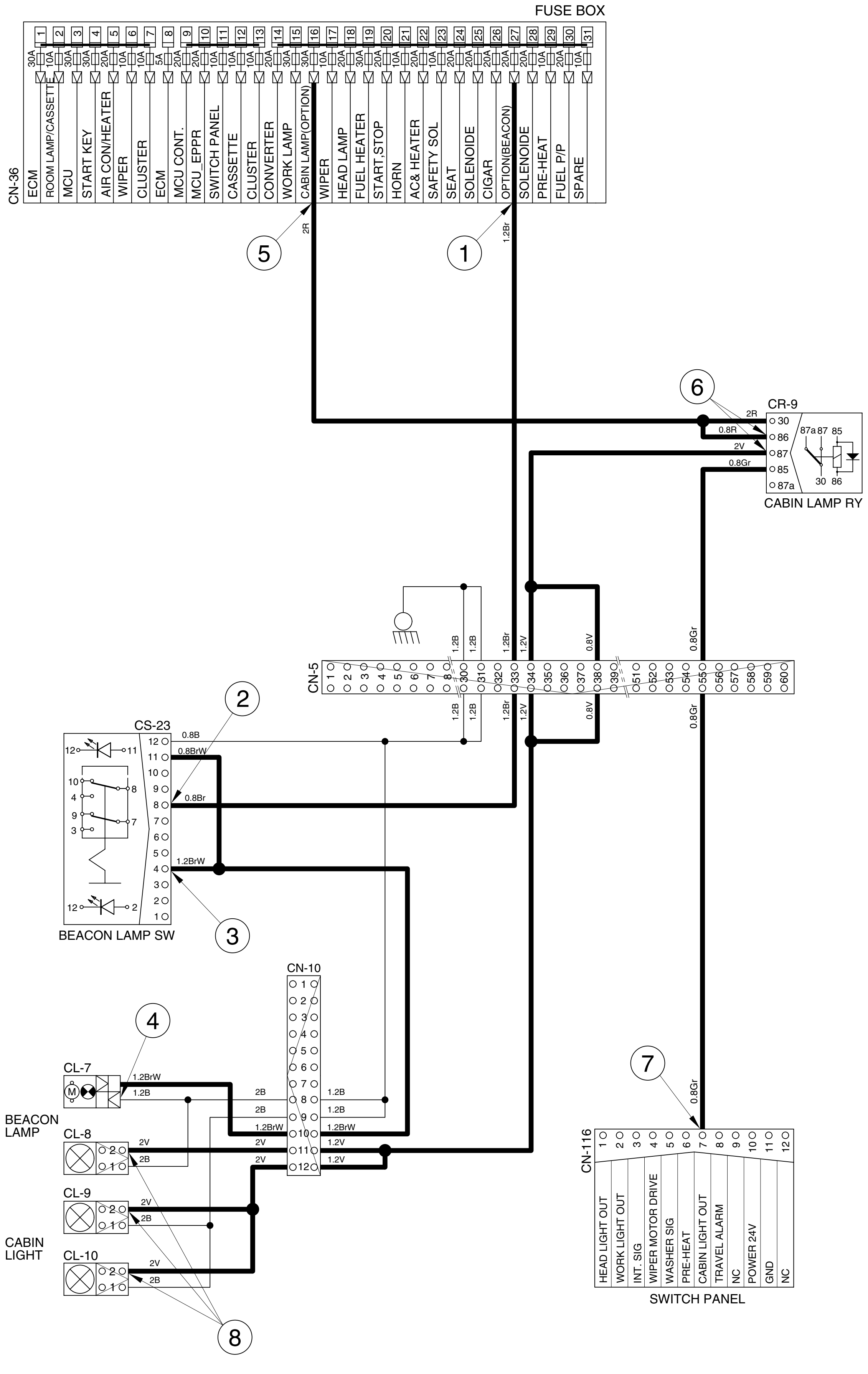
Cab light switch ON [CN-116 (7)] → I/conn [CN-5 (55)] → Cabin light relay [CR-9 (85) → (87)]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (34,38)] ┬→ I/conn [CN-10 (11)] → cab light on [CL-8 (2)]
└→ I/conn [CN-10 (12)] → cab light on [CL-9 (2),[CL-10 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power input) ③ - GND (switch power output) ④ - GND (beacon lamp) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (cab light relay) ⑦ - GND (switch power output) ⑧ - GND (cab light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT



6. WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No.11) → I/conn [CN-5 (57)] → Switch panel [CN-116 (10)]

Fuse box (No.6) → I/conn [CN-5 (18)] → I/conn [CN-17 (5)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141(7)]
→ Wiper motor [CN-21(6)]

Fuse box (No.17) → I/conn [CN-5 (24)] → I/conn [CN-17 (4)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (6)]
→ Washer pump [CN-22 (2)]

(2) Wiper switch ON : 1st step (Intermittent)

Wiper switch ON [CN-116 (3)] → I/conn [CN-17 (8)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (10) → (4)]
→ Wiper motor intermittently operating [CN-21 (2)]

(3) Wiper switch ON : 2nd step (continual)

Wiper switch ON [CN-116(4)] → I/conn[CN-17(2)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141(2) → (4)]
→ Wiper motor operating [CN-21(2)]

(4) Washer switch ON

Washer switch ON [CN-116 (5)] → I/conn [CN-17 (7)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (9) → (8)]
→ I/conn [CN-17 (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (19)] → Washer pump [CN-22 (1)] → Washer operating
Wiper switch ON [CN-116 (4)] → I/conn[CN-17 (2)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (2) → (4)]
→ Wiper motor operating [CN-21 (2)]

(5) Auto parking(when switch OFF)

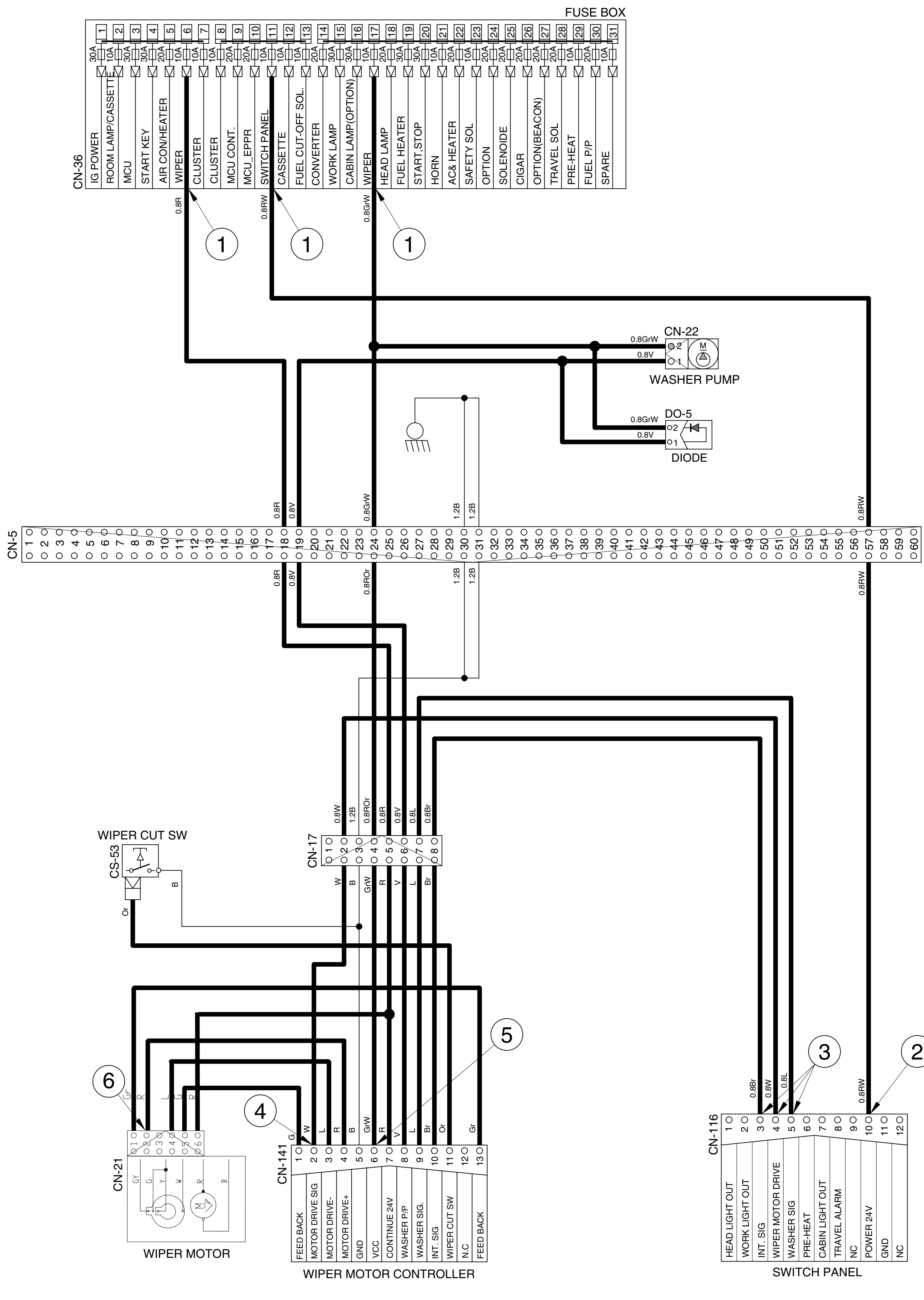
Switch OFF [CN-116 (4)] → Wiper motor parking position by wiper motor controller

2) CHECK POINT

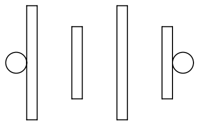
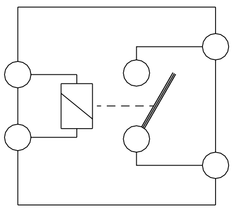
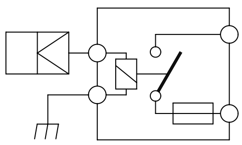
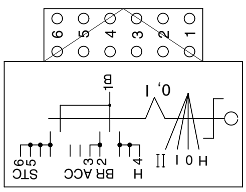
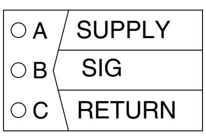
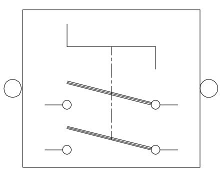
Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power input)	24V
		③ - GND (switch power output) ④ - GND (wiper power input)	0 ~ 5V
		⑤ - GND (wiper power output)	24V
		⑥ - GND (wiper motor)	0 or 24V

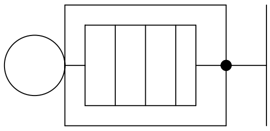
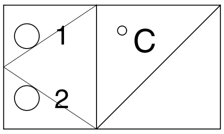
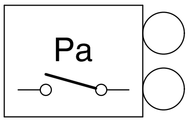
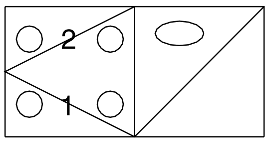
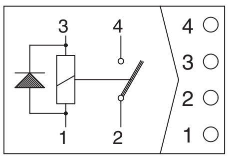
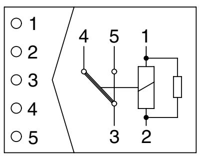
※ GND : Ground

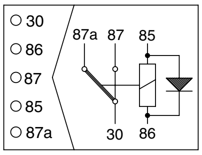
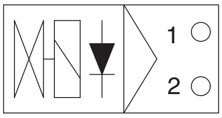
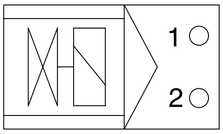
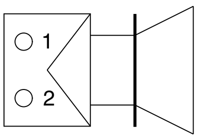
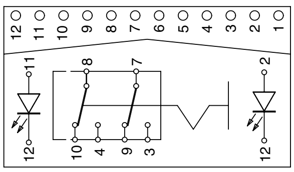
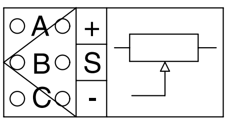
WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

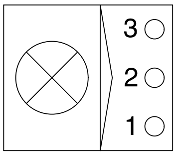
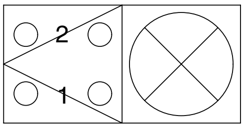
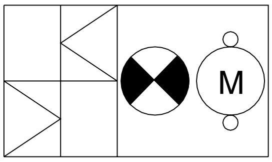
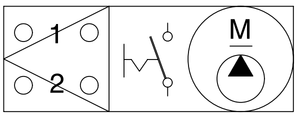
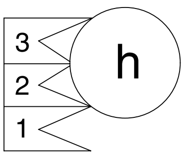
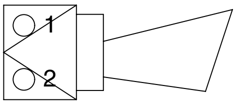


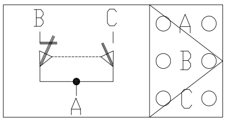
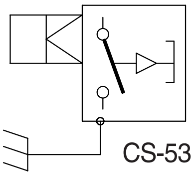
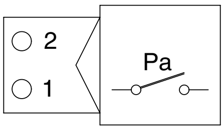
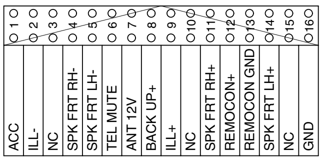
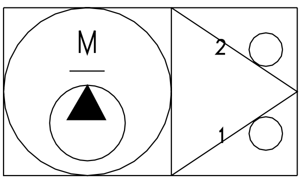
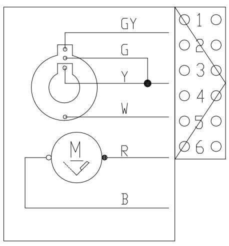
GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SPECIFICATION

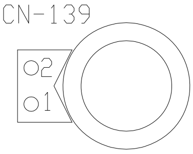
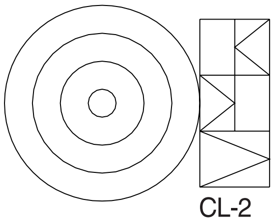
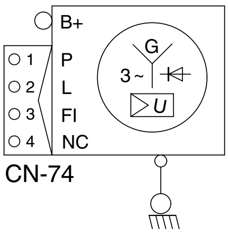
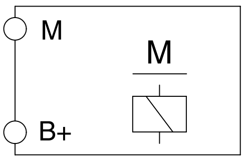
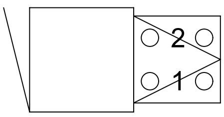
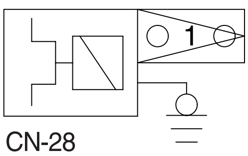
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Battery		12V × 100Ah (2EA)	※ Check specific gravity 1.280 over : Over charged 1.280 ~ 1.250 : Normal 1.250 below : Recharging
Battery relay	 CR-1	Rated load : 24V 100A (continuity) 1000A (30seconds)	※ Check coil resistance(M4 to M4) Normal : About 50 Ω ※ Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Glow plug relay	 CR-24	24V 200A	※ Check contact Normal : 0.942 Ω (For terminal 1-GND)
Start key	 CS-2	B-BR : 24V 1A B-ACC : 24V 10A B-ST : 24V 40A	※ Check contact OFF : ∞ Ω (for each terminal) ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-3 and 1-2) START : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-5)
Pressure sensor	 CD-6 CD-7 CD-24 CD-31 CD-32 CD-35 CD-42 CD-43 CD-44 CD-70 CD-71	8~30V	※ Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Master switch	 CS-74A CS-74B	6-36V	※ Check disconnection Normal : 0.1 Ω

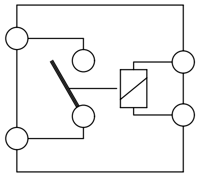
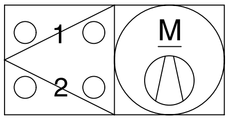
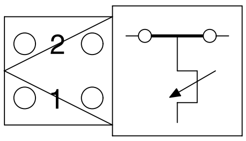
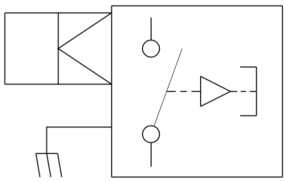
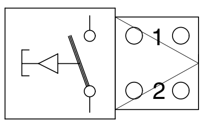
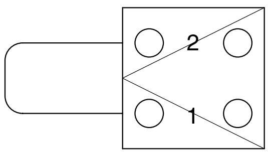
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Glow plug	 CN-80	24V 200A	※ Check resistance 0.25~0.12 Ω
Temperature sensor (hydraulic)	 CD-1	-	※ Check resistance 50˚C : 804 Ω 80˚C : 310 Ω 100˚C : 180 Ω
Air cleaner pressure switch	 CD-10	-	※ Check contact High level : ∞ Ω Low level : 0 Ω
Fuel level sender	 CD-2	-	※ Check resistance Full : 50 Ω 6/12 : 350 Ω 11/12 : 100 Ω 5/12 : 400 Ω 10/12 : 150 Ω 4/12 : 450 Ω 9/12 : 200 Ω 3/12 : 500 Ω 8/12 : 250 Ω 2/12 : 550 Ω 7/12 : 300 Ω 1/12 : 600 Ω Empty warning : 700 Ω
Relay (air con blower)		24V 20A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 200 Ω (for terminal 1-3) 0 Ω (for terminal 2-4)
Relay	 CR-2 CR-36 CR-45 CR-62 CR104	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (for terminal 3-4) ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-5)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Relay	 CR-4 CR-5 CR-7 CR-9 CR-13 CR-35 CR-46	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 85-86) 0 Ω (for terminal 30-87a) ∞ Ω (for terminal 30-87)
Solenoid valve	 CN-68 CN-66 CN-70 CN-88 CN-140 CN-149 CN-236 CN-237	24V 1A	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
EPPR valve	 CN-75 CN-133 CN-242	700mA	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Speaker	 CN-23(LH) CN-24(RH)	20W	※ Check resistance Normal : A few Ω
Switch (locking type)	 CS-23 CS-50 CS-52 CS-67 CS-73 CS-82 CS-83 CS-99 CS-100	24V 8A	※ Check contact Normal ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) ∞ Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10) OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) 0 Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10)
Accel dial	 CN-142	-	※ Check resist Normal : About 5k Ω (for terminal A-C) ※ Check voltage Normal : About 5V (for terminal A-C) : 2~4.5V (for terminal C-B)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Room lamp	 CL-1	24V 10W	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.0 Ω ON : 0 Ω (For terminal 1-2) ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-3) OFF : ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (For terminal 1-3)
Head lamp, Work lamp, Cab lamp	 CL-3 CL-4 CL-5 CL-6 CL-8 CL-9 CL-10 CL-24	24V 65W (H3 Type)	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.2 Ω
Beacon lamp	 CL-7	21V 70W (H1 Type)	※Check disconnection Normal : A few Ω
Fuel filler pump	 CN-61	24V 10A 35 l /min	※Check resistance Normal : 1.0 Ω
Service meter	 CN-48	16~32V	※Check operation Supply power(24V) to terminal No.2 and connect terminal No.1 and ground
Horn	 CN-20 CN-25	DC22~28V 2A	※Check operation Supply power(24V) to each terminal and connect ground.

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Safety switch	 CS-4	24V 15A (N.C TYPE)	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal A-B) ∞ Ω (for terminal A-C) Operating : ∞ Ω (for terminal A-B) 0 Ω (for terminal A-C)
Wiper cut switch	 CS-53	24V (N.O TYPE)	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (one pin to ground)
Receiver dryer	 CN-29	24V 2.5A	※Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Radio & USB plalyer	 CN-27	24V 2A	※Check voltage 20~25V (for terminal 1-3, 3-8)
Washer pump	 CN-22	24V 3.8A	※Check contact Normal : 10.7 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Wiper motor	 CN-21	24V 2A	※Check disconnection Normal : 7 Ω (for terminal 2-6)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Socket USB	 CN-139	—	—
Cigar lighter	 CL-2	24V 5A 1.4W	※Check coil resistance Normal : About 1M Ω ※Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω Operating time : 5~15sec
Alternator	 CN-74	24V 50A	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal B+-I) Normal : 24~27.5V
Starter	 CN-45	Denso 24V 4.5kW	※Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Travel alarm	 CN-81	24V 0.5A	※Check contact Normal : 5.2 Ω
Aircon compressor	 CN-28	24V 79W	※Check contact Normal : 13.4 Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Start relay	 CR-23	24V 300A	※Check contact Normal : 0.94 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Blower motor		24V 9.5A	※Check resistance Normal : 2.5 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Duct sensor (switch)		1˚C OFF 4˚C ON	※Check resistance Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2), the atmosphere temp : Over 4˚C
Door switch	 CS-1	24V 2W	※Check resistance Normal : About 5M Ω
Switch (power max, one touch decel, horn, breaker)	 CS-5,19,26,29	24V 6A	※Check resistance Normal : ∞ Ω
Fusible link	 CN-60 CN-95	CN-60: 60A CN-95: 30A	※Check disconnection normal : 0 Ω (connect ring terminal and check resist between terminal 1 and 2)

GROUP 4 CONNECTORS

1. CONNECTOR DESTINATION

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-1	AMP	10	I/conn (Frame harness-Pump PS harness)	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-2	AMP	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-3	AMP	15	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-4	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness LH-Frame harness)	368047-1	368050-1
CN-5	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Side harness RH-Frame harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB14-60PAE-L018
CN-7	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	368047-1	368050-1
CN-8	AMP	12	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-10	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (Cab harness-Side harness RH)	DT06-12S-EP06	DT04-12P-BE02
CN-11	DEUTSCH	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Aircon harness)	DT06-8S	-
CN-12	DEUTSCH	2	I/conn (Frame harness-Boom wire harness)	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-15	AMP	12	I/conn (Frame harness-attech harness)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-16	AMP	6	I/conn (Accel dial harness)	S816-008002	S816-108002
CN-17	AMP	8	I/conn (Wiper harness)	S816-008002	S816-108002
CN-20	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-21	AMP	6	Wiper motor	925276-0	-
CN-22	KET	2	Washer pump	MG640605	-
CN-23	KET	2	Speaker-LH	MG610070	-
CN-24	KET	2	Speaker-RH	MG610070	-
CN-25	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-27	KUM	16	Cassette radio	PK145-16017	-
CN-28	KUM	1	Aircon compressor	MWP-01F-B	-
CN-29	KET	2	Receiver dryer	MG640795	-
CN-36	-	-	Fuse & relay box	21Q7-10910	-
CN-45	RING-TERM	-	Starter motor B^+	S820-308000	DT04-4P-E005
CN-48	KET	3	Service meter	2-520193-2	-
CN-51	DEUTSCH	40	MCU (cluster type 1)	DRC26-40SA	-
CN-52	DEUTSCH	40	MCU (cluster type 1)	DRC26-40SB	-
CN-56	AMP	8	Cluster (type 1)	-	S816-108002
CN-60	AMP	2	Fusible link	21N4-01320	S813-130201
CN-61	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel filler pump	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-66	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-EP005
CN-68	DEUTSCH	2	Safety solenoid	DT06-2S	-

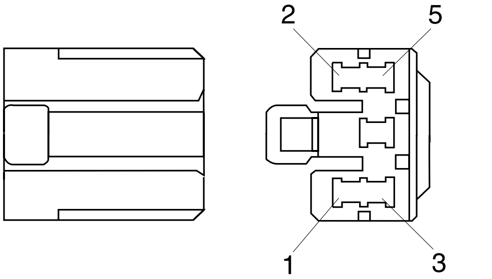
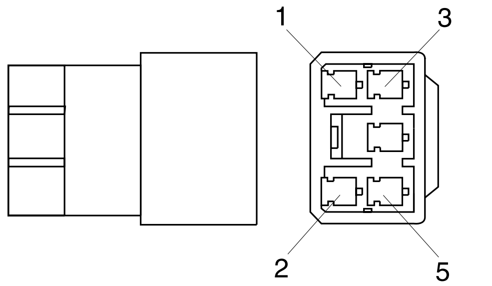
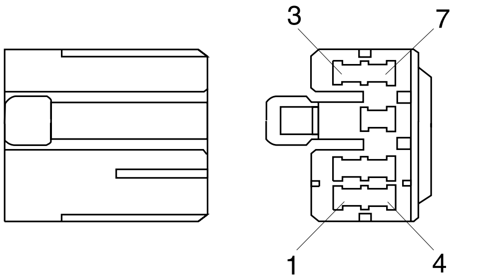
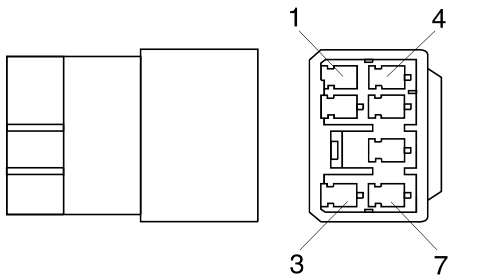
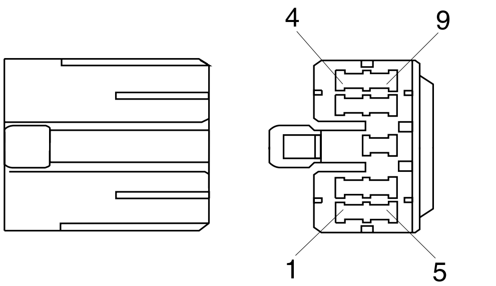
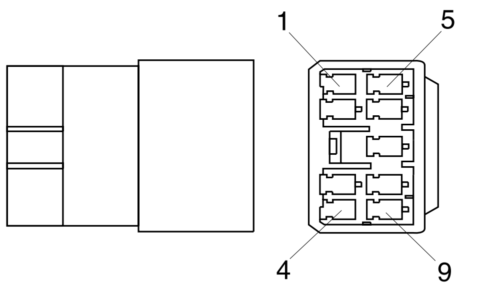
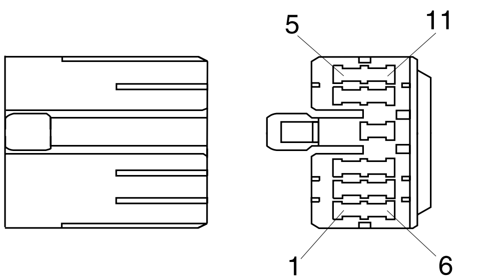
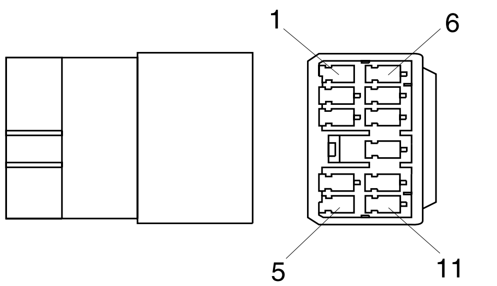
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-70	DEUTSCH	2	Travel high solenoid	DT06-2S	-
CN-74	AMP	4	Alternator "L" terminal	12186568	-
CN-75	AMP	2	Pump EPPR	S816-002002	-
CN-80	RING-TERM	-	Glow plug	S820-306000	-
CN-81	DEUTSCH	2	Travel buzzer	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-88	DEUTSCH	2	Power max solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-95	YAZAKI	2	Fusible link	21N4-01311	7122-4125-50
CN-113	KET	2	Buzzer MG651205-5	-	
CN-116	AMP	12	Switch panel	176116	-
CN-125	DEUTSCH	4	GPS CONN	-	
CN-125A	AMP	12	RMS	-	
CN-126	AMP	10	Service tool	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-133	DEUTSCH	2	Boom priority solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-139	AMP	2	12V socket	172434-2	-
CN-140	DEUTSCH	2	Quick clamp solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-141	AMP	13	Wiper motor controller	172498-1	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-142	DEUTSCH	3	Accel dial	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CN-144	AMP	4	Free harness	2-967325-3	
CN-147	AMP	4	Fuel warmer	2-967325-3	-
CN-149	DEUTSCH	2	Attach safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-156	DEUTSCH	2	Air seat	-	DT04-2P-E005
CN-173	DEUTSCH	2	Resister	-	DT04-2P-E005
CN-236	DEUTSCH	2	Attach pressure solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-237	DEUTSCH	2	Attach conflux solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-242	DEUTSCH	2	Attach flow solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-249	AMP	4	Rear view camera	S816-004002	S816-104002
CN-259	DEUTSCH	6	Camera	DT06-08SA-EP06	DT04-8P
CN-279	AMP	2	Accel dial LED	S816-002002	-
· Relay					
CR-1	RING-TERM	-	Battery relay	ST730135-2	-
CR-2	-	5	Horn relay	-	-
CR-4	-	5	Work lamp relay	-	-
CR-5	-	5	Anti restart relay	-	-
CR-7	-	5	Aircon compressor relay	-	-
CR-9	-	5	Cabin lamp relay	-	-
CR-13	-	5	Head lamp relay	-	-
CR-23	AMP	4	Start relay	-	S814-102001

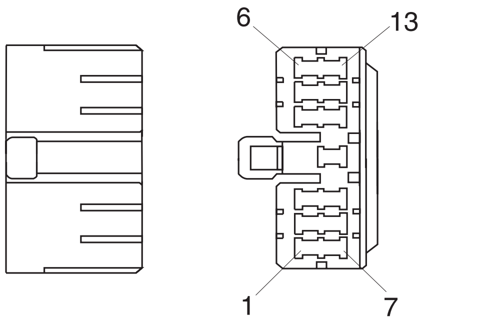
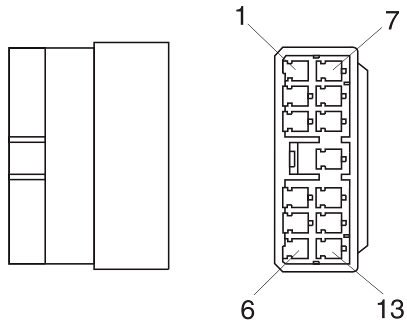
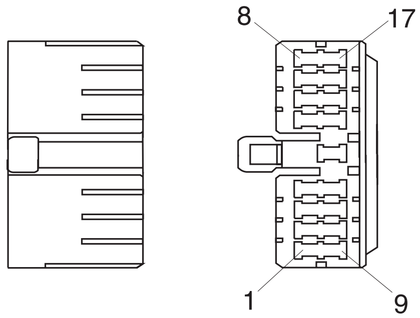
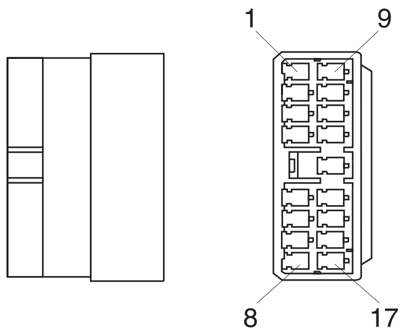
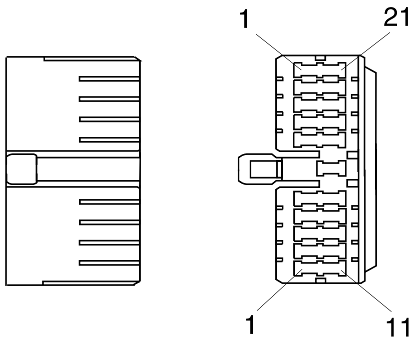
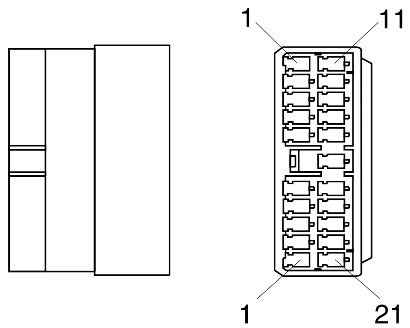
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CR-24	AMP	4	Preheat relay	S822-014000	-
CR-35	-	5	Power relay	-	-
CR-36	-	5	Preheat relay	-	-
CR-46	-	5	Fuel warmer relay	-	-
CR-62	-	5	Breaker relay	-	-
CR-104		5	Starter limit relay	-	-
· Switch					
CS-1	SHUR	1	Door switch	S822-014002	S822-114002
CS-2	WP	6	Start key switch	S814-006100	-
CS-4	DEUTSCH	3	Safety switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CS-5	DEUTSCH	2	Horn switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-19	DEUTSCH	2	One touch decel switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-23	SWF	12	Beacon lamp switch	SWF589790	-
CS-26	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-26A	AMP	2	Breaker foot pedal	S816-002002	S816-102002
CS-29	DEUTSCH	2	Power max switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-33	AMP	6	Emergency engine stop switch	S816-006002	S816-106002
CS-50	SWF	12	Overload switch	SWF589790	-
CS-53	AMP	1	Wiper cut switch	S822-014002	-
CS-67	SWF	12	Quick clamp switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-74A	AMP	2	Master switch	S813-030201	-
CS-74B	DEUTSCH	2	Master switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-82	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-83	SWF	12	Crab switch	SWF589790	-
CS-99	SWF	12	Air comp switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-100	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-
· Light					
CL-1	KET	3	Room lamp	MG651032	-
CL-2	AMP	3	Cigar light	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-3	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-4	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-5	AMP	2	Work lamp-LH	180923-0	-
CL-6	AMP	2	Work lamp-RH	180923-0	-
CL-7	SHUR	2	Beacon lamp	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-8	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT-2P
CL-9	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-10	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
· Sensor, sender					
CD-1	AMP	2	Hydraulic oil temp sender	85202-1	-
CD-2	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel level sender	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-6	DEUTSCH	3	Travel pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-7	DEUTSCH	3	Working pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-10	RING TERM	-	Air cleaner switch	ST730135-2	-
CD-24	DEUTSCH	3	Swing sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-31	AMP	3	Overload sensor	S816-003002	S816-103002
CD-32	DEUTSCH	3	Boom up sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-42	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 1	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-43	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 2	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-44	DEUTSCH	3	Eppr pressure	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-45	DEUTSCH	2	Wif sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-69	DEUTSCH	3	Attach pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-70	DEUTSCH	3	N1 pressure	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-71	DEUTSCH	3	N2 pressure	DT06-3S-EP06	-

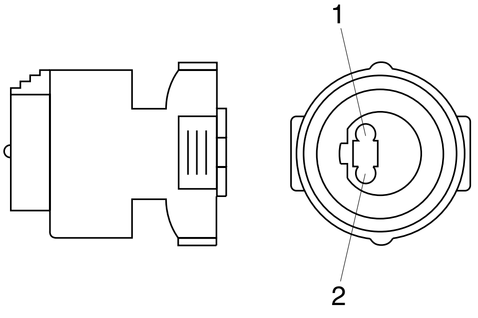
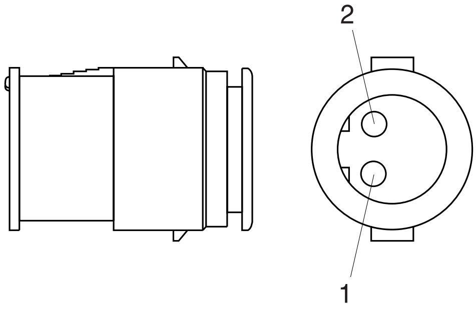
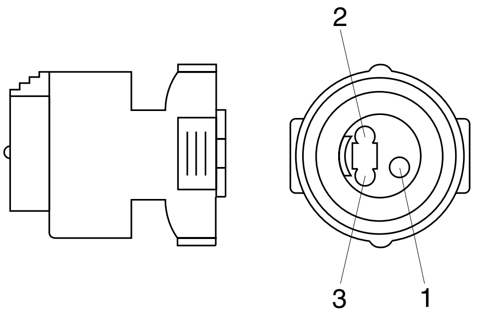
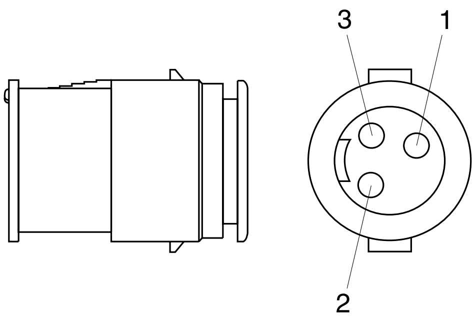
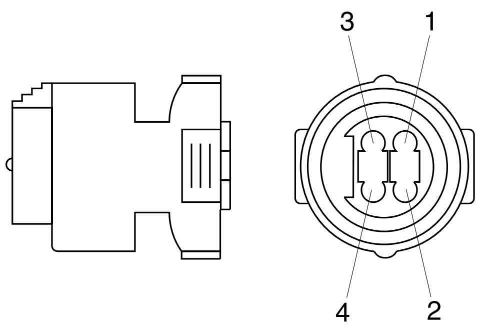
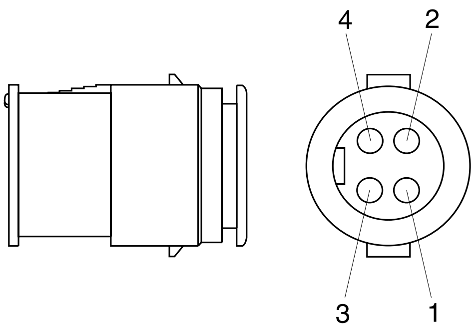
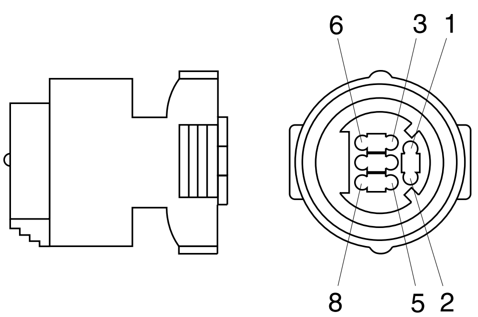
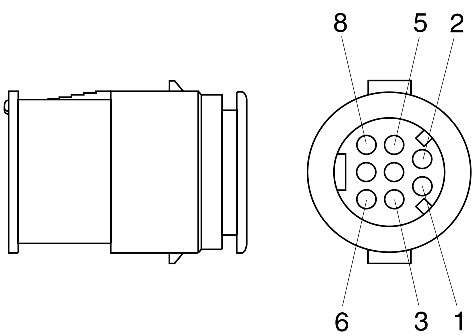
2. CONNECTION TABLE FOR CONNECTORS

1) PA TYPE CONNECTOR

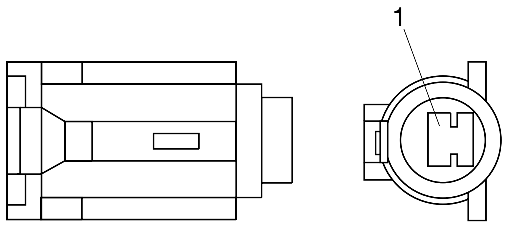
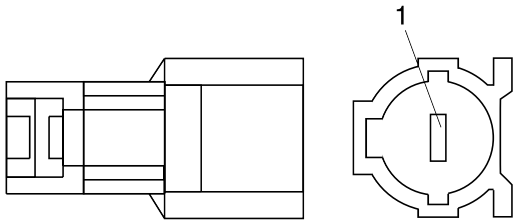
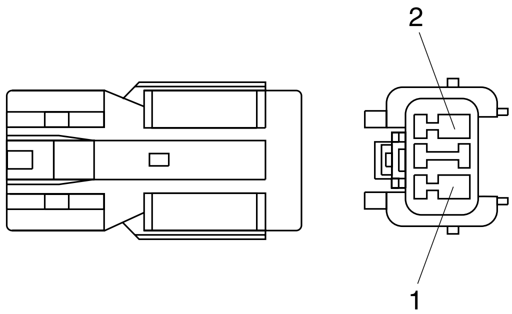
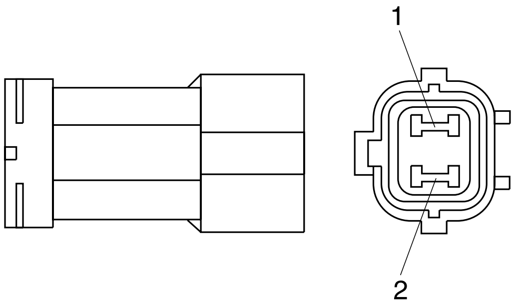
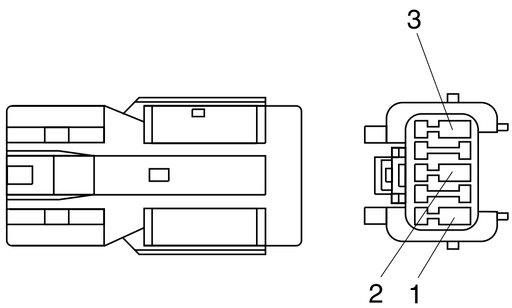
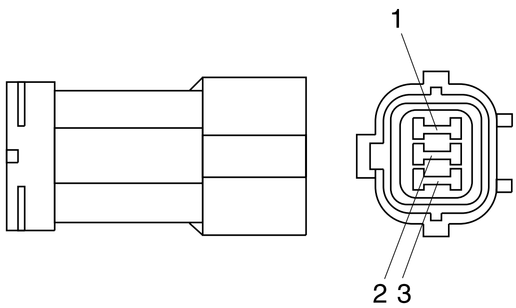
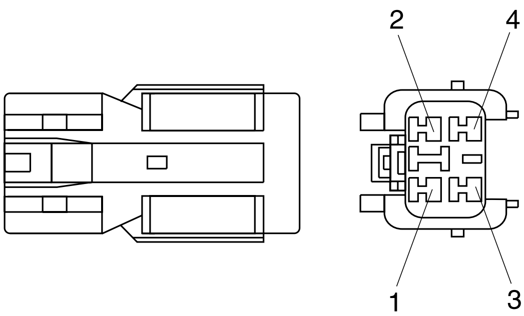
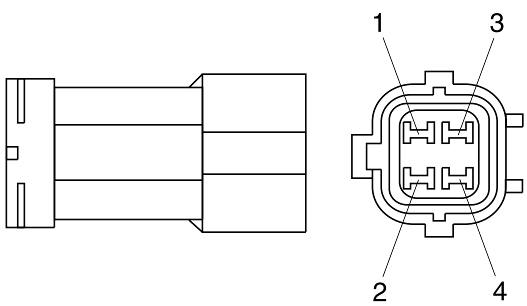
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
5	 S811-005002	 S811-105002
7	 S811-007002	 S811-107002
9	 S811-009002	 3S811-109002
11	 S811-011002	 S811-111002

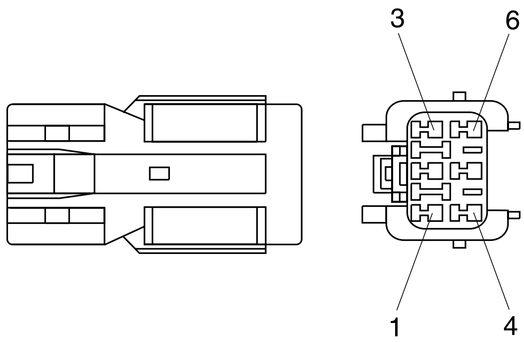
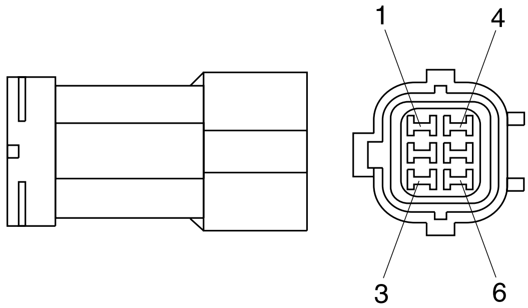
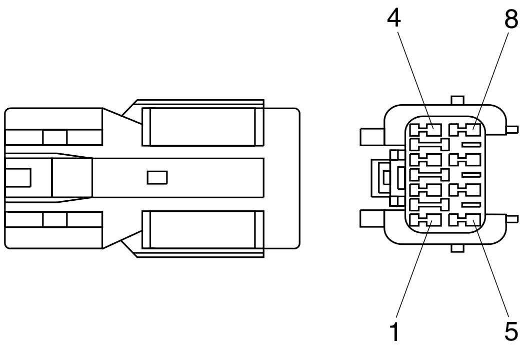
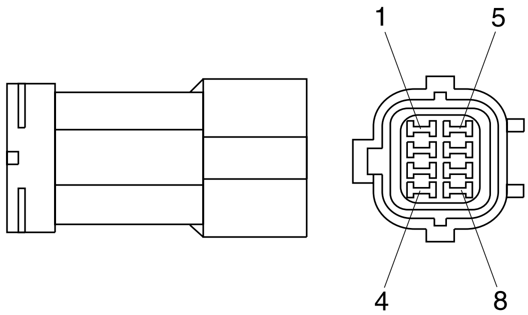
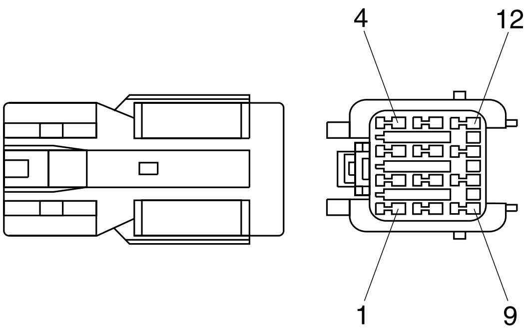
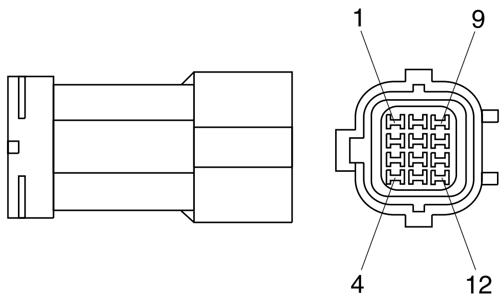
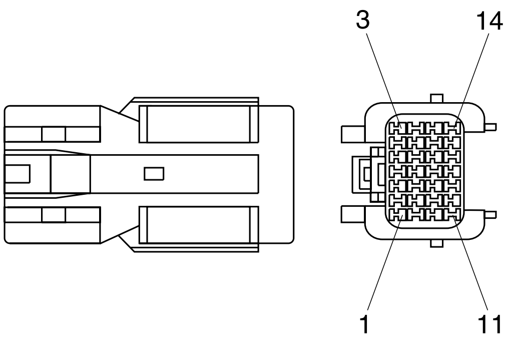
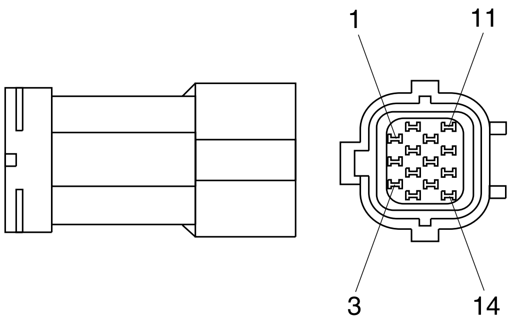
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
13	 S811-013002	 S811-113002
17	 S811-017002	 S811-117002
21	 S811-021002	 S811-121002

2) J TYPE CONNECTOR

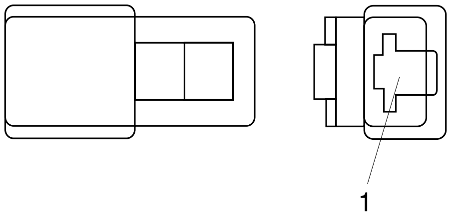
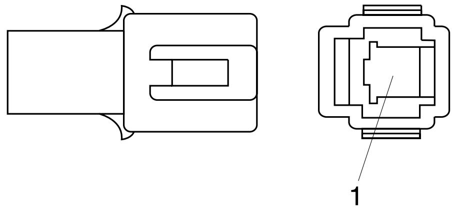
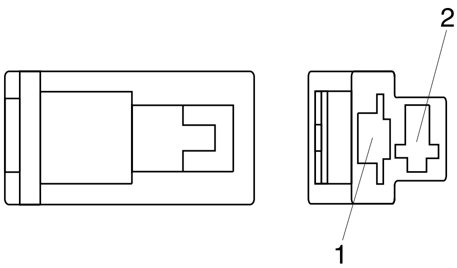
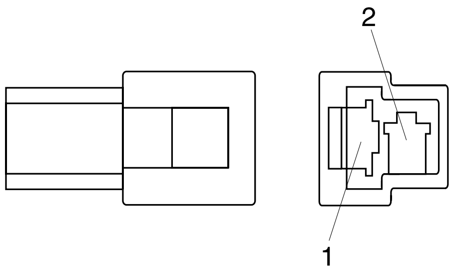
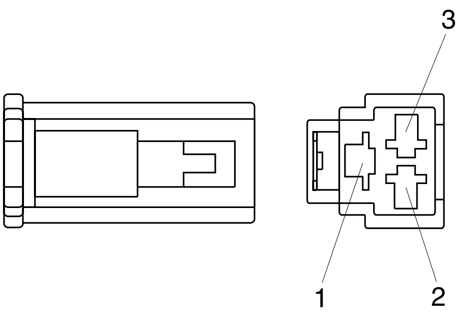
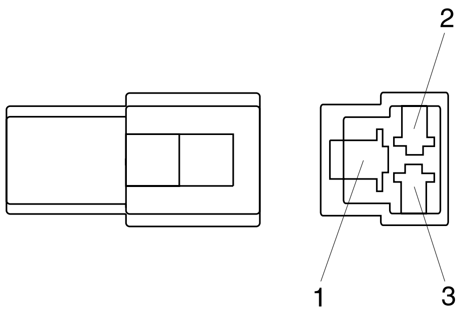
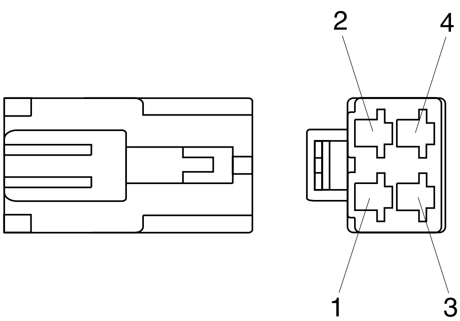
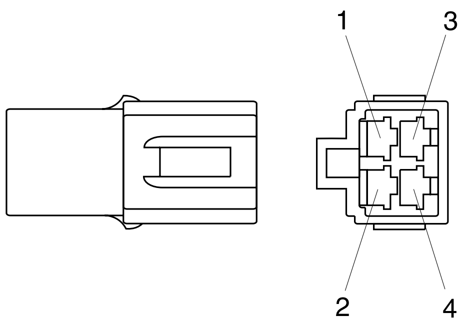
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S816-002001	 S816-102001
3	 S816-003001	 S816-103001
4	 S816-004001	 S816-104001
8	 S816-008001	 S816-108001

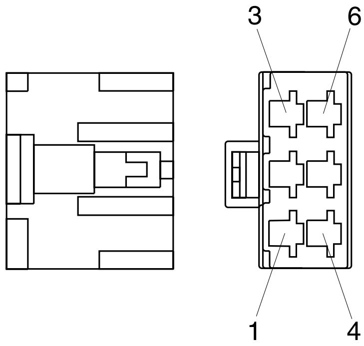
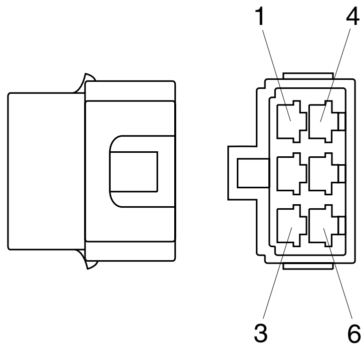
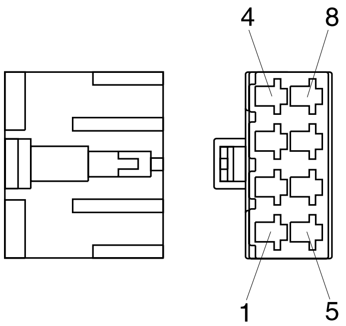
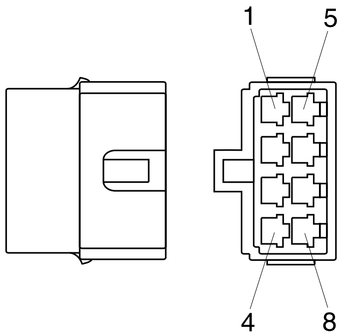
3) SWP TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S814-001000	 S814-101000
2	 S814-002000	 S814-102000
3	 S814-003000	 S814-103000
4	 S814-004000	 S814-104000

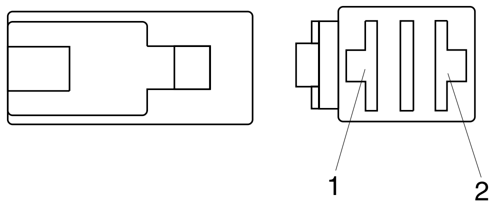
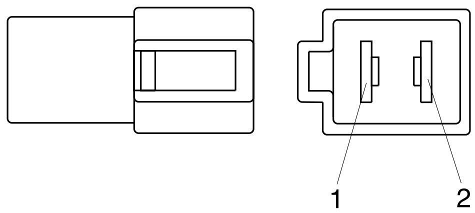
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S814-006000	 S814-106000
8	 S814-008000	 S814-108000
12	 S814-012000	 S814-112000
14	 S814-014000	 S814-114000

4) CN TYPE CONNECTOR

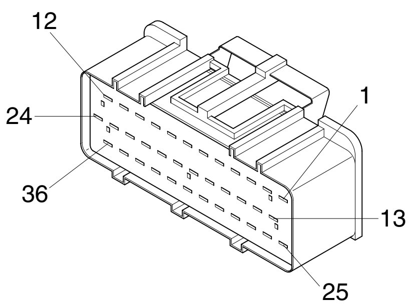
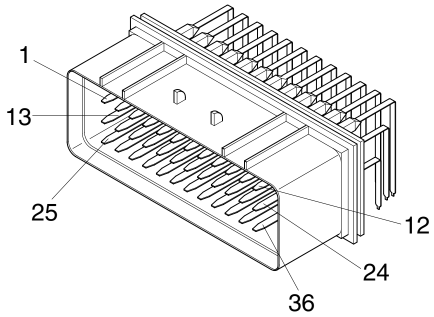
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S810-001202	 S810-101202
2	 S810-002202	 S810-102202
3	 S810-003202	 S810-103202
4	 S810-004202	 S810-104202

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S810-006202	 S810-106202
8	 S810-008202	 S810-108202

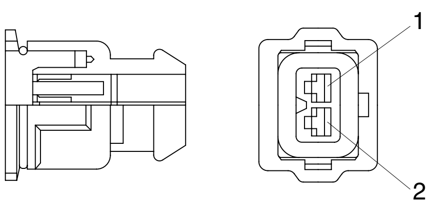
5) 375 FASTEN TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S810-002402	 S810-102402

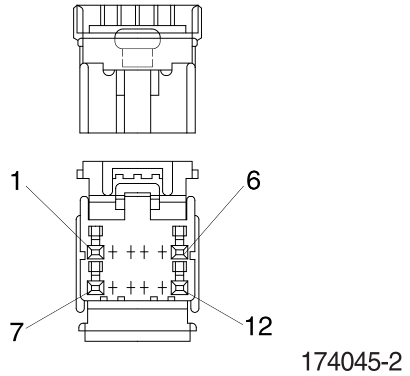
6) AMP ECONOSEAL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
36	 344111-1	 344108-1

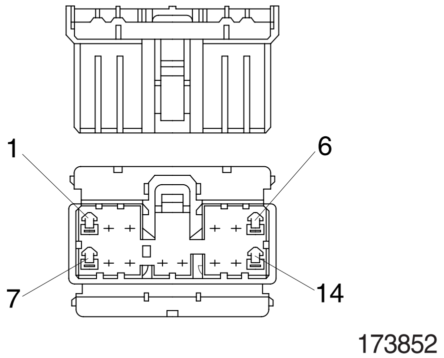
7) AMP TIMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 85202-1	

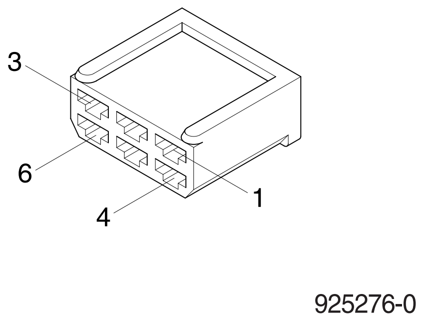
8) AMP 040 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
12		

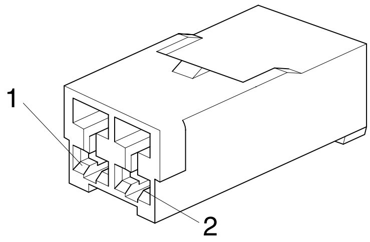
9) AMP 070 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14		

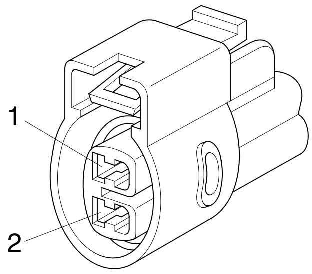
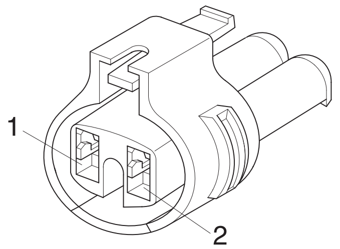
10) AMP FASTIN - FASTON CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6		

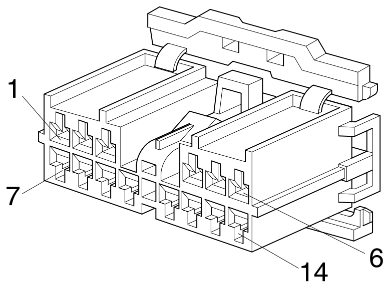
11) KET 090 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG610070	

12) KET 090 WP CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG640605	
2	 MG640795	

13) KET SDL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	 MG610406	

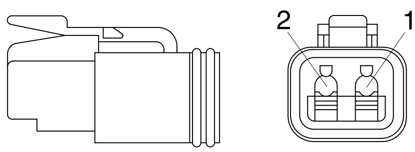
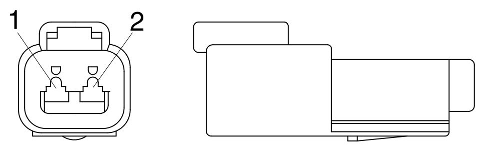
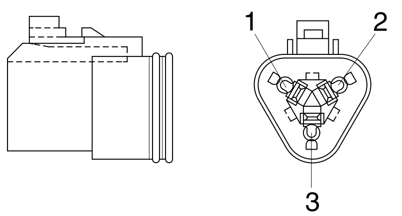
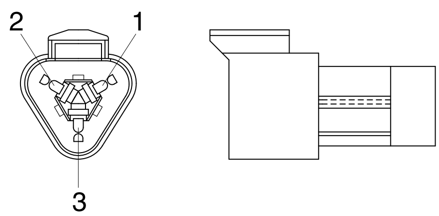
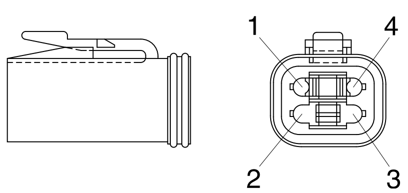
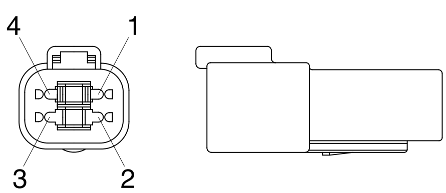
14) DEUTSCH DT CONNECTORS

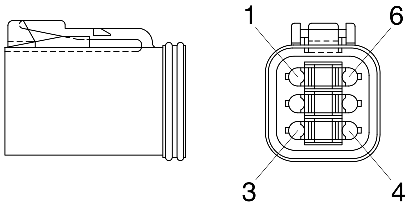
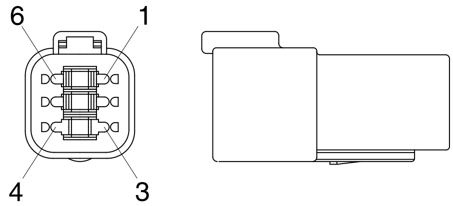
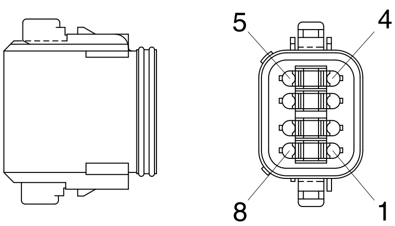
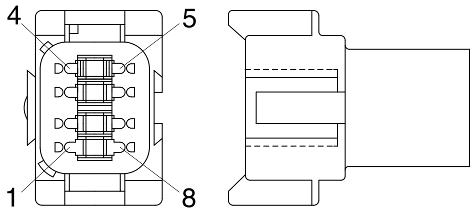
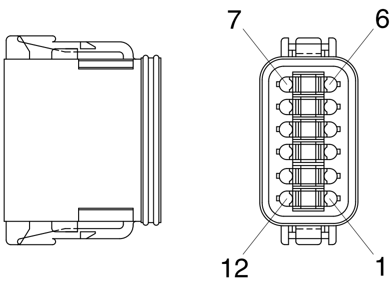
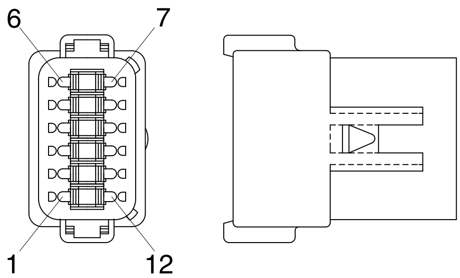
DT 06 - 3S - ★★★★

- ★★★★ : Modifications (see below)
- 3S : Number of contacts (P : Pin, S : Socket)
- 06 : 06 : Receptacle, 04 : Plug
- DT : Deutsch connectors

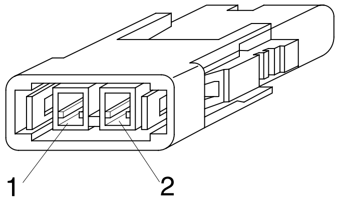
※ Modification

E003 : Standard end cap - gray
E004 : Color of connector to be black
E005 : Combination - E004 & E003
EP04 : End cap
EP06 : Combination P012 & EP04
P012 : Front seal enhancement - connectors color to black for 2, 3, 4 & 6pin

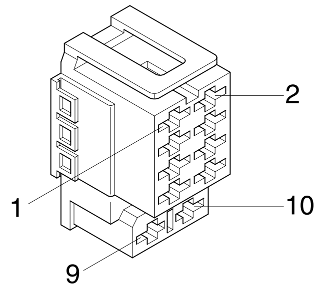
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 DT06-2S	 DT04-2P
3	 DT06-3S	 DT04-3P
4	 DT06-4S	 DT04-4P

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 DT06-6S	 DT04-6P
8	 DT06-8S	 DT04-8P
12	 DT06-12S	 DT04-12P

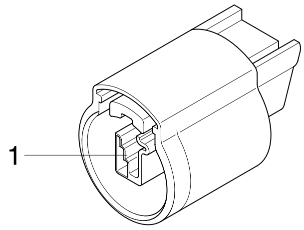
15) MOLEX 2CKTS CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 35215-0200	

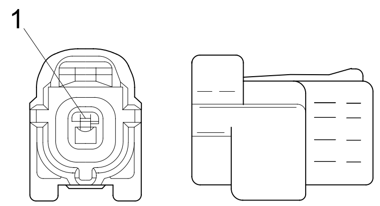
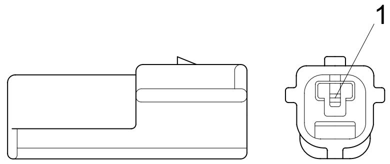
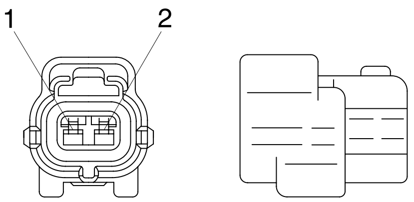
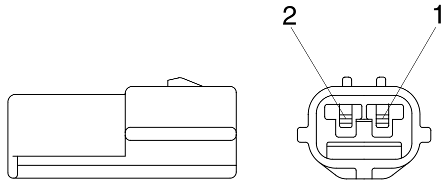
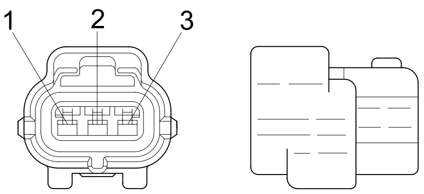
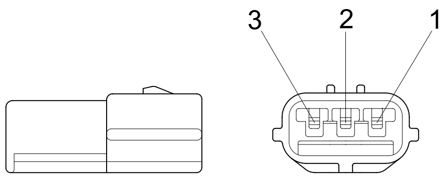
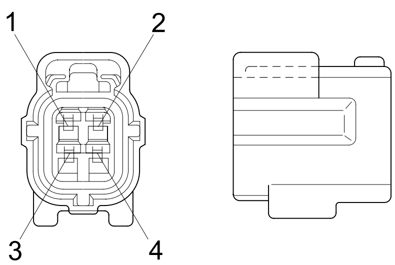
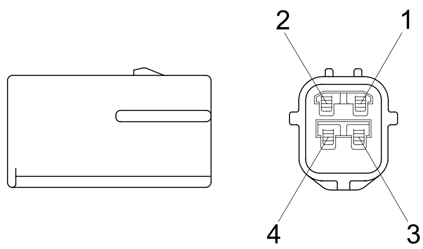
16) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

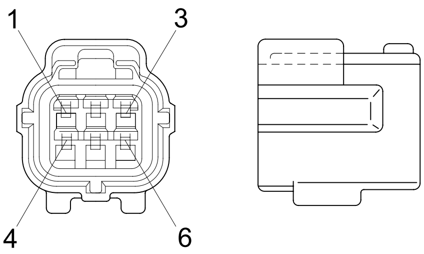
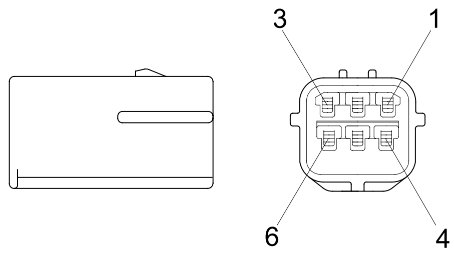
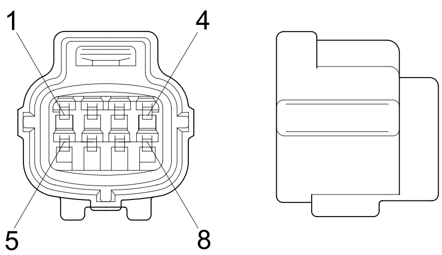
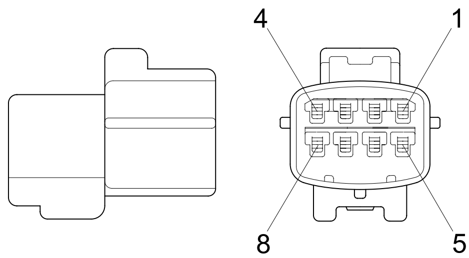
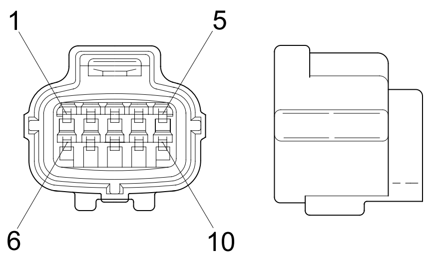
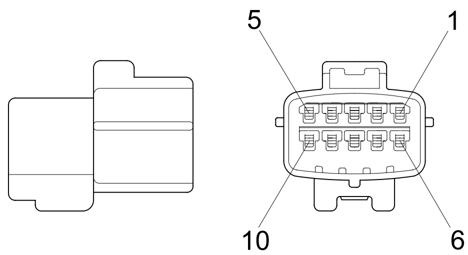
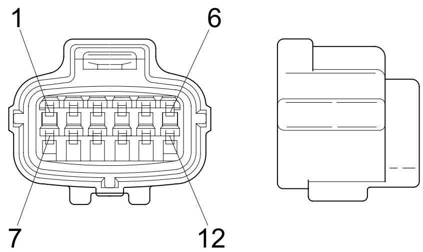
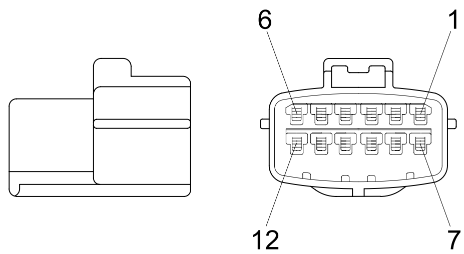
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	 SWF593757	

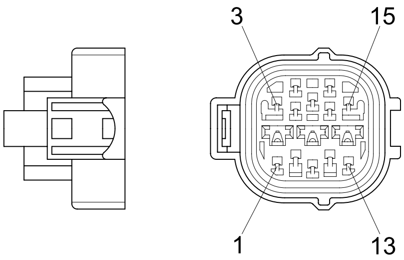
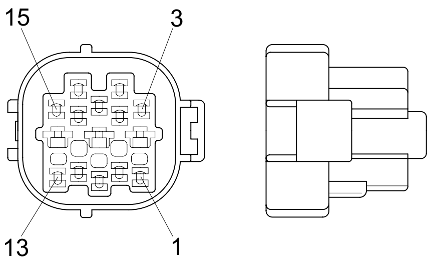
17) MWP NMWP CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 NMWP01F-B	

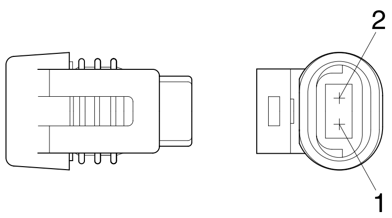
18) ECONOSEAL J TYPE CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S816-001002	 S816-101002
2	 S816-002002	 S816-102002
3	 S816-003002	 S816-103002
4	 S816-004002	 S816-104002

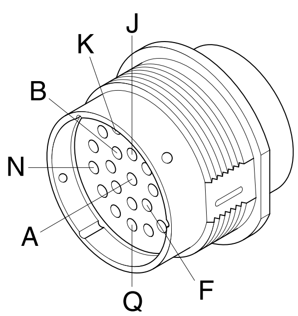
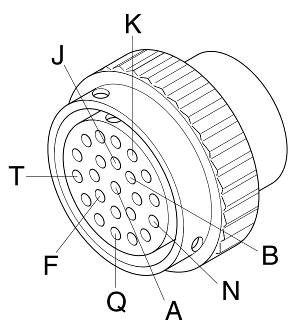
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S816-006002	 S816-106002
8	 S816-008002	 S816-108002
10	 S816-010002	 S816-110002
12	 S816-012002	 S816-112002

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
15	 368301-1	 2-85262-1

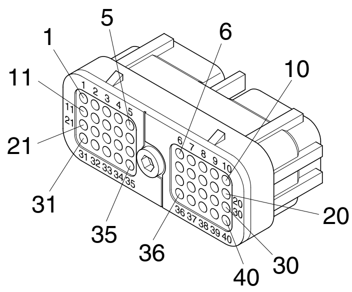
19) METRI-PACK TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 12040753	

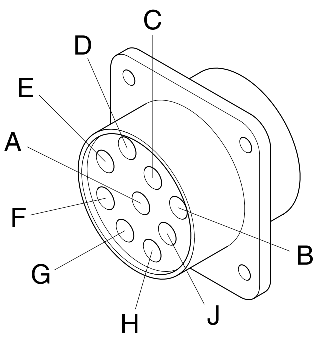
20) DEUTSCH HD30 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
23	 HD36-24-23SN	 HD34-24-23PN

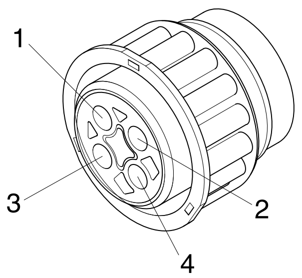
21) DEUTSCH MCU CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
40	 DRC26-40SA/B	

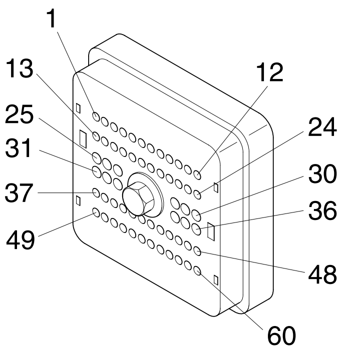
22) DEUTSCH SERVICE TOOL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
9	 HD10-9-96P	

23) AMP FUEL WARMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
4	 2-967325-3	

24) DEUTSCH INTERMEDIATE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
60	 DRB16-60SAE-L018	

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

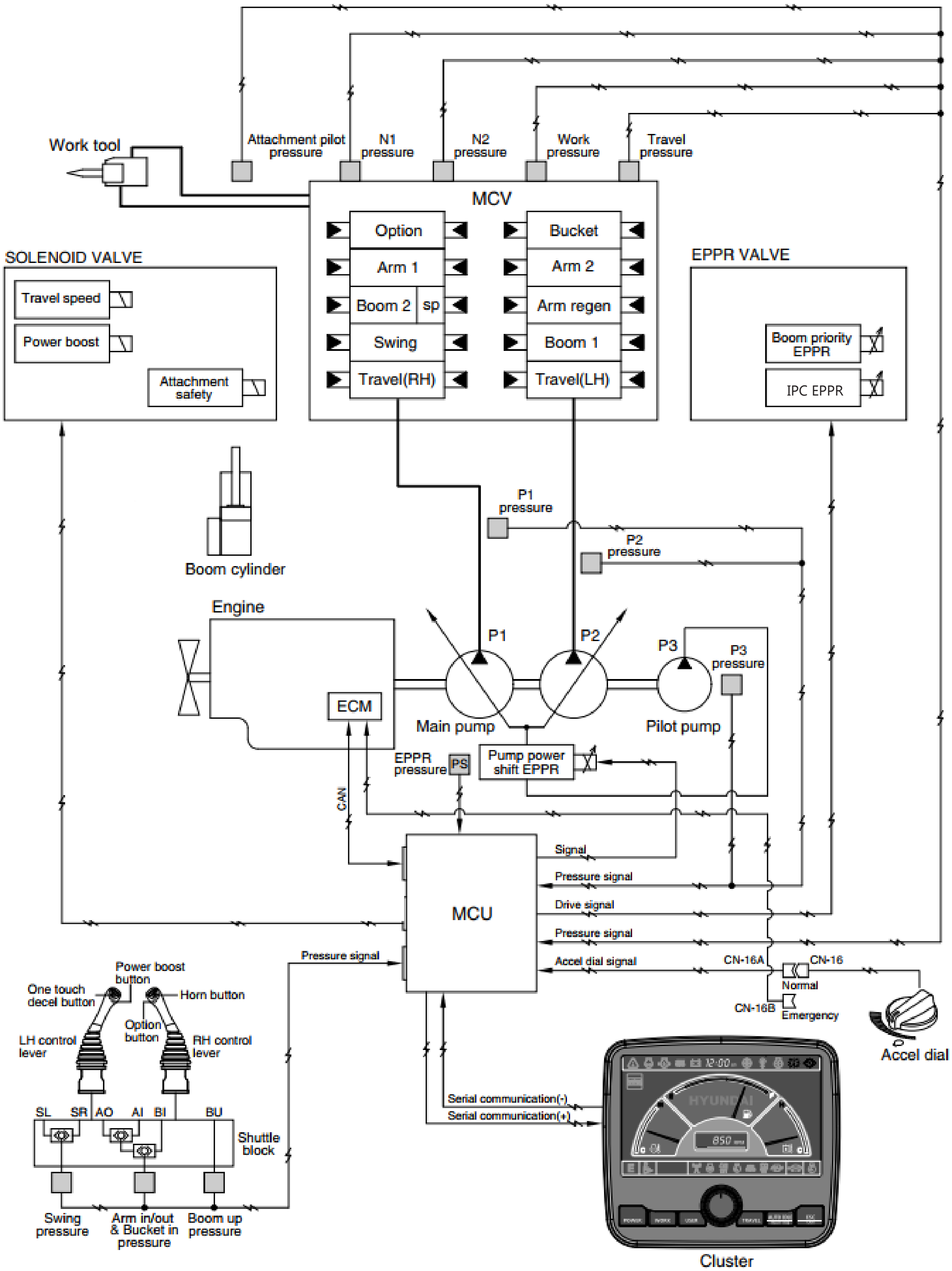
SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

GROUP 1 OUTLINE (CLUSTER TYPE 1)

The ADVENCED CAPO (Computer Aided Power Optimization) system controls engine and pump mutual power at an optimum and less fuel consuming state for the selected work by mode selection, auto-deceleration, power boost function, etc. It monitors machine conditions, for instance, engine speed, coolant temperature, hydraulic oil temperature, and hydraulic oil pressure, etc.
It consists of a MCU, a cluster, an ECM, EPPR valves, and other components. The MCU and the cluster protect themselves from over-current and high voltage input, and diagnose malfunctions caused by short or open circuit in electric system, and display error codes on the cluster.

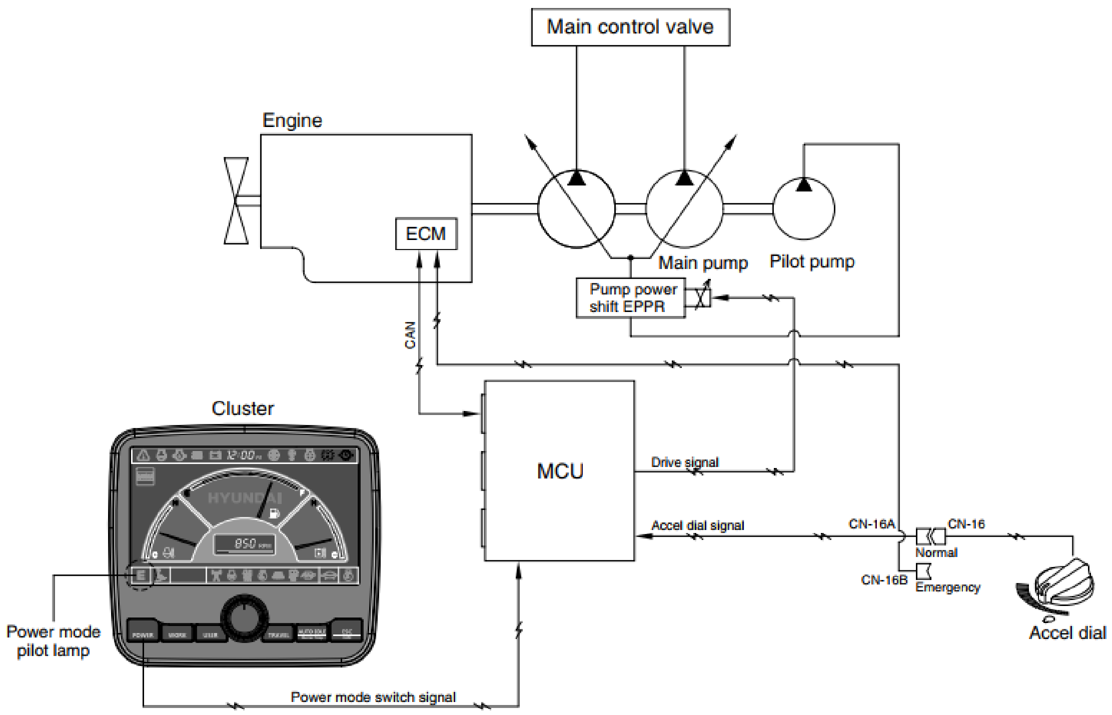
- ADVENCED CAPO SYSTEM
  - Mode selection system
    - Power mode selection (P, S, E)
    - Work mode selection
    - User mode system (U)
  - Auto deceleration system
  - Power boost system
  - Travel speed control system
  - Automatic warming up system
  - Engine overheat prevention system
  - Variable power control system
  - Attachment flow control system
  - Anti-restart system
  - Self-diagnostic system
    - MCU & cluster protection
    - Open-short diagnosis & error code display
    - Machine error code display
  - Machine monitoring system
    - Machine condition monitoring
    - Electric signal monitoring
  - One touch deceleration system

SYSTEM DIAGRAM



GROUP 2 MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

1. POWER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM



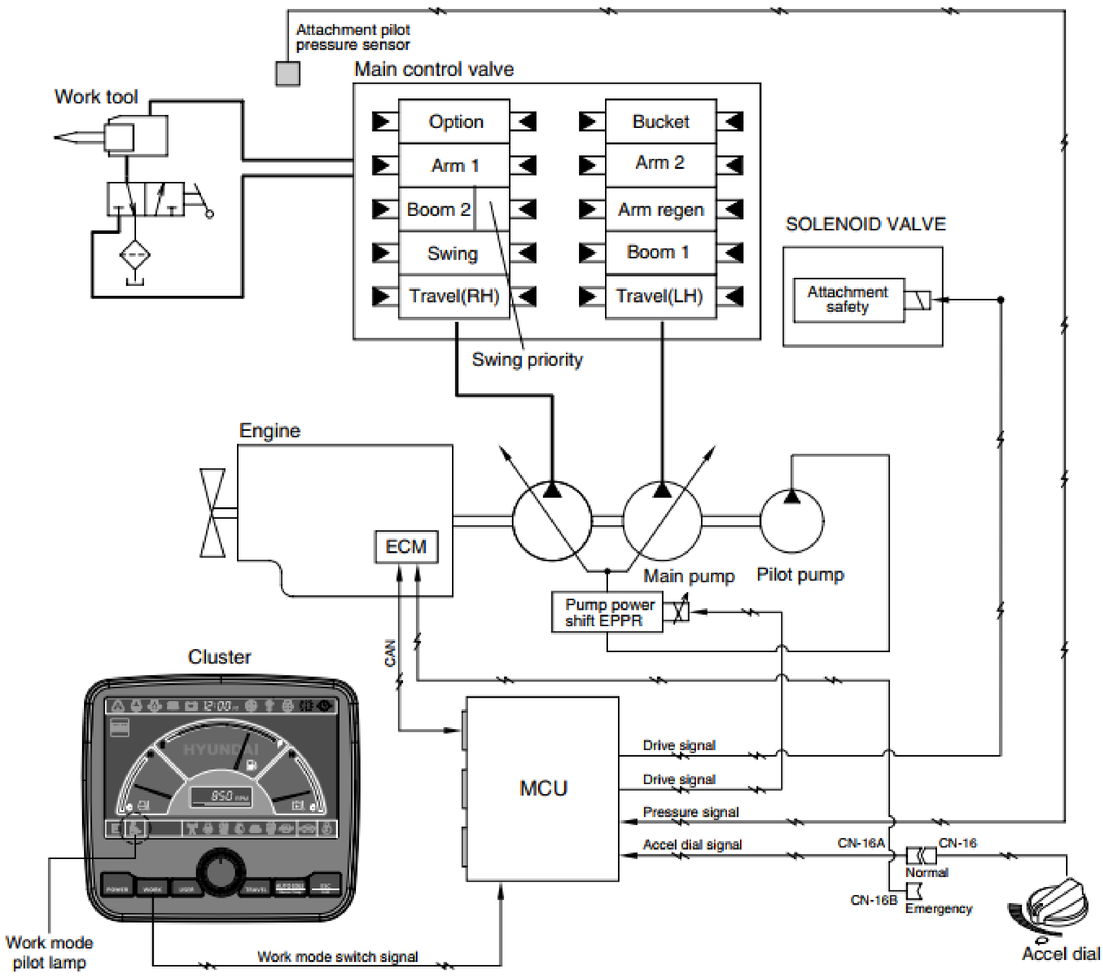
Mode selection system (micro computer based electro-hydraulic pump and engine mutual control system) optimizes the engine and pump performance.
The combination of 3 power modes (P, S, E) and accel dial position (10 set) makes it possible to use the engine and pump power more effectively corresponding to the work conditions from a heavy and great power requesting work to a light and precise work.

Power mode	Application	Engine rpm				Power shift by EPPR valve			
		Standard		Option		Standard		Option	
		Unload	Load	Unload	Load	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)
P	Heavy duty power	1900±50	-	2000±50	-	-	8(~3)	-	3
S	Standard power	1800±50	-	1900±50	-	-	10(~5)	-	5
E	Economy operation	1700±50	-	1800±50	-	-	12(~7)	-	10(~5)
AUTO DECEL	Engine deceleration	1200±100	-	1200±100	-	-	-	-	
One touch decel	Engine quick deceleration	1050±100		1050±100		-	-		
KEY START	Key switch start position	1050±100		1050±100					

※ Power shift (Standard/Option) can be changed by "Service menu" in "Management" on the cluster.

2. WORK MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

Work mode consists of the general operation (bucket) and the optional attachment (breaker, crusher).



1) GENERAL WORK MODE (bucket)

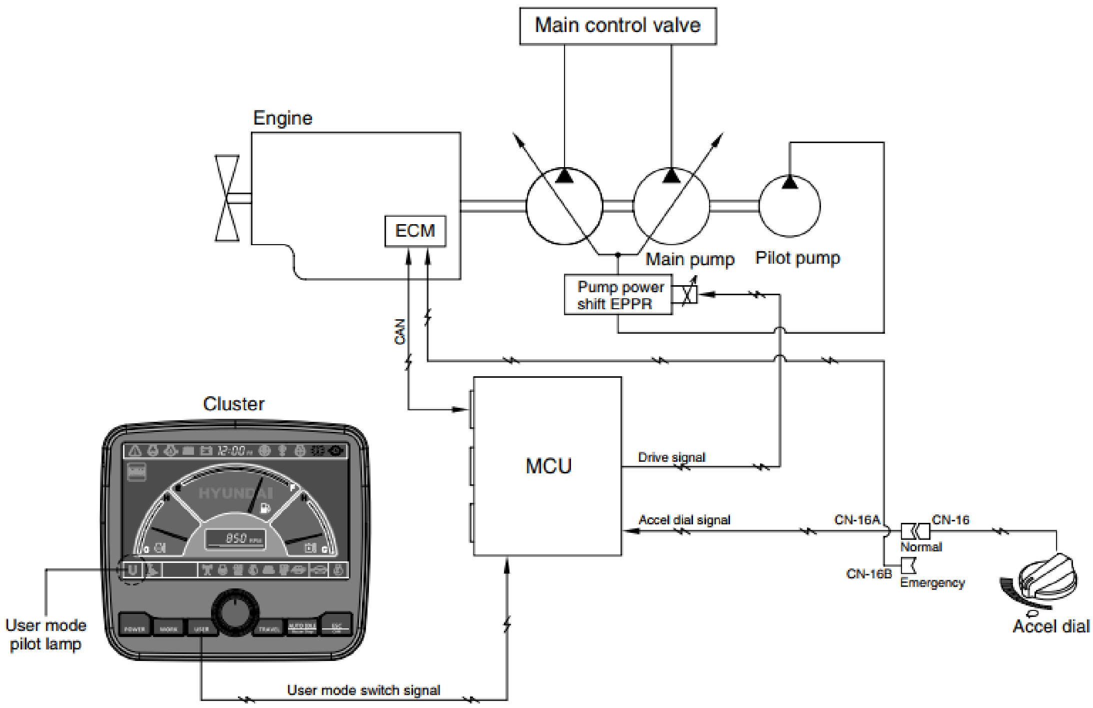
This mode is used to general digging work.

2) ATT WORK MODE (breaker, crusher)

It controls the pump flow and system pressure according to the operation of breaker or crusher.

Description	General mode	Work tool	
	Bucket	Breaker	Crusher
Attachment safety solenoid	OFF	ON	ON
Attachment pressure solenoid	OFF	OFF	ON
Attachment conflux solenoid	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF
Attachment flow EPPR current	100 mA	100~700 mA	0~700 mA

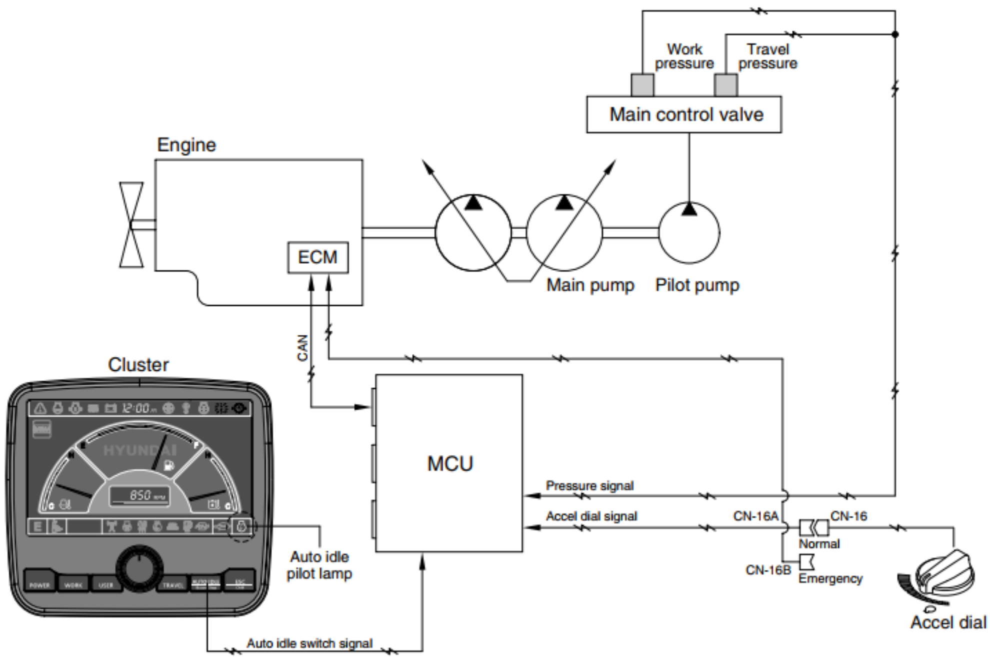
3. USER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM



1) High idle rpm, auto idle rpm and EPPR pressure can be adjusted and memorized in the U-mode.

2) LCD segment vs parameter setting

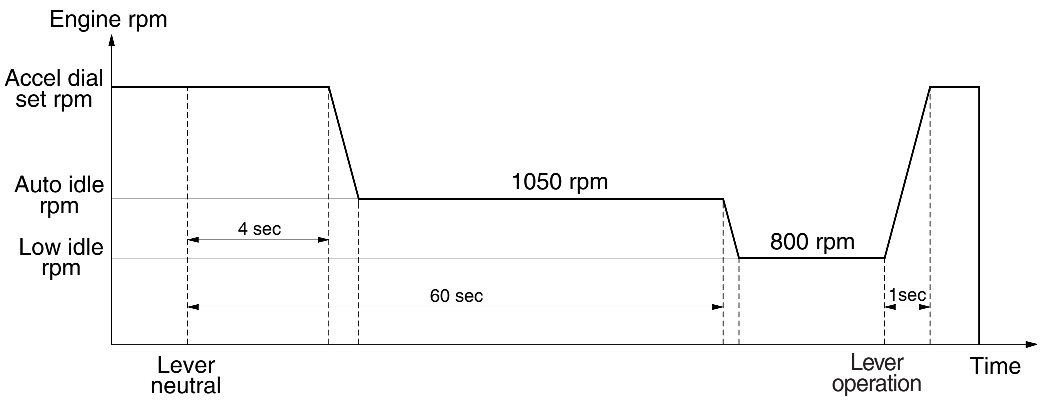
Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1400	850	0
2	1500	900	3
3	1600	950	6
4	1700	1000	9
5	1800	1050 (decel rpm)	12
6	1850	1100	16
7	1900	1150	20
8	1950	1200	26
9	2000	1250	32
10	2050	1300	38



1. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP ON

When all of the work equipment control levers including swing and travel levers are at neutral for 4 seconds, MCU sends throttle command to ECM to reduce the engine speed to 1050 rpm. If the control levers are at neutral for 1 minute, MCU reduces the engine speed to 800 rpm. As the result of reducing the engine speed, fuel consumption and noise are effectively cut down during non-operation of the control levers.

When the Auto idle pilot lamp is turned off by pressing the switch or any control lever is operated, the reduced engine speed rises upto the speed before deceleration in a second.

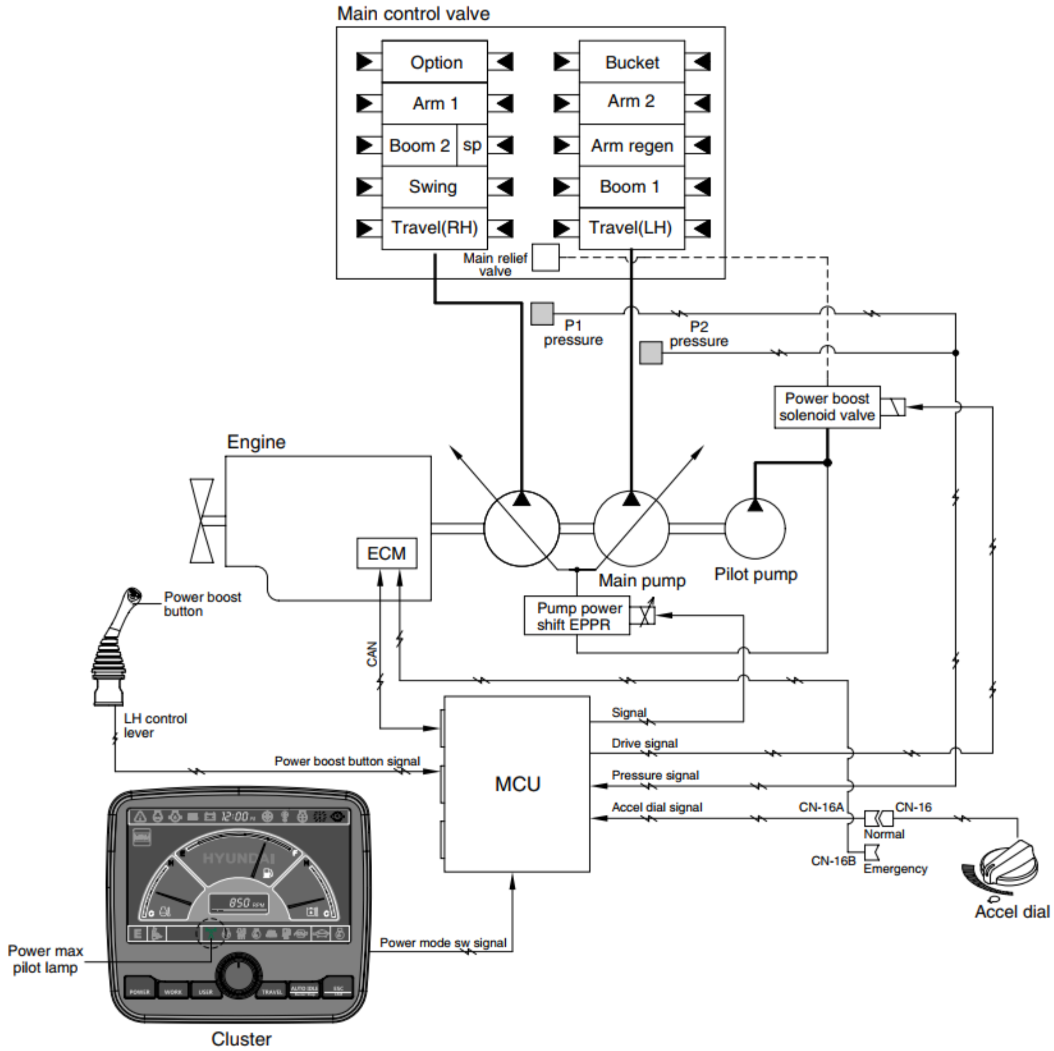


2. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP OFF

The engine speed can be set as desired using the accel dial switch, and even if the control levers are neutral, the engine speed is not reduced.

※ Auto idle function can be activated when accel dial position is over 4.

GROUP 4 POWER BOOST SYSTEM



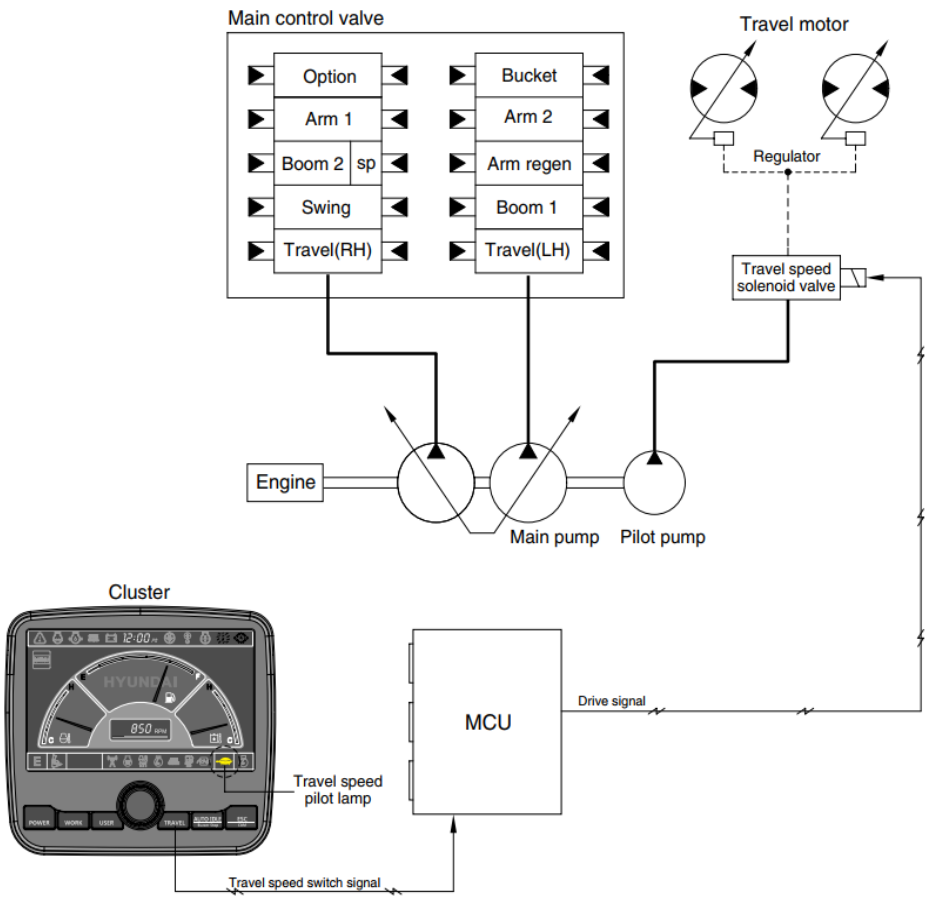
· When the power boost switch on the left control lever knob is pushed ON, the power mode is set P mode and maximum digging power is increased by 10 %.

· When the power boost function is activated, the power boost solenoid valve pilot pressure raises the set pressure of the main relief valve to increase the digging power.

Description	Condition	Function
Activated	Power boost switch : ON Accel dial : over 8	- Power mode : P - Accel dial power : 9 - Power boost solenoid : ON - Power boost pilot lamp : ON - Operating time : max 8 seconds
Canceled	Power boost switch : OFF	- Pre-set power mode - Power boost solenoid : OFF - Power boost pilot lamp : OFF

※ When the auto power boost is set to Enable and power mode is set to P mode on the cluster, the digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

GROUP 5 TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM

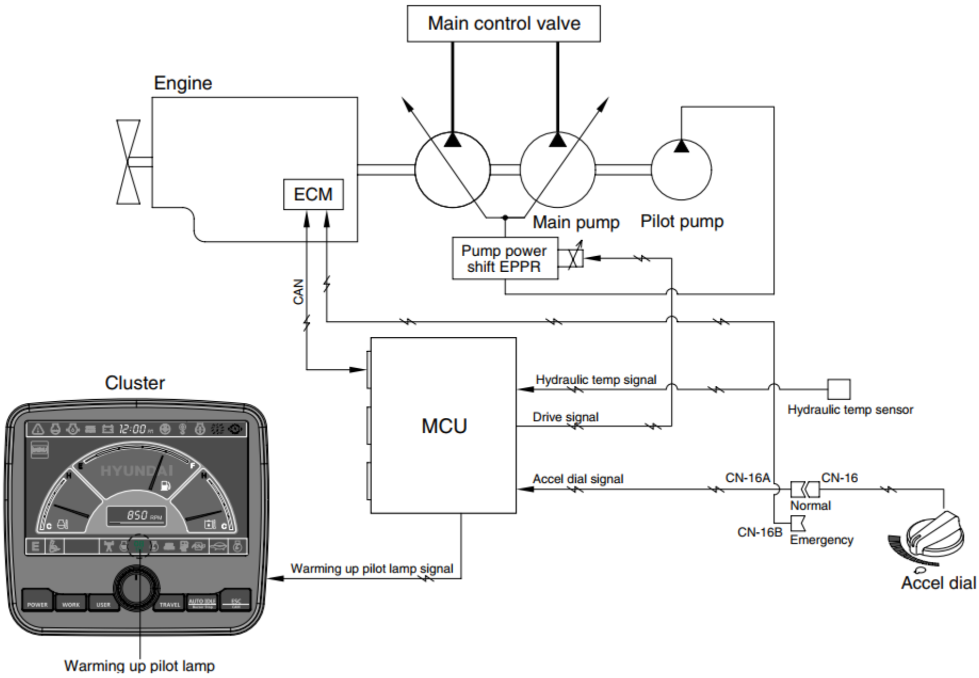


Travel speed can be switched manually by pressing the travel speed switch on the cluster.

Speed	Travel speed solenoid valve	Lamp on cluster	Operation
Low	OFF	Turtle	Low speed, high driving torque in the travel motor
High	ON	Rabbit	High speed, low driving torque in the travel motor

※ Default : Turtle (Low)

GROUP 6 AUTOMATIC WARMING UP SYSTEM



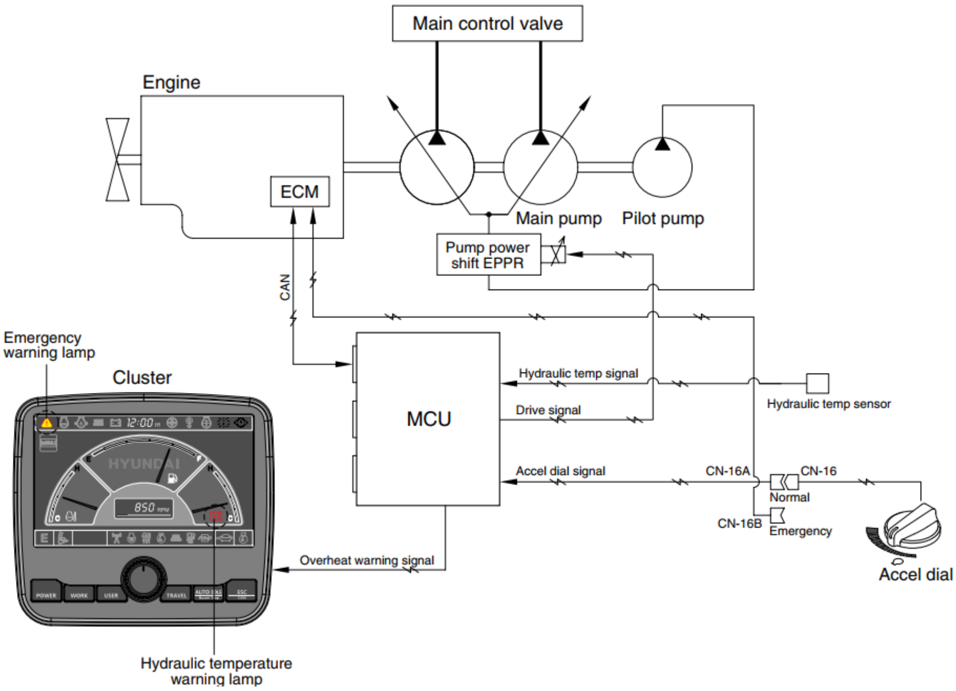
1. The MCU reads engine coolant temperature through the temperature sensor, and if the coolant temperature is below 30˚C, it increases the engine speed from key start rpm to 1200rpm. At this time the mode does not change. If the coolant temperature sensor has fault, the hydraulic oil temperature signal is substituted.

2. In case of the coolant temperature increases up to 30˚C, the engine speed is decreased to key start speed. And if an operator changes power mode set during the warming up function, the MCU cancels the automatic warming up function.

3. LOGIC TABLE

Description	Condition	Function
Actuated	- Coolant temperature : below 30˚C (after engine run)	- Power mode : Default (E mode) - Warming up time : 10 minutes (max) - Warming up pilot lamp : ON
Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Above 30˚C - Warming up time : Above 10 minutes - Changed power mode set by operator - RCV lever or pedal operating - Auto idle cancel ※ If any of the above conditions is applicable, the automatic warming up function is canceled	- Power mode : set mode - Warming up pilot lamp : OFF

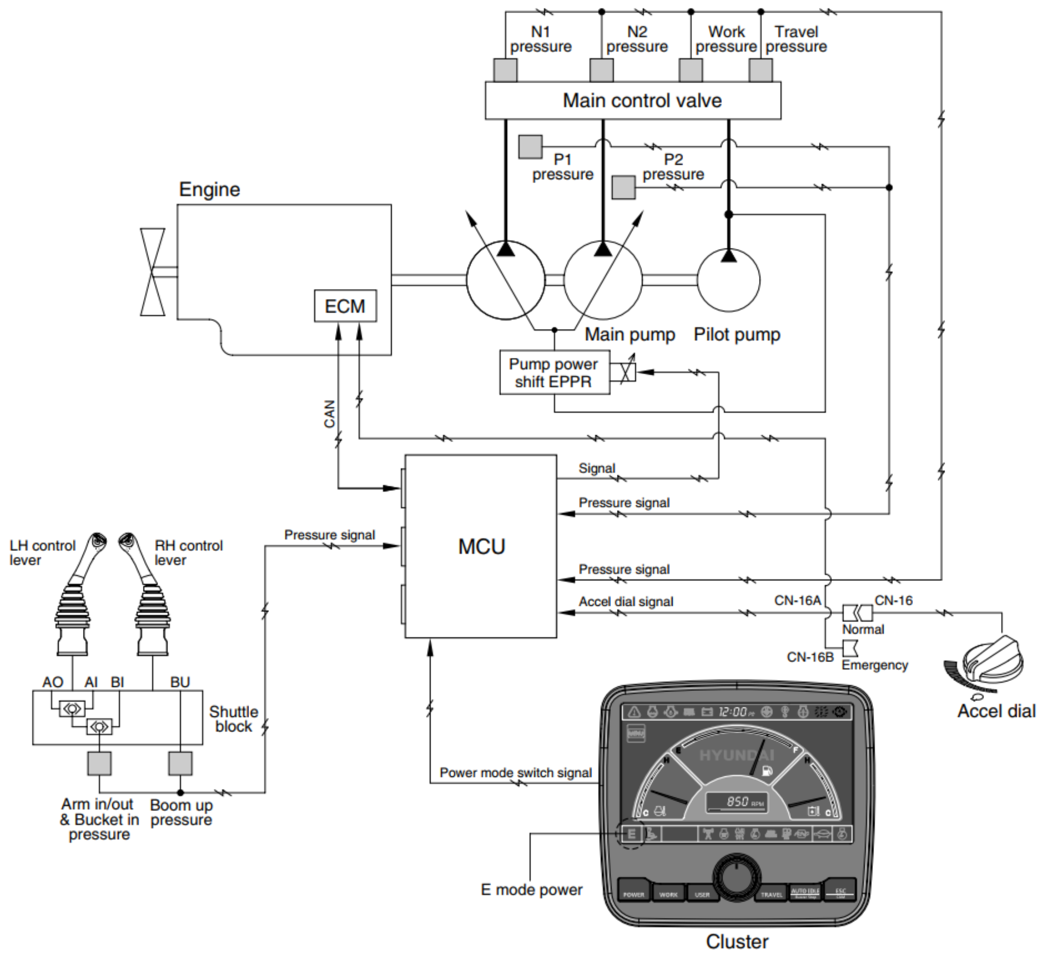
GROUP 7 ENGINE OVERHEAT PREVENTION SYSTEM



1. The engine coolant temperature or the hydraulic oil temperature is overheated over 100˚C, the warning lamp is ON and the pump input torque or the engine speed is reduced as below logic table.

2. LOGIC TABLE

Description		Condition	Function
First step warning	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 103˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 100˚C	- Warning lamp : ON , buzzer : OFF - Pump input torque is reduced. - Warning lamp & buzzer : ON - Pump input torque is reduced.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 100˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 95˚C	- Return to pre-set the pump input torque.
Second step warning	Activated	- Coolant or hydraulic oil temperature : Above 105˚C	- Emergency warning lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds. - Engine speed is reduced after 10 seconds.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 103˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 100˚C	- Return to pre-set the engine speed. - Hold pump input torque on the first step warning.

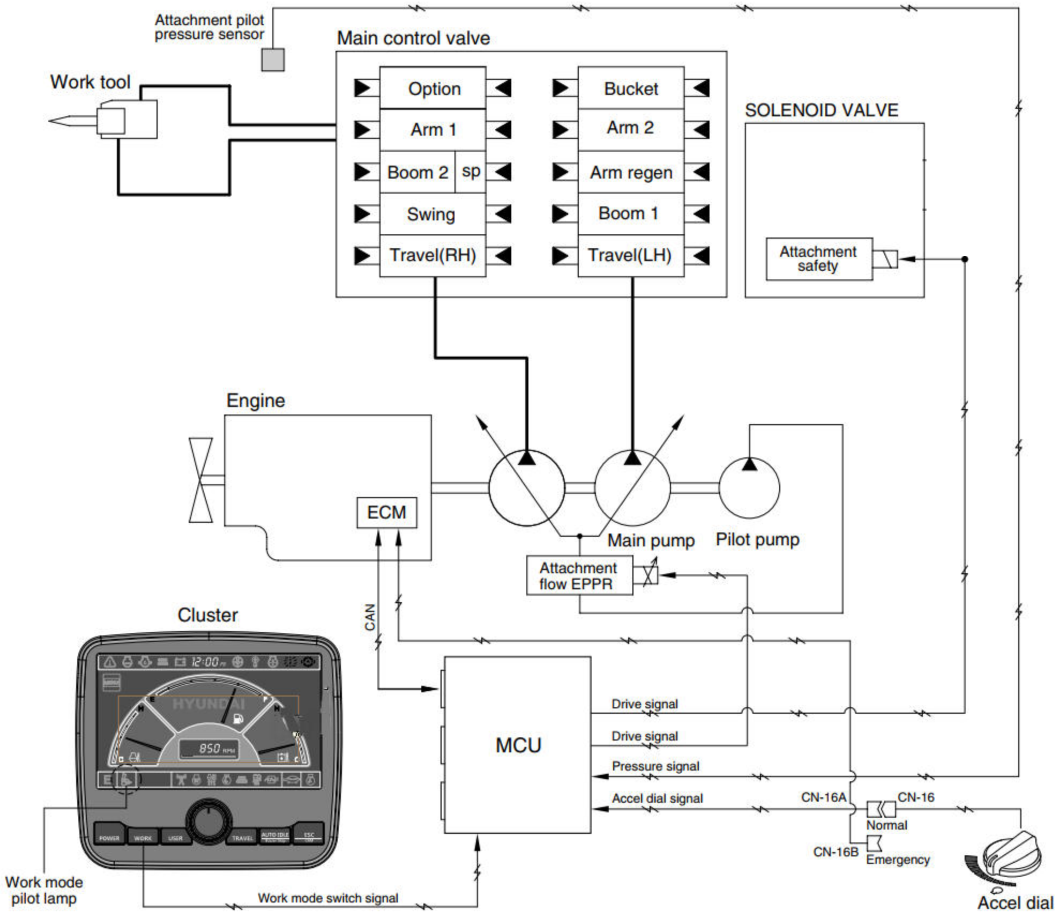


· The variable power control system controls the engine and pump mutual power according to RCV lever stroke and pump load.
It makes fuel saving and smooth control at precise work.

Description	Working condition
Power mode	P, S, E
Work mode	General (bucket)
Pressure sensor	Normal

※ The variable power control function can be activated when the power mode is set to E mode.

GROUP 9 ATTACHMENT FLOW CONTROL SYSTEM

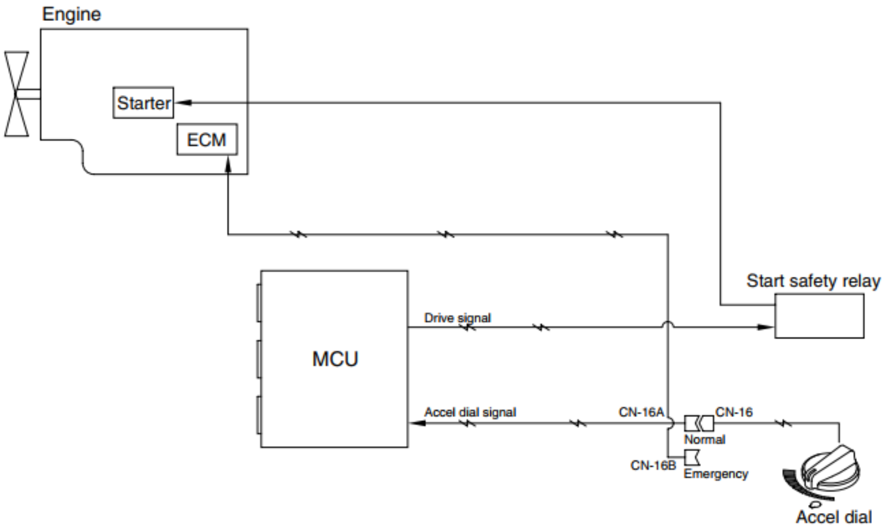


· The system is used to control the pump delivery flow according to set of the work tool on the cluster by the attachment flow EPPR valve.

Description	Work tool	
	Breaker	Crusher
Flow level	Max 7 step, reduced 10 lpm each step	Max 4 step, reduced 20 lpm each step
Attach safety solenoid	ON	ON

※ Refer to the page 5-41 for the attachment kinds and max flow.

GROUP 10 ANTI-RESTART SYSTEM



1. ANTI-RESTART FUNCTION

After a few seconds from the engine starts to run, MCU turns off the start safety relay to protect the starter from inadvertent restarting.

2. When a replacement or taking-off of the MCU is needed, connect CN-16 and CN-16B to ensure the engine start without the MCU.

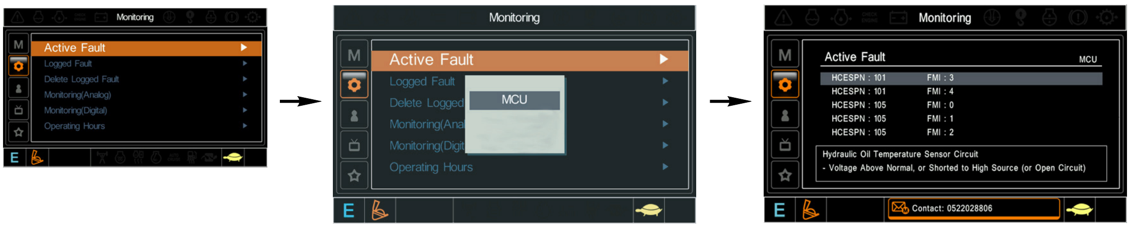
GROUP 11 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

When any abnormality occurs in the ADVENCED CAPO system caused by electric parts malfunction and by open or short circuit, the MCU diagnoses the problem and sends the error codes to the cluster and also stores them in the memory.

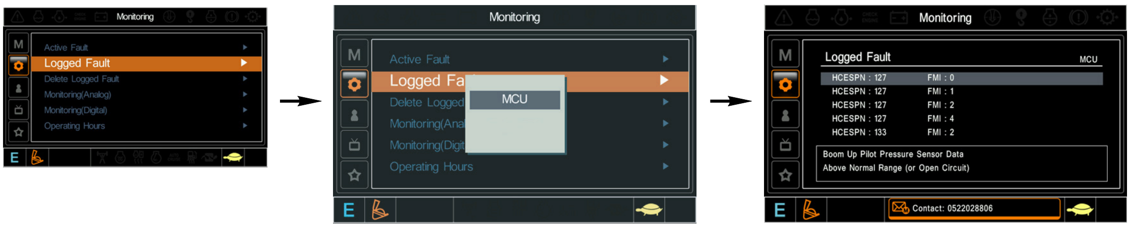
2. MONITORING

1) Active fault



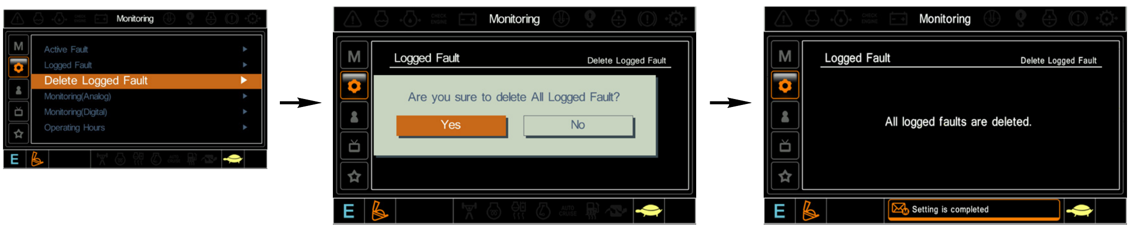
· The active faults of the MCU can be checked by this menu.

2) Logged fault



· The logged faults of the MCU can be checked by this menu.

3) Delete fault



· The logged faults of the MCU can be deleted by this menu.

3. MACHINE ERROR CODES TABLE

Error code HCESPN	FMI	Description
101	3	Hydraulic oil temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Hydraulic oil temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
105	0	Working pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Working pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Working pressure sensor data error.
	4	Working pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to Low source.
108	0	Travel oil pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel oil pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel oil pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel oil pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
120	0	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
121	0	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
122	0	Overhead pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Overhead pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Overhead pressure sensor data error.
	4	Overhead pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
123	0	Negative 1 pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Negative 1 pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Negative 1 pressure sensor data error.
	4	Negative 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
124	0	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data error.
	4	Negative 2 Pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
125	0	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
127	0	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Boom up pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
133	0	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.

※ Some error codes are not applied to this model.

Error code		Description
HCESPN	FMI	
135	0	Swing pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Swing pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Swing pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Swing pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
138	0	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Attachment pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
139	0	Option pilot pressure sensor data above normal range
	1	Option pilot pressure sensor data below normal range
	2	Option pilot pressure sensor data error
	4	Option pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source
140	5	Pump EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Pump EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
141	5	Boom priority EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Boom priority EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
143	5	Travel EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Travel EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
144	5	Attachment flow EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment flow EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
145	5	Remote cooling fan EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Remote cooling fan EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
150	5	Left rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Left rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
151	5	Right rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Right rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
152	5	Left tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Left tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
153	5	Right tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Right tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
166	5	Power max solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Power max solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
167	5	Travel speed solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Travel speed solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
168	5	Attachment pressure solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment pressure solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
169	5	Attachment conflux solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment conflux solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
170	5	Arm regeneration solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Arm regeneration solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
171	5	Attachment safety solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment safety solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
181	5	Remote cooling fan reverse solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Remote cooling fan reverse solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
200	0	Pump EPPR 2nd pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Pump EPPR 2nd pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Pump EPPR 2nd pressure sensor data error.
	4	Pump EPPR 2nd pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
301	5	Fuel level sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	6	Fuel level sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.

※ Some error codes are not applied to this model.

Error code		Description
HCESPN	FMI	
304	3	Engine coolant temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Engine coolant temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
310	8	Engine speed signal error - Abnormal frequency or pulse width.
322	3	Engine preheat relay circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Engine preheat relay circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
325	3	Fuel warmer relay circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Fuel warmer relay circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
340	3	Potentiometer (G/A) circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Potentiometer (G/A) circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
341	5	Governor actuator circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Governor actuator circuit - Current above normal.
501	0	Transmission oil pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Transmission oil pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Transmission oil pressure sensor data error.
	4	Transmission oil pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
503	0	Brake pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Brake pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Brake pressure sensor data error.
	4	Brake pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
505	0	Working brake pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Working brake pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Working brake pressure sensor data error.
	4	Working brake pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
506	3	Working brake lamp circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Working brake lamp circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
520	3	Ram lock lamp circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Ram lock lamp circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
525	5	Ram lock solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Ram lock solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
530	0	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel F pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
531	0	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel R pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
701	3	Hourmeter circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Hourmeter circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
705	0	MCU input voltage high.
	1	MCU input voltage low.
707	1	Alternator node I voltage low.
714	3	Acc. dial circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Acc. dial circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
715	3	Rotate signal input circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Rotate signal input circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
716	3	Tilt signal input circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Tilt signal input circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
722	3	Travel alarm (buzzer) circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Travel alarm (buzzer) circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.

※ Some error codes are not applied to this model.

Error code		Description
HCESPN	FMI	
830	12	MCU internal memory error.
840	2	Cluster communication data error - Intermittent
	9	Cluster communication data error
841	2	ECM communication data error - Intermittent
	9	ECM communication data error
843	2	Option #1 (CAN 2) communication data error - Intermittent
	9	Option #1 (CAN 2) communication data error
850	2	RCM communication data error - Intermittent
	9	RCM communication data error

※ Some error codes are not applied to this model.

4. ENGINE ERROR CODES TABLE

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
111 629 12	Engine control module critical internal failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to memory hardware failures or internal ECM voltage supply circuits.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
115 612 2	Engine magnetic crankshaft speed/position lost both of two signals - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the primary engine speed sensor and the backup engine speed sensor signals are reversed.	Fueling to injectors is disabled and the engine can not be started.
122 102 3	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
123 102 4	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low Source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
124 102 16	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure has exceeded the maximum limit for the given engine rating.	Engine power derate.
131 91 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position circuit.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
132 91 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
133 974 3	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate. Remote accelerator position will be set to zero percent.
134 974 4	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate. Remote accelerator position will be set to zero percent.
135 100 3	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
141 100 4	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
143 100 18	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level.	None on performance.
144 110 3	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for engine coolant temperature.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
145 110 4	Engine Coolant Temperature 1 Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for engine coolant temperature.
146 110 16	Engine Coolant Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert.
147 91 1	Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position 1 Sensor Circuit Frequency - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. A frequency of less than 100 Hz has been detected at the frequency throttle input to the ECM.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
148 91 0	Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position Sensor 1 - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. A frequency of more than 1500 Hz has been detected at the frequency throttle input to the ECM.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
151 110 0	Engine Coolant Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
153 105 3	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature Sensor Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for intake manifold air temperature.
154 105 4	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for intake manifold air temperature.
155 105 0	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
187 520195 4	Sensor Supply 2 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low voltage detected at the sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
195 111 3	Coolant Level Sensor 1 Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
196 111 4	Coolant Level Sensor 1 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
197 111 18	Coolant Level - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. Low coolant level has been detected.	None on performance.
221 108 3	Barometric Pressure Sensor Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
222 108 4	Barometric Pressure Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
227 520195 3	Sensor Supply 2 Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
234 190 0	Engine Crankshaft Speed/Position - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Engine speed signal indicates engine speed above engine protection limit.	Fuel injection disabled until engine speed falls below the overspeed limit.
235 111 1	Coolant Level - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Low engine coolant level detected.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
237 644 2	External Speed Command Input (Multiple Unit Synchronization) - Data Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect. Communication between multiple engines may be intermittent.	
238 520196 4	Sensor Supply 3 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Possible hard starting and rough running.
241 84 2	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM lost the vehicle speed signal.	Engine speed limited to ,maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
242 84 10	Wheel-based vehicle speed sensor circuit tampering has been detected - Abnormal rate of change. Signal indicates an intermittent connection or VSS tampering.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed g+H53overnor will not work.
245 647 4	Fan control circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fan control circuit when commanded on.	The fan may stay on continuously or not run at all.
271 1347 4	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine will run poorly at idle. Engine will have low power. Fuel pressure will be higher than commanded.
272 1347 3	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine will not run or engine will run poorly.
281 1347 7	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment.	Engine will not run or possible low power.
285 639 9	SAE J1939 multiplexing PGN timeout error - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
286 639 13	SAE J1939 multiplexing configuration error - Out of calibration. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but only received a portion of the necessary information.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
287 91 19	SAE J1939 multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - received network data In error. The OEM vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with its accelerator pedal.	Engine may only idle or engine will not accelerate to full speed.
288 974 19	SAE J1939 Multiplexing Remote Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position Sensor Circuit - Received Network Data In Error. The OEM vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with the remote accelerator.	The engine will not respond to the remote throttle. Engine may only idle. The primary or cab accelerator may be able to be used.
292 441 14	Auxiliary temperature Sensor Input 1 - Special instructions.	Possible engine power derate.
293 441 3	Auxiliary temperature sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the OEM auxiliary temperature circuit.	None on performance.
294 441 4	Auxiliary temperature sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the OEM auxiliary temperature circuit.	None on performance.
296 1388 14	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 - Special instructions.	Possible engine power derate.
297 1388 3	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the OEM pressure circuit.	None on performance.
298 1388 4	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the OEM pressure circuit.	None on performance.
319 251 2	Real time clock power interrupt - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Real time clock lost power.	None on performance. Data in the ECM will not have accurate time and date information.
322 651 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 1 circuit or no current detected at number 1 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
323 655 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 5 circuit or no current detected at number 5 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
324 653 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 3 circuit or no current detected at number 3 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
325 656 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 6 circuit or no current detected at number 6 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
331 652 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 2 circuit or no current detected at number 2 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
332 654 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 4 circuit or no current detected at number 4 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
334 110 2	Engine coolant temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine coolant temperature reading is not changing with engine operating conditions.	The ECM will estimate engine coolant temperature.
342 630 13	Electronic calibration code incompatibility - Out of calibration. An incompatible calibration has been detected in the ECM.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
343 620 12	Engine control module warning internal hardware failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Internal ECM failure.	No performance effects or possible severe power derate.
351 627 12	Injector power supply - Bad intelligent device or component. The ECM measured injector boost voltage is low.	Possible smoke, low power, engine misfire, and/or engine will not start.
352 1079 4	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
386 1079 3	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
415 100 1	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. Oil pressure signal indicates oil pressure below the engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after red stop lamp starts flashing.
418 97 15	Water in fuel indicator - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. water has been detected in the fuel filter.	Possible white smoke, loss of power, or hard starting.
428 97 3	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
429 97 4	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
431 558 2	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Voltage detected simultaneously on both idle validation and off-idle validation switches.	Engine will only idle.
432 558 13	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation circuit - Out of calibration. Voltage at idle validation on-idle and off-idle circuit does not match accelerator pedal position.	Engine will only idle.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
435 100 2	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the engine oil pressure switch signal was detected by the ECM.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
441 168 18	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is below the minimum system voltage level.	Engine may stop running or be difficult to start.
442 168 16	Battery 1 Voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is above the maximum system voltage level.	Possible electrical damage to all electrical components.
449 157 0	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level.	None or possible engine noise associated with higher injection pressures (especially at idle or light load). Engine power is reduced.
451 157 3	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and or speed derate.
452 157 4	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and or speed derate.
488 157 16	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature is above the engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert.
497 1377 2	Multiple unit synchronization switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	
523 611 2	Auxiliary intermediate (PTO) speed switch validation - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	None on performance.
527 702 3	Auxiliary input/output 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit has been detected at the auxiliary input/output 2 circuit.	None on performance.
528 93 2	Auxiliary alternate torque validation switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	None on performance.
529 703 3	Auxiliary input/output 3 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Low signal voltage has been detected at the auxiliary input/output 2 circuit.	
553 157 16	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is higher than commanded pressure.	The ECM will estimate fuel pressure and power is reduced.
554 157 2	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data erratic, Intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the fuel pressure signal is not changing.	Possibly hard to start, low power, or engine smoke.

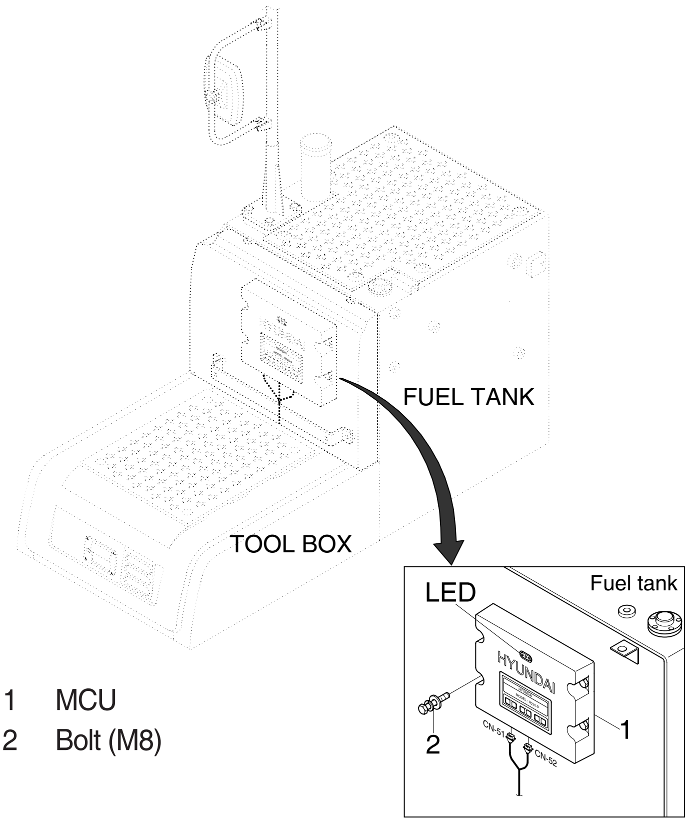
Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
559 157 18	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
584 677 3	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	The engine will not have starter lockout protection.
585 677 4	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Engine power derate. The ECM uses an estimated turbocharger speed.
595 103 16	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected.	Amber lamp will light until high battery voltage condition is corrected.
599 640 14	Auxiliary commanded dual output shutdown - Special instructions.	None or possible engine noise associated with higher injection pressures (especially at idle or light load). Engine power is reduced.
687 103 18	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low turbocharger speed detected by the ECM.	Engine can run rough. Possibly poor starting capability. Engine runs using backup speed sensor. Engine power is reduced.
689 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Loss of signal from crankshaft sensor.	Engine power derate.
691 1172 3	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Engine power derate.
692 1172 4	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air tempera	Engine will run derated. Excessive black smoke, hard start, and rough idle possible.
731 723 7	Engine speed / position camshaft and crankshaft misalignment - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment. mechanical misalignment between the crankshaft and camshaft engine speed sensors.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
757 611 31	Electronic control module data lost - Condition exists. Severe loss of data from the ECM.	Possible poor starting. Engine power derate.
778 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the camshaft position sensor signal.	Possible engine power derate.
779 703 11	Auxiliary equipment sensor input 3 - Root cause not known.	Possible no noticeable performance effects or engine dying or hard starting. Fault information, trip information, and maintenance monitor data may be inaccurate.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1117 627 2	Power supply lost with ignition on - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Supply voltage to the ECM fell below 6.2 volts momentarily, or the ECM was not allowed to power down correctly (retain battery voltage for 30 seconds after key OFF).	Engine will shut down.
1633 625 2	OEM datalink cannot transmit - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Communications within the OEM datalink network is intermittent.	Engine will only idle.
2185 520197 3	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2186 520197 4	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Possibly hard to start, low power, or engine smoke.
2249 157 1	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Engine may be difficult to start.
2265 1075 3	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or open detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Engine may be difficult to start.
2266 1075 4	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel lift pump circuit.	Possible low power.
2311 633 31	Electronic fuel injection control valve circuit - Condition exists. Fuel pump actuator circuit resistance too high or too low.	Engine may exhibit misfire as control switches from the primary to the backup speed sensor. Engine power is reduced while the engine operates on the backup speed sensor.
2321 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. crankshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Possible low power.
2322 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Camshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Engine power derate.
2345 103 10	Turbocharger 1 Speed - Abnormal rate of change. The turbocharger speed sensor has detected an erroneous speed value.	Engine power derate.
2346 2789 15	Turbocharger turbine inlet temperature (Calculated) - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Turbocharger turbine inlet temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Engine power derate.
2347 2790 15	Turbocharger compressor outlet temperature (Calculated) - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level.	Engine brake on cylinders 1, 2, and 3 can not be activated or exhaust brake will not operate.
2377 647 3	Fan control circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the fan control circuit.	Variable geometry turbocharger will go to the open position.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2384 641 4	VGT actuator driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at turbocharger control valve circuit.	Variable geometry turbocharger may be in either the open or closed position.
2385 641 3	VGT actuator driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at turbocharger control valve circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2555 729 3	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2556 729 4	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	Can not control transmission.
2557 697 3	Auxiliary PWM driver 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the analog torque circuit.	Can not control transmission.
2558 697 4	Auxiliary PWM driver 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the analog torque circuit.	Power derate and possible engine shutdown if engine protection shutdown feature is enabled.
2973 102 2	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an intake manifold pressure signal that is too high or low for current engine operating conditions.	

GROUP 12 MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM

1. MCU (Machine Control Unit)



1 MCU
2 Bolt (M8)

2. MCU ASSEMBLY

1) To match the pump absorption torque with the engine torque, MCU varies EPPR valve output pressure, which control pump discharge amount whenever feedbacked engine speed drops under the reference rpm of each mode set.

2) Three LED lamps on the MCU display as below.

LED lamp	Trouble	Service
G is turned ON	Normal	-
G and R are turned ON	Trouble on MCU	· Change the MCU
G and Y are turned ON	Trouble on serial communication line	· Check if serial communication lines between controller and cluster are disconnected
Three LED are turned OFF	Trouble on MCU power	· Check if the input power wire (24 V, GND) of controller is disconnected · Check the fuse

G : green, R : red, Y : yellow

GROUP 13 EPPR VALVE

1. PUMP EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

EPPR (Electro Proportional Pressure Reducing) valve consists of electro magnet and spool valve installed at main pump.

(1) Electro magnet valve

Receive electric current from MCU and move the spool proportionally according to the specific amount of electric current value.

(2) Spool valve

Is the two way direction control valve for pilot pressure to reduce main pump flow.
When the electro magnet valve is activated, pilot pressure enters into flow regulator of main pump.

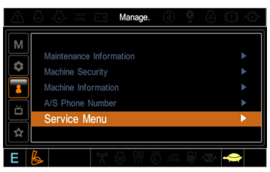
(3) Pressure and electric current value for each mode

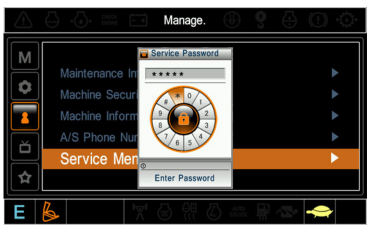
Mode		Pressure		Electric current (mA)	Engine rpm (at accel dial 10)
		kgf/cm^2	psi		
Standard (Stage : 1.0)	P	8 ± 3	116 ± 40	-	1900 ± 50
	S	10 ± 3	145 ± 40	-	1800 ± 50
	E	12 ± 3	174 ± 40	-	1700 ± 50
Option (Stage : 2.0)	P	3 ± 3	44 ± 40		2000 ± 50
	S	5 ± 3	75 ± 40		1900 ± 50
	E	10 ± 3	145 ± 40		1800 ± 50

2) HOW TO SWITCH THE STAGE (1.0 ↔ 2.0) ON THE CLUSTER

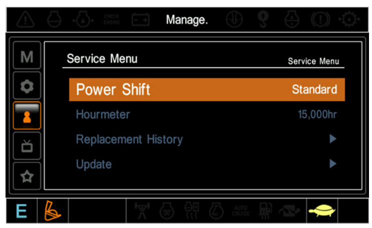
You can switch the EPPR valve pressure set by selecting the stage (1.0 ↔ 2.0).

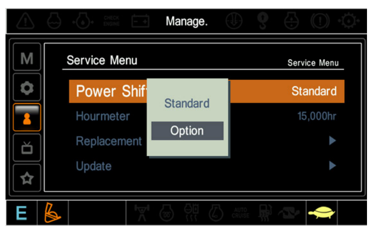
- Management
  ·Service menu





Enter the password

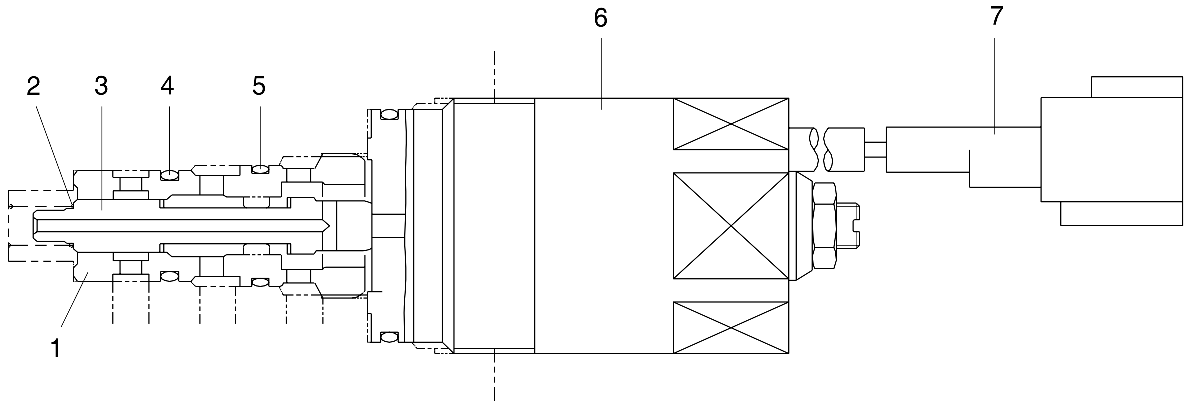




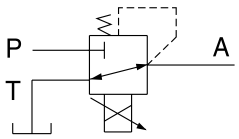
· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE (pump EPPR valve)

(1) Structure



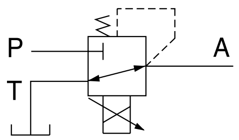
1	Sleeve	4	O-ring	6	Solenoid valve
2	Spring	5	O-ring	7	Connector
3	Spool				

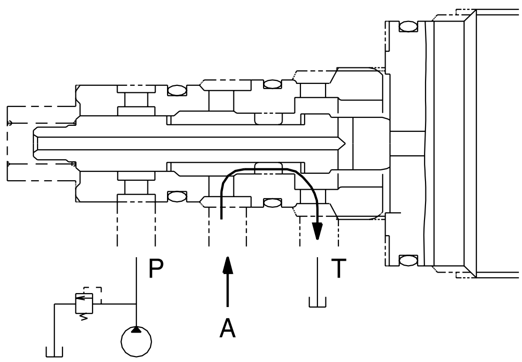


P Pilot oil supply line (pilot pressure)
T Return to tank
A Secondary pressure to flow regulator at main pump

(2) Neutral

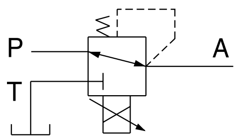
Pressure line is blocked and A oil returns to tank.

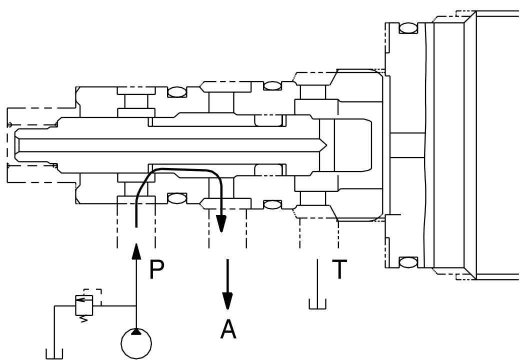




(3) Operating

Secondary pressure enters into A.





4) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

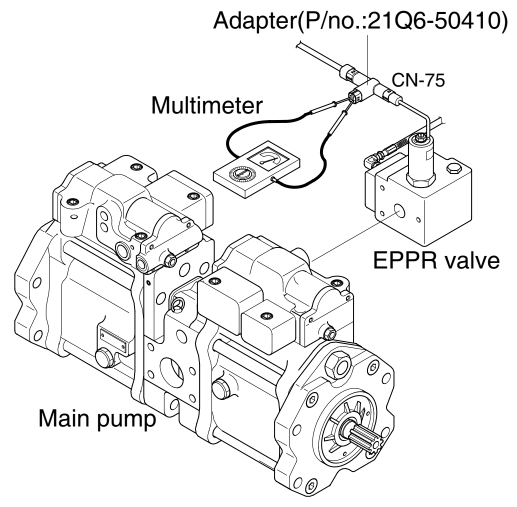
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode

⑤ Position the accel dial at 10.

⑥ If rpm display show approx 1800±50 rpm check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

Spec : 100~700 mA



(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
·Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm²
(0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode

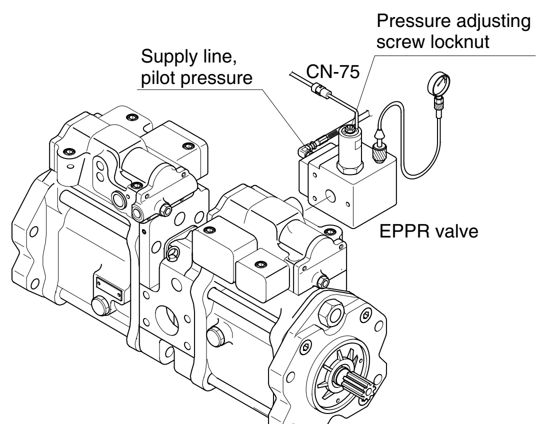
④ Position the accel dial at 10.

⑤ If tachometer show approx 1800±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑦ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 4~40 kgf/cm² (58~580 psi)



2. BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

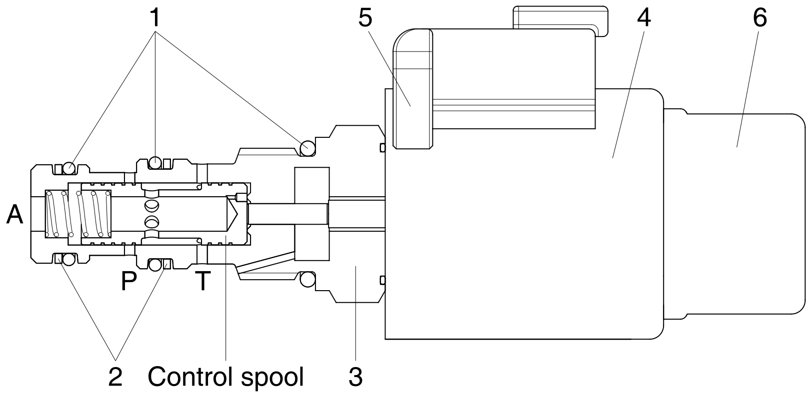
The boom priority EPPR valve is built in a manifold and mainly consisting of valve body and coil. This EPPR valve installed under the solenoid valve.

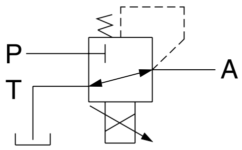
2) CONTROL

The boom priority EPPR valve has to be controlled by a specific electronic amplifier card, which is supplying the coil with a current 580 mA at 30Ω and 24 V.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE

(1) Structure





P : Pilot supply line
T : Return to tank
A : Secondary pressure to flow MCV

1	O-ring	3	Valve body	5	Connector
2	Support ring	4	Coil	6	Cover cap

(2) Operation

In de-energized mode the inlet port (P) is closed and the outlet port (A) is connected to tank port (T). In energized mode the solenoid armature presses onto the control spool with a force corresponding to the amount of current. This will set a reduced pressure at port A. The setting is proportional to the amount of current applied.

(3) Maximum pressure relief

If a pressure from outside is applied on port A the valve may directly switch to tank port (T) and protect the system before overload.

2) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-133 from EPPR valve.

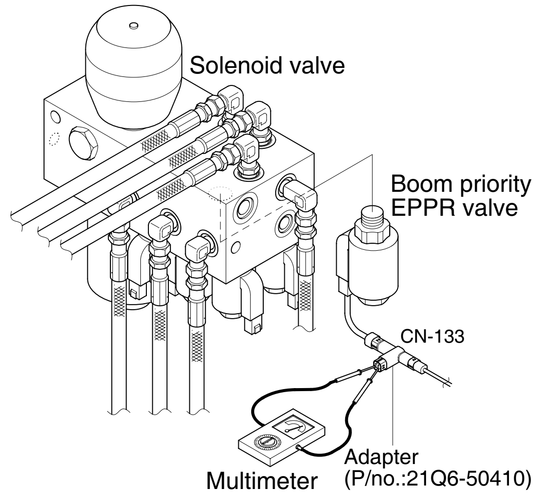
② Insert the adapter to CN-133 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

④ If rpm display approx 1800±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.

⑤ Check electric current in case of combined boom up and swing operation.

Spec : 400~600 mA
(combined boom up and swing operation)



(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove hose from A5 port and connect pressure gauge as figure.
·Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)

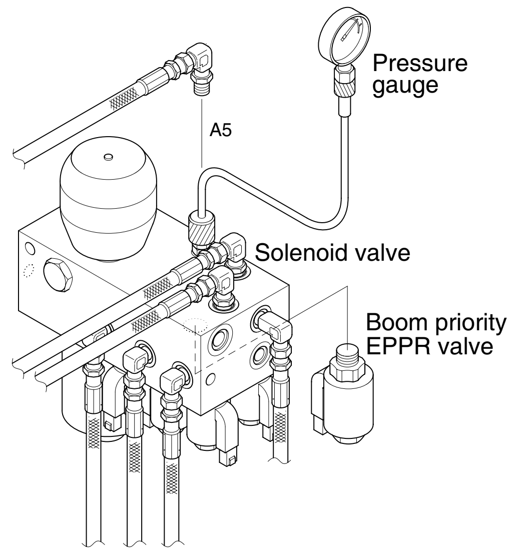
② Start engine.

③ If rpm display approx 1800±50 rpm disconnect check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

④ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑤ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 12~37 kgf/cm² (170~530 psi)
(bucket relief operation)



GROUP 14 MONITORING SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

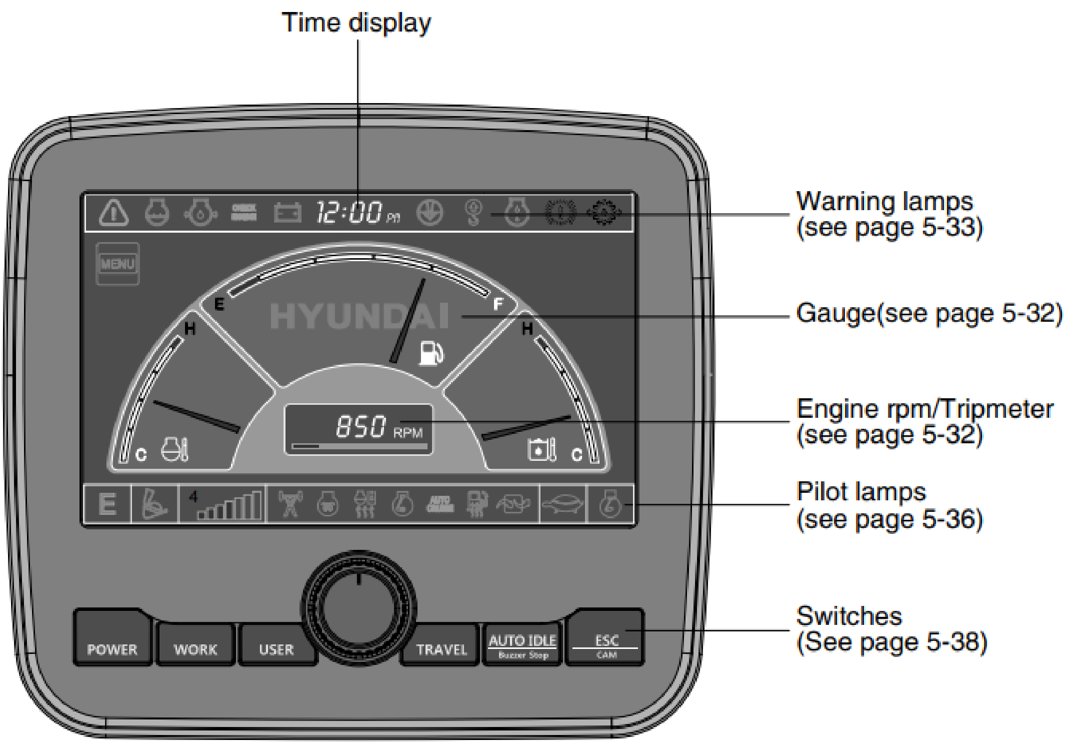
Monitoring system consists of the monitor part and switch part.

The monitor part gives warnings when any abnormality occurs in the machine and informs the condition of the machine.

Various select switches are built into the monitor panel, which act as the control portion of the machine control system.

2. CLUSTER

1) MONITOR PANEL



2) CLUSTER CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Start key : ON

① Check monitor

a. Buzzer sounding for 4 seconds with HYUNDAI logo on cluster.

※ If the ESL mode is set to the enable, enter the password to start engine.

② After initialization of cluster, the operating screen is displayed on the LCD. Also, self diagnostic function is carried out.

a. Engine rpm display : 0 rpm

b. Engine coolant temperature gauge : White range

c. Hydraulic oil temperature gauge : White range

d. Fuel level gauge : White range

※ When engine coolant temperature below 30˚C, the warming up pilot lamp lights up.

③ Indicating lamp state

a. Power mode pilot lamp : E mode or U mode

b. Work mode pilot lamp : General operation mode (bucket)

c. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

(2) Start of engine

① Check machine condition

a. RPM display indicates at present rpm

b. Gauge and warning lamp : Indicate at present condition.

※ When normal condition : All warning lamp OFF

c. Work mode selection : General work

d. Power mode selection : E mode or U mode

e. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

② When warming up operation

a. Warming up pilot lamp : ON

b. After engine started, engine speed increases to 1200 rpm.

※ Others same as above.

③ When abnormal condition

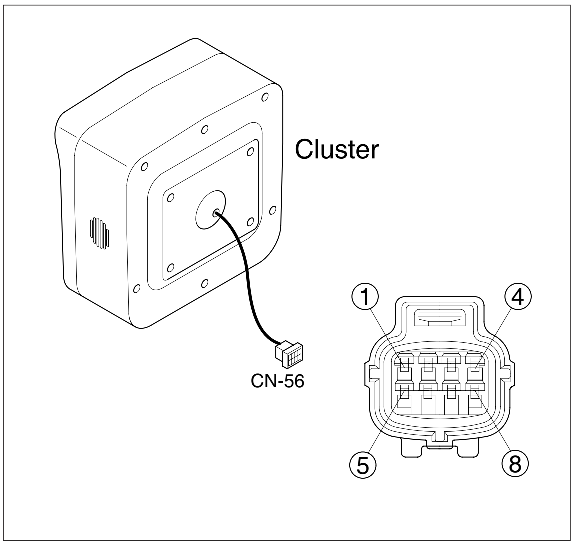
a. The warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds.

b. If BUZZER STOP switch is pressed, buzzer sound is canceled but the lamp warning lights up until normal condition.

※ The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blink when the select switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops.

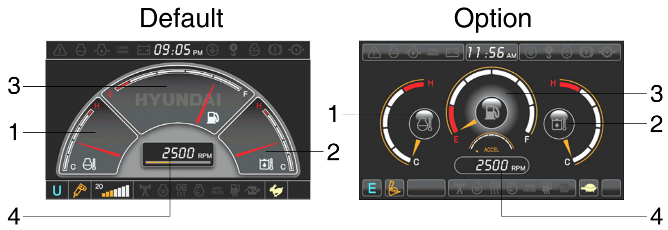
3. CLUSTER CONNECTOR

No.	Name	Signal
1	Battery 24V	20~32V
2	Signal 3	NTSC
3	GND	-
4	Serial + (TX)	0~5V
5	Power IG (24V)	20~32V
6	Signal 2	NTSC
7	Camera signal	NTSC
8	Serial - (RX)	0~5V



2) GAUGE

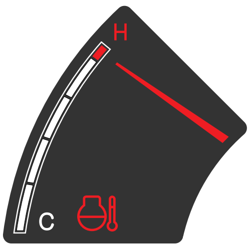
(1) Operation screen



1 Engine coolant temperature gauge
2 Hydraulic oil temperature gauge
3 Fuel level gauge
4 RPM / Tripmeter display

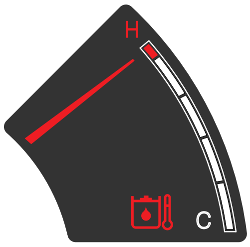
※ Operation screen type can be set by the screen type menu of the display.
Refer to page 5-50 for details.

(2) Engine coolant temperature gauge



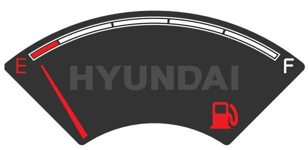
① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.
·White range : 40-107˚C (104-225˚F)
·Red range : Above 107˚C (225˚F)
② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp blinks in red, turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.
※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(3) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge



① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.
·White range : 40-105˚C(104-221˚F)
·Red range : Above 105˚C(221˚F)
② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp blinks is red, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.
※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(4) Fuel level gauge

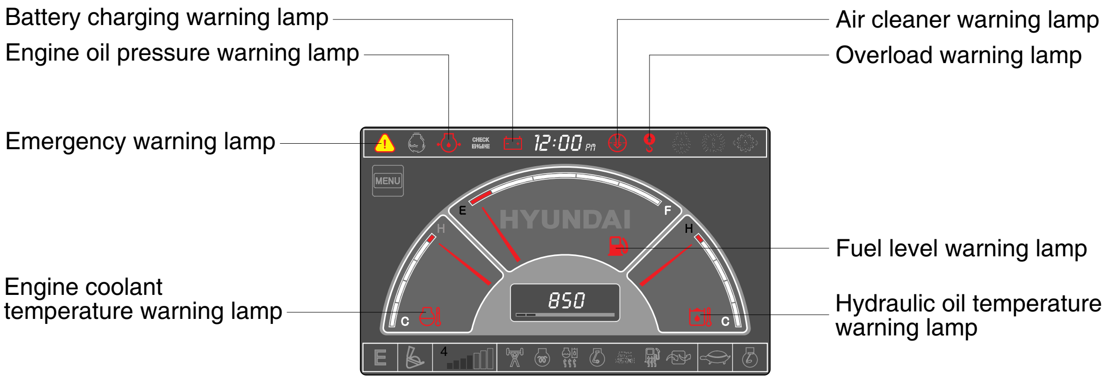


① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.
② Fill the fuel when the red range, or lamp blinks in red.
※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(5) RPM / Tripmeter display

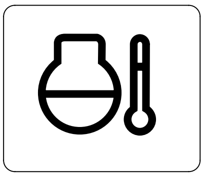
① This displays the engine rpm or the tripmeter.
※ Refer to page 5-50 for details.

3) WARNING LAMPS



※ Each warning lamp on the top of the LCD pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the each warning is happened. The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. And the buzzer stops.
Refer to page 5-39 for the select switch.

(1) Engine coolant temperature

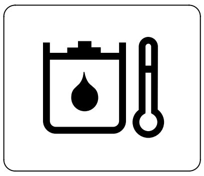


① Engine coolant temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 103˚C over : The lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds.
- 107˚C over : The lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also, the buzzer stops and lamp keeps blink.

③ Check the cooling system when the lamp keeps ON.

(2) Hydraulic oil temperature



① Hydraulic oil temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 100˚C over : The lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds.
- 105˚C over : The lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also, the buzzer stops and lamp keeps blink.

③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.

(3) Fuel level

① This warning lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 69ℓ(18.2 U.S. gal).

② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp blinks.

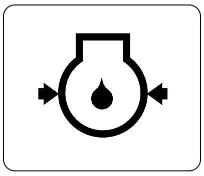
(4) Emergency warning lamp

① This lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings is happened.
- Engine coolant overheating (over 105˚C)
- Hydraulic oil overheating (over 105˚C)
- Pump EPPR circuit abnormal or open
- Attachment flow EPPR circuit abnormal or open
- MCU input voltage abnormal
- Accel dial circuit abnormal or open
- Cluster communication data error

※ **The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops. This is same as following warning lamps.**

② When this warning lamp blinks, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

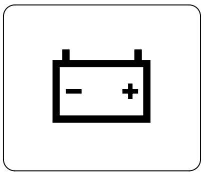
(5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



① This lamp blinks when the engine oil pressure is low.

② If the lamp blinks, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

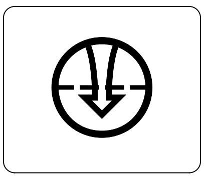
(6) Battery charging warning lamp



① This lamp blinks when the battery charging voltage is low.

② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp blinks.

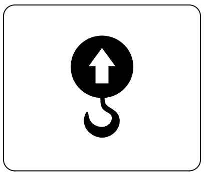
(7) Air cleaner warning lamp



① This lamp blinks when the filter of air cleaner is clogged.

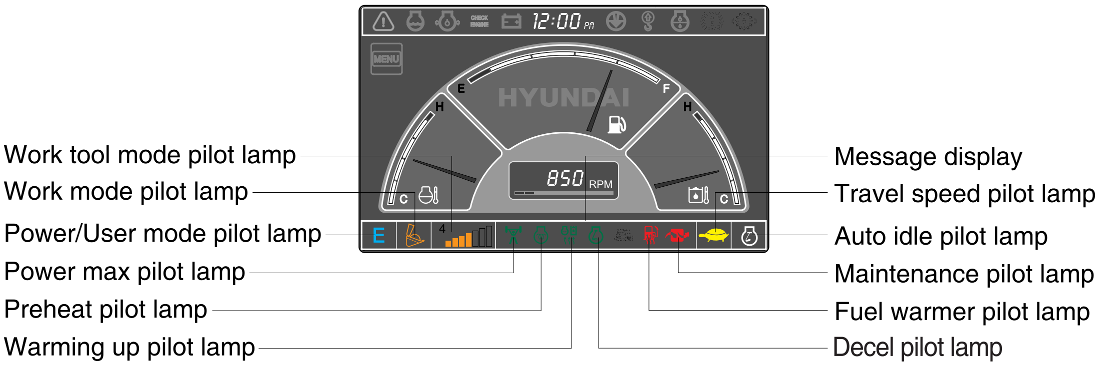
② Check the filter and clean or replace it.

(8) Overload warning lamp (opt)

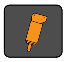


① When the machine is overload, the overload warning lamp blinks during the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
② Reduce the machine load.

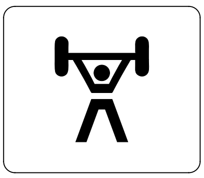
4) PILOT LAMPS



(1) Mode pilot lamps

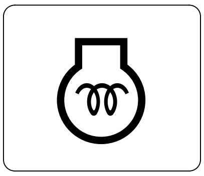
No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
1	Power mode	P	Heavy duty power work mode
		S	Standard power mode
		E	Economy power mode
2	User mode	U	User preferable power mode
3	Work mode		General operation mode
			Breaker operation mode
			Crusher operation mode
4	Travel mode		Low speed traveling
			High speed traveling
5	Auto idle mode		Auto idle
6	Work tool mode		Oil flow level of breaker or crusher mode
7	Message display		"Setting is completed" display after selection

(2) Power max pilot lamp



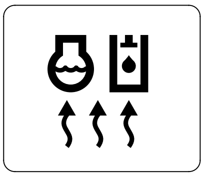
① The lamp will be ON when pushing power max switch on the LH RCV lever.
② The power max function is operated maximum 8 seconds.
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 3-26 for power max function.

(3) Preheat pilot lamp



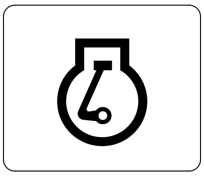
① Turning the start key switch ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
② Start the engine after this lamp is OFF.

(4) Warming up pilot lamp



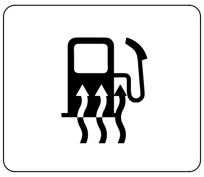
① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 30˚C (86˚F).
② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30˚C, or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

(5) Decel pilot lamp



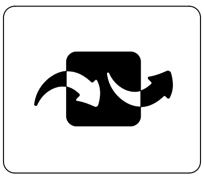
① Operating one touch decel switch on the RCV lever makes the lamp ON.
② Also, the lamp will be ON and engine speed will be lowered automatically to save fuel consumption when all levers and pedals are at neutral position, and the auto idle function is selected.
※ One touch decel is not available when the auto idle pilot lamp is turned ON.
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 3-26.

(6) Fuel warmer pilot lamp



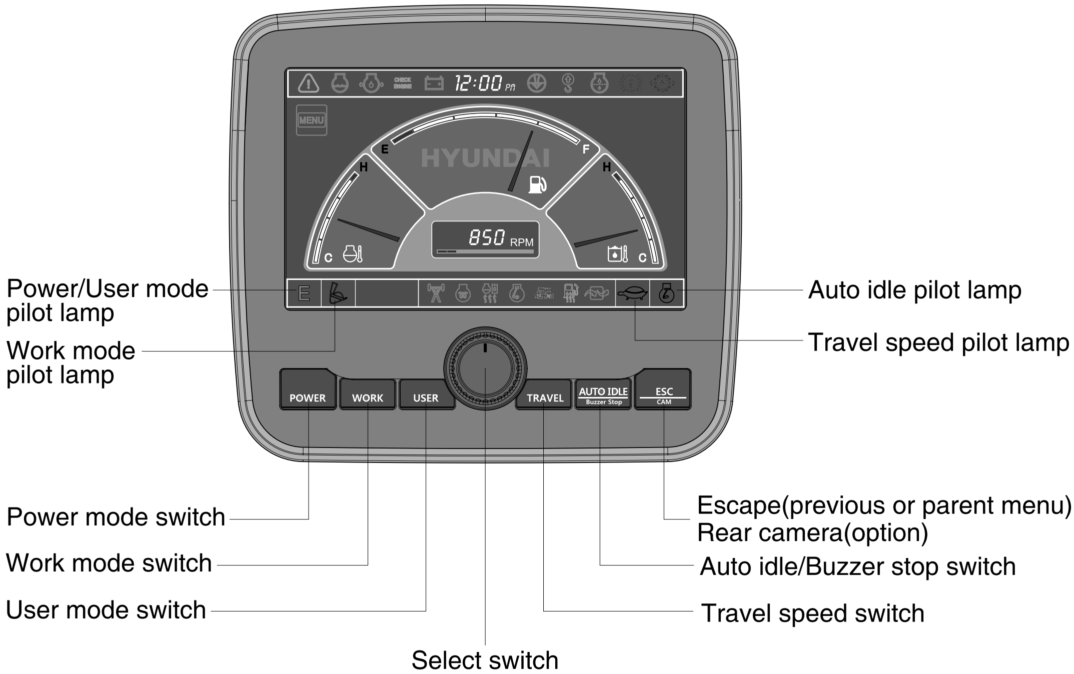
① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 10˚C (50˚F) or the hydraulic oil temperature 20˚C (68˚F).
② The automatic fuel warming is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 60˚C, or the hydraulic oil temperature is above 45˚C since the start switch was ON position.

(7) Maintenance pilot lamp



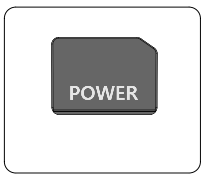
① This lamp will be ON when the consuming parts are needed to change or replace. It means that the change or replacement interval of the consuming parts remains below 30 hours.
② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights ON for 3 minutes when the start switch is ON position.

5) SWITCHES



※ When the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to the page 5-36 for details.

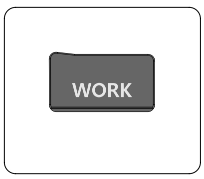
(1) Power mode switch



① This switch is to select the machine power mode and selected power mode pilot lamp is displayed on the pilot lamp position.
- ·P : Heavy duty power work.
- ·S : Standard power work.
- ·E : Economy power work.

② The pilot lamp changes E → S → P → E in order.

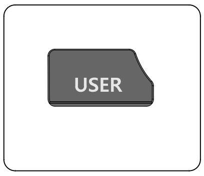
(2) Work mode switch



① This switch is to select the machine work mode, which shifts from general operation mode to optional attachment operation mode.
- · : General operation mode
- · : Breaker operation mode (if equipped)
- · : Crusher operation mode (if equipped)
- ·Not installed : Breaker or crusher is not installed.

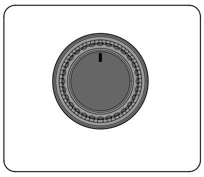
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 4-6 for details.

(3) User mode switch



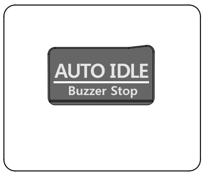
① This switch is used to memorize the current machine operating status in the MCU and activate the memorized user mode.
·Memory : Push more than 2 seconds.
·Action : Push within 2 seconds.
·Cancel : Push this switch once more within 2 seconds.
② Refer to the page 5-41 for another set of user mode.

(4) Select switch



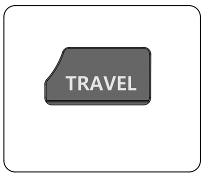
① This switch is used to select or change the menu and input value.
② Knob push
·Long (over 2 sec) : Return to the operation screen
·Medium (0.5~2 sec) : Return to the previous screen
·Short (below 0.5 sec) : Select menu
③ Knob rotation
This knob changes menu and input value.
·Right turning : Down direction / Increase input value
·Left turning : Up direction / Decreased input value

(5) Auto idle/ buzzer stop switch



① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.
·Pilot lamp ON : Auto idle function is activated.
·Pilot lamp OFF : Auto idle function is cancelled.
② The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.
In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

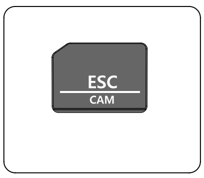
(6) Travel speed control switch



① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.

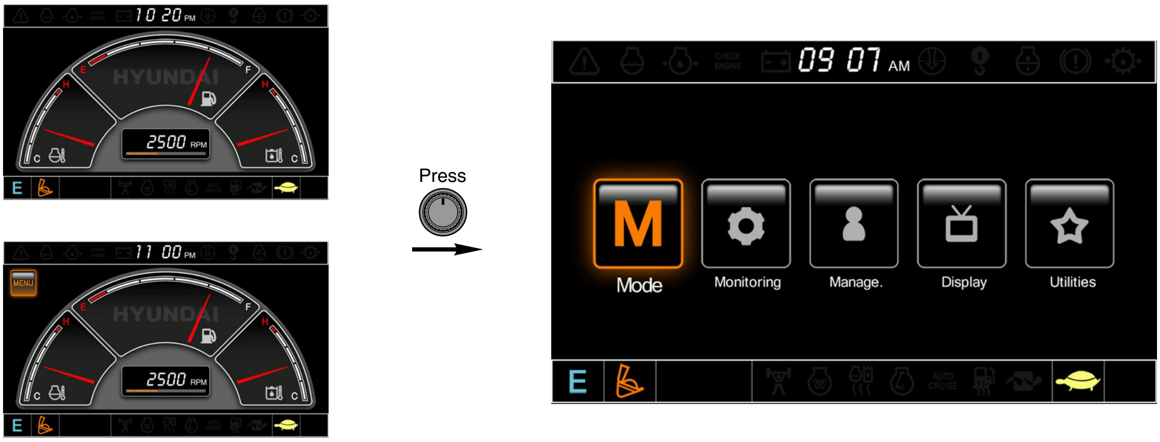
·  : High speed
·  : Low speed

(7) Escape/Camera switch



① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.
② In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).
Please refer to page 5-61 for the camera.
③ If the camera is not installed, this switch is used only ESC function.

6) MAIN MENU



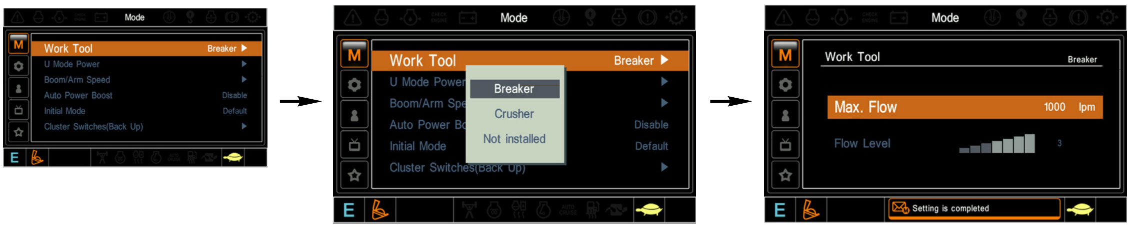
※ Please refer to select switch, page 5-39 for selection and change of menu and input value.

(1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	M Mode	Work tool U mode power Boom/Arm speed Auto power boost Initial mode Cluster switch (back up)	Breaker, Crusher, Not installed User mode only Boom speed, Arm speed Enable, Disable Default, U mode Switch function
2	Monitoring	Active fault Logged fault Delete logged fault Monitoring (analog) Monitoring (digital) Operating hours	MCU MCU All logged fault delete, Initialization canceled Machine information Switch status, Output status Operating hours for each mode
3	Management	Maintenance information Machine security Machine Information A/S phone number Service menu	Replacement, Change interval oils and filters ESL mode setting, Password change Cluster, MCU, Engine, Machine A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Power shift, Hourmeter start, Replacement history, Update
4	Display	Display item Clock Brightness Unit Language Screen type	Engine speed, Tripmeter A, Tripmeter B, Tripmeter C Clock Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure, Flow, Date format Korean, English, Chinese A type, B type
5	Utilities	Tripmeter DMB Entertainment Camera setting Message box	3 kinds (A, B, C) DMB select, DAB select, Channel scan, Exit Play MP4, codec. Basic direction, Display switching, Full screen Record for fault, attachment etc.

(2) Mode

① Work tool

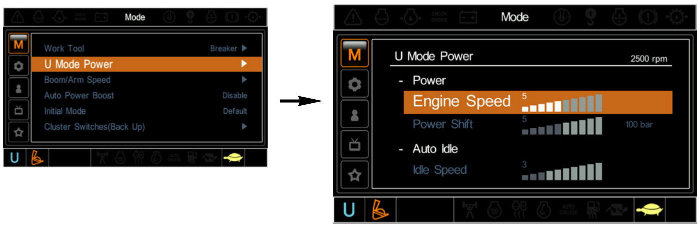


A　　　　　　　　　　B

- A : Select one installed optional attachment.
- B : Max flow - Set the maximum flow for the attachment.
  Flow level - Reduce the operating flow from maximum flow.
  Breaker - Max 7 steps, Reduced 10 lpm each step.
  Crusher - Max 4 steps, Reduced 20 lpm each step.

※ The flow level is displayed with the work mode pilot lamp.

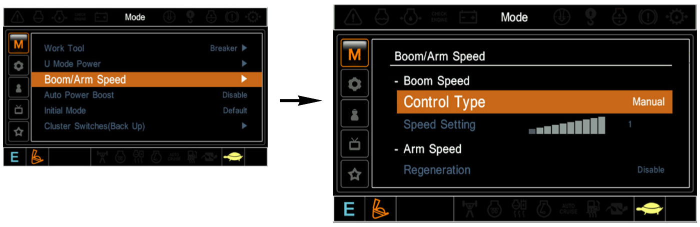
② U mode power (HCEC engine)



Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1400	850	0
2	1500	900	3
3	1600	950	6
4	1700	1000	9
5	1800	1050 (decel rpm)	12
6	1850	1100	16
7	1900	1150	20
8	1950	1200	26
9	2000	1250	32
10	2050	1300	38

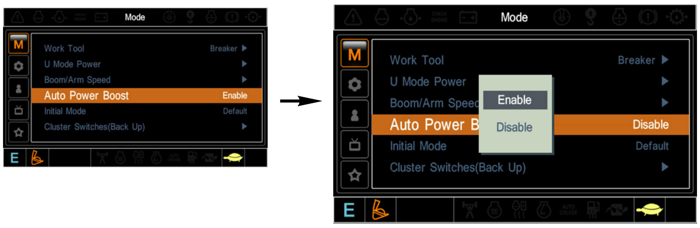
- Engine high idle rpm, auto idle rpm and pump torque (power shift) can be modulated and memorized separately in U-mode.
- U-mode can be activated by user mode switch.

③ Boom/Arm speed



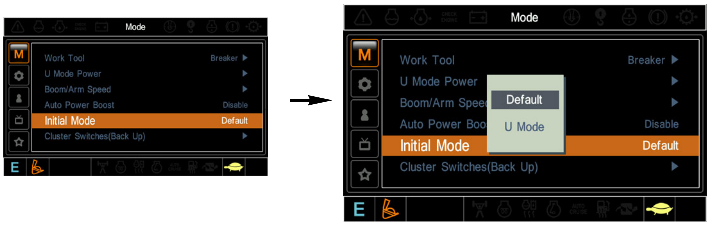
· Boom speed
- Control type
Manual - Boom up speed is fixed as set steps.
Auto - Boom up speed is automatically adjusted as working conditions by the MCU.
- Speed setting - Boom up speed is increased as much as activated steps.

④ Auto power boost



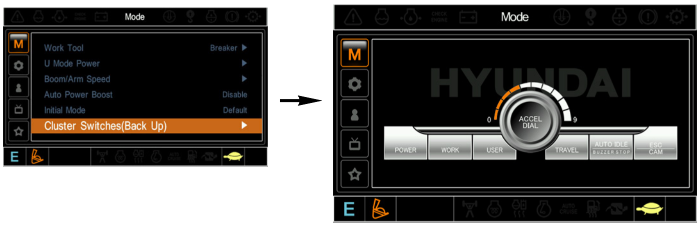
· The power boost function can be activated or cancelled.
· Enable - The digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU.
It is operated max 8 seconds.
· Disable - Not operated.

⑤ Initial mode



· Default - The initial power mode is set E mode when the engine is started.
· U mode - The initial power mode is set U mode when the engine is started.

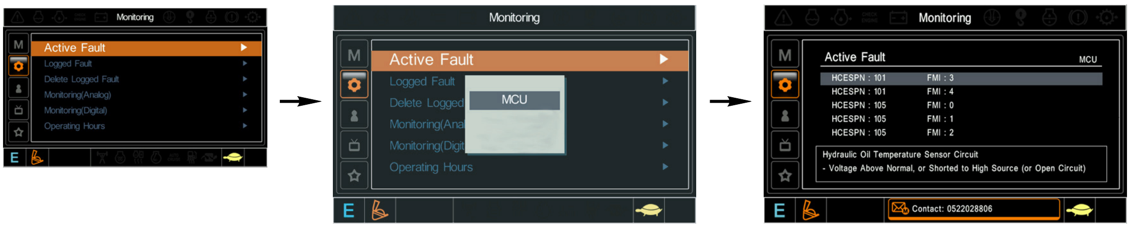
⑥ Cluster switch (back up)



- The cluster switch can be selected and changed by this menu when the switches are abnormal on the cluster.
- In order to exit "Cluster switch" mode, please put the cursor on the ESC/CAM switch by turning the select switch and push the select switch.
- In "Cluster switch", other switches except "Select switch" do not work.

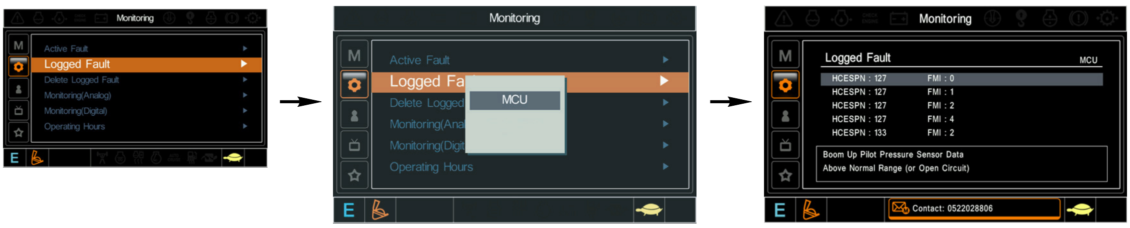
(3) Monitoring

① Active fault



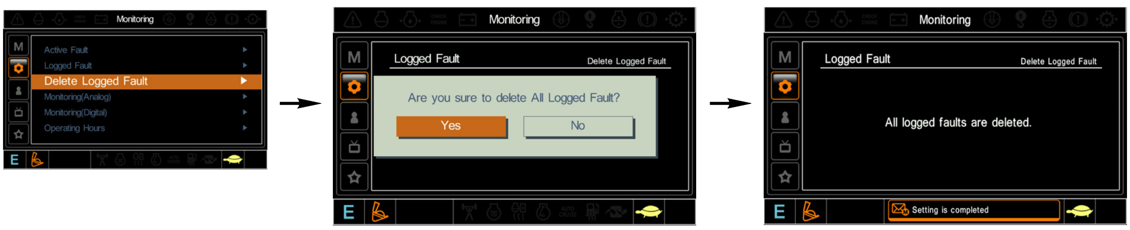
· The active faults of the MCU can be checked by this menu.

② Logged fault



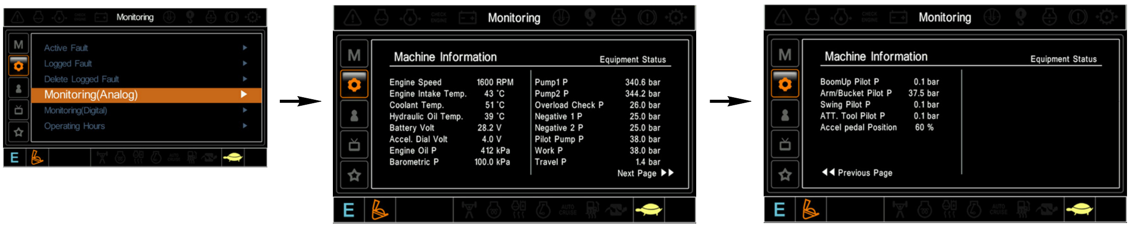
· The logged faults of the MCU can be checked by this menu.

③ Delete logged fault



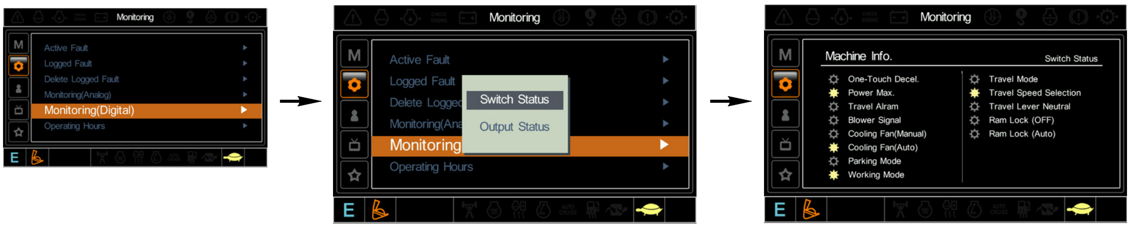
· The logged faults of the MCU can be deleted by this menu.

④ Monitoring(Analog)



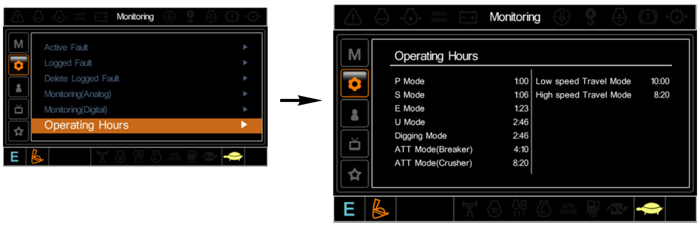
· The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.

⑤ Monitoring (digital)



· The switch status or output status can be confirmed by this menu.
· The activated switch or output pilot lamps ✹ are light ON.

⑥ Operating hours



· The operating hour of each mode can be confirmed by this menu.

(4) Management

① Maintenance information

· Alarm( ) : Gray - Normal
Yellow - First warning
Red - Second warning

· Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).

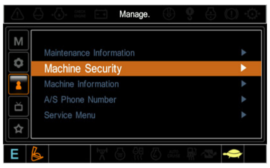
· Change interval : The change or replace interval can be changed in the unit of 50 hours.

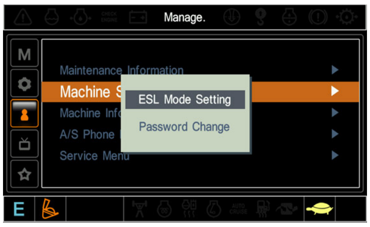
· OK : Return to the item list screen.

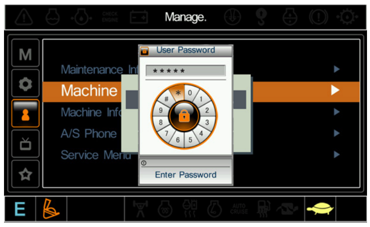
· Change or relpace interval

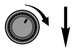
No	Item	Interval
1	Engine oil	250
2	Final gear oil	1000
3	Swing gear oil	1000
4	Hydraulic oil	5000
5	Pilot line filter	1000
6	Drain filter	1000
7	Hydraulic oil return filter	1000
8	Engine oil filter	250
9	Fuel filter	500
10	Pre-filter	500
11	Hydraulic tank breather	250
12	Air cleaner (inner)	500
13	Radiator coolant	2000
14	Swing gear pinion grease	1000

② Machine security







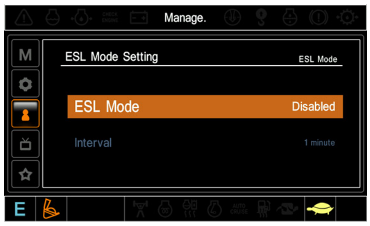


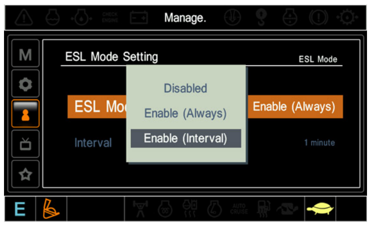
· ESL mode

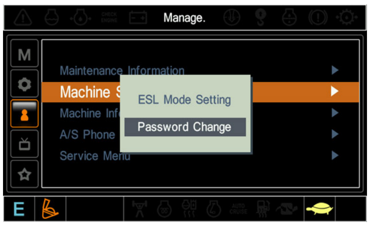
- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is desingned to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- If the ESL mode was selected Enable, the password will be required when the start switch is turned ON.
- Disable : Not used ESL function

  Enable (always) : The password is required whenever the operator start engine.

  Enable (interval) : The password is required when the operator start engine first. But the operator restarts the engine within the interval time, the password is not required. The interval time can be set maximum 4 hours.



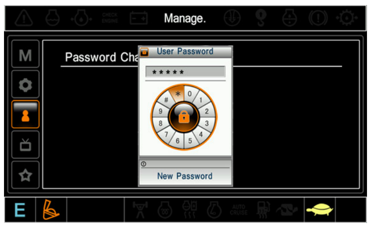




Enter the current password

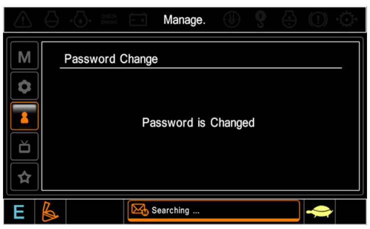
· Password change

- The password is 5~10 digits.



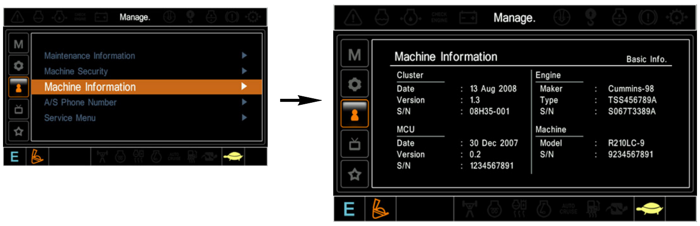
Enter the new password

Enter the new password again



The new password is stored in the MCU.

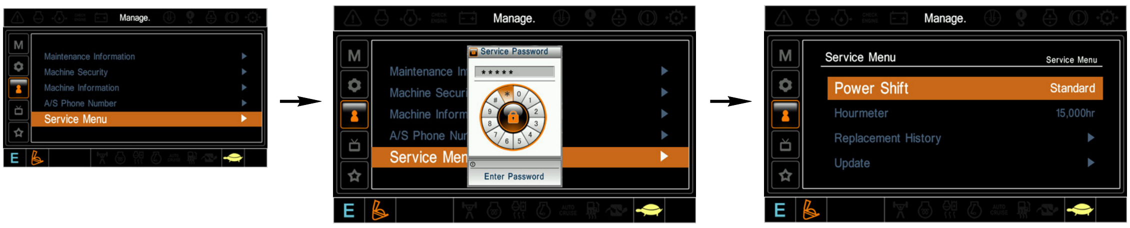
③ Machine Information



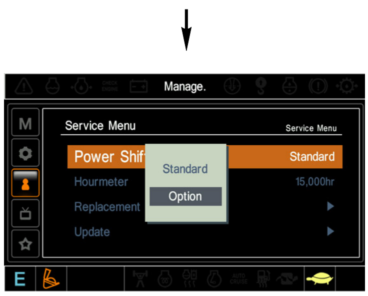
· This can confirm the identification of the cluster, MCU, engine and machine.

④ A/S phone number

⑤ Service menu



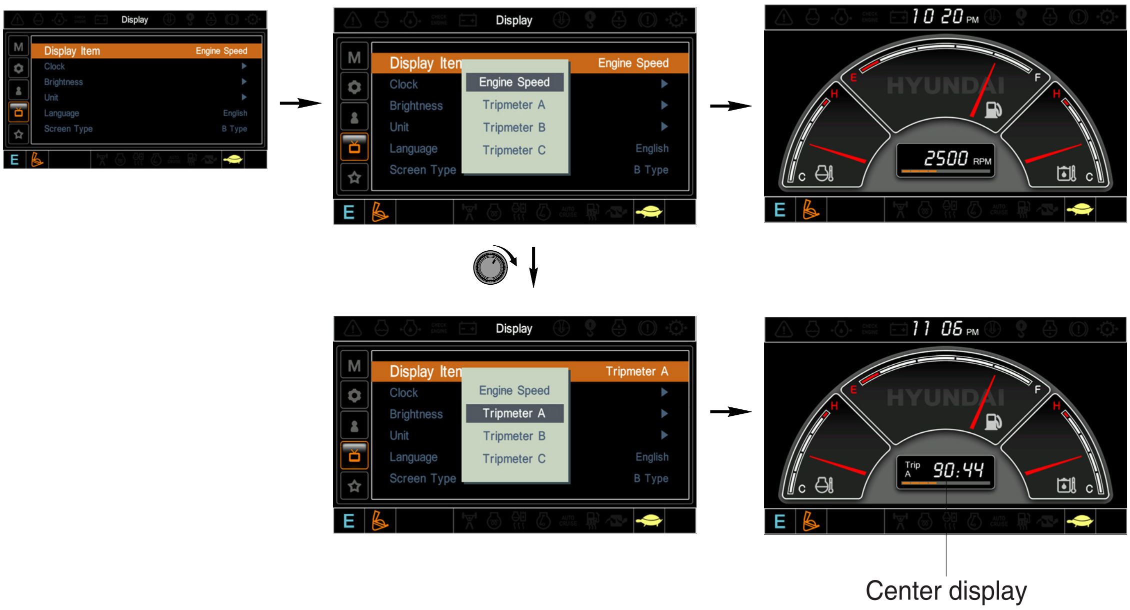
Enter the password



· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.
· Hourmeter start : Operating hours since the machine line out can be checked by this menu.
· Replacement history : Replacement history of the MCU and cluster can be checked by this menu.
· Update : Firm ware can be upgraded by this menu. (the USB port is located under the cluster)

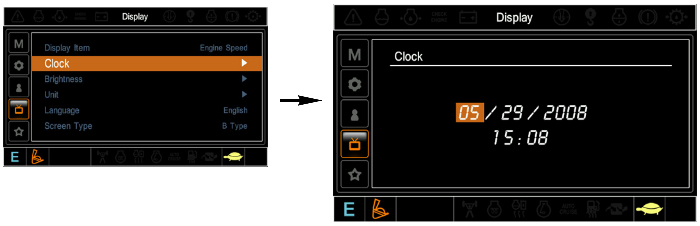
(5) Display

① Display item



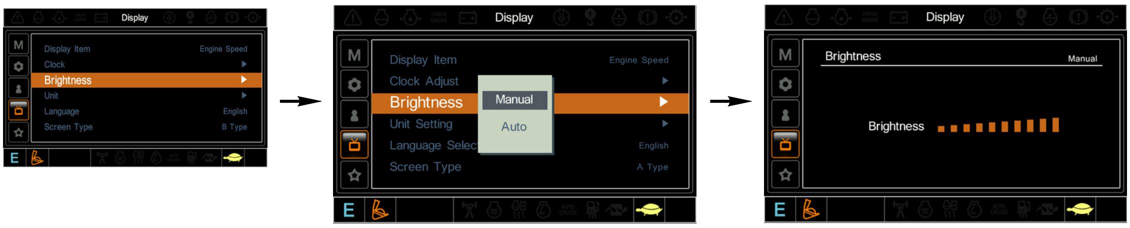
· The center display type of the LCD can be selected by this menu.
· The engine speed or each of the tripmeter (A,B,C) is displayed on the center display.

② Clock

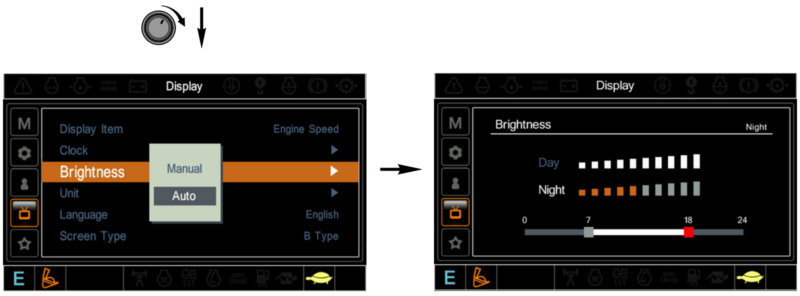


· The first line's three spots "**/**/****" represent Month/Day/Year each.
· The second line shows the current time. (0:00~23:59)

③ Brightness



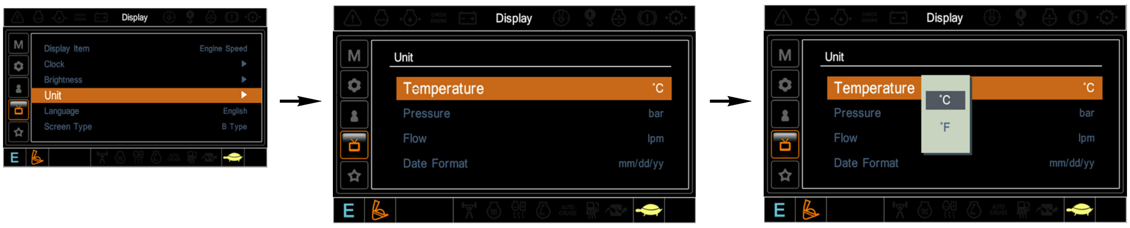
Manual (1st~10th step)



Auto (day/night)

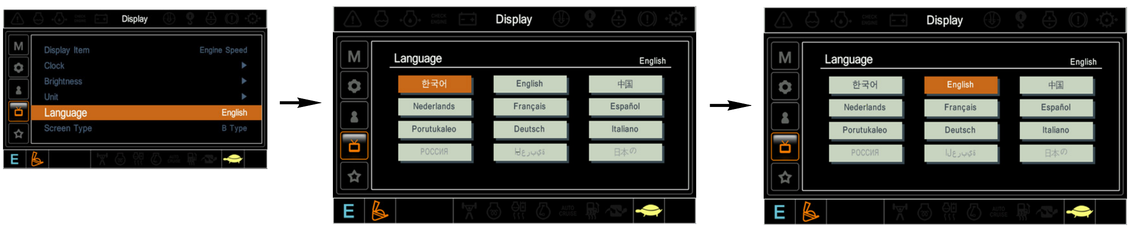
※ If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be differently set up. Also by using the bar in lower side, users can define which time interval belongs to day and night.
(in bar figure, gray area represents night time while white shows day time)

④ Unit



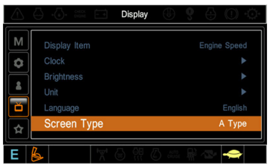
· Temperature : ˚C ↔ ˚F
· Pressure : bar ↔ MPa ↔ kgf/cm^2
· Flow : lpm ↔ gpm
· Date format : yy/mm/dd ↔ mm/dd/yy ↔ dd-Mar-yy

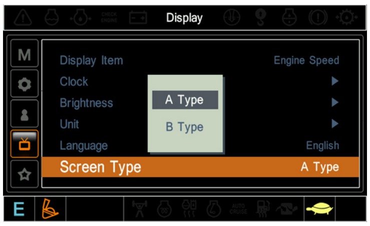
⑤ Language



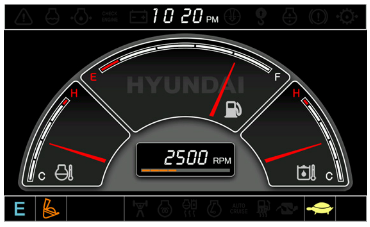
· User can select preferable language and all displays are changed the selected language.

⑥ Screen type

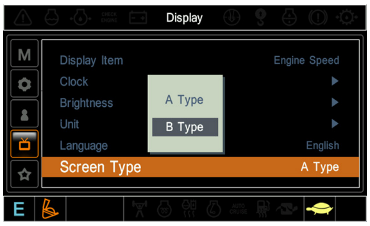




A Type



Standard

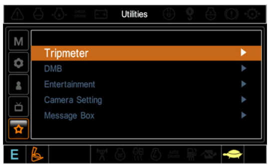


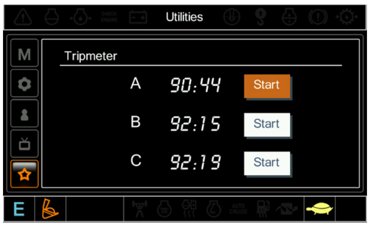
B Type

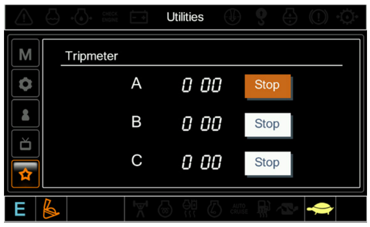
Option

(6) Utilities

① Tripmeter

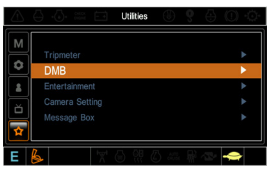


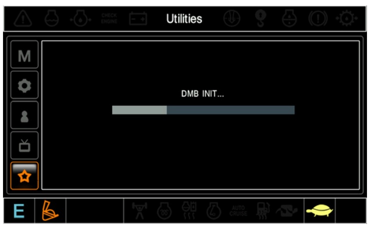


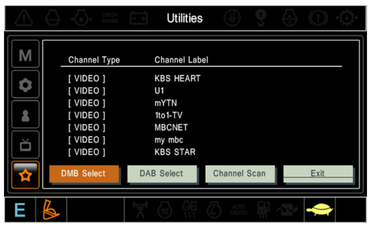


- Maximum 3 kinds of tripmeters can be used at the same time.
- Each tripmeter can be turned on by choosing "Start" while it also can be turned off by choosing "Stop".
- If the tripmeter icon is activated in the operation screen, it can be controlled directly there.

② DMB



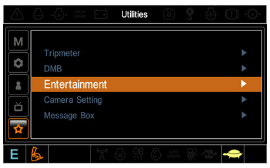


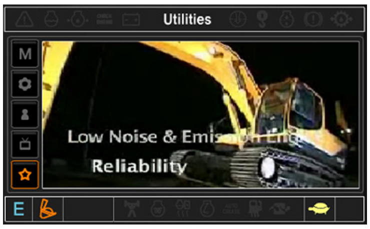


- DMB select : TV channel can be selected by this menu.
- DAB select : Audio channel can be selected by this menu.
- Channel scan : This menu can be used other region for TV/Audio.
- Exit : Exit DMB menu

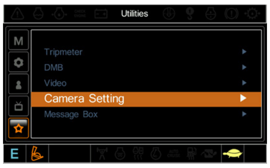
③ Entertainment

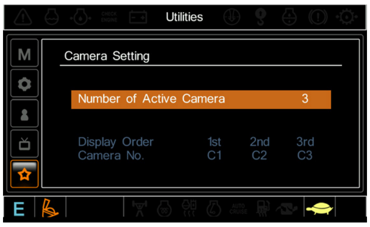
· Play MP4 or codec file of external hard disk through USB port.
· The USB port is located under the cluster.

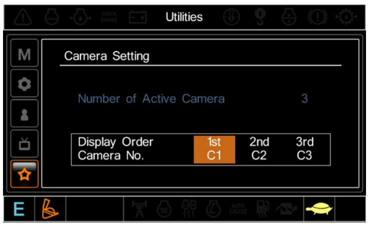




④ Camera setting





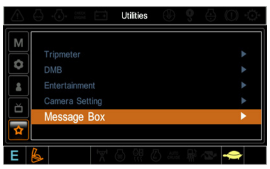


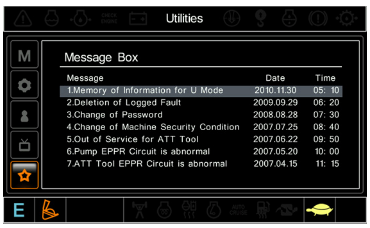
· Three cameras can be installed on the machine.
· The display order can be set by this menu.

· If the camera was not equipped, this menu is not useful.
· In the operation screen, if the ESC/CAM switch is pushed, the first ordered display camera will be viewed.
· Turnning the select switch in clockwise direction, the next ordered will be shown and in counter-clockwise direction, the previously ordered will be shown.
· Push the select switch, the displayed screen will be enlargement.

⑤ Message box

· The history of the machine operating status can be checked by this menu.

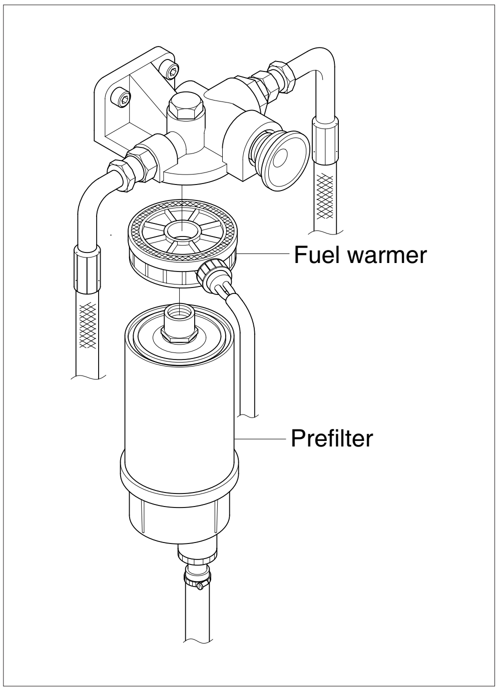




GROUP 15 FUEL WARMER SYSTEM

1. SPECIFICATION

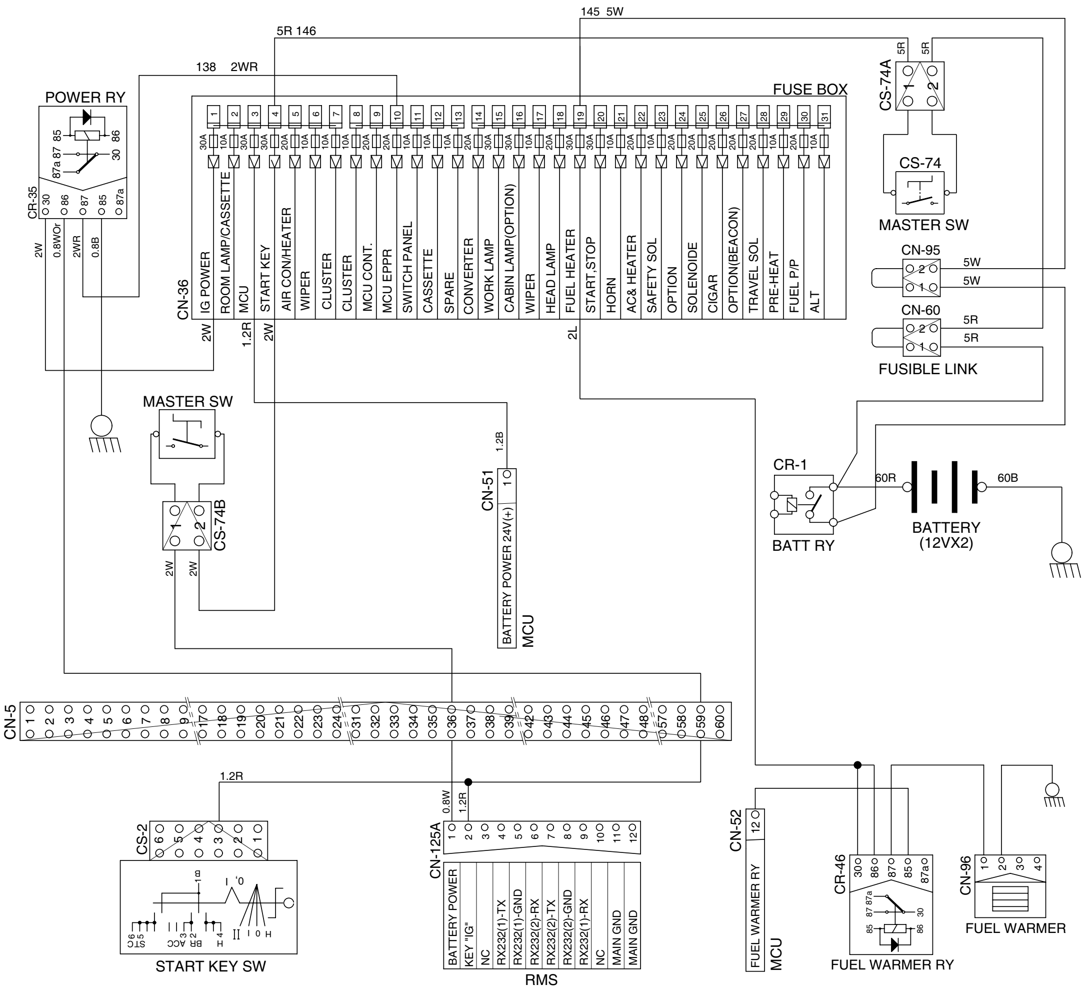
1) Operating voltage : 24±4 V
2) Power : 350±50 W
3) Current : 15 A



2. OPERATION

1) The current of fuel warmer system is automatically controlled without thermostat according to fuel temperature.
2) At the first state, the 15 A current flows to the fuel warmer and engine may be started in 1~2 minutes.
3) If the fuel starts to flow, ceramic-disk in the fuel warmer heater senses the fuel temperature to reduce the current as low as 1.5 A.
So, fuel is protected from overheating by this mechanism.

3. ELECTRIC CIRCUIT



SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

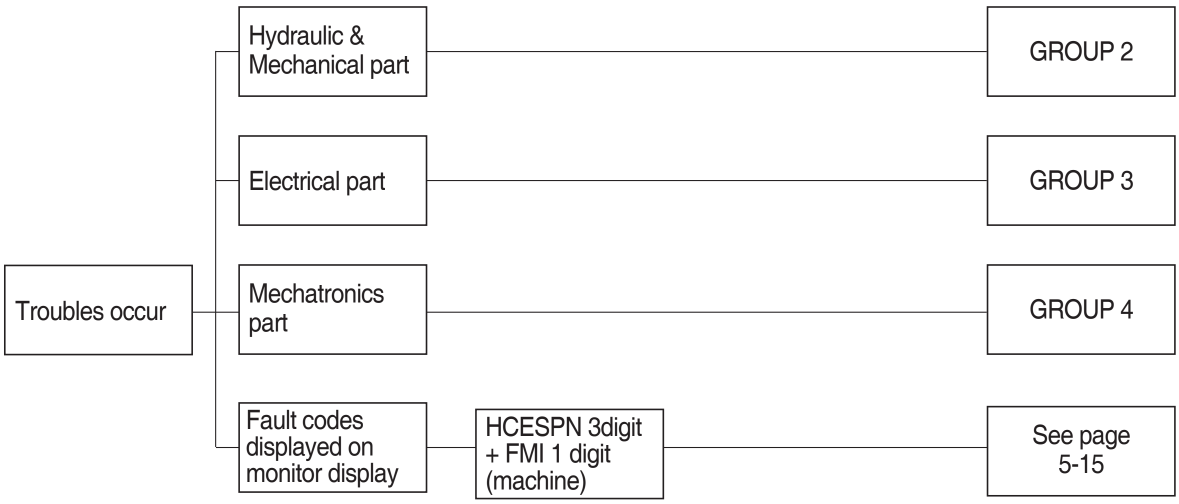
GROUP 1 BEFORE TROUBLESHOOTING

1. INTRODUCTION

When a trouble is occurred in the machine, this section will help an operator to maintain the machine with easy.

The trouble of machine is parted Hydraulic & Mechanical system, Electrical system and Mechatronics system. At each system part, an operator can check the machine according to the troubleshooting process diagram.

※ **Before carring out troubleshooting procedure, check monitoring menu in the cluster.**

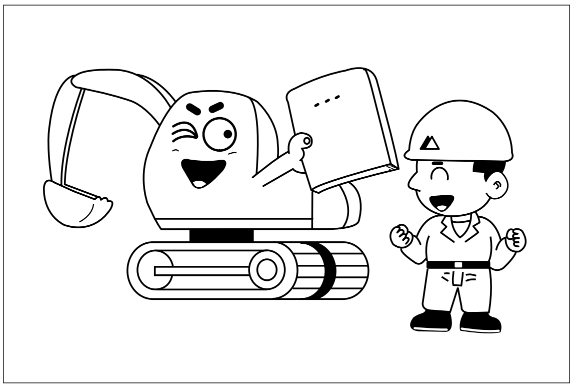


2. DIAGNOSING PROCEDURE

To carry out troubleshooting efficiently, the following steps must be observed.

STEP 1. Study the machine system

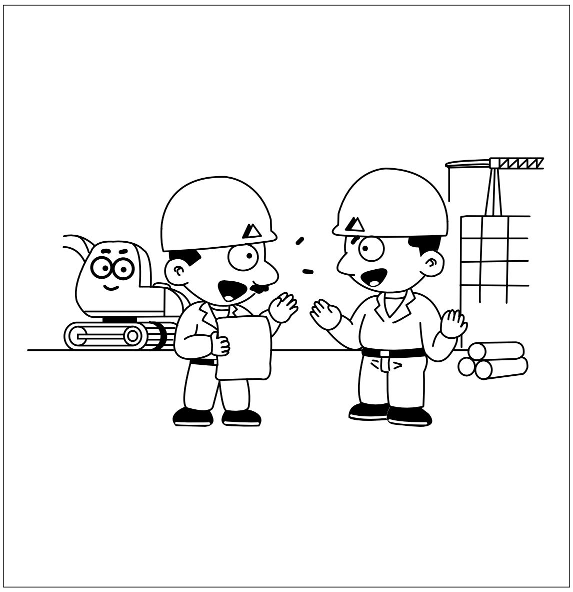
Study and know how the machine is operating, how the system is composing, what kinds of function are installed in the machine and what are specifications of the system components by the machine service manual.
Especially, deepen the knowledge for the related parts of the trouble.



STEP 2. Ask the operator

Before inspecting, get the full story of malfunctions from a witness --- the operator.

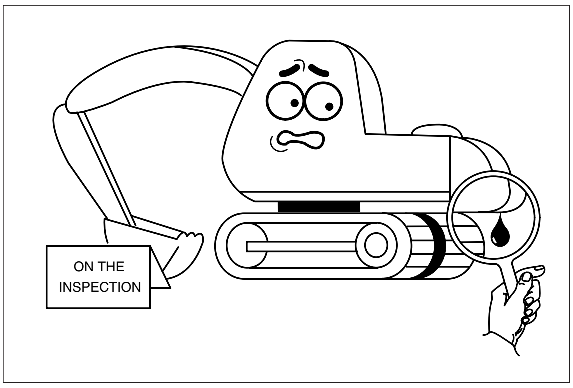
1) How the machine is used and when it is serviced?
2) When the trouble was noticed and what work the machine was doing at that time?
3) What is the phenomenon of the trouble? Was the trouble getting worse, or did it come out suddenly for the first time?
4) Did the machine have any troubles previously? If so, which parts were repaired before.



STEP 3. Inspect the machine

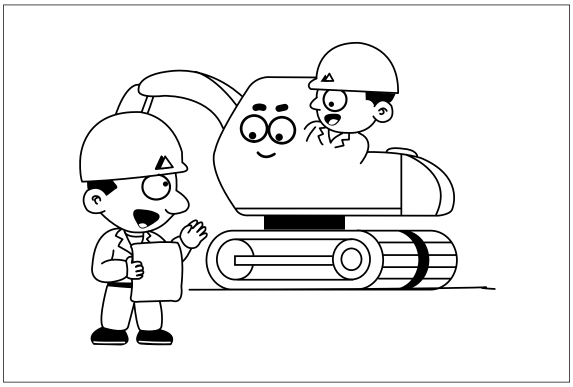
Before starting troubleshooting, check the machine for the daily maintenance points as shown in the operator's manual.

And also check the electrical system including batteries, as the troubles in the electrical system such as low battery voltage, loose connections and blown out fuses will result in malfunction of the controllers causing total operational failures of the machine.



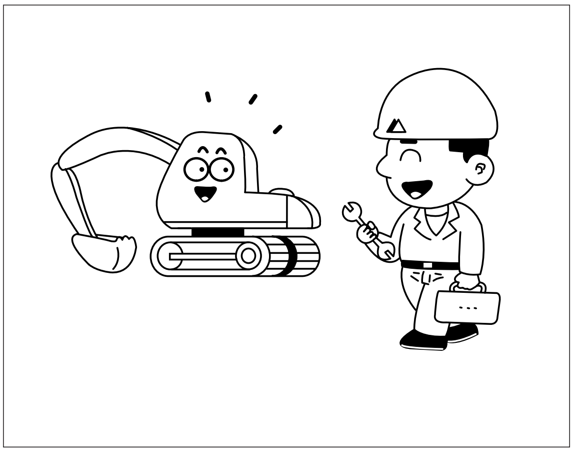
STEP 4. Inspect the trouble actually on the machine

In case that some trouble cannot be confirmed, obtain the details of the malfunction from the operator.
Also, check if there are any in complete connections of the wire harnesses are or not.



STEP 5. Perform troubleshooting

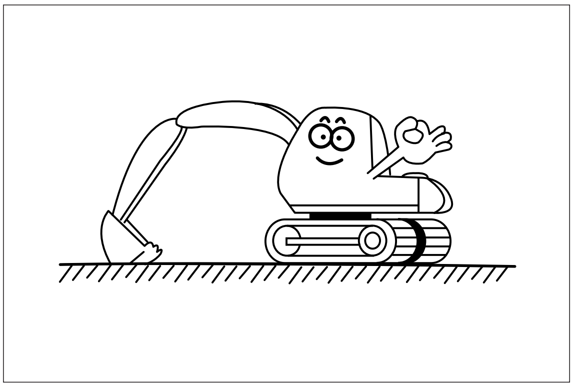
According to where the trouble parts are located, hydraulic & mechanical system part or electrical system part or mechatronics system part, perform troubleshooting the machine refer to the each system part's troubleshooting process diagram.



STEP 6. Trace a cause

Before reaching a conclusion, check the most suspectible causes again. Try to trace what the real cause of the trouble is.

Make a plan of the appropriate repairing procedure to avoid consequential malfunctions.



GROUP 2 HYDRAULIC AND MECHANICAL SYSTEM

1. INTRODUCTION

1) MACHINE IN GENERAL

(1) If even a minor fault is left intact and operation is continued, a fatal failure may be caused, entailing a large sum of expenses and long hours of restoration.
Therefore when even a small trouble occurs, do not rely on your intuition and experience, but look for the cause based on the troubleshooting principle and perform maintenance and adjustment to prevent major failure from occurring. Keep in mind that a fault results from a combination of different causes.

(2) The following lists up commonly occurring faults and possible causes with this machine. For the troubleshooting of the engine, refer to the coming troubleshooting and repair.

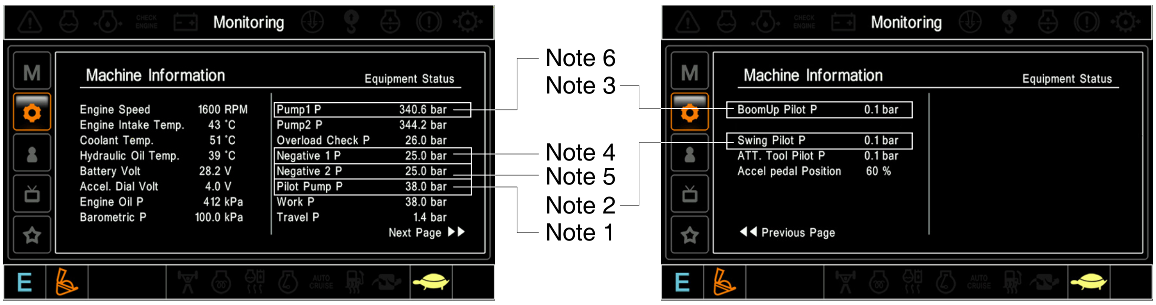
(3) When carrying out troubleshooting, do not hurry to disassemble the components.
It will become impossible to find the cause of the problem.

(4) Ask user or operator the following.
① Was there any strange thing about machine before failure occurred?
② Under what conditions did the failure occur?
③ Have any repairs been carried out before the failure?

(5) Check before troubleshooting.
① Check oil and fuel level.
② Check for any external leakage of oil from components.
③ Check for loose or damage of wiring and connections.

2) MACHINE STATUS MONITORING ON THE CLUSTER (CLUSTER TYPE 1)

(1) The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.



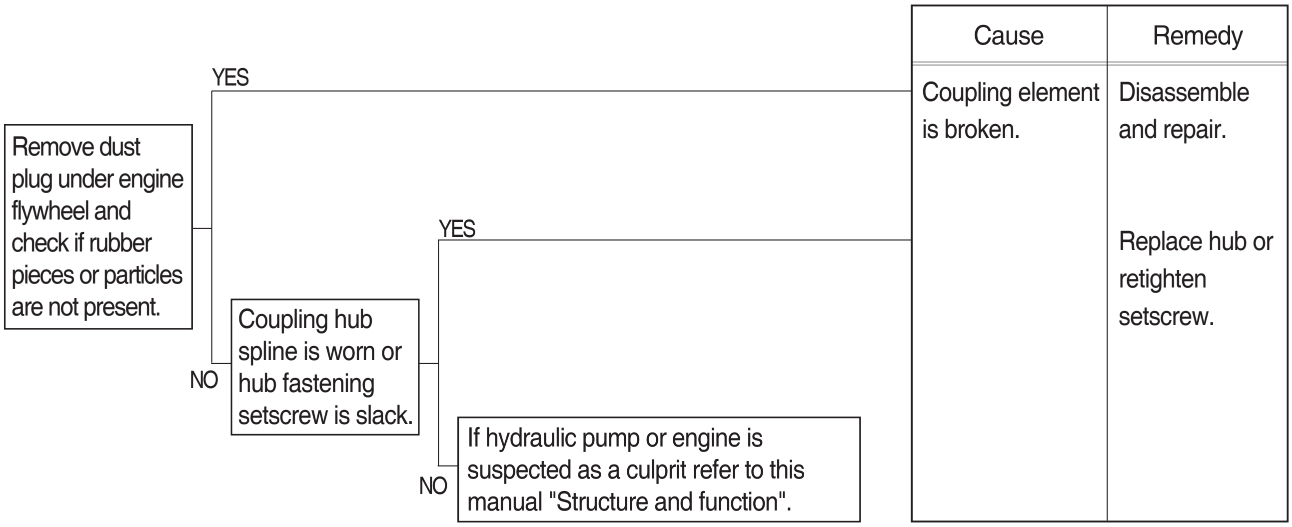
Analog 1 Analog 2

(2) Specification

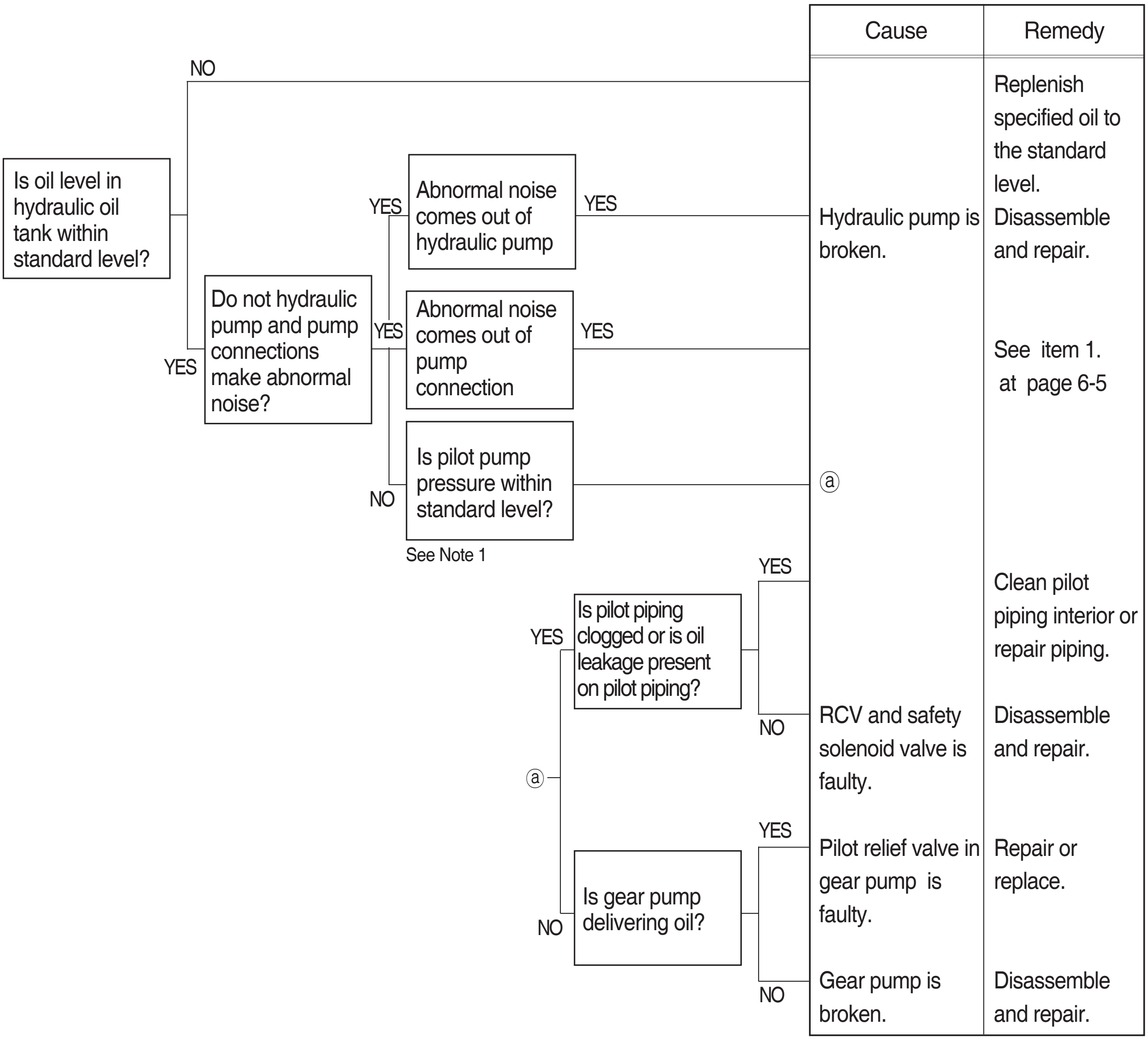
No.	Description	Specification
Note 1	Pilot pump pressure	40^{+2}_{0} bar
Note 2	Swing pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 3	Boom up pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 4	P1 pump control pressure	0~25 bar
Note 5	P2 pump control pressure	0~25 bar
Note 6	Pump 1 pressure	350 bar

2. DRIVE SYSTEM

1) UNUSUAL NOISE COMES OUT OF PUMP CONNECTION

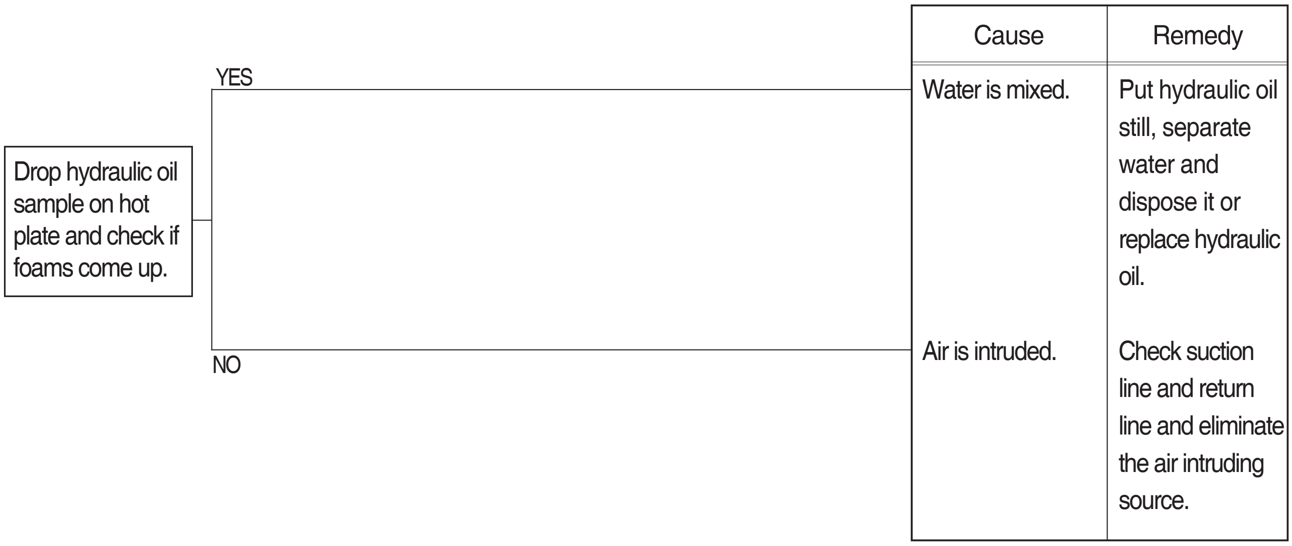


2) ENGINE STARTS BUT MACHINE DOES NOT OPERATE AT ALL

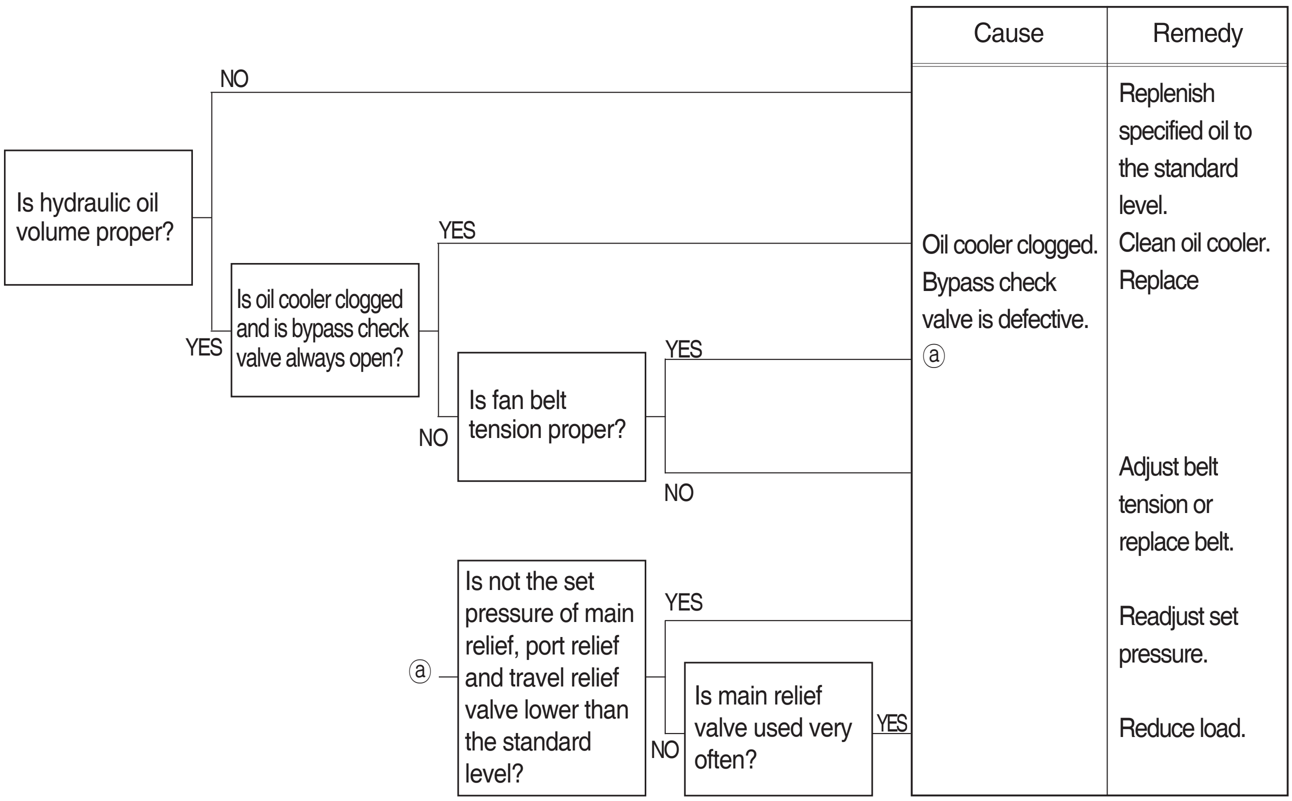


3. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

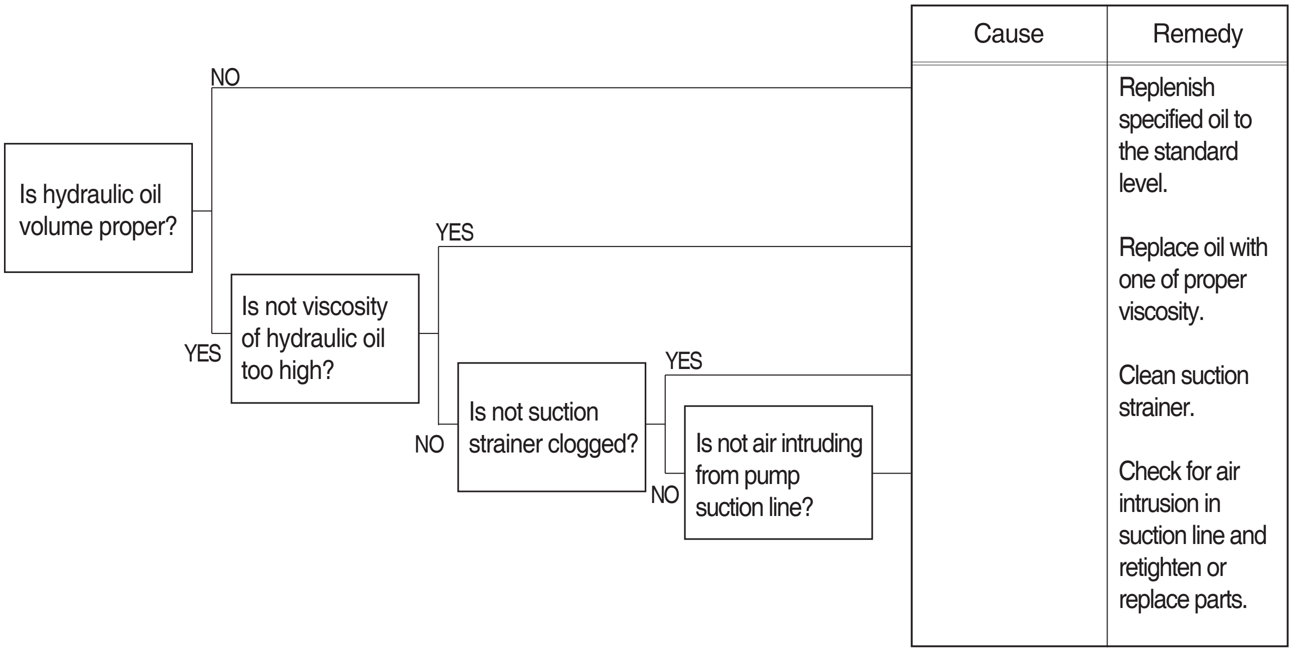
1) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CLOUDY



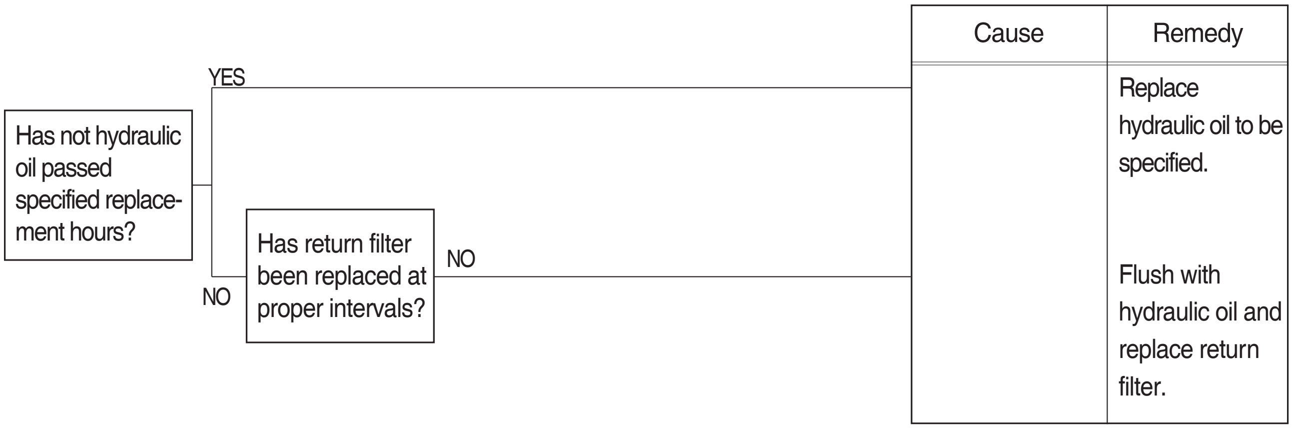
2) HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE HAS RISEN ABNORMALLY



3) CAVITATION OCCURS WITH PUMP

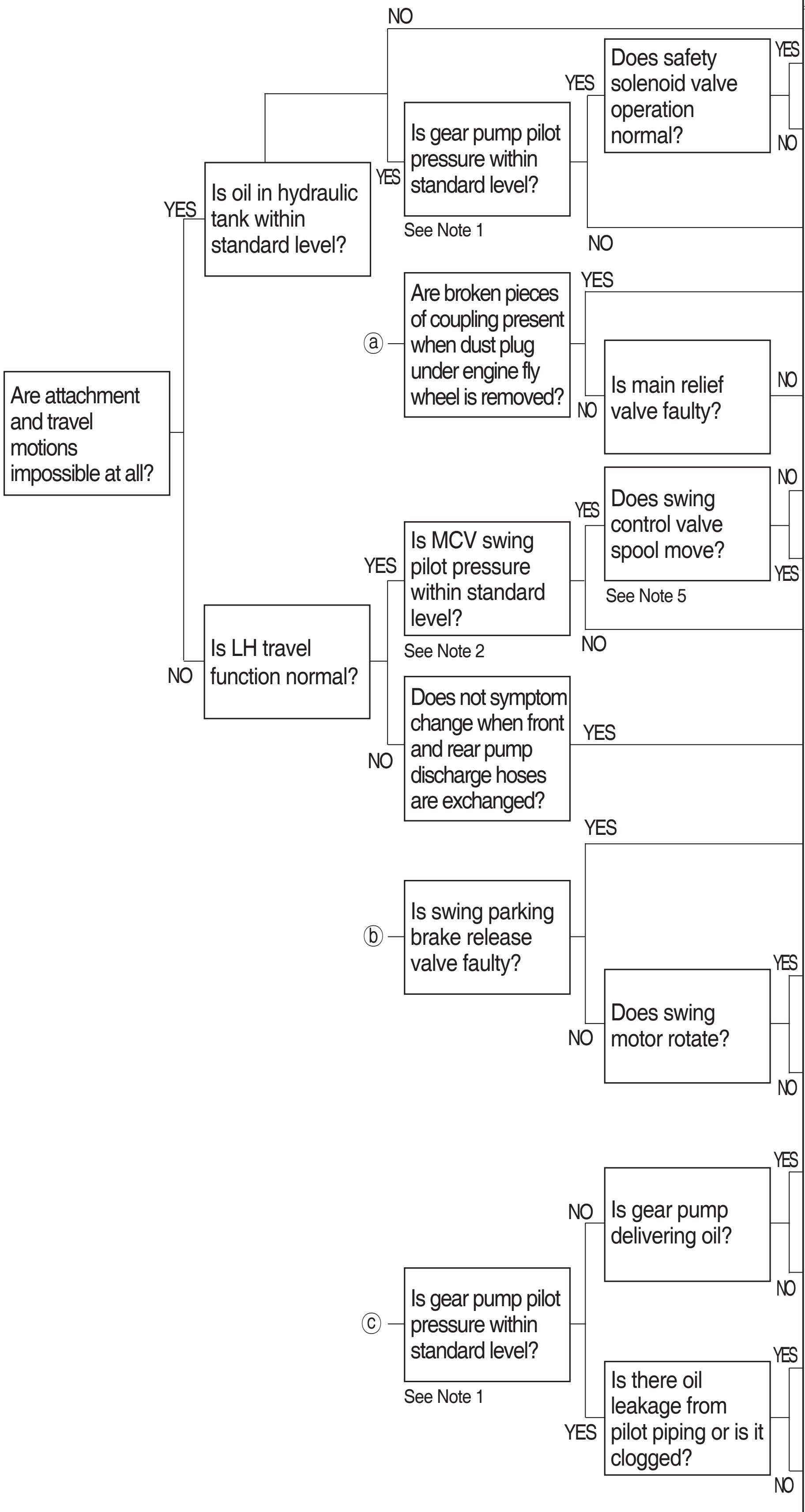


4) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CONTAMINATED



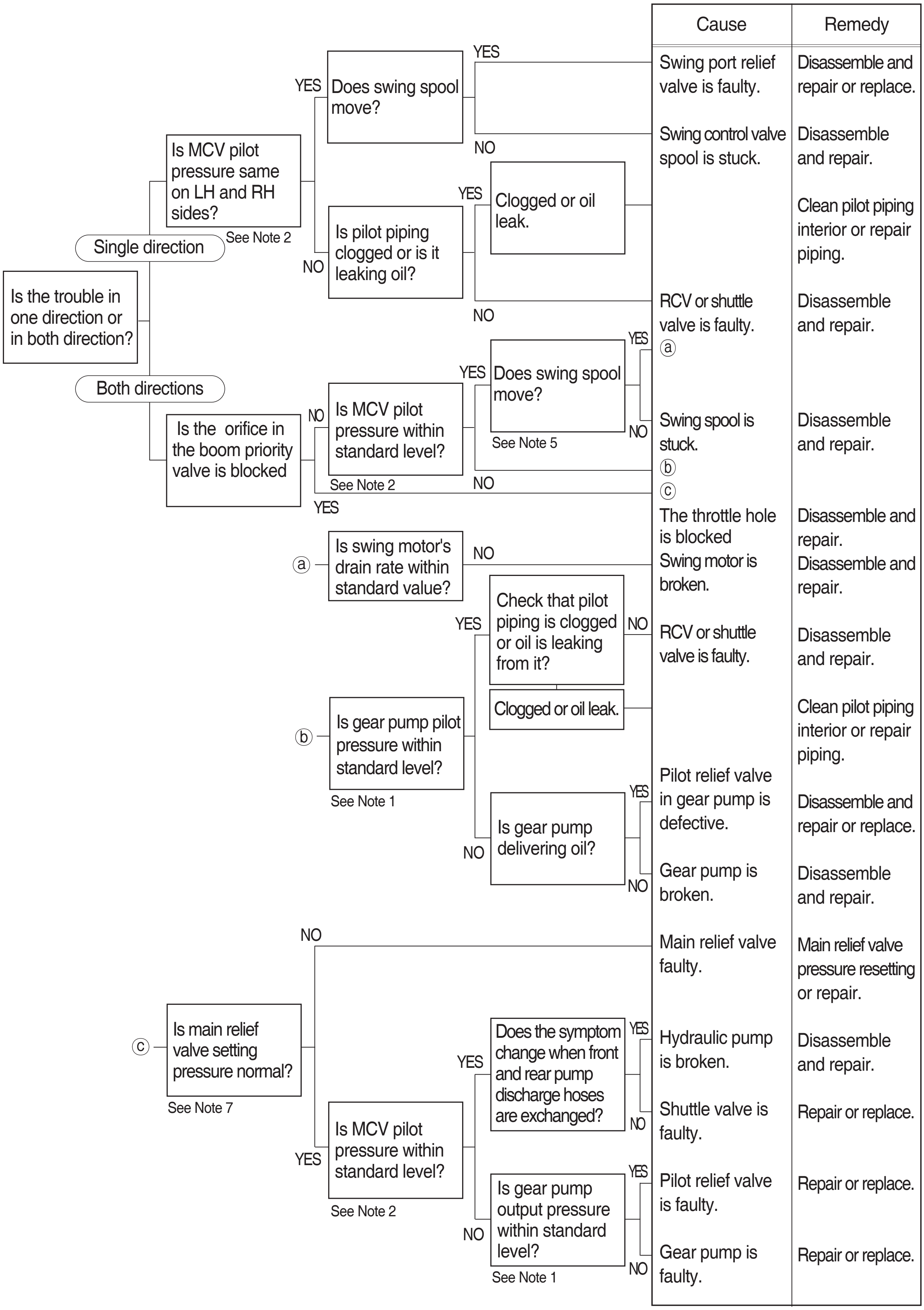
4. SWING SYSTEM

1) BOTH LH AND RH SWING ACTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE

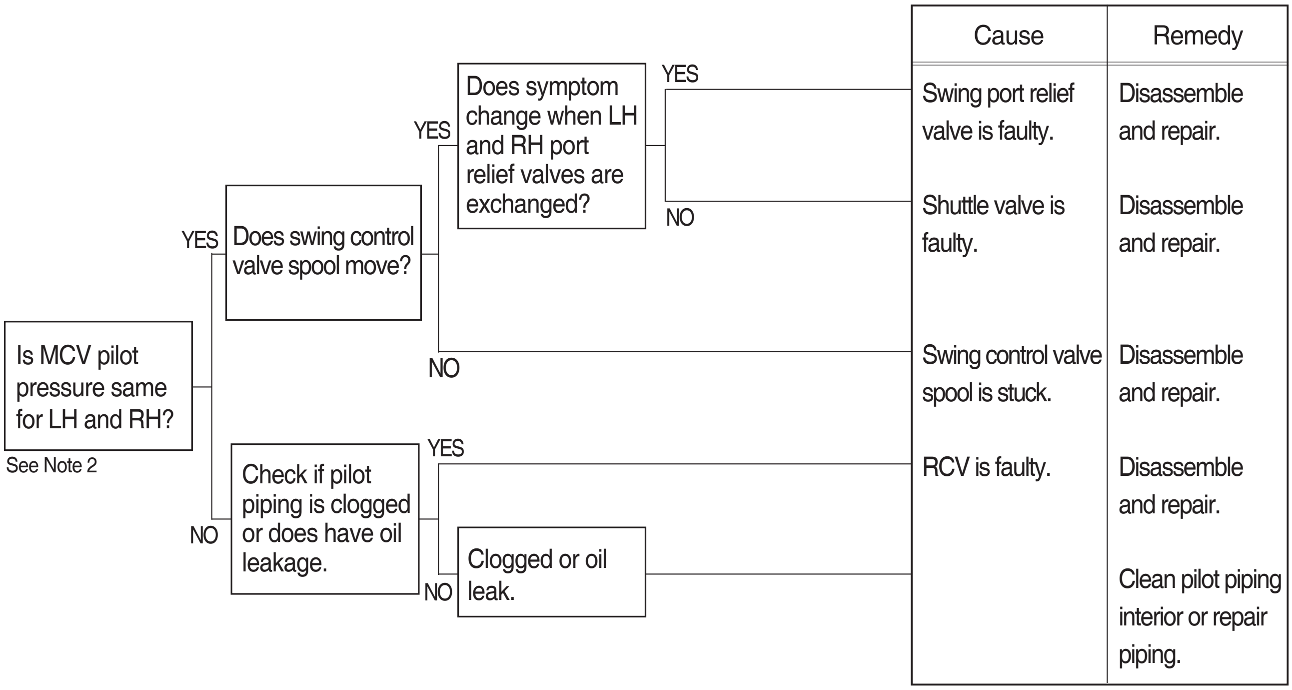


Cause	Remedy
ⓐ	Replenish specified oil to the standard level.
Safety solenoid valve faulty or not operated.	Repair or replace.
Gear pump faulty.	Repair or replace.
Pump connection coupling is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
Hydraulic pump is out of order.	Disassemble and repair.
Swing control valve spool is stuck.	Disassemble and repair.
ⓑ	
ⓒ	
Hydraulic pump is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
Swing parking brake release valve is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
Swing reduction unit is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
Swing motor is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
Pilot relief valve in gear pump is faulty.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Gear pump is out of order.	Disassemble and repair.
	Clean pilot piping interior or repair piping.
RCV is broken.	Disassemble and repair.

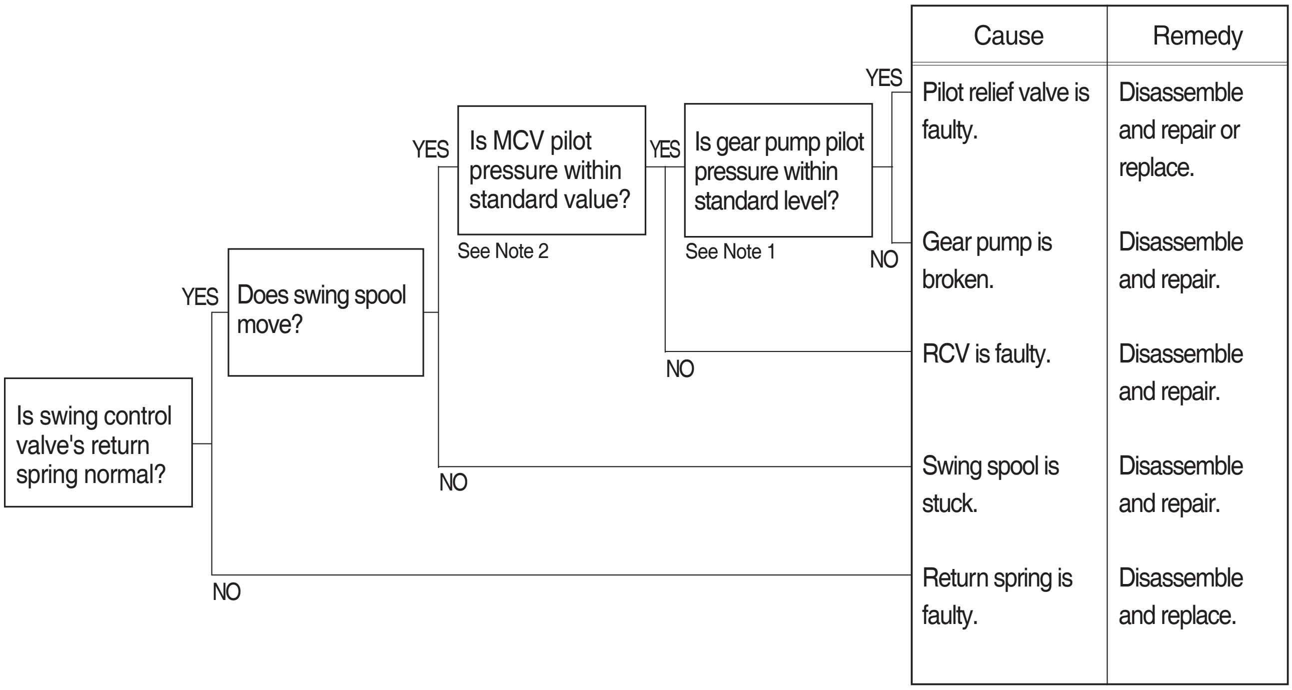
2) SWING SPEED IS LOW



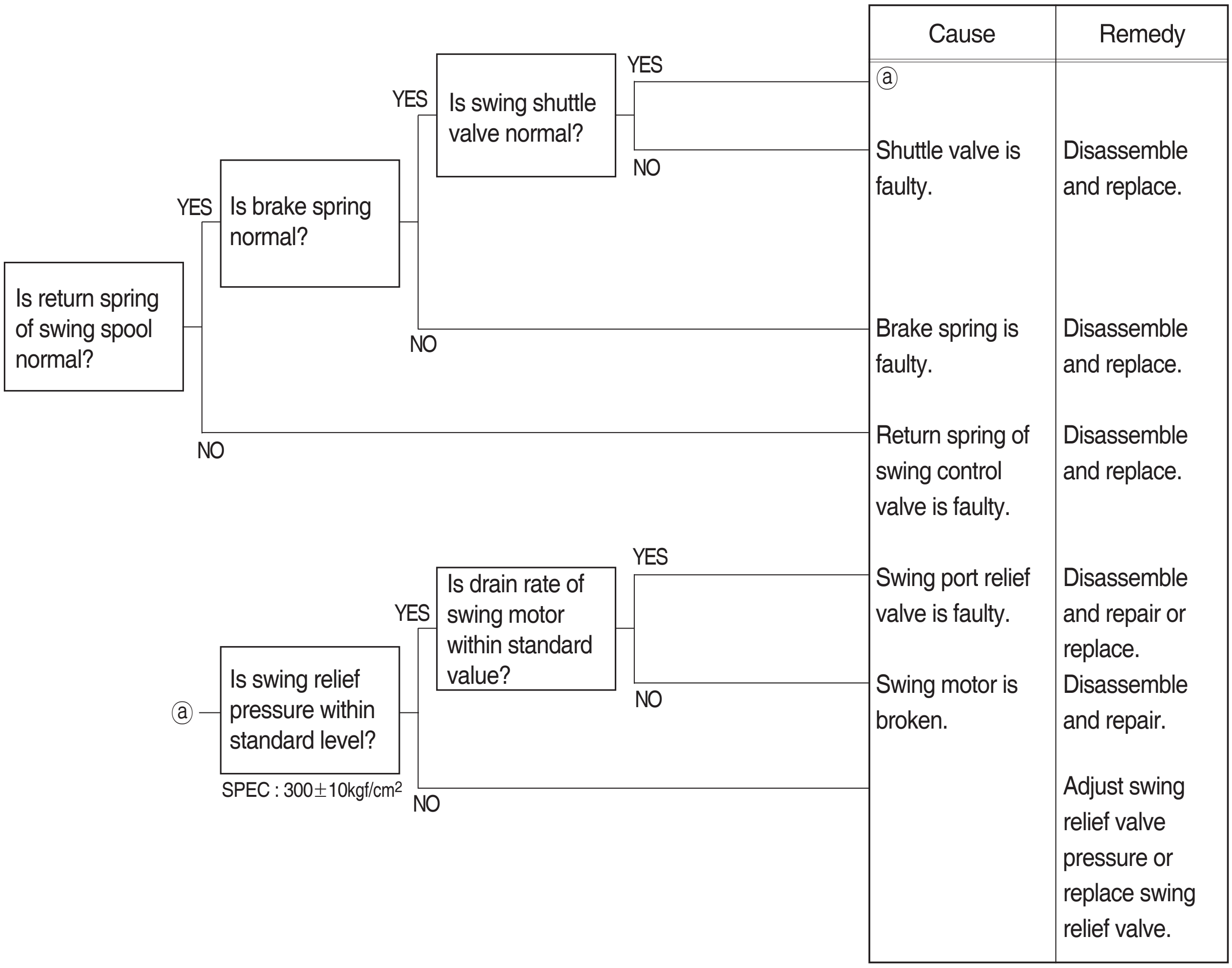
3) SWING MOTION IS IMPOSSIBLE IN ONE DIRECTION



4) MACHINE SWINGS BUT DOES NOT STOP

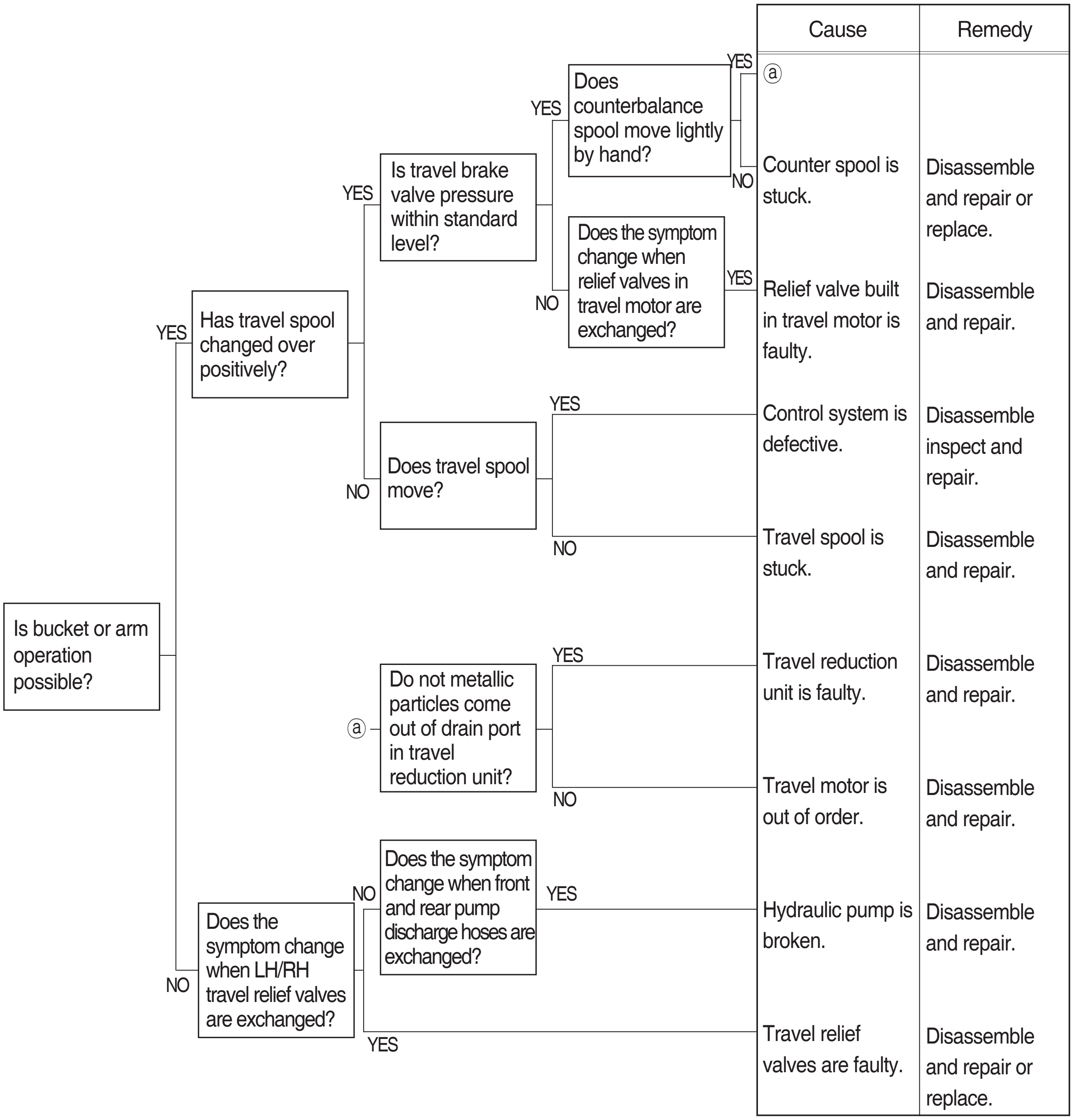


5) THE SWING UNIT DRIFTS WHEN THE MACHINE IS AT REST ON A SLOPE

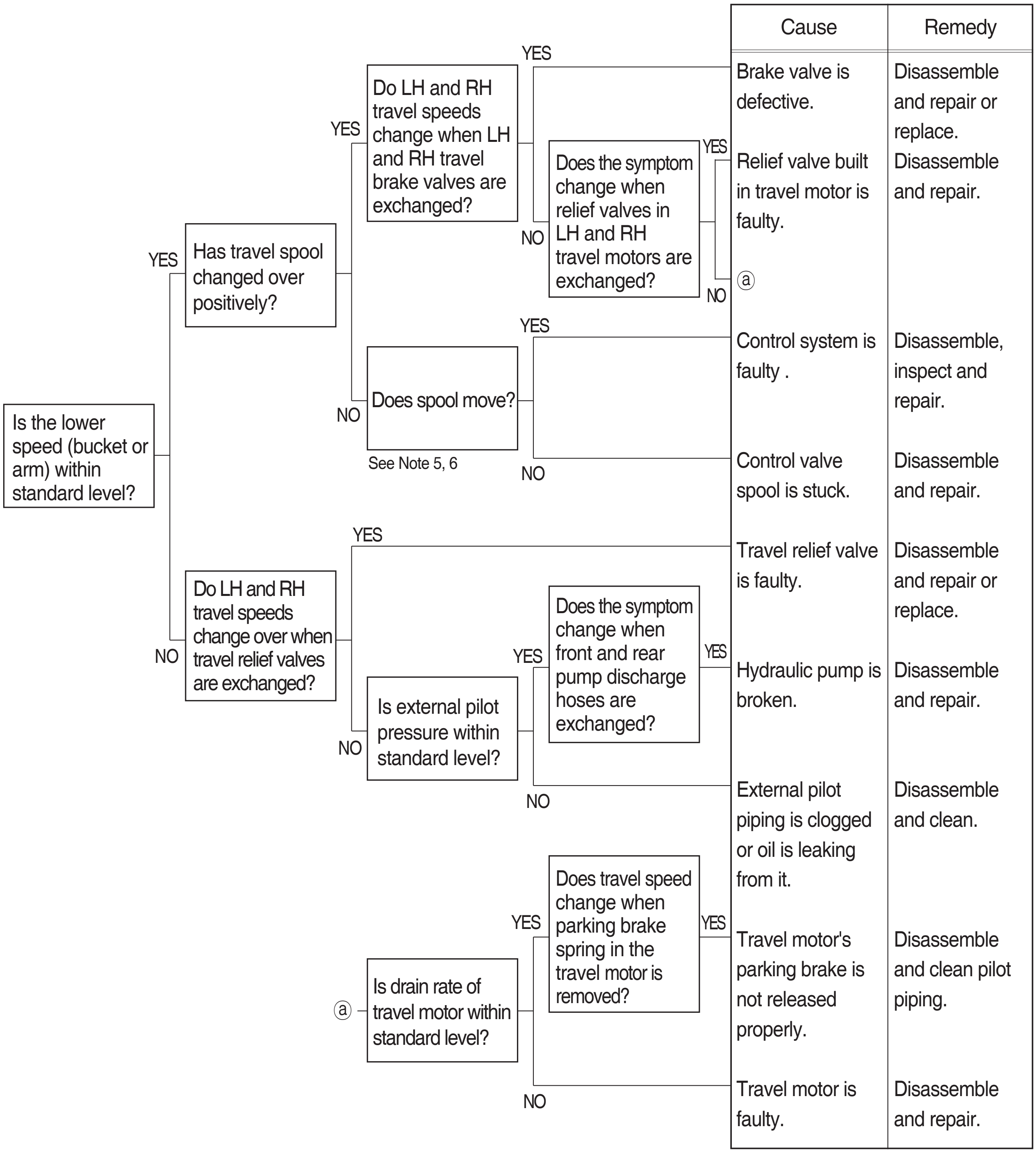


5. TRAVEL SYSTEM

1) TRAVEL DOES NOT FUNCTION AT ALL ON ONE SIDE

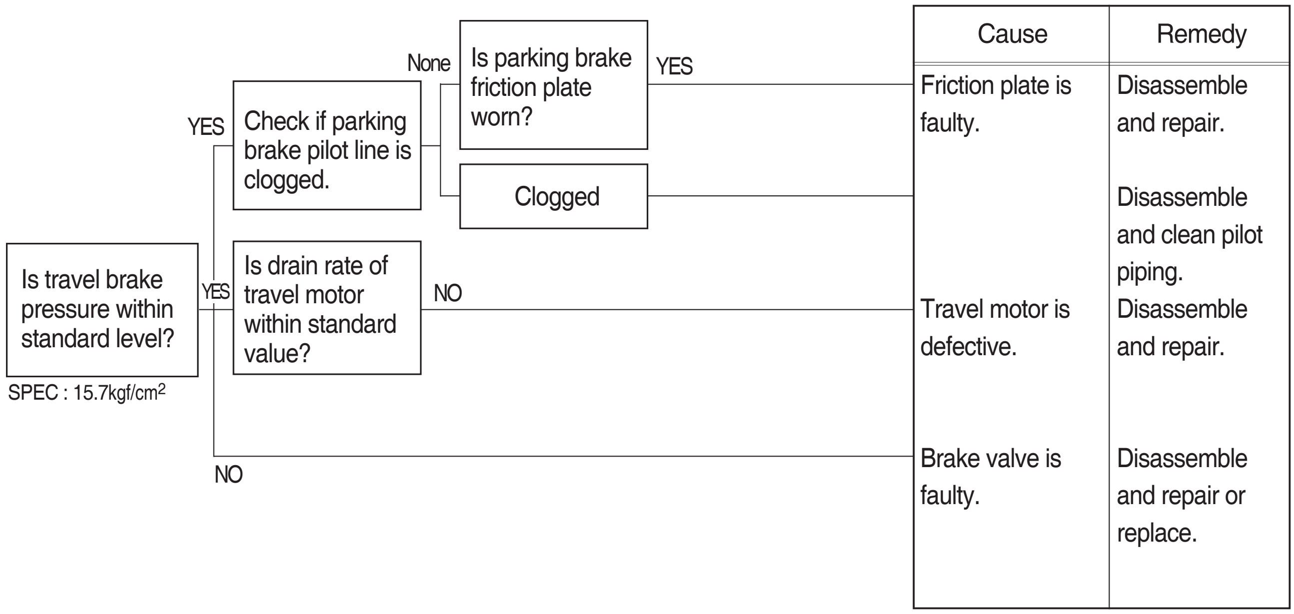


2) SPEED ON ONE SIDE FALLS AND THE MACHINE CURVES

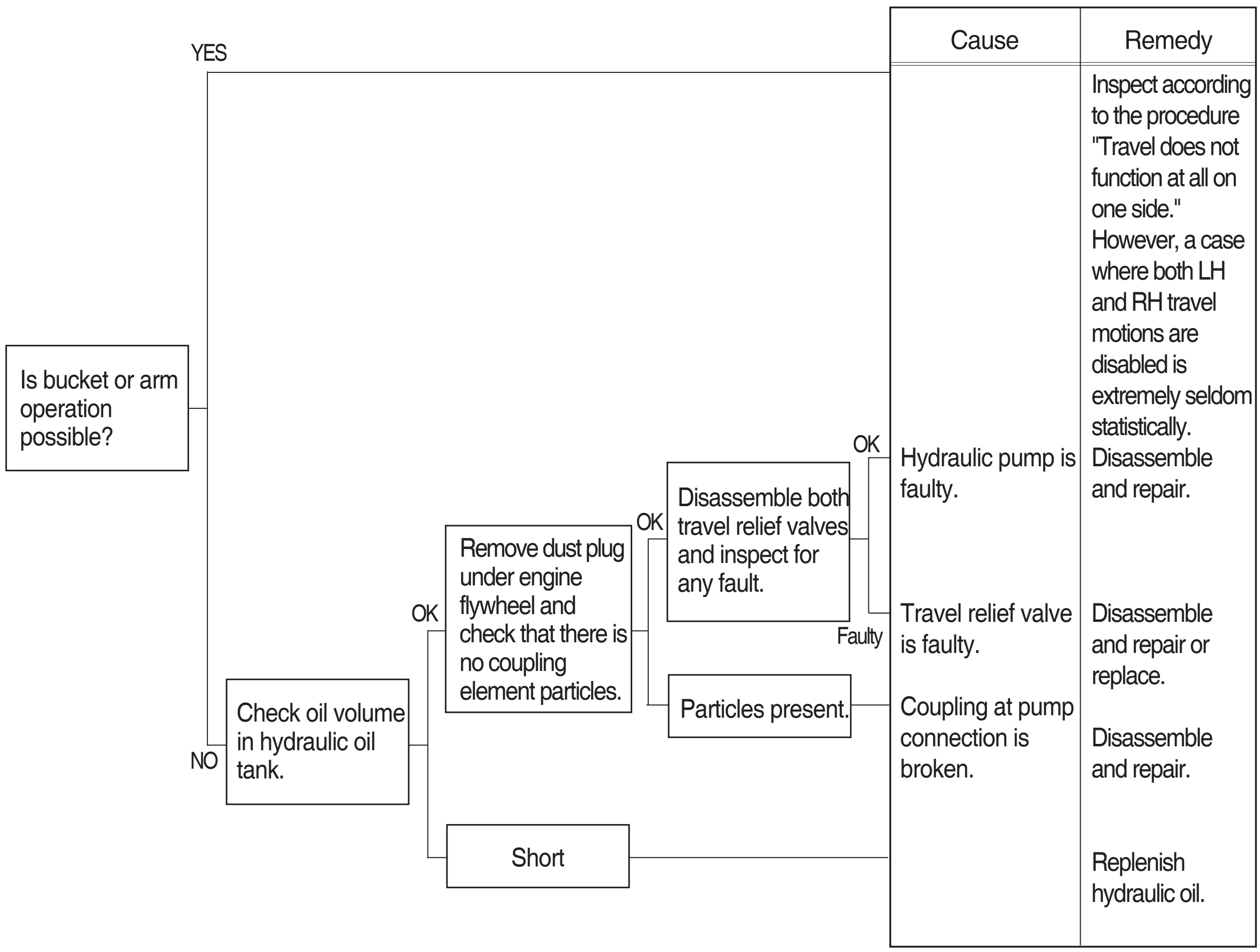


3) MACHINE DOES NOT STOP ON A SLOPE

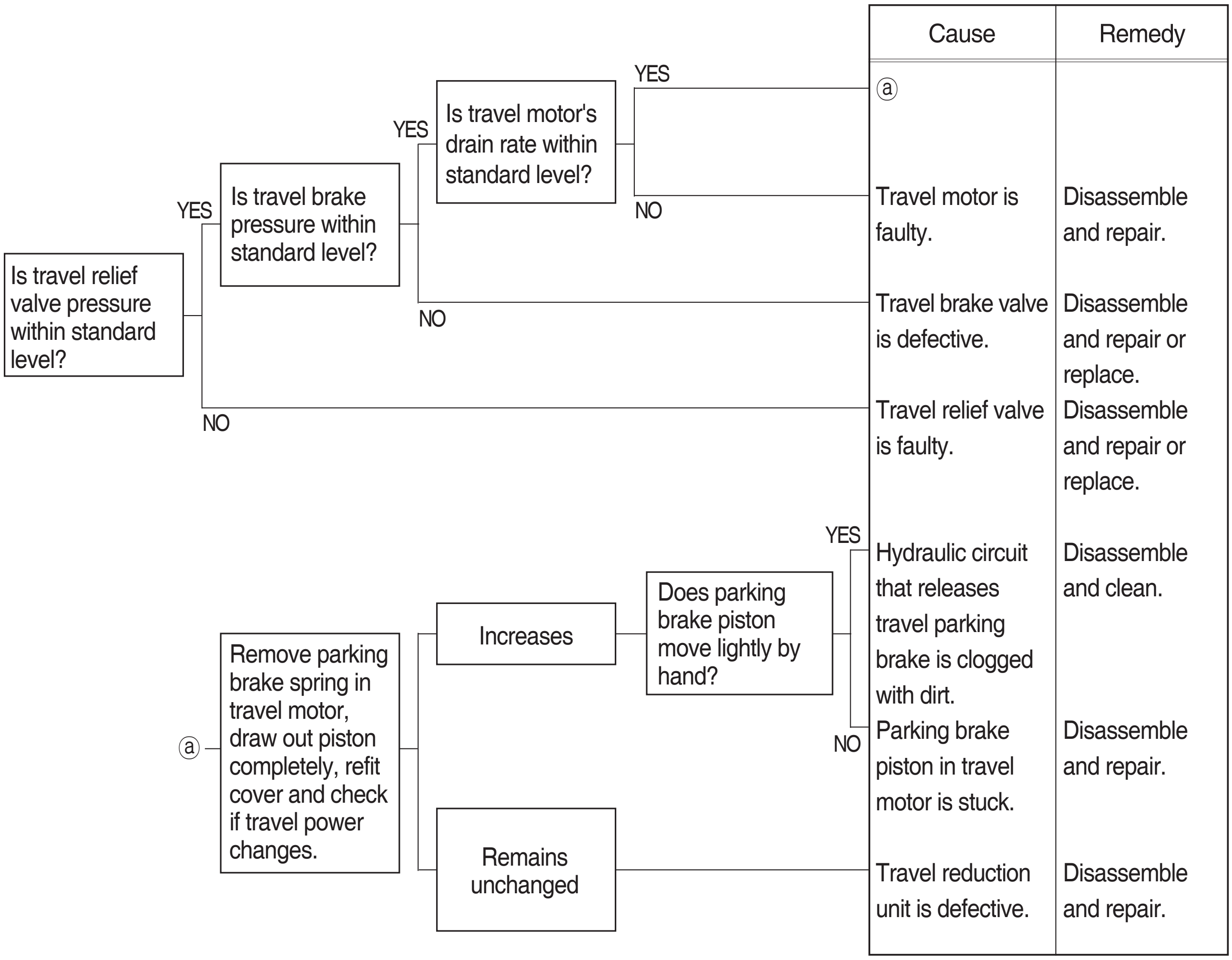
Machine is pulled forward as sprocket rotates during digging operation.



4) LH AND RH TRAVEL MOTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE

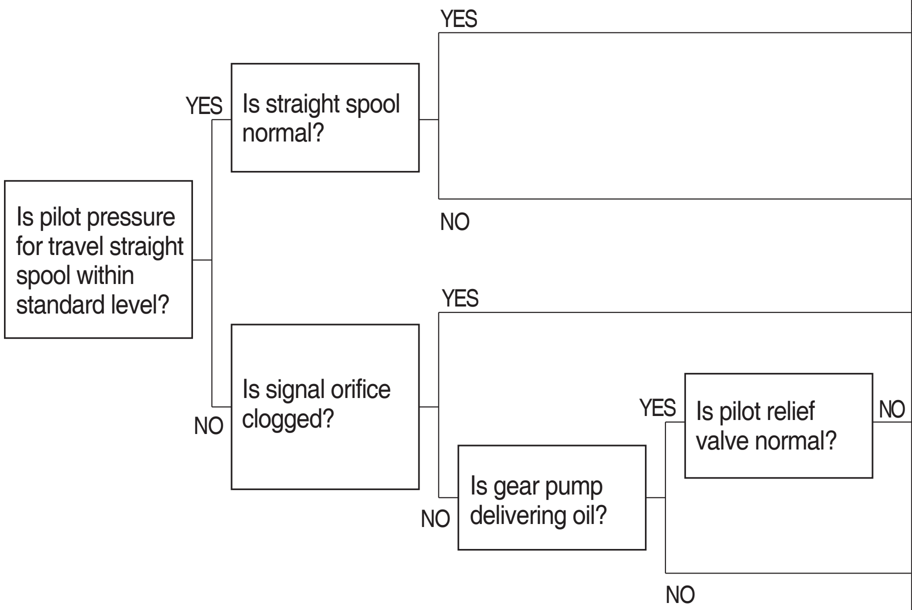


5) TRAVEL ACTION IS POWERLESS (travel only)



6) MACHINE RUNS RECKLESSLY ON A SLOPE

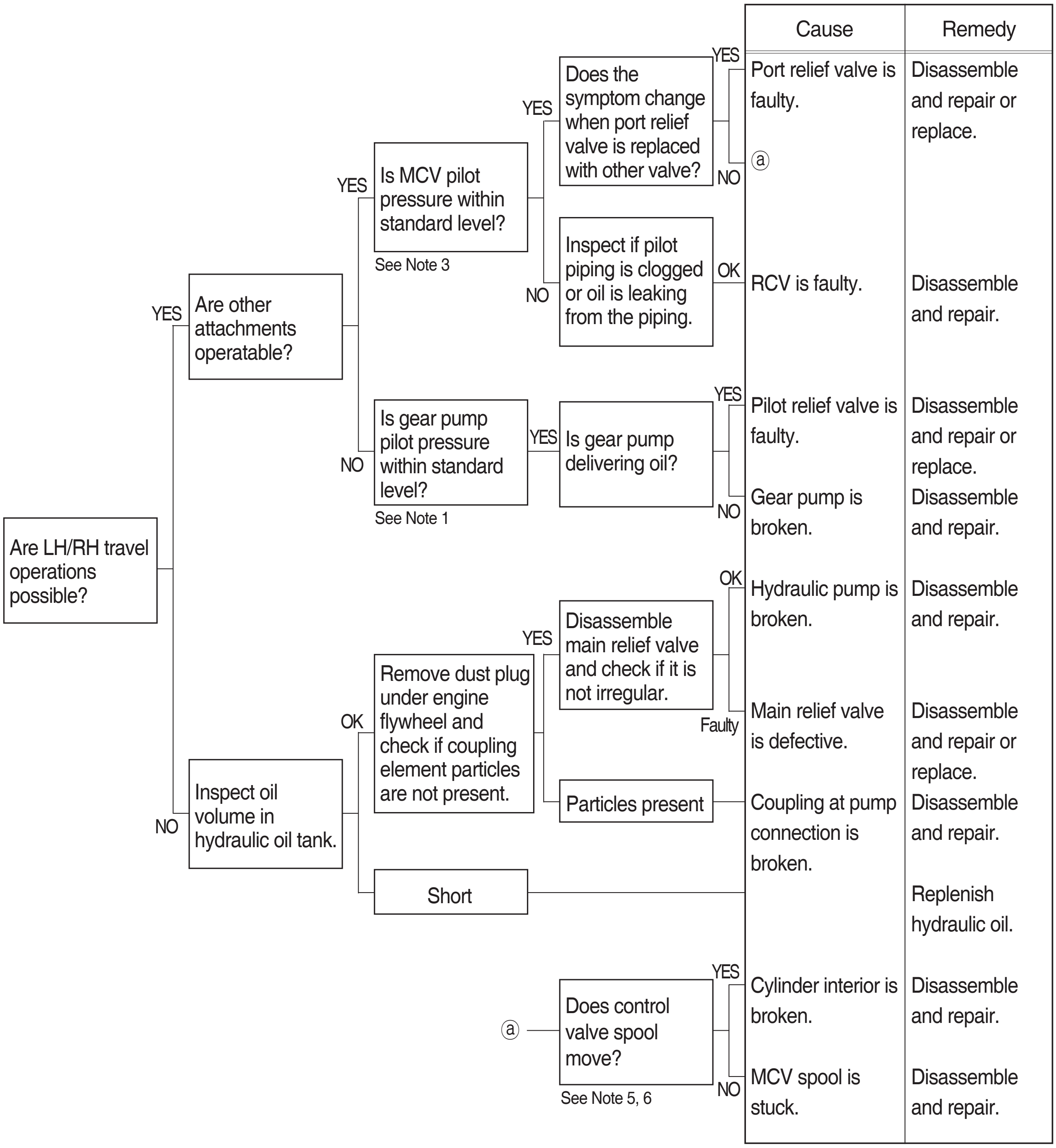
7) MACHINE MAKES A CURVED TRAVEL OR DOES NOT TRAVEL AT ALL WHEN TRAVEL AND ATTACHMENT OPERATIONS ARE EXECUTED AT THE SAME TIME



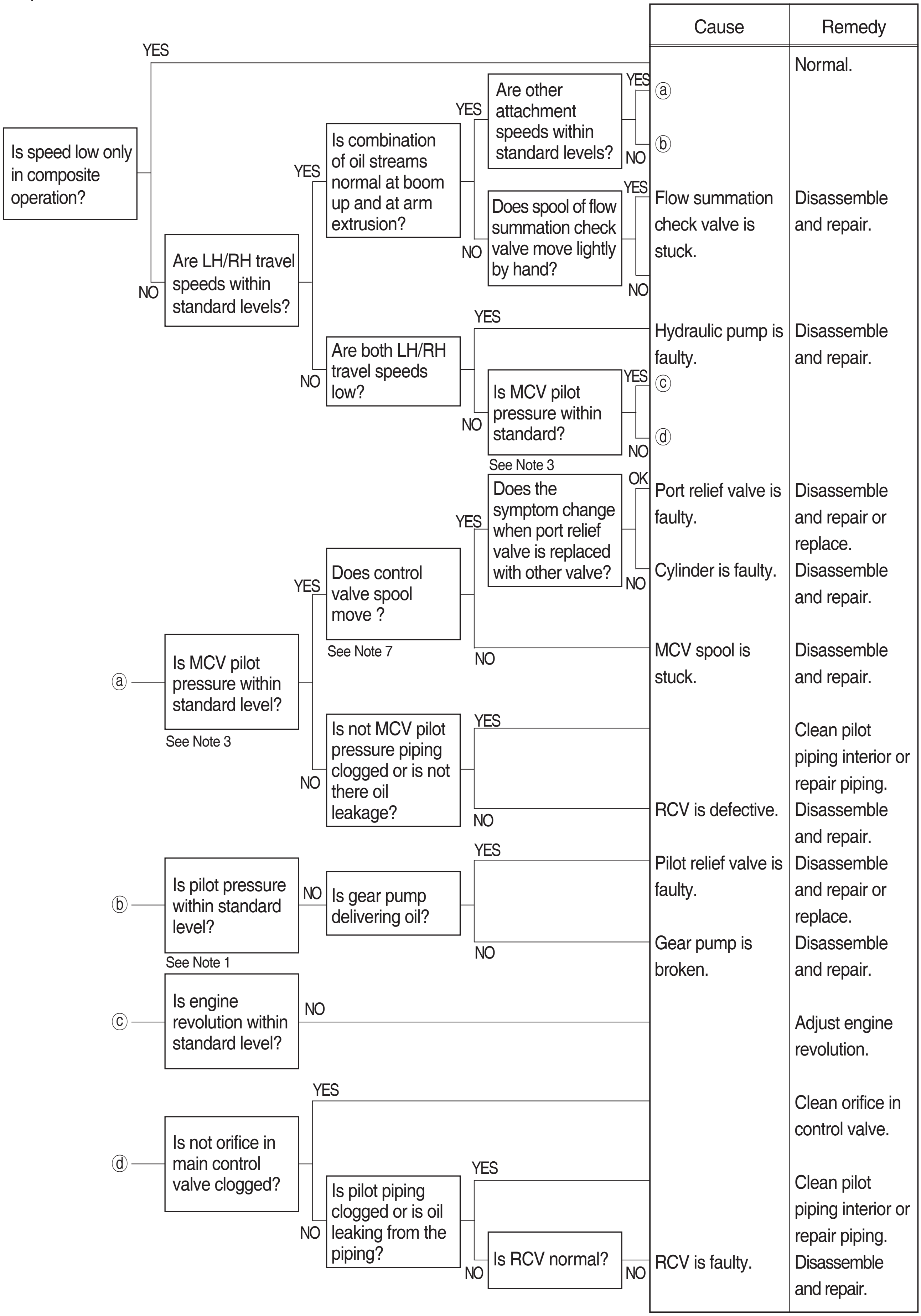
Cause	Remedy
	Normal.
Straight spool is faulty.	Repair or replace.
	Remove dirt on signal orifice.
Pilot relief valve is defective.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Gear pump is broken.	Disassemble and repair.

6. ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

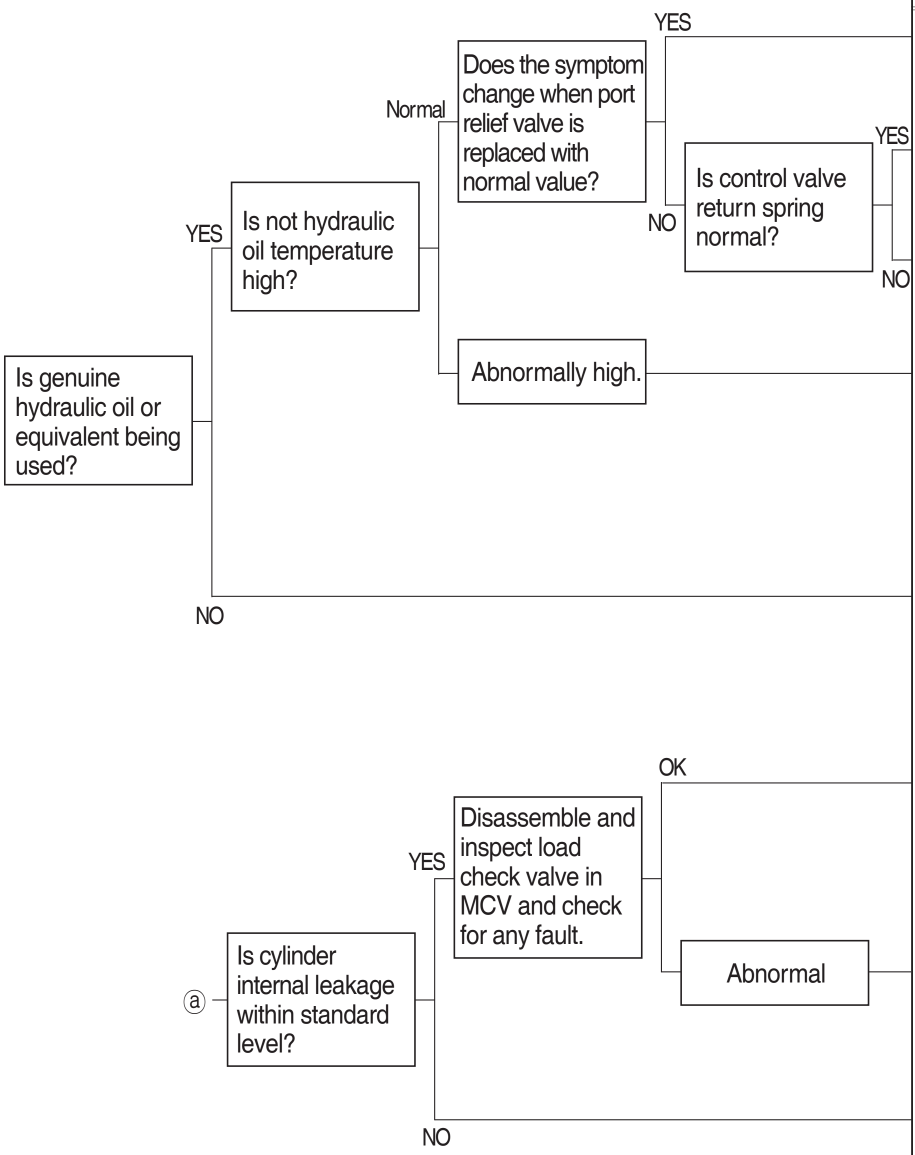
1) BOOM OR ARM ACTION IS IMPOSSIBLE AT ALL



2) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET SPEED IS LOW

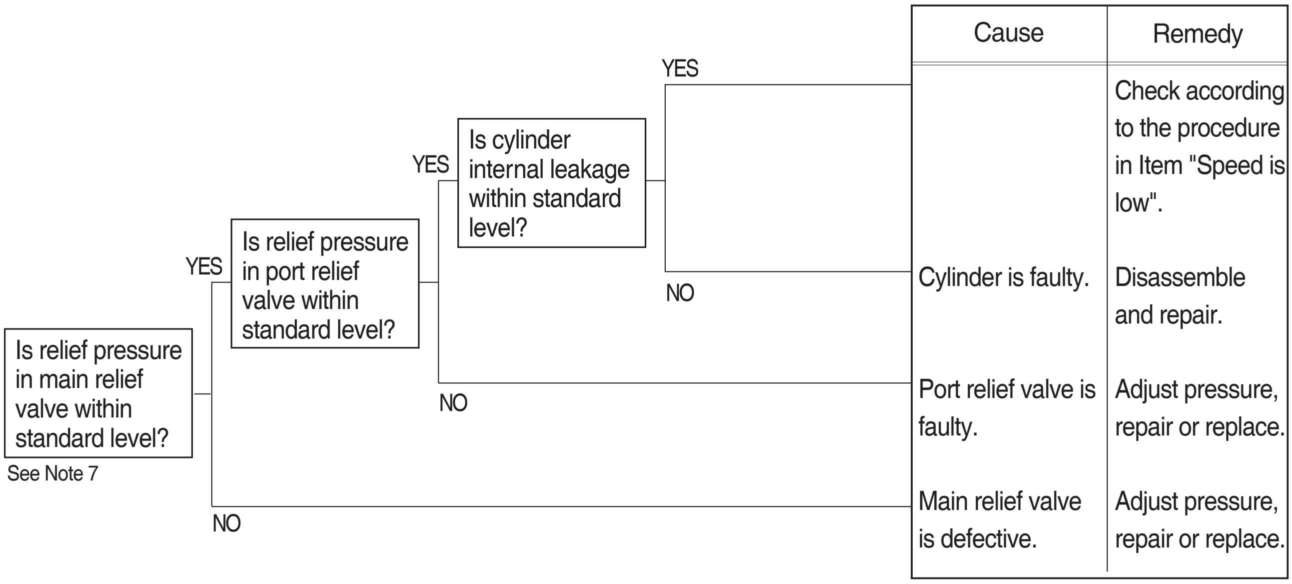


3) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET CYLINDER EXTENDS OR CONTRACTS ITSELF AND ATTACHMENT FALLS

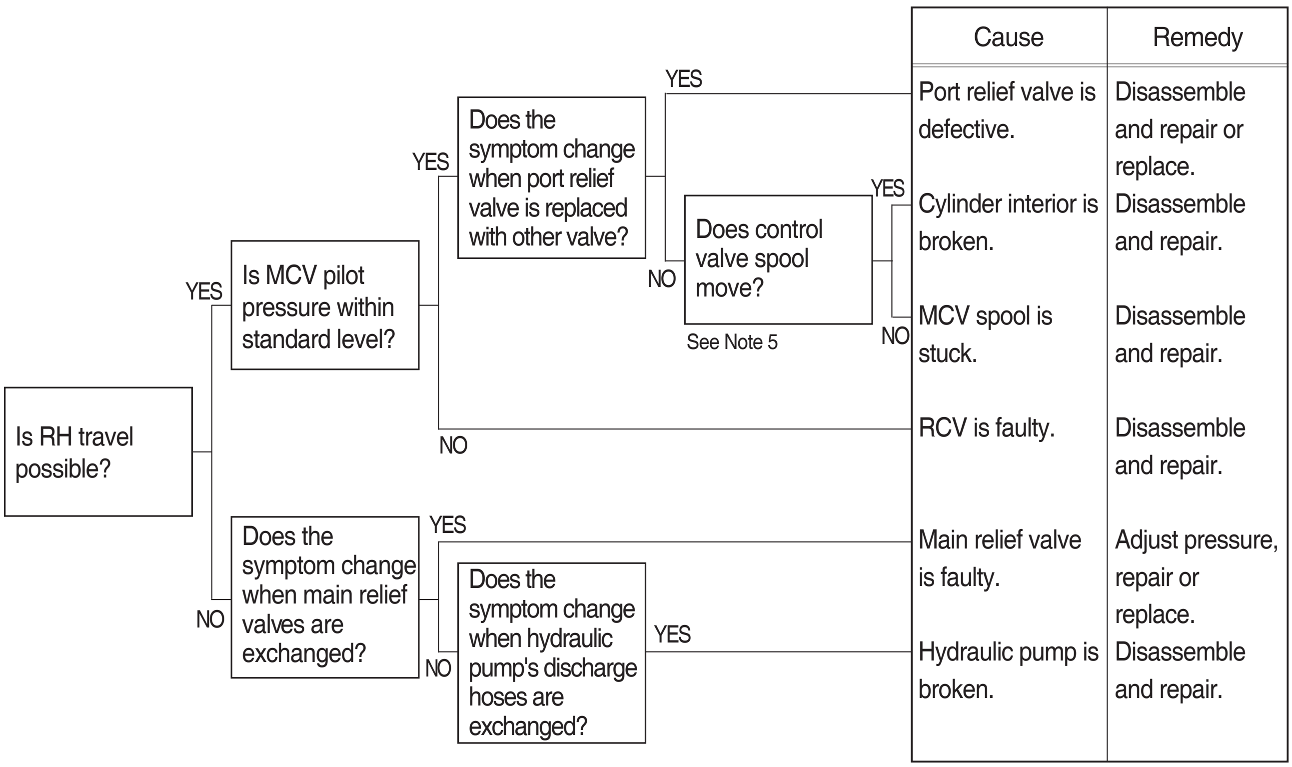


Cause	Remedy
Port relief valve is faulty.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Control valve's return spring is faulty.	Disassemble and replace.
	Locate the cause of hydraulic oil temperature rise and lower it to proper level.
	Replace with genuine hydraulic oil or equivalent.
Pressure tightness between control valve casing and spool is poor.	Disassemble and repair.
Contact surface between poppet and seat is poor.	Disassemble and repair.
Cylinder is faulty.	Disassemble and repair.

4) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET POWER IS WEAK



5) ONLY BUCKET OPERATION IS TOTALLY IMPOSSIBLE

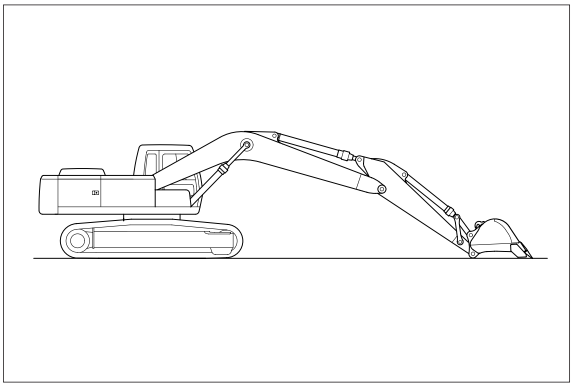


6) BOOM MAKES A SQUEAKING NOISE WHEN BOOM IS OPERATED

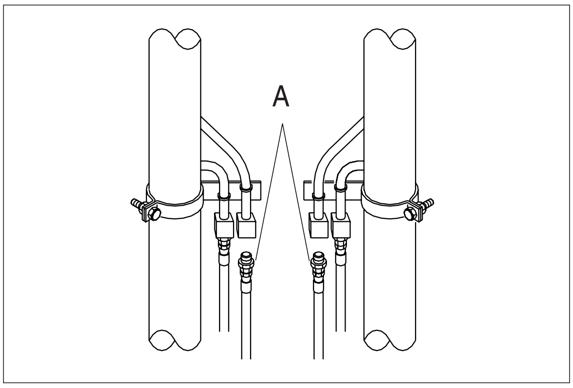
Is boom foot pin greased sufficiently?	Cause	Remedy
YES		Frictional noise occurs between the sliding faces of boom cylinder's oil seal and boom proper. ※ Frictional noise will disappear if they are kept used.
NO	Boom foot pin has run out of grease.	Supply grease to it. ※ If seizure is in an initial stage, supply sufficient grease. If seizure is in a grown state, correct it by paper lapping or with an oil stone.

※ HOW TO CHECK INTERNAL BOOM CYLINDER LEAKAGE

1. Lower the bucket teeth to the ground with bucket cylinder fully retracted and arm cylinder rod retracted almost in full.

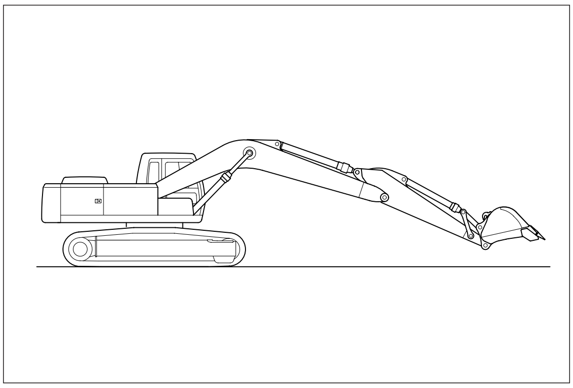


2. Disconnect hose (A) from rod side of boom cylinder and drain oil from cylinders and hose. (put cups on piping and hose ends)



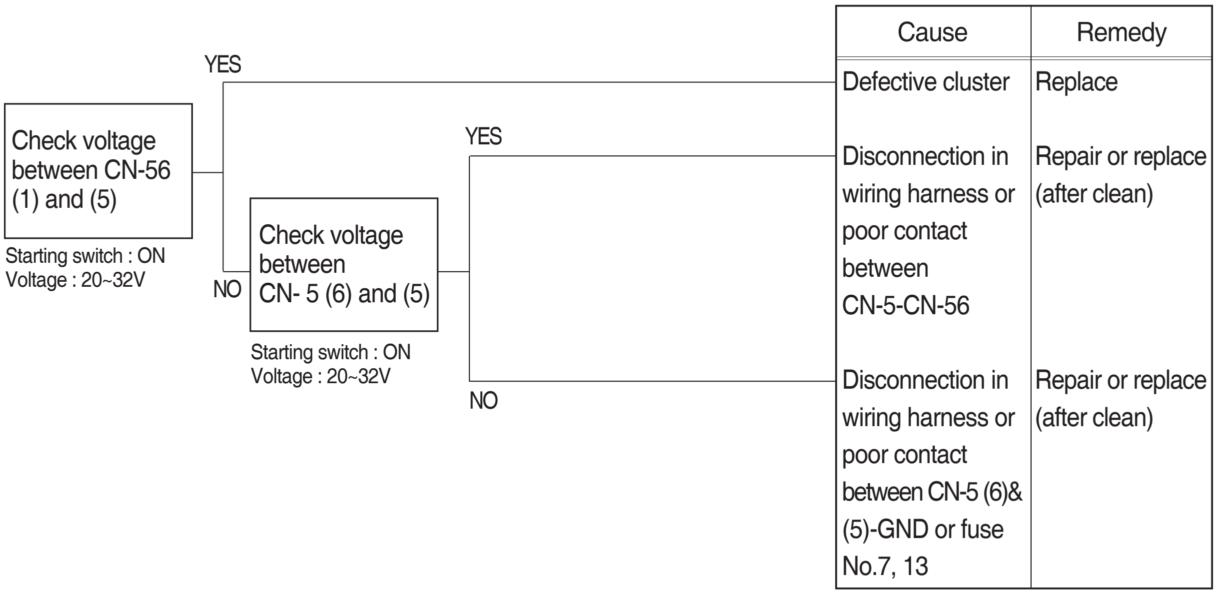
3. Raise bucket OFF the ground by retracting the arm cylinder rod.

   If oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted there is an internal leak in the cylinder.
   If no oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted, there is an internal leak in the control valve.



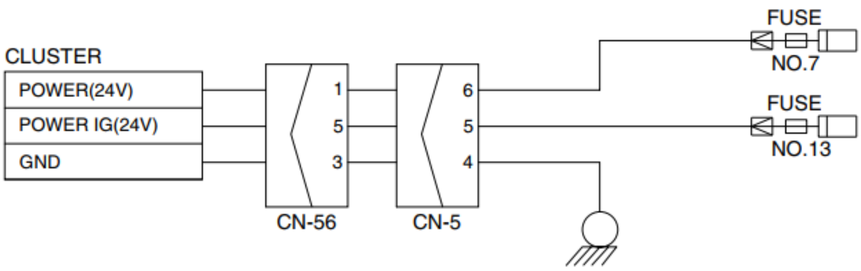
1. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, MONITOR PANEL DISPLAY DOES NOT APPEAR

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.7, 8.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



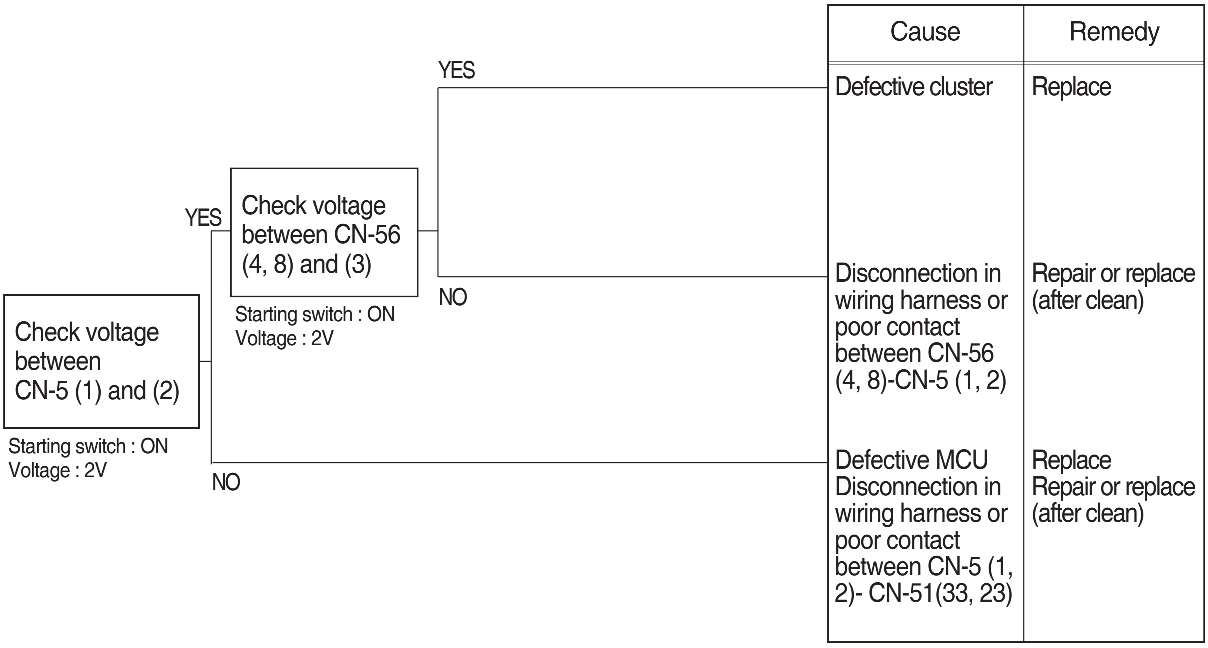
Check voltage

YES	20~32V
NO	0V



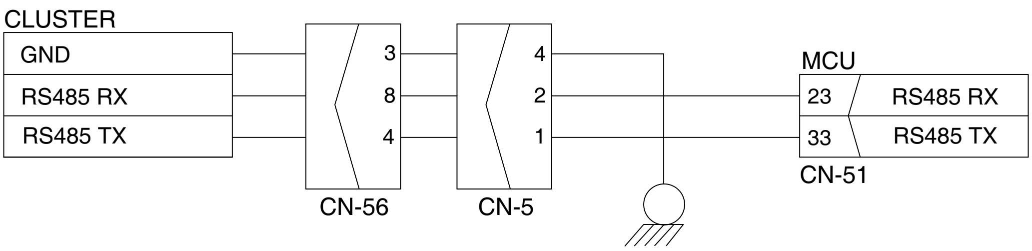
2. ⚠ COMMUNICATION ERROR FLASHES ON THE CLUSTER (HCESPN 840, FMI 2)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



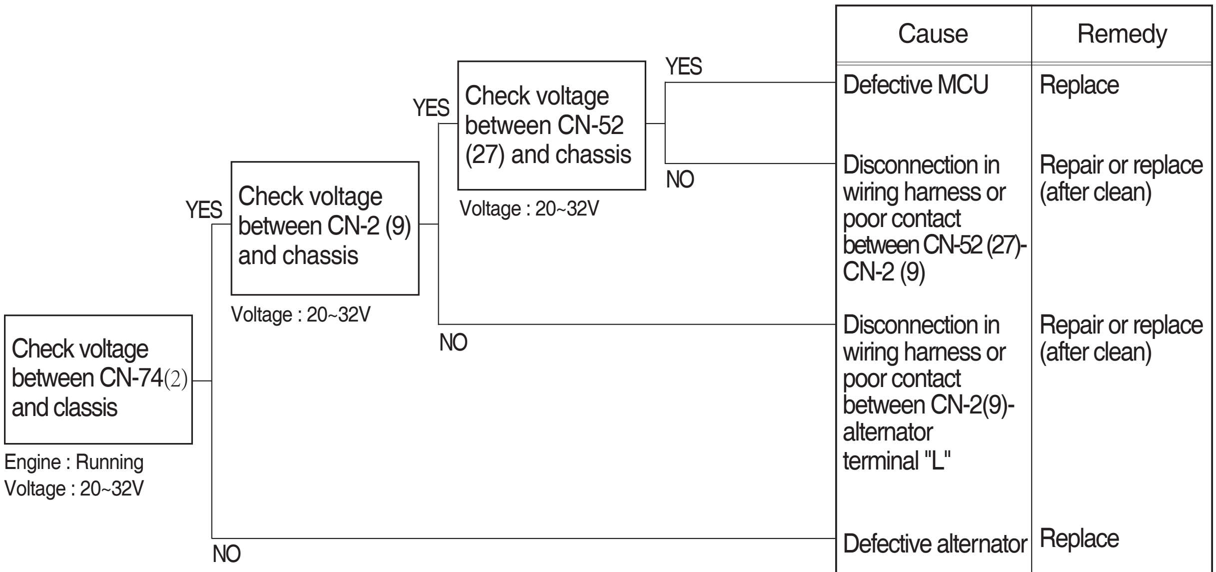
Check voltage

YES	2V
NO	0V



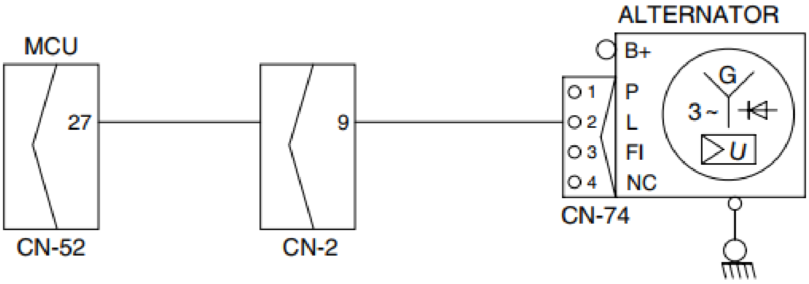
3. BATTERY CHARGING WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP(Starting switch : ON)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check voltage

YES	20~32V
NO	0V



4. WHEN COOLANT OVERHEAT WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

Check resistance between temp sensor (A)-(B)

Starting switch : OFF
Spec : 180Ω ~160 kΩ
See table

YES → Check resistance between engine ECM connector (15)-(38)

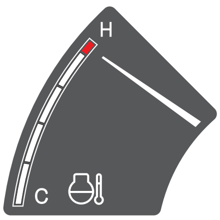
Spec : 180Ω ~160 kΩ

YES → Check use HRDT

NO → Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between temp sensor-engine ECM connector

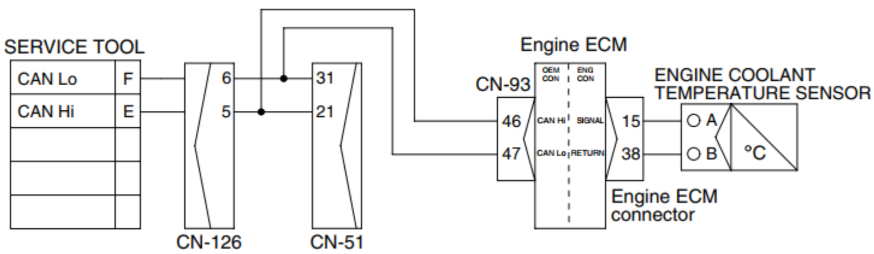
NO → Defective coolant temp sensor

Cause	Remedy
Check use HRDT	Check or replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between temp sensor-engine ECM connector	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective coolant temp sensor	Replace



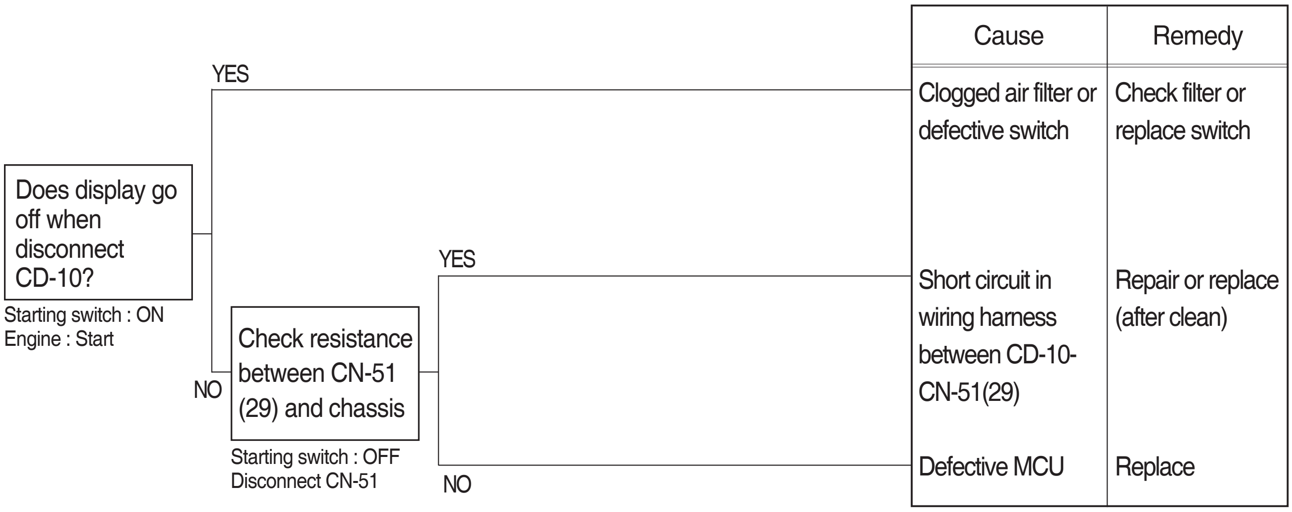
Check Table

Temperature (˚C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (kΩ)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8



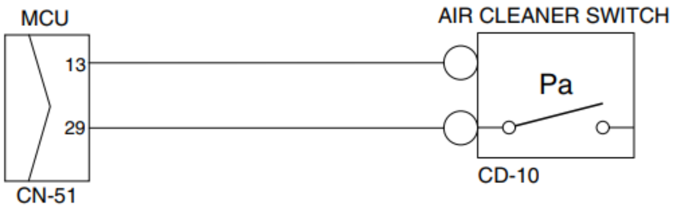
5. WHEN AIR CLEANER WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check resistance

YES	MAX 1Ω
NO	MIN 1MΩ



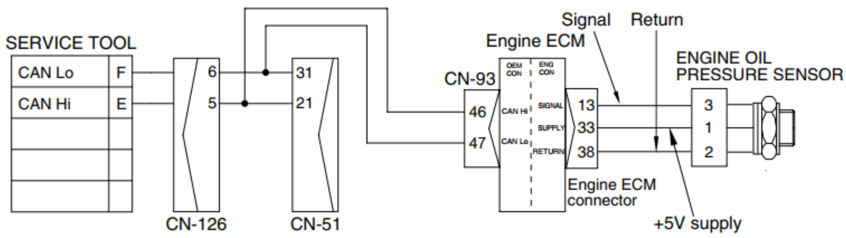
6. WHEN ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

Fault code 143 (ERR CODE) active?

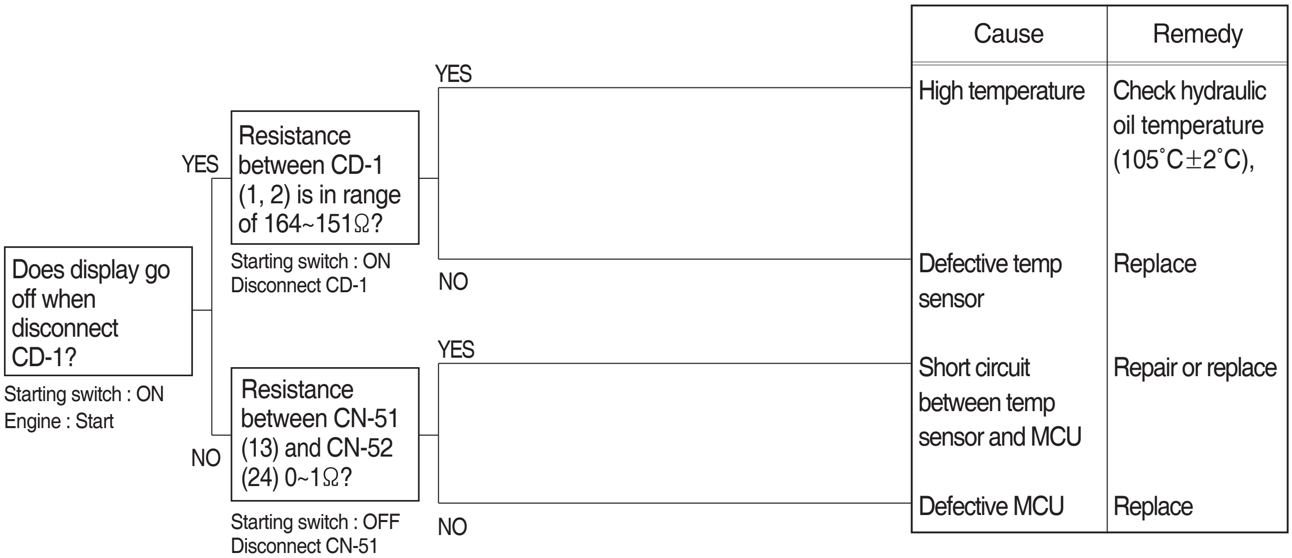
Starting switch : ON
Engine : Start

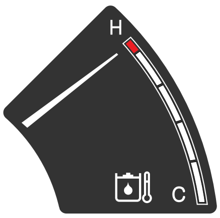
	Cause	Remedy
YES	Defective circuit, sensor or ECM	Contact Service distributor.
NO	Voltage above normal or shorted to high source	Refer to engine fault code 143 (ERR CODE)



7. WHEN HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

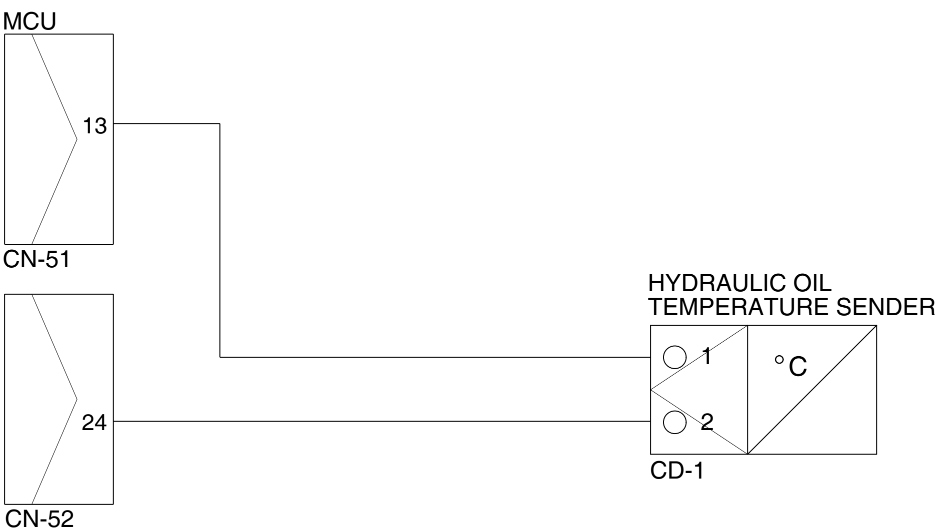
·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





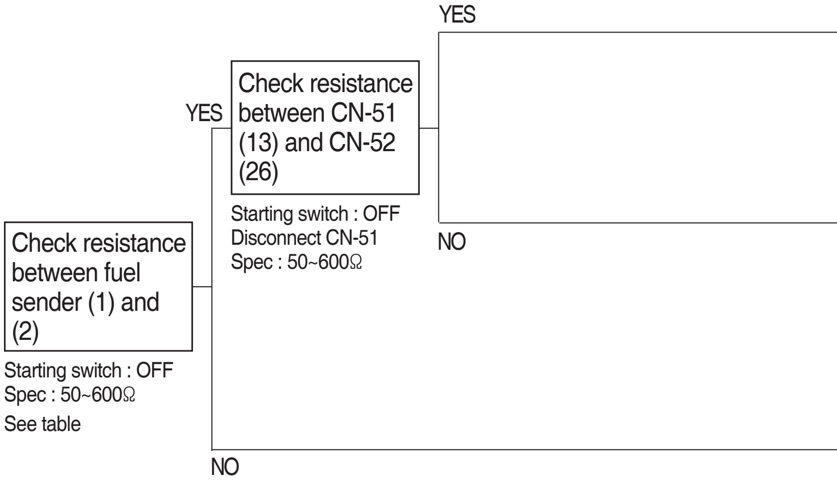
Check Table

Temperature (˚C)	~ -30	~ -10	~ 0	~ 40	~ 70	~ 80	~ 90	~ 100	105~
Resistance (kΩ)	22.22 ~31.78	8.16 ~10.74	5.18 ~ 6.6	1.06 ~1.28	0.39 ~0.476	0.322 ~0.298	0.243 ~0.219	0.185 ~0.167	0.164 0.151

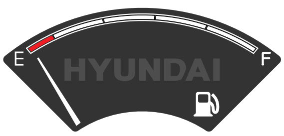


8. WHEN FUEL GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

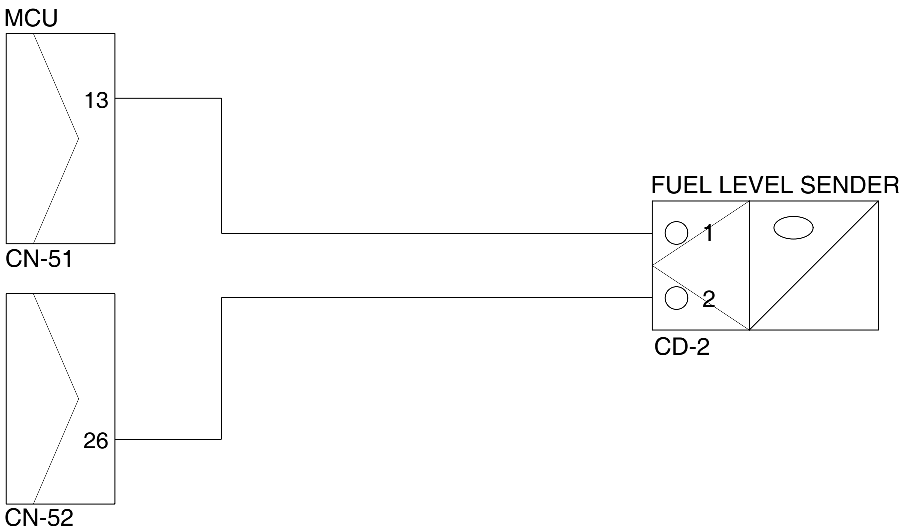


Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU or cluster	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between fuel sender-MCU	Repair or replace
Defective fuel sender	Replace



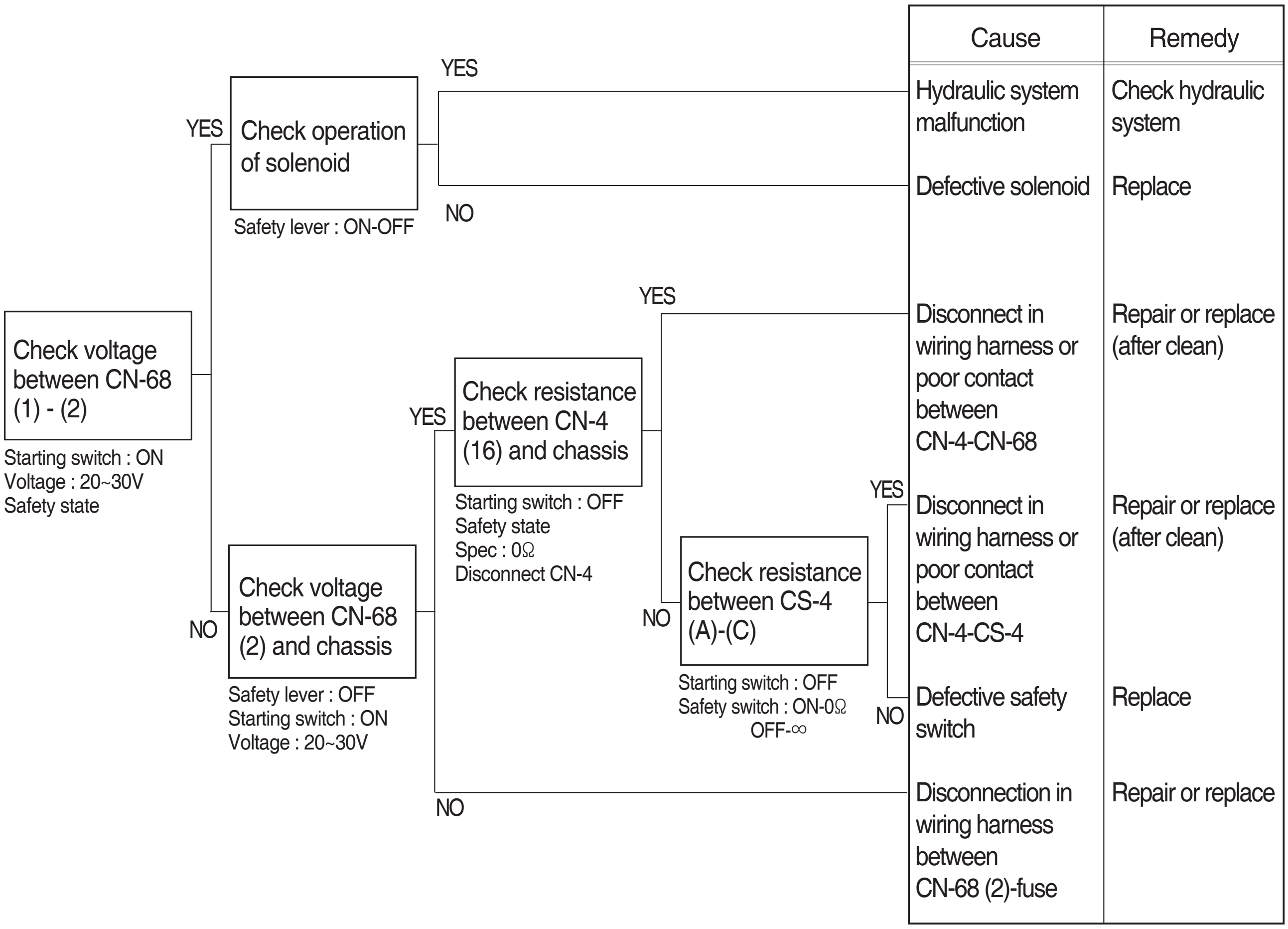
Check Table

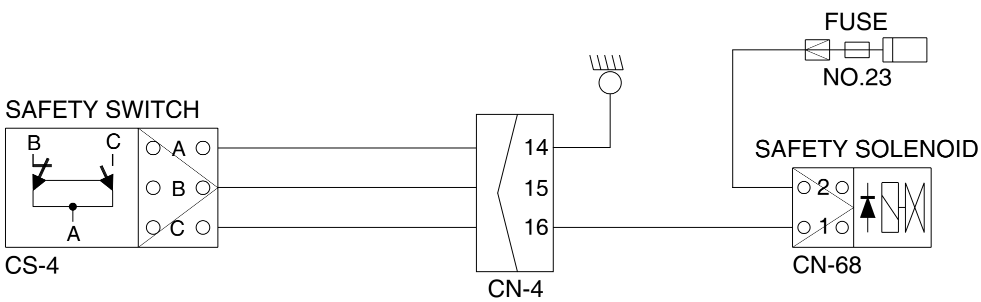
Range	Resistance (Ω)	Range	Resistance (Ω)
Full	50	5/12	400
11/12	100	4/12	450
10/12	150	3/12	500
9/12	200	2/12	550
8/12	250	1/12	600
7/12	300	Empty warning	700
6/12	350	-	-



9. WHEN SAFETY SOLENOID DOES NOT OPERATE

- ·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- ·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.23.
- ·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



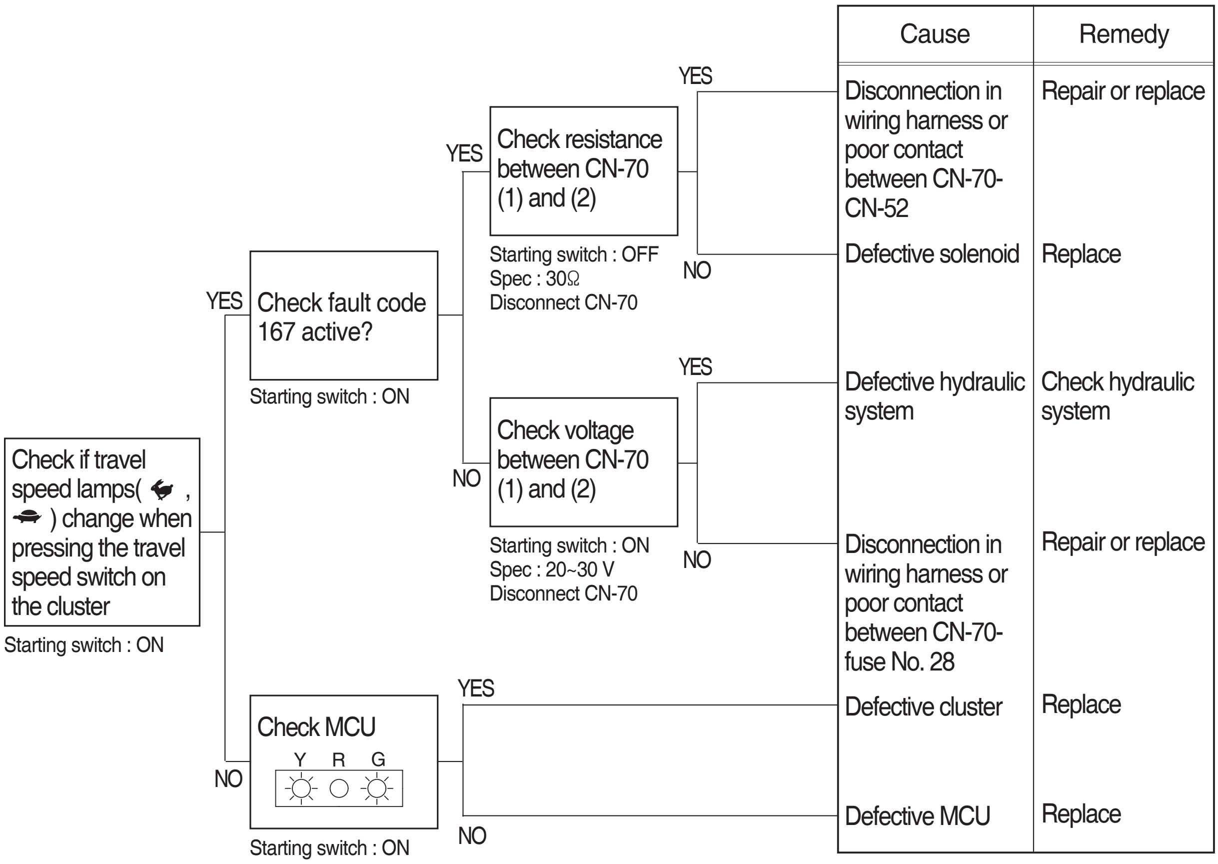


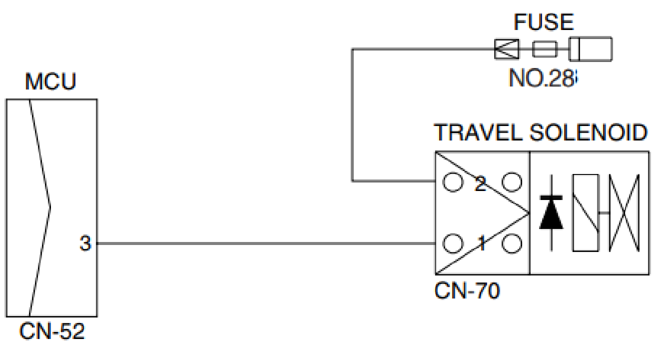
10. WHEN TRAVEL SPEED 1, 2 DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 167, FMI 5 or 6)

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.28.

·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



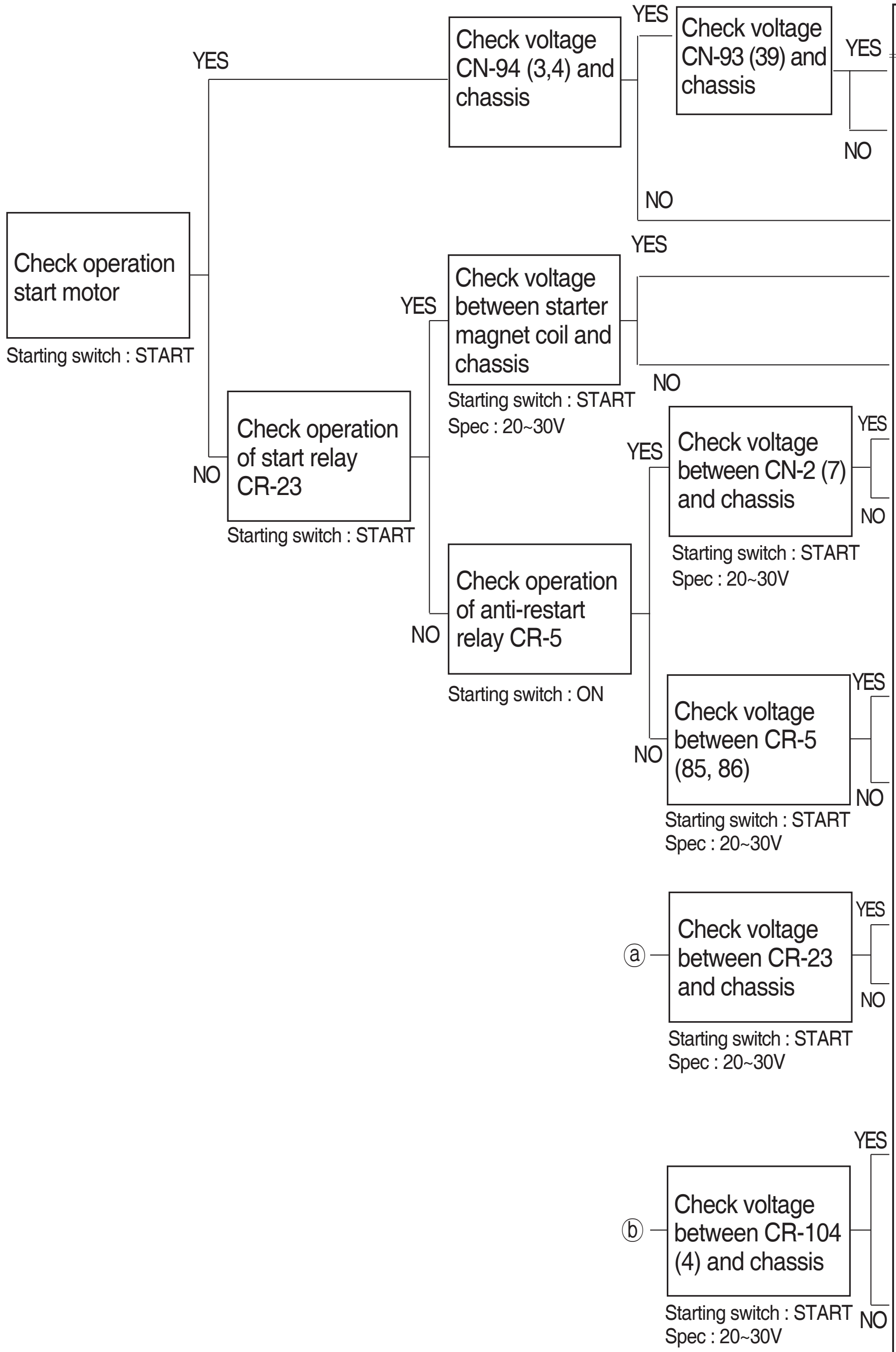


11. WHEN ENGINE DOES NOT START (lights up condition)

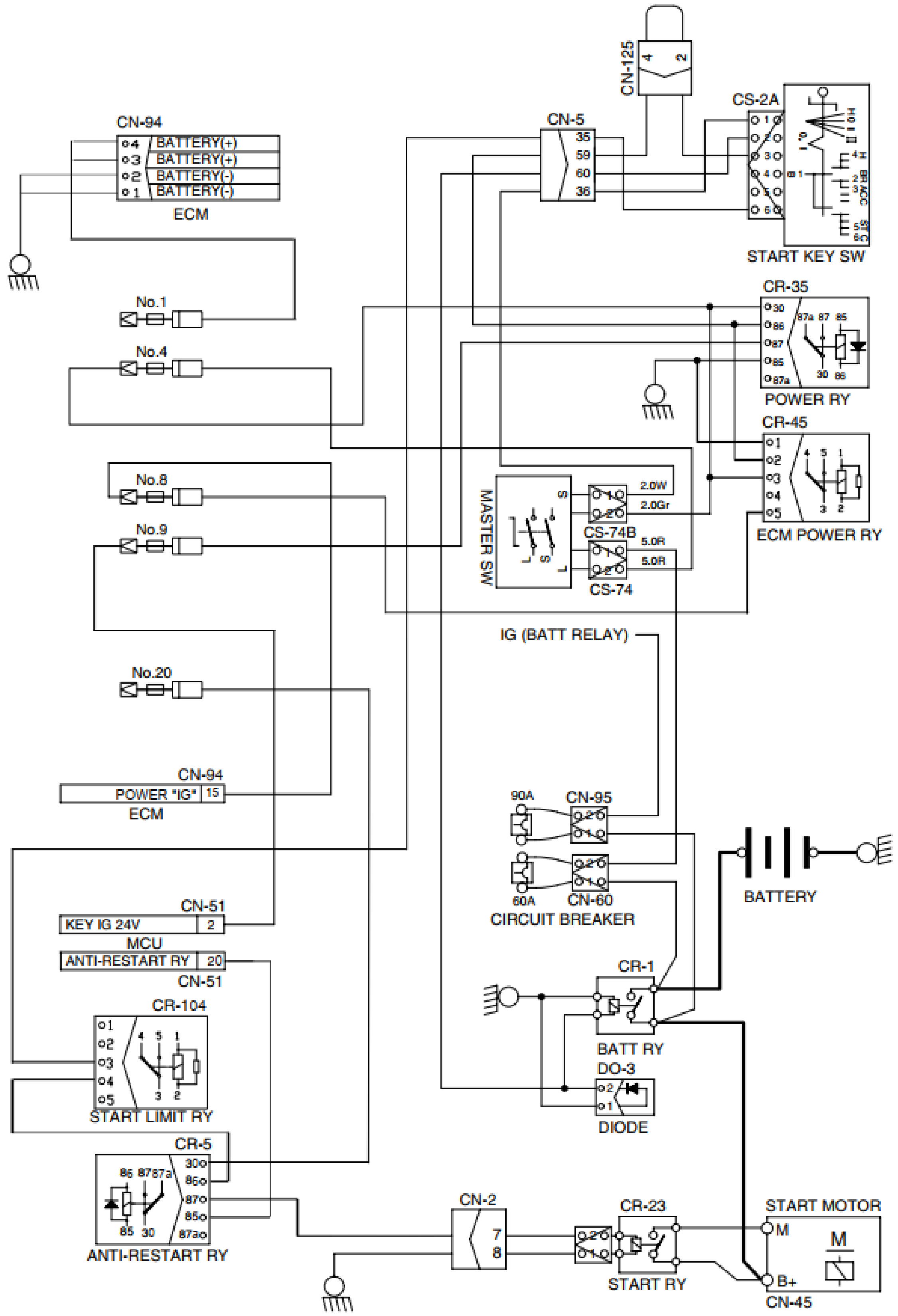
·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 1, 3,4,8,9, 20.

·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective ECM or battery	Replace
Check fuse No.9 and Power relay CR-35	Repair & Replace
Check fuse No.1	Replace
Defective magnet of start motor	Replace
Defective start relay	Replace
ⓐ	
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-2 (7) -CR-5 (87)	Repair or replace
Defective anti-restart relay	Replace
ⓑ	
Defective start relay	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-2(7)-CR-5(87)	Repair or replace
Defective antirestart relay	Repair or replace
Defective starterlimit relay	Repair or replace

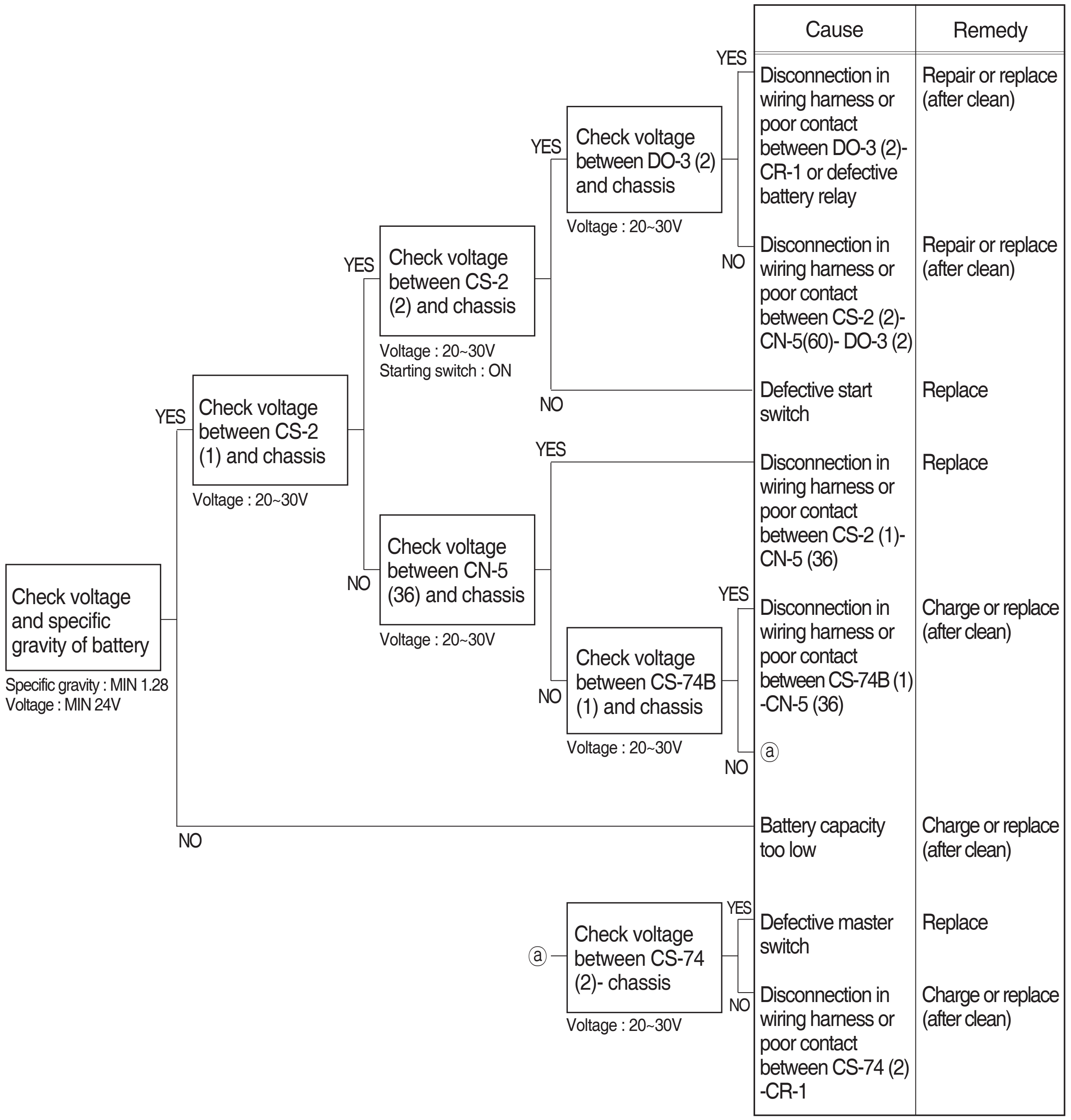


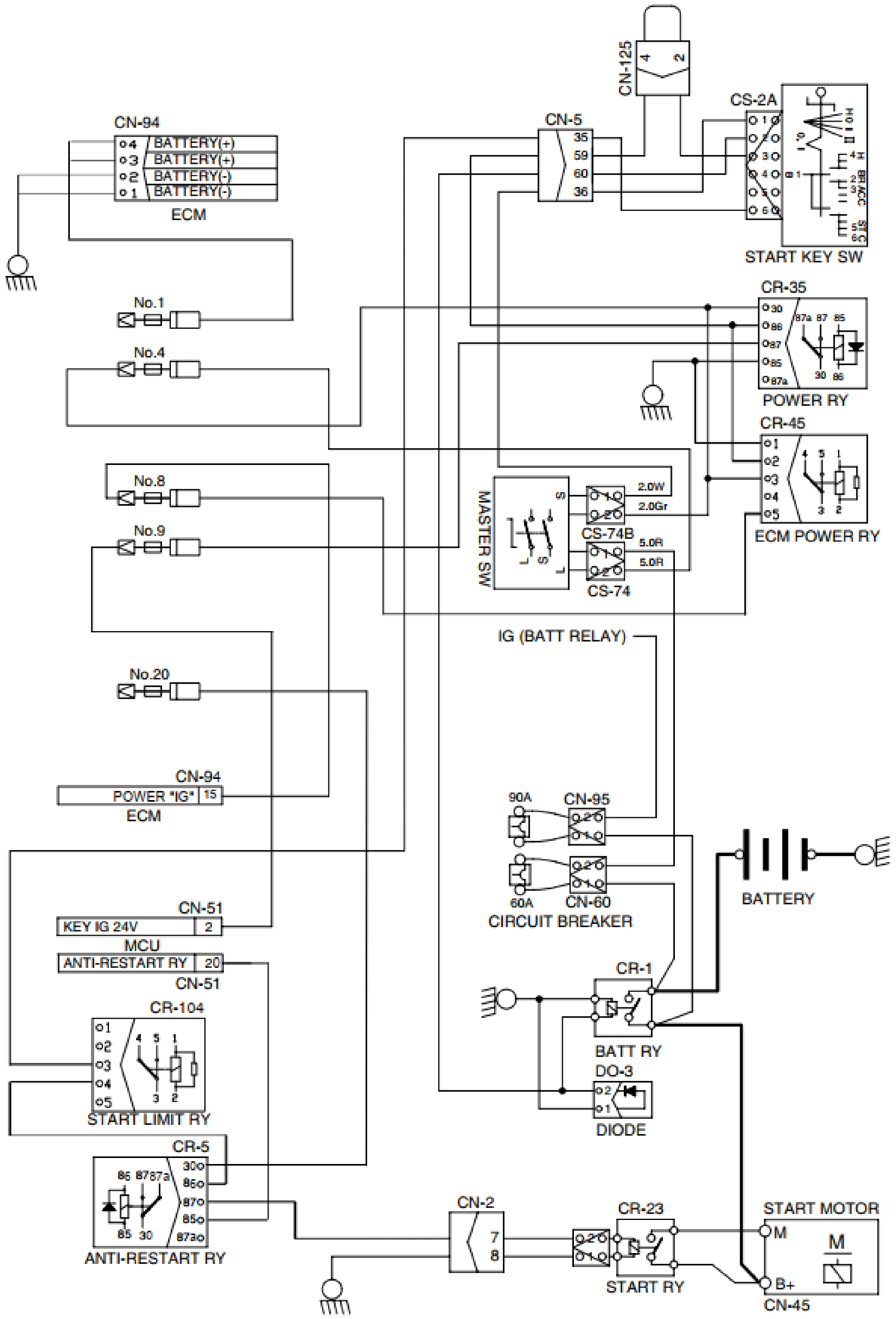
12. WHEN STARTING SWITCH ON DOES NOT OPERATE

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted, master switch ON and check open circuit of fusible link (CN-60).

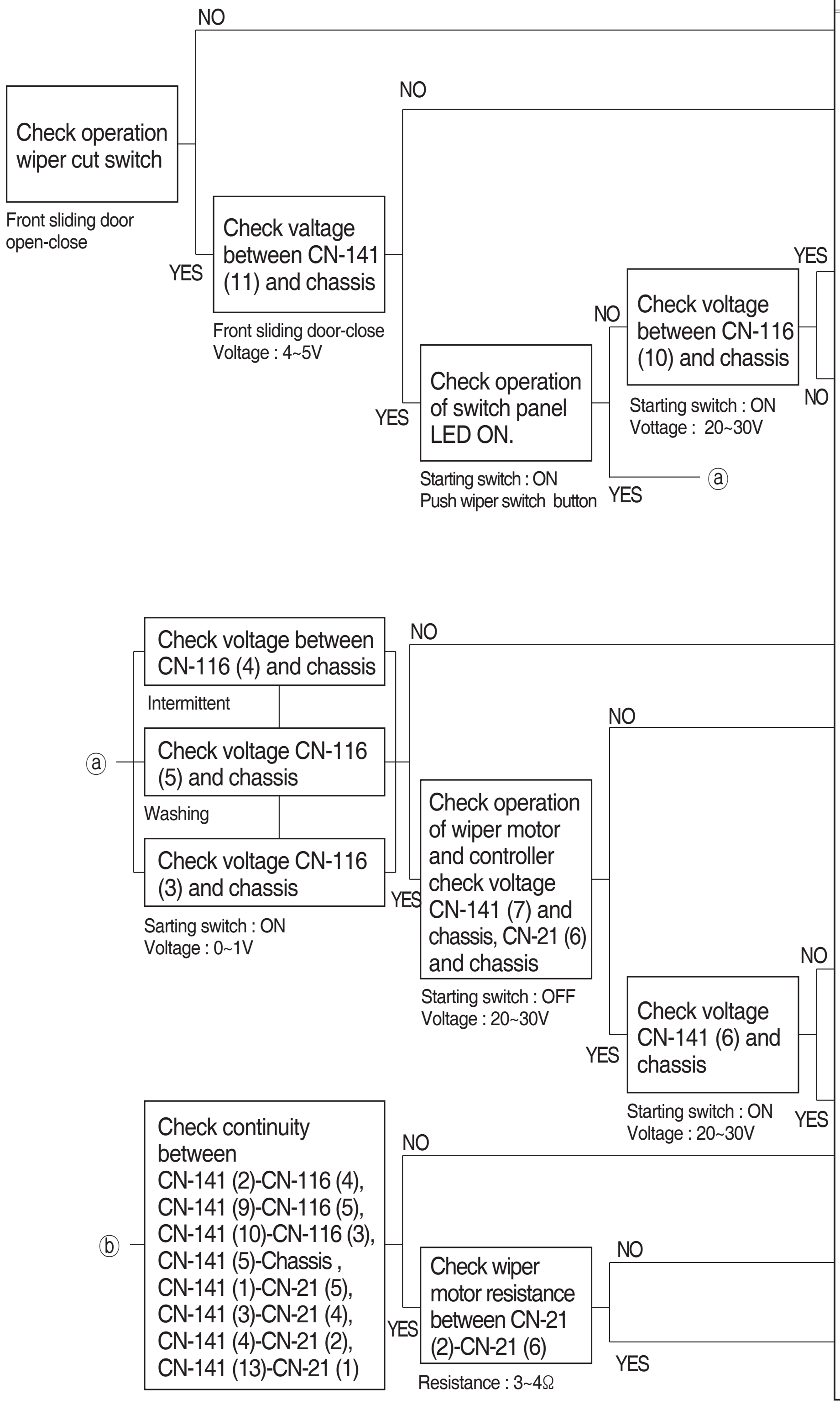
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



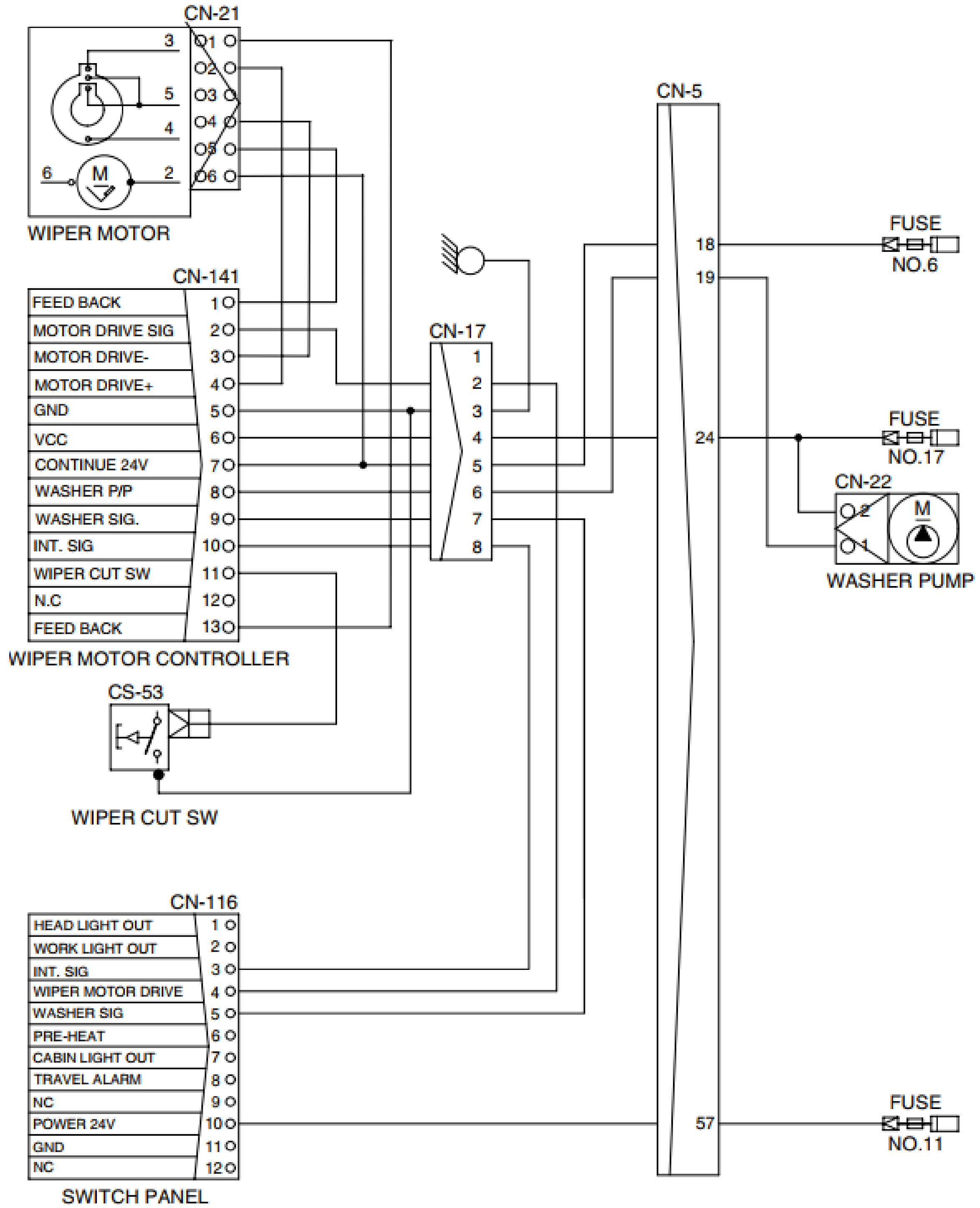


13. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT OPERATE

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No. 6, 11 and 17 is not blown out.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective wiper cut switch	Replace
Short circuit in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-141 (11)- CS-53	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective switch panel	Replace
1)Recheck fuse No.11 2)Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-116(10)-Fuse	Replace Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective switch panel	Replace
1) Recheck fuse No.6 2) Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-141(7)-Fuse, CN-21(4)-Fuse	Replace Repair or replace (after clean)
1) Recheck fuse No.17 2) Disconnection CN-141(6)-Fuse	Replace Repair or replace (after clean)
ⓑ	
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective wiper motor	Replace
Defective wiper motor controller	Replace

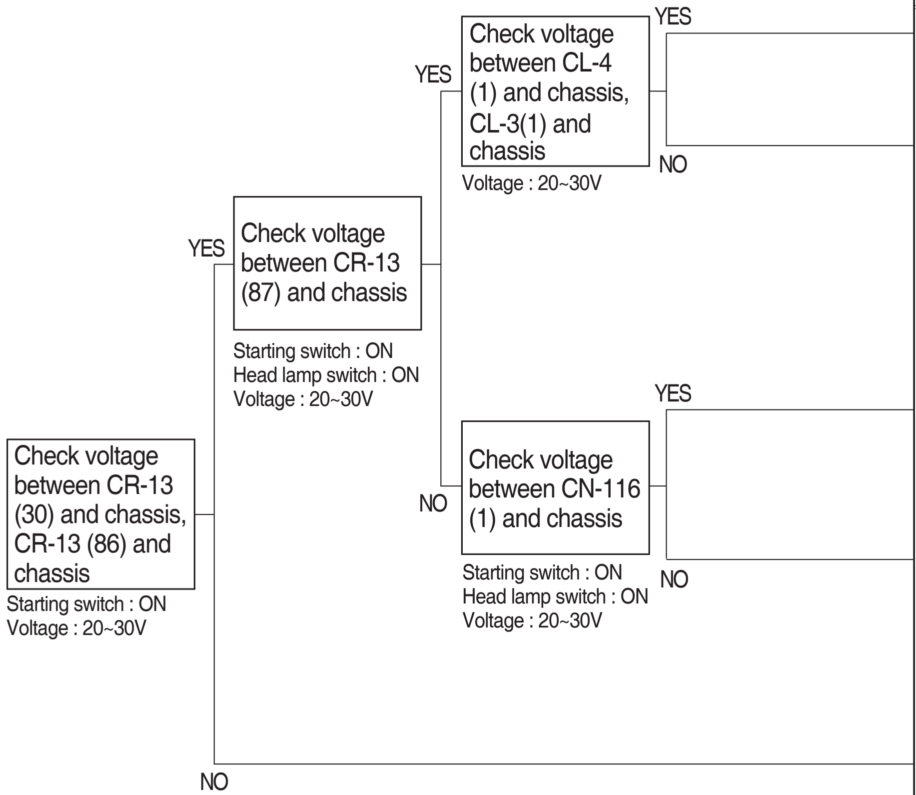


14. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, HEAD LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

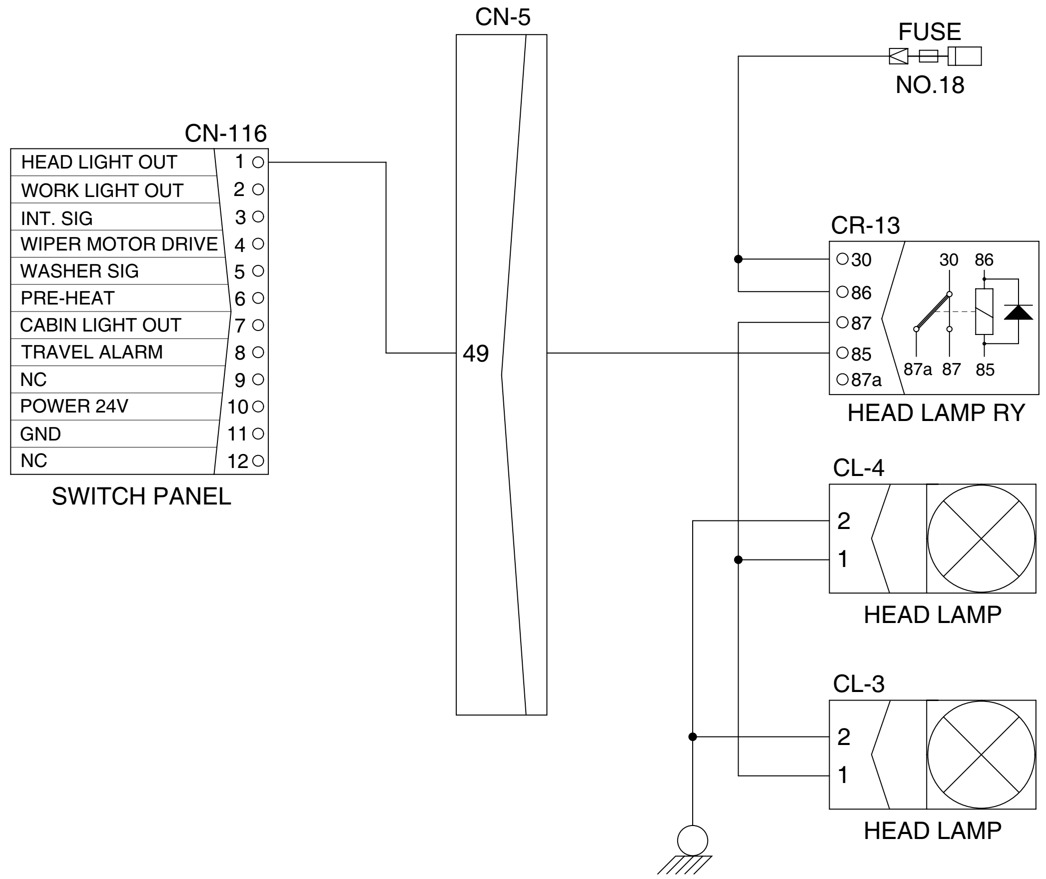
·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.

·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.18.

·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

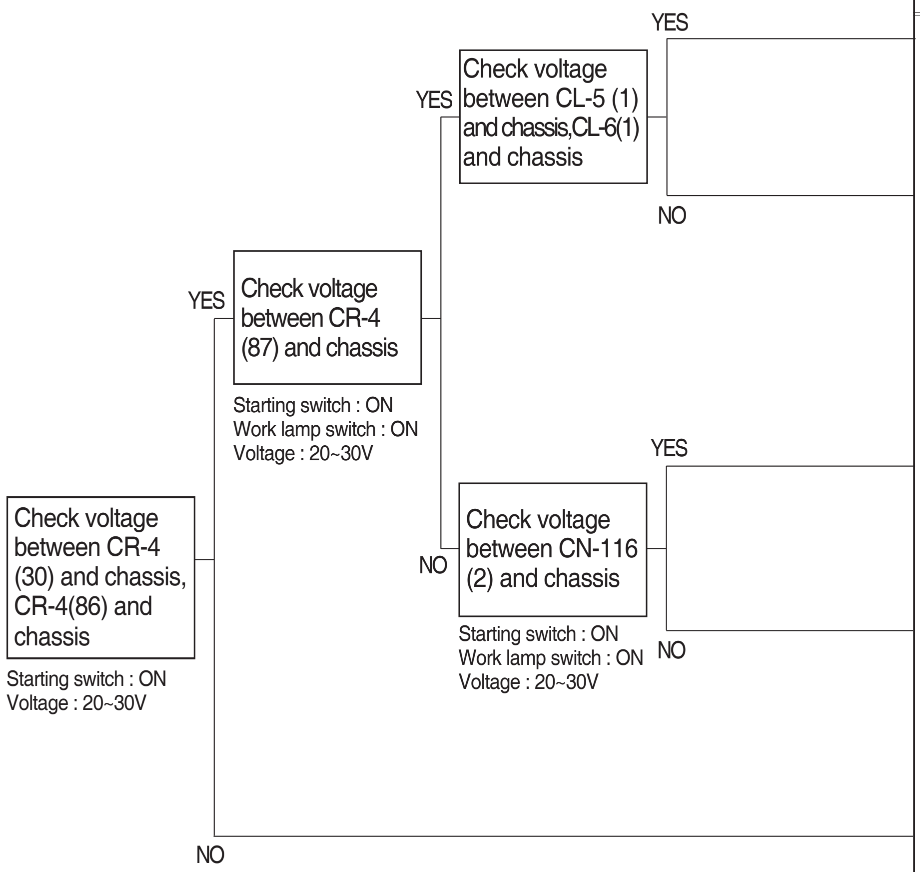


Cause	Remedy
Defective bulb	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-13 (87)-CL-4 (1) or CR-13 (87)-CL-3 (1)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective switch panel	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-116 (1)-CR-13 (85)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-13 (30) and chassis or CR-13 (86) - chassis	Repair or replace (after clean)
Recheck fuse No. 18	Replace

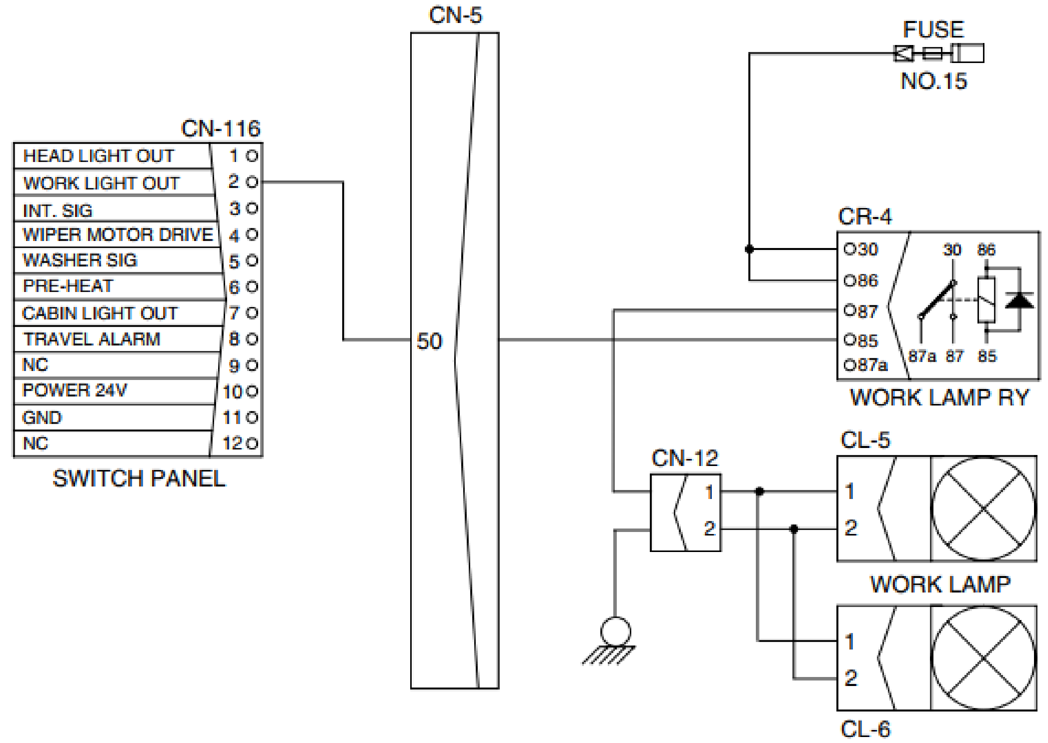


15. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WORK LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

·Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
·Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.15.
·After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective bulb	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-4 (87)-CL-5 (1) & CL-6(1)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective switch panel	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-4 (85)-CN-116 (2)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CR-4 (30) and chassis or CR-4 (86) and chassis	Repair or replace (after clean)
Recheck fuse No.15	Replace



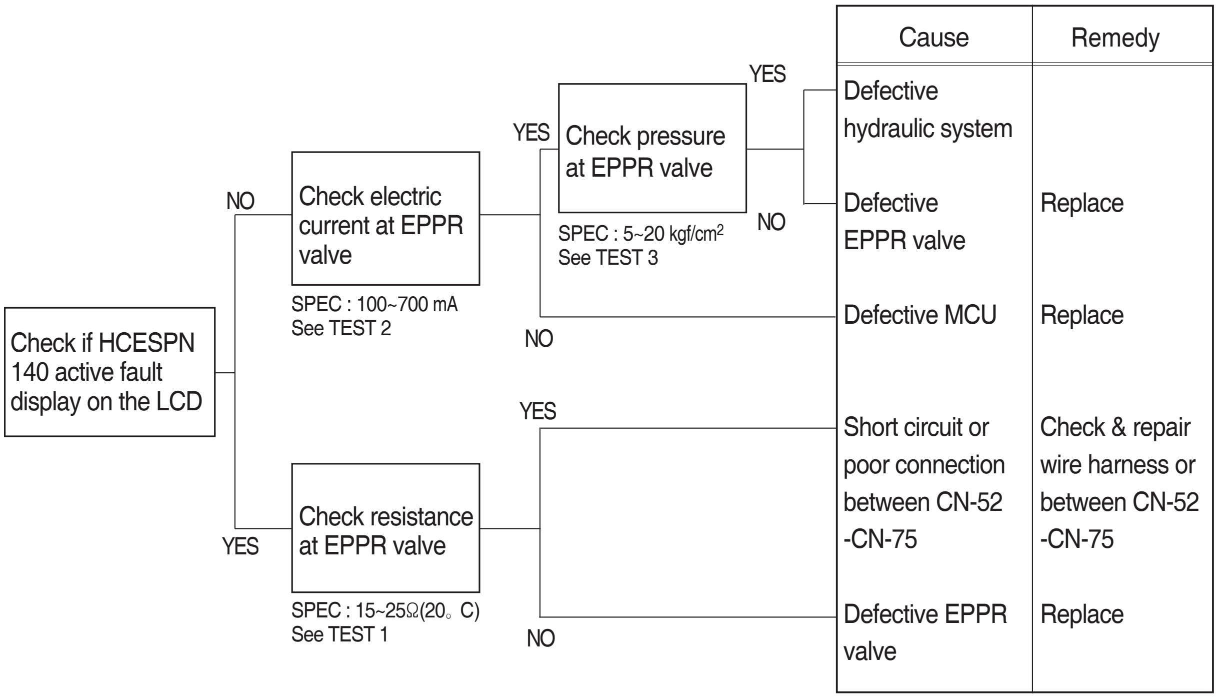
1. ALL ACTUATORS SPEED ARE SLOW

※ Boom, Arm, Bucket, Swing and travel speed are slow, but engine speed is good.

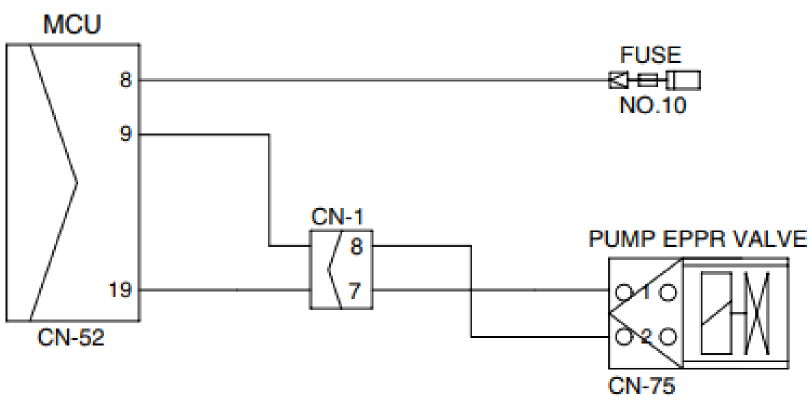
※ Spec : P-mode 1900 ± 50 rpm S -mode 1800 ± 50 rpm E-mode 1700± 50 rpm

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and fault code on the cluster.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



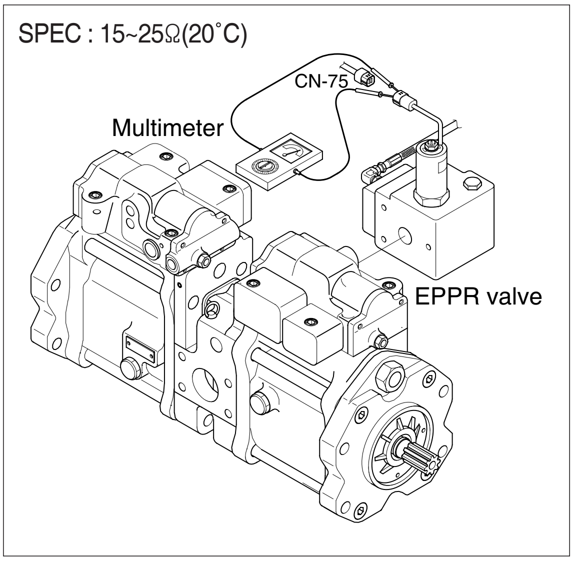
Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

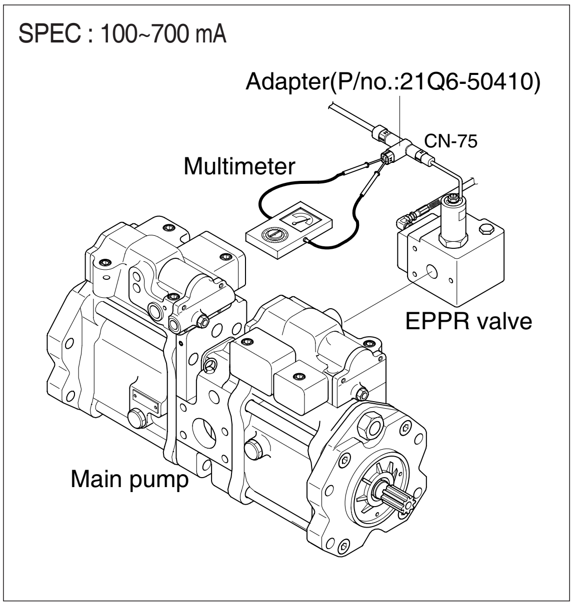
(1) Test 1 : Check resistance at connector CN-75.
Starting key OFF.

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR
② valve at main hydraulic pump.
③ Check resistance between 2 lines as figure.



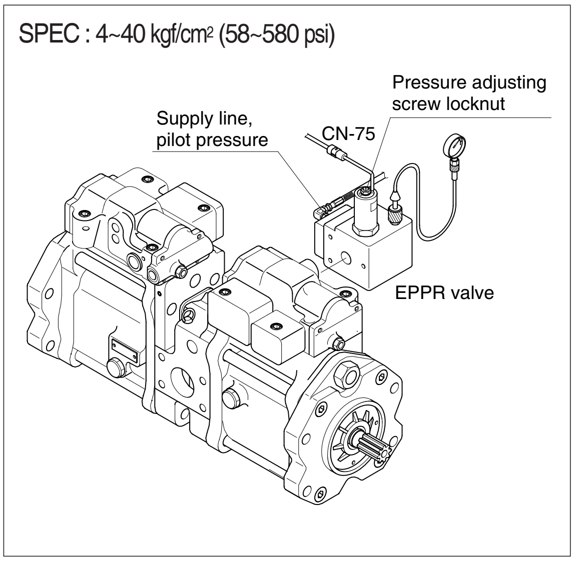
(2) Test 2 : Check electric current at EPPR valve.
Install multimeter as figure.

① Start engine.
② Set the accel dial at "10" (MAX)
③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
④ If tachometer show approx 1800±50 rpm
⑤ check electric current.



(3) Test 3 : Check pressure at EPPR valve.

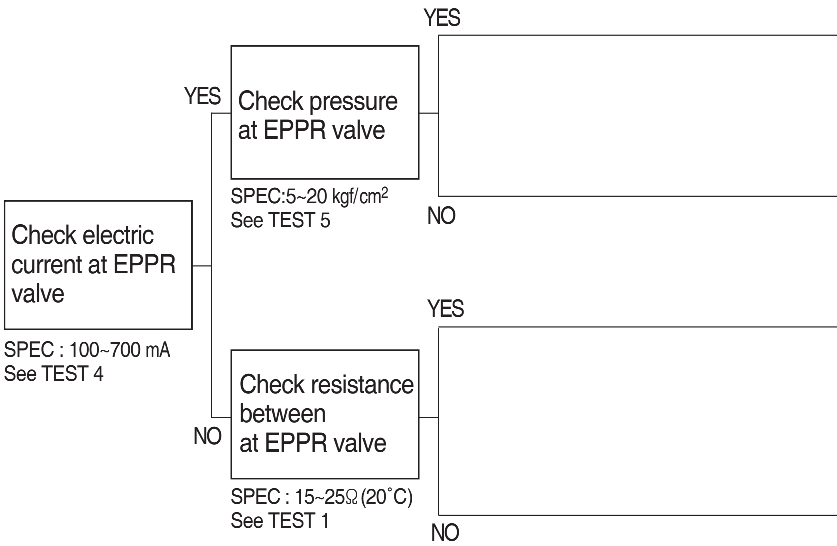
① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
·Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm^2
(0 to 710 psi)
② Start engine.
③ Set the accel dial at "10" (Max).
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
If tachometer show approx 1800±50 rpm
⑤ check pressure.
⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
⑦ After adjust, test the machine.



2. ENGINE STALL

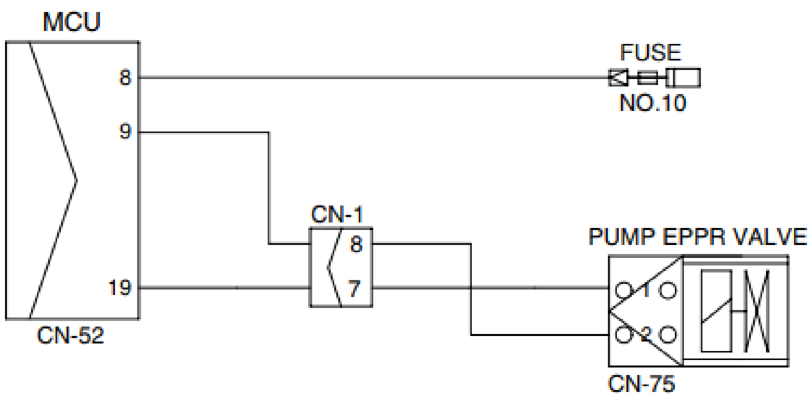
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Not enough engine power	Check engine fault Contact Service distributor
Defective EPPR valve	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 - CN-75	Check and repair wire harness
Defective EPPR valve	Replace

Wiring diagram

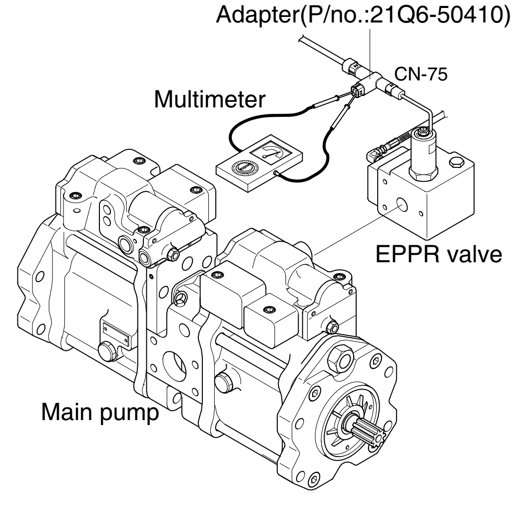


2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 4 : Check electric current at EPPR valve at S-mode

① Install multimeter as figure.
② Start engine.
③ Set the accel dial at "10" (max).
④ Set S-mode with 1800±50 rpm.
⑤ Check electric current.

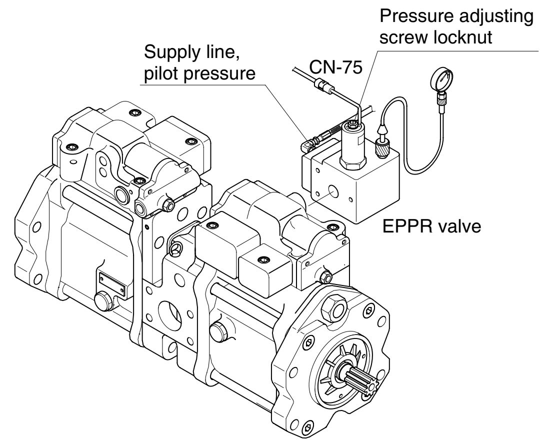
SPEC : 100~700 mA



(2) Test 5 : Check pressure at EPPR valve at S-mode.

① Connect pressure gauge at EPPR valve.
② Start engine.
③ Set the accel dial at "10" (max).
④ Set S-mode with 1800±50 rpm.
⑤ Operate bucket lever completely push or pull.
⑥ Hold arm lever at the end of stroke.
⑦ Check pressure at relief position.

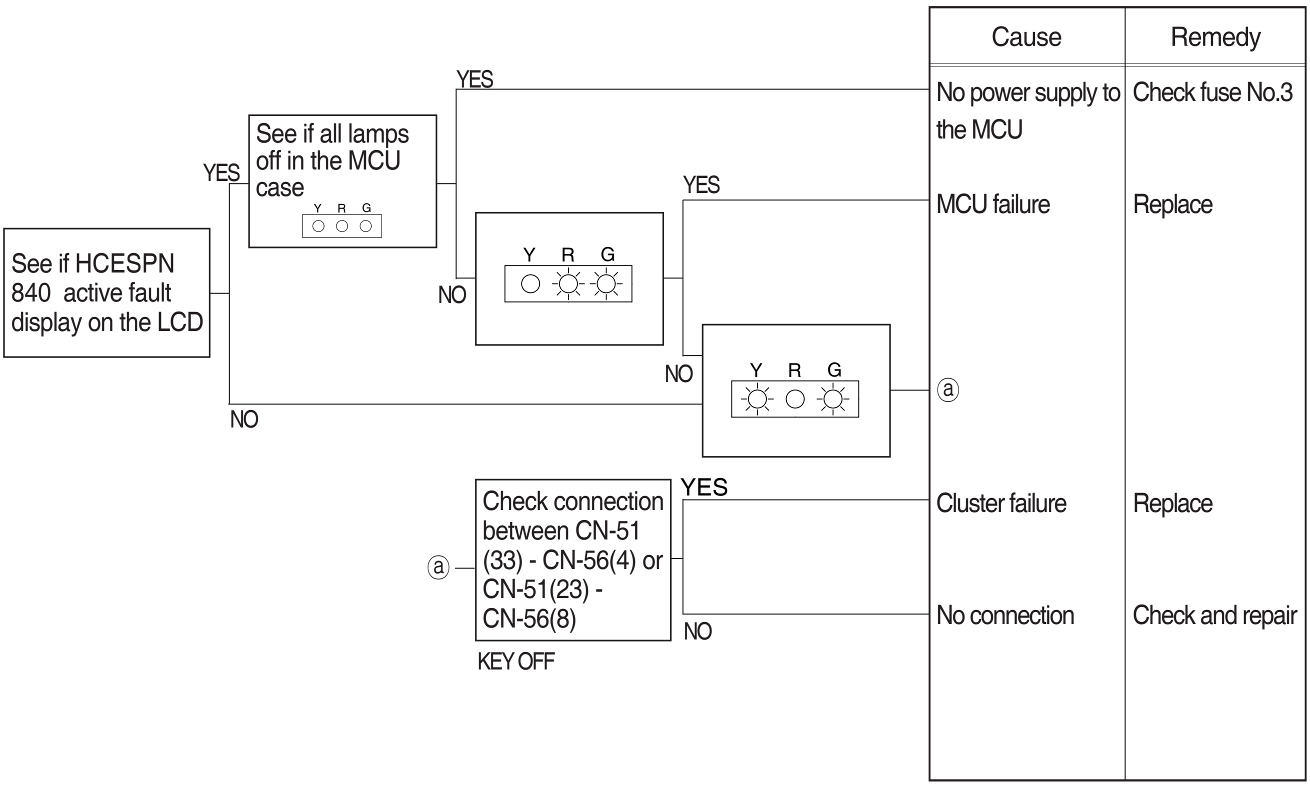
SPEC : 4~40 kgf/cm^2 (58~580 psi)



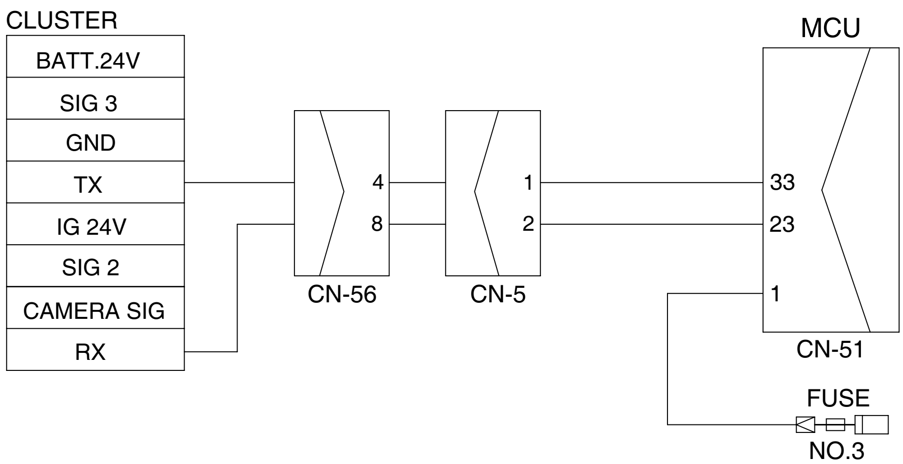
3. MALFUNCTION OF CLUSTER OR MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



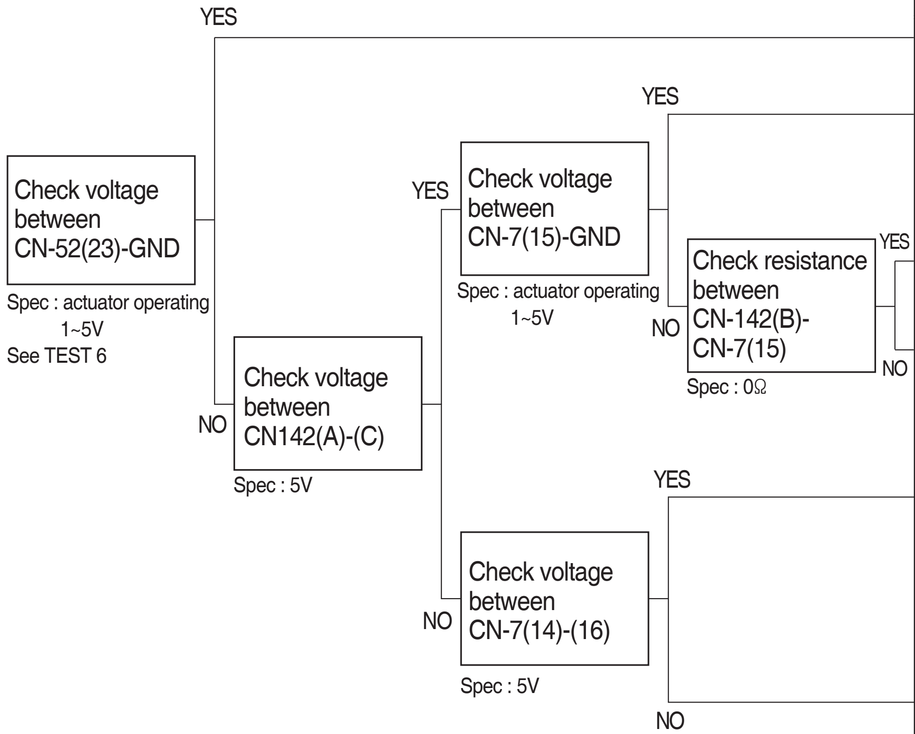
Wiring diagram



4. MALFUNCTION OF ACCEL DIAL

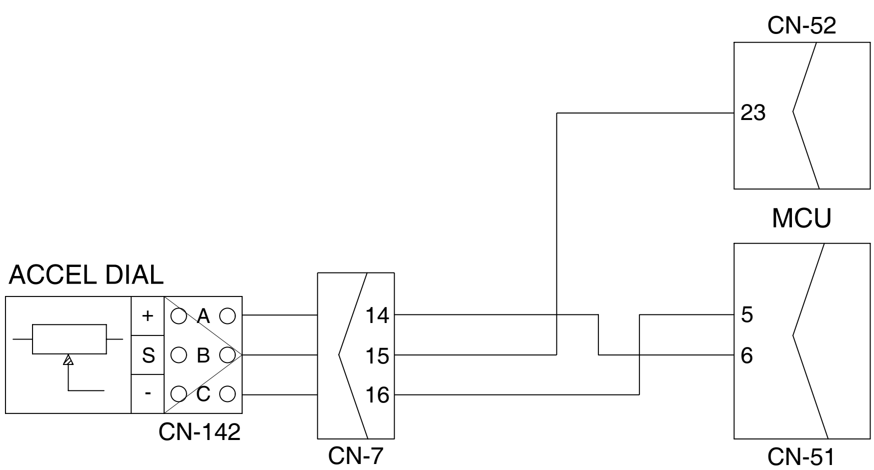
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-7 (15)-CN-52 (23)	Replace or repair
Defective accel dial	Replace
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-142 (B)-CN-7 (15)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-142 (A)-CN-7 (14) or CN-142 (C)-CN-7 (16)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-7 (16)-CN-51 (5) or CN-7 (14)-CN-51 (6)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 6 : Check voltage at CN-52(23) and ground.

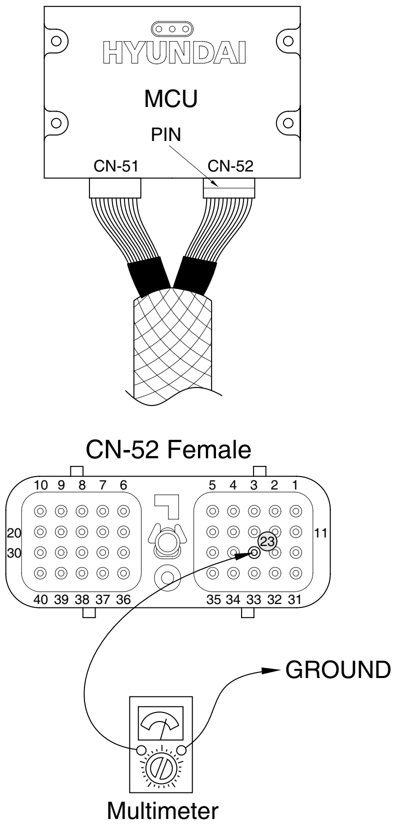
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (23) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

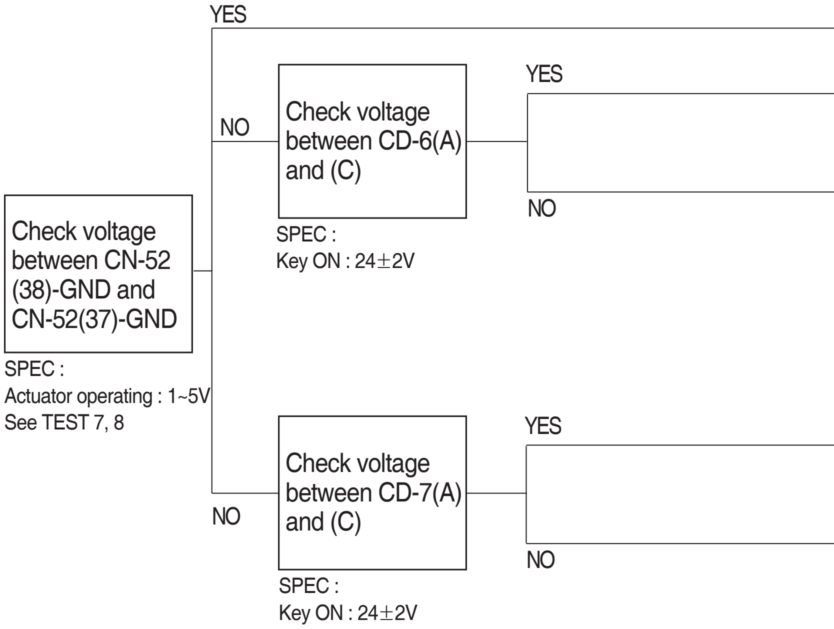


5. AUTO DECEL SYSTEM DOES NOT WORK

· Fault code : HCESPN 105, FMI 0~4 (work pressure sensor)
  HCESPN 108, FMI 0~4 (travel oil pressure sensor)

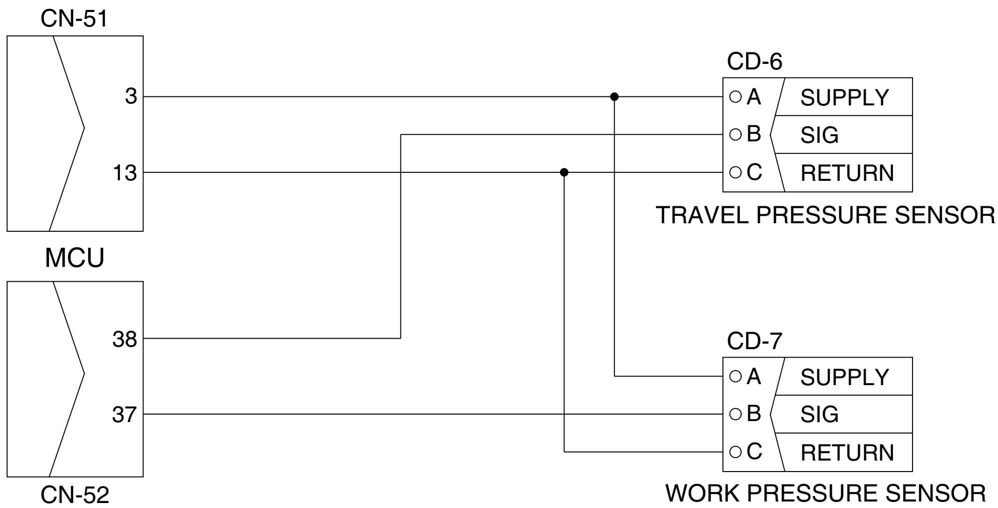
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Defective travel pressuresensor	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-6(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-6(C) (fault code 108 displayed)	Replace or repair
Defective work pressure sensor	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-7(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-7(C) (fault code 105 displayed)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

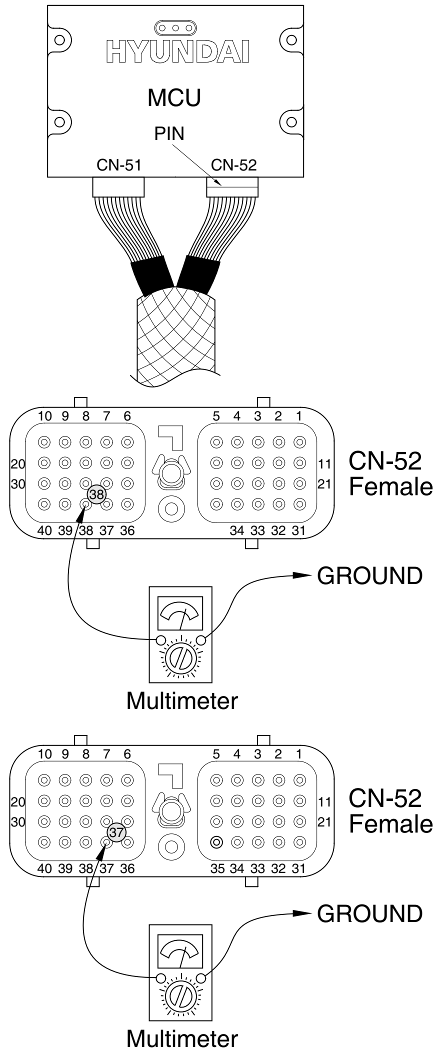
(1) Test 7 : Check voltage at CN-52(38) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (38) of CN-52.
③ Starting key ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

(2) Test 8 : Check voltage at CN-52(37)and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (37) of CN-52.
③ Starting key ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

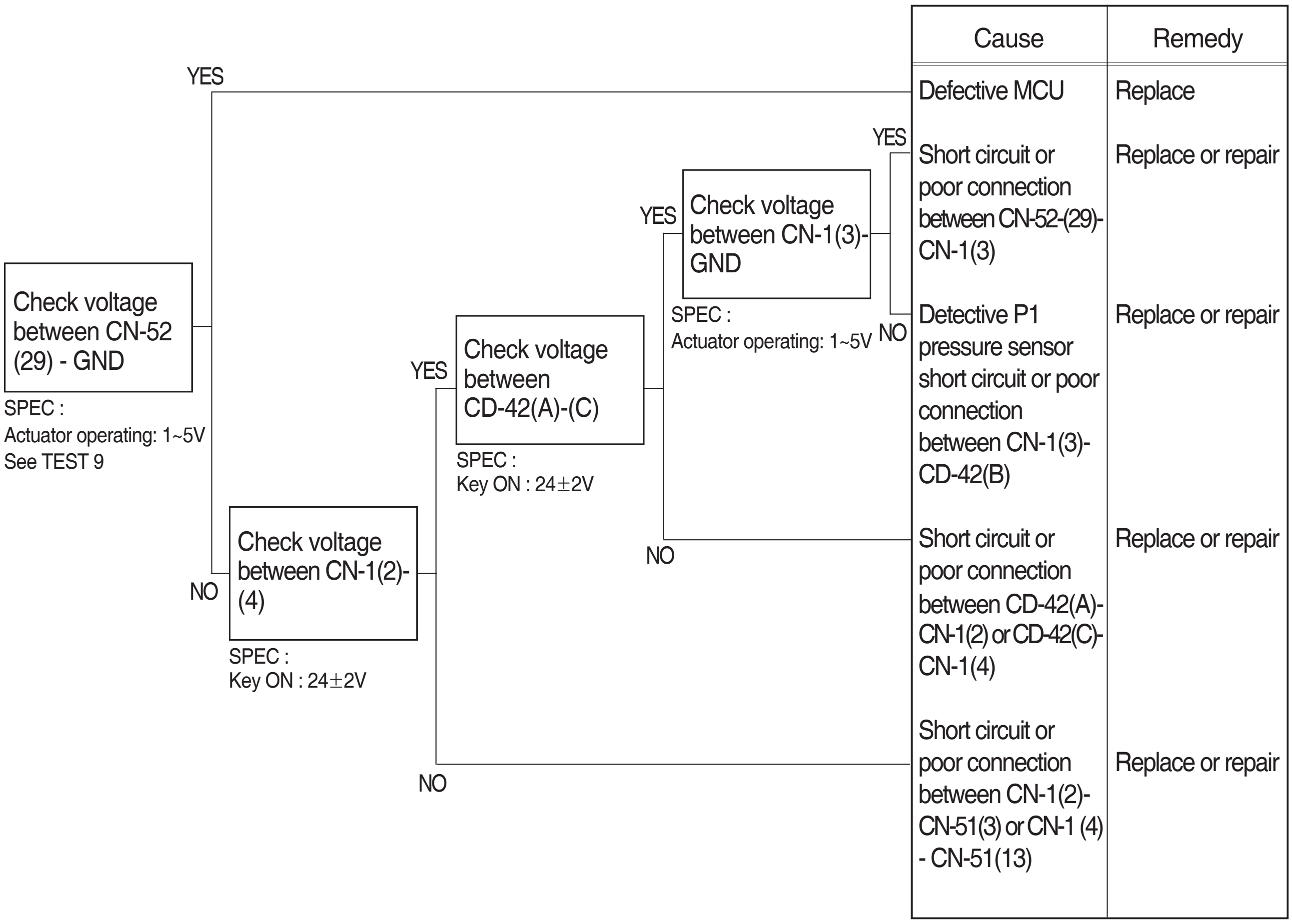


6. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

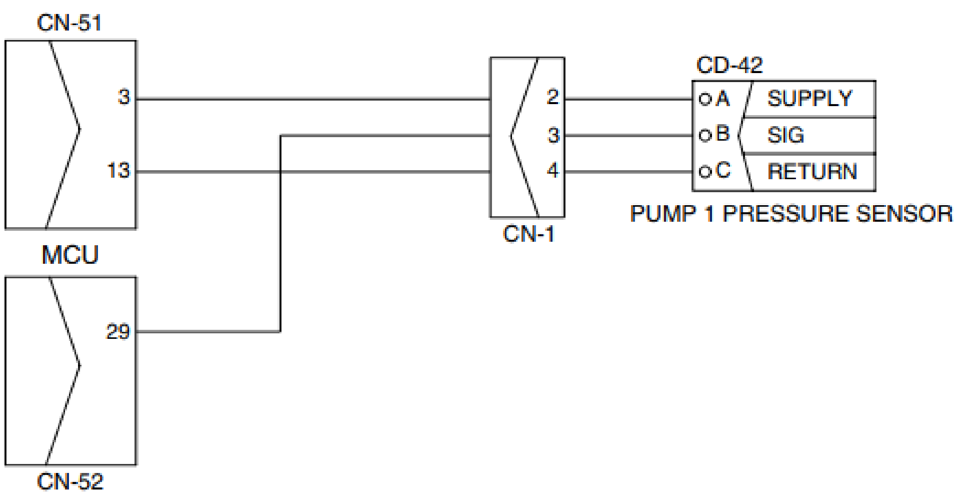
· Fault code : HCESPN 120, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) **Test 9** : Check voltage at CN-52(29) and ground.

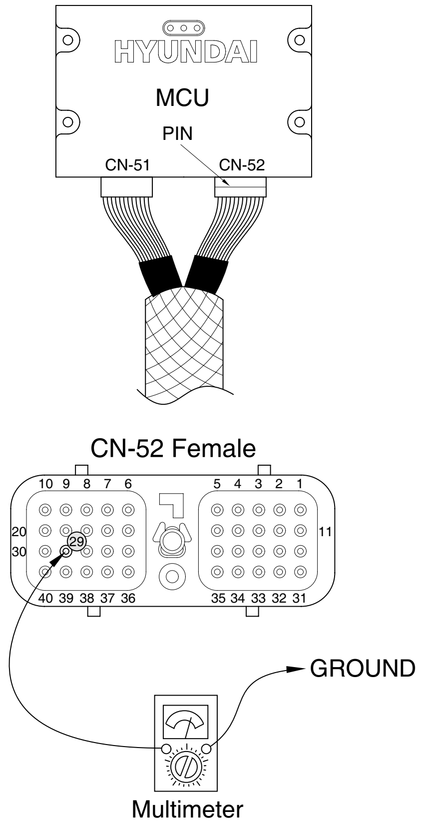
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (29) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

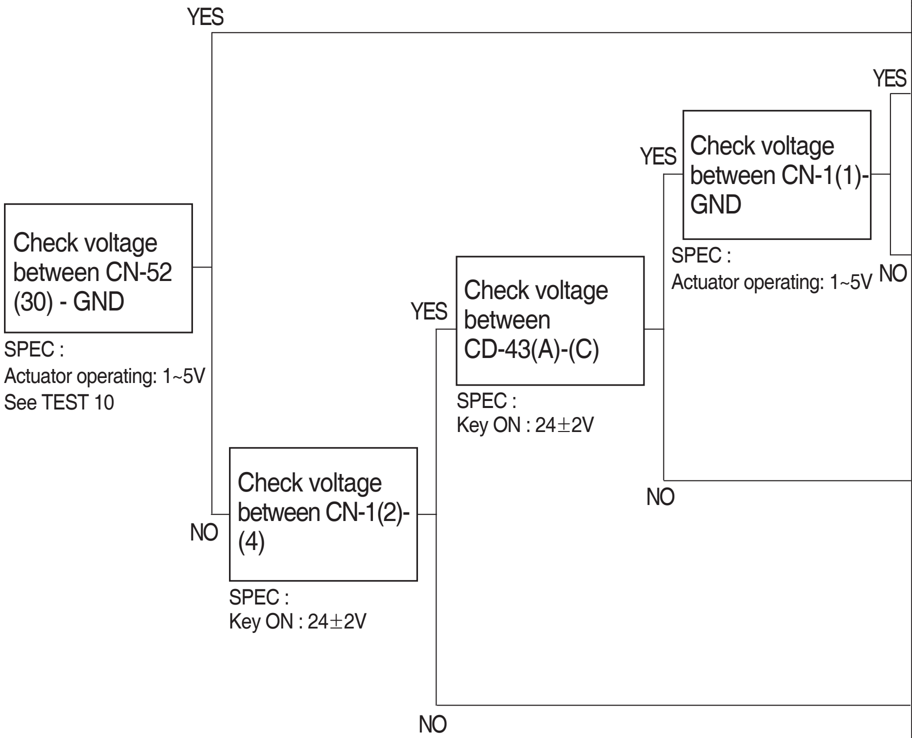


7. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 121, FMI 0~4

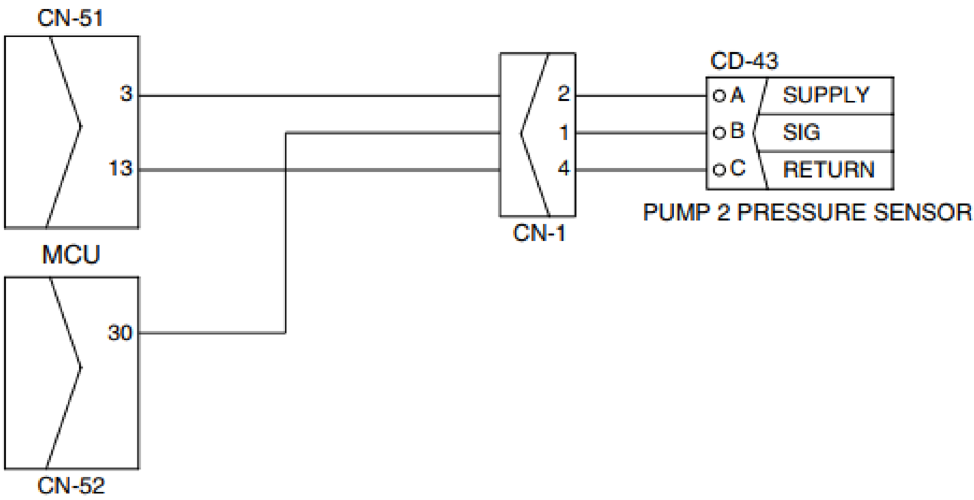
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(30)-CN-1(1)	Replace or repair
Detective P2 pressure sensor short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(1)-CD-43(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-43(A)-CN-1(2) or CD-43(C)-CN-1(4)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(2)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (4)-CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram

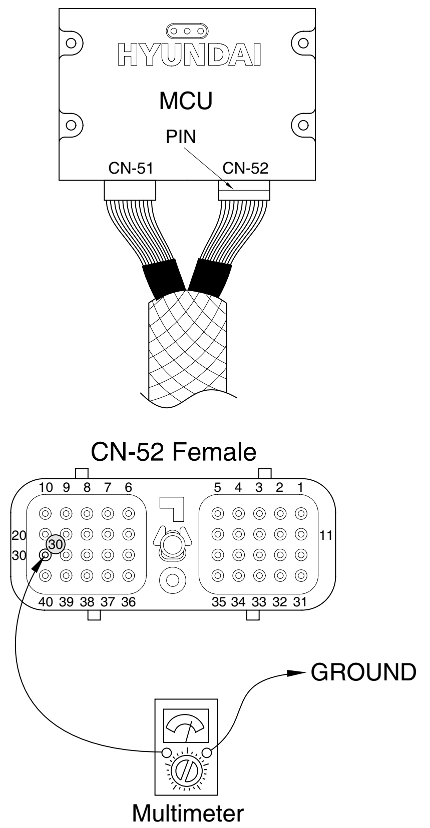


2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 10 : Check voltage at CN-52(30) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (30) of CN-52.
③ Starting key ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

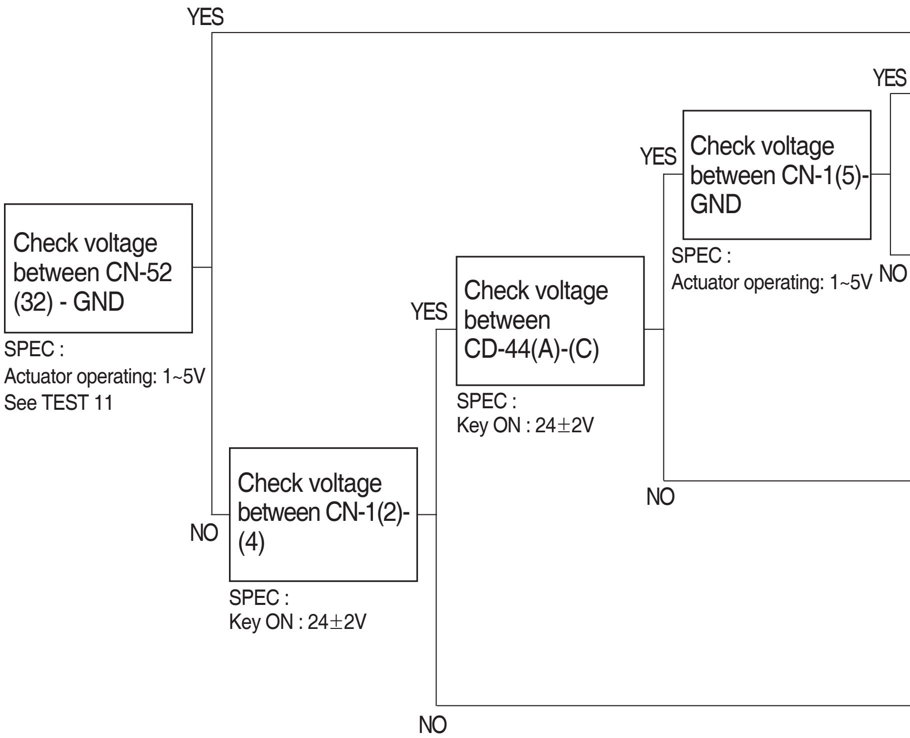


8. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 3 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 125, FMI 0~4

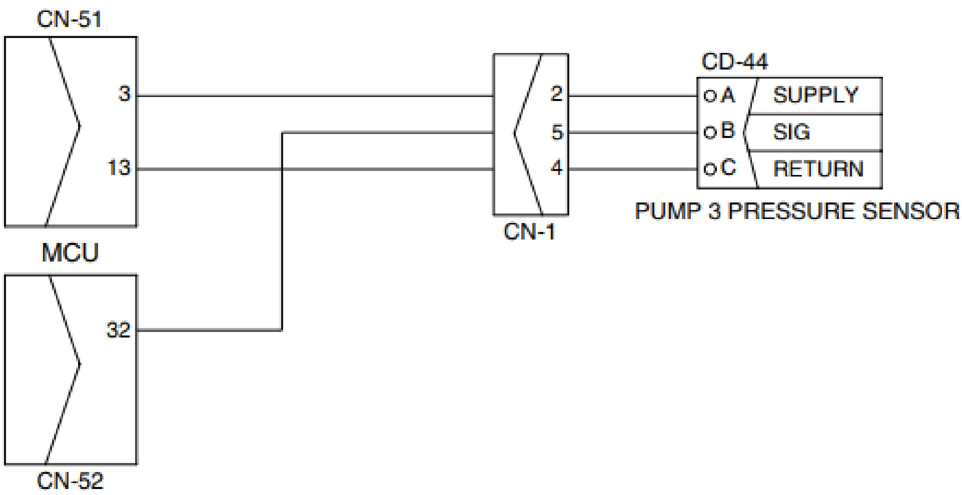
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(32)-CN-1(5)	Replace or repair
Detective P3 pressure sensor short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(5)-CD-44(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-44(A)-CN-1(2) or CD-44(C)-CN-1(4)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(2)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (4) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) **Test 11** : Check voltage at CN-52(32) and ground.

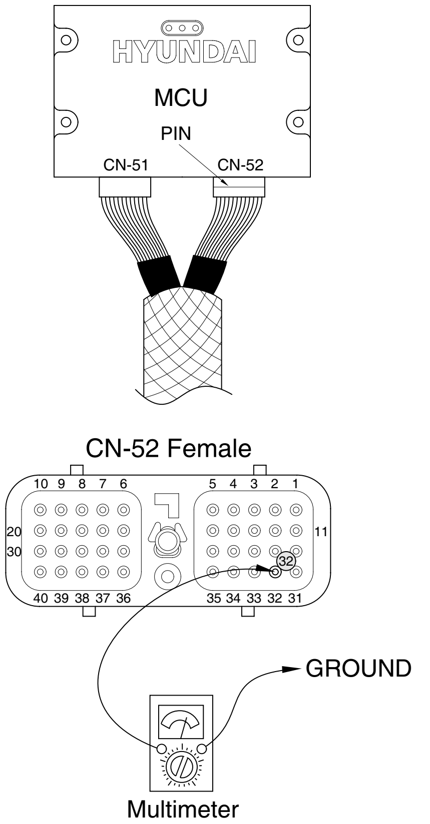
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (32) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

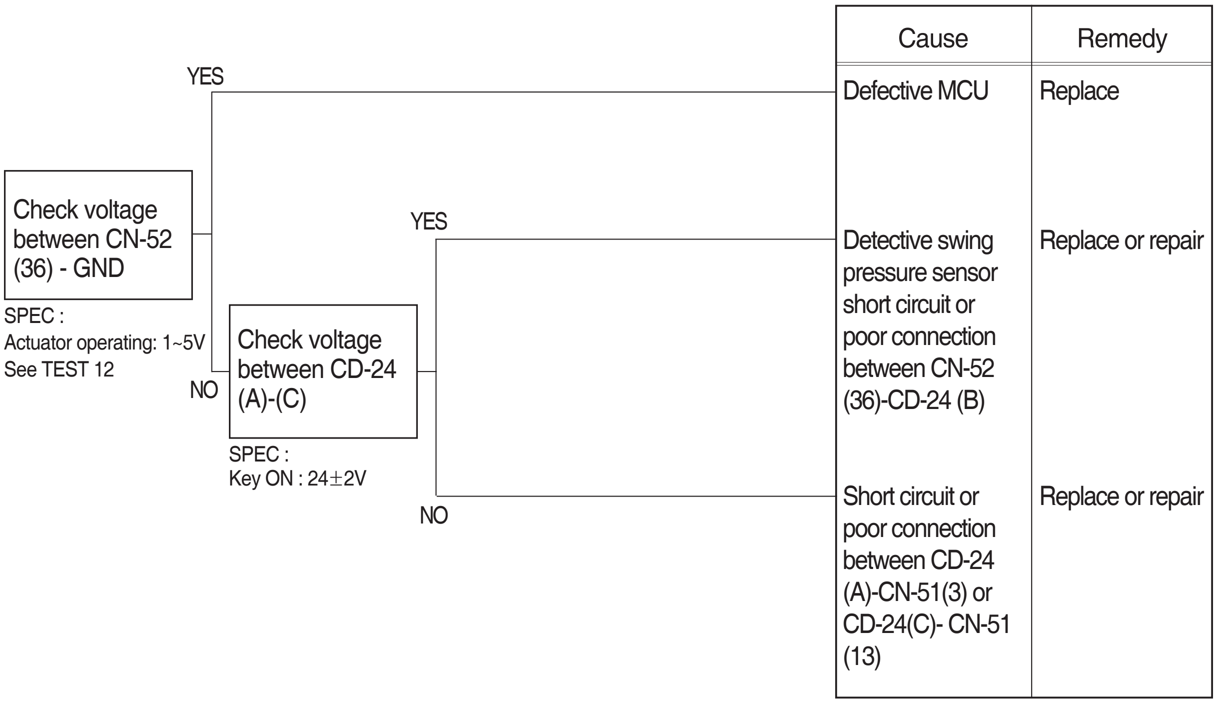


9. MALFUNCTION OF SWING PRESSURE SENSOR

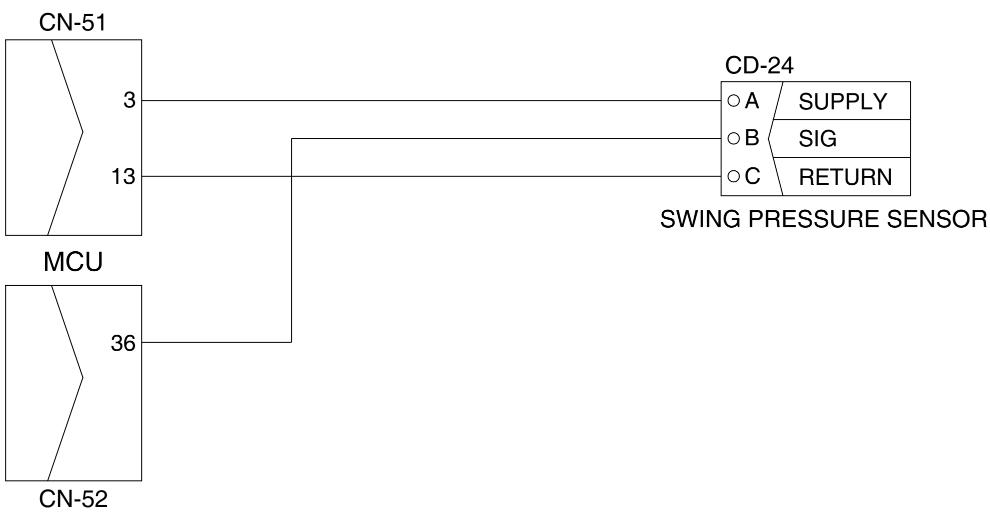
· Fault code : HCESPN 135, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 12 : Check voltage at CN-52(36) and ground.

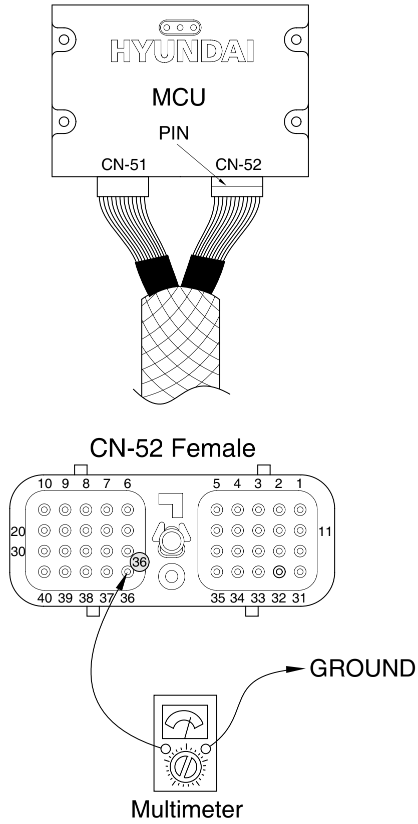
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (36) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

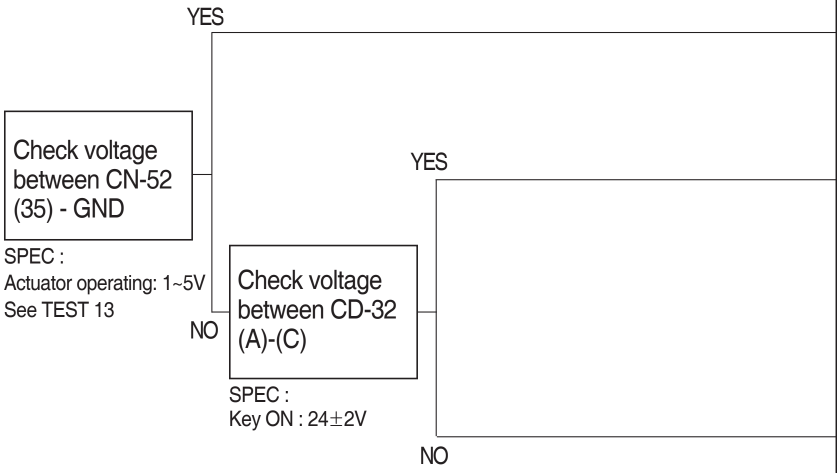


10. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM UP PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 127, FMI 0~4

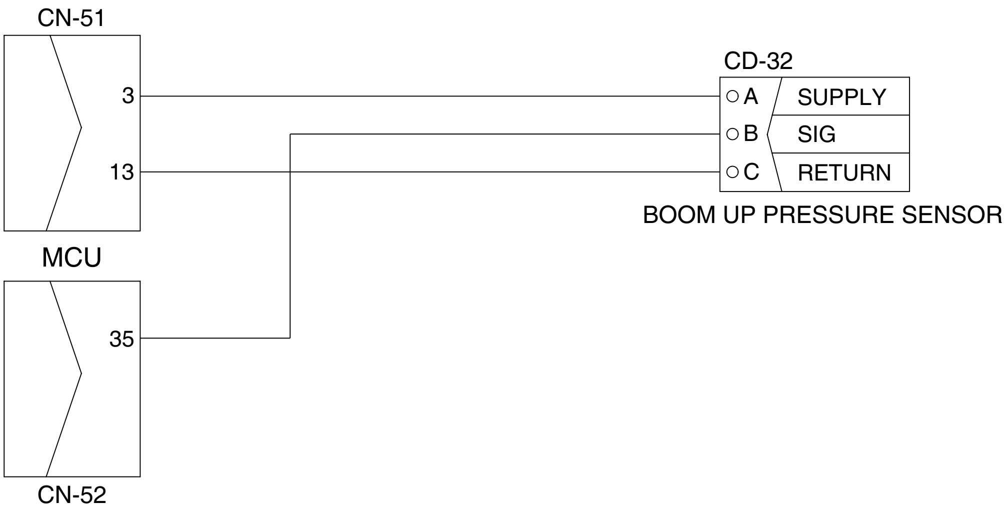
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective boom up pressure sensor short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (35)-CD-32 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-32 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-32(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 13 : Check voltage at CN-52(35) and ground.

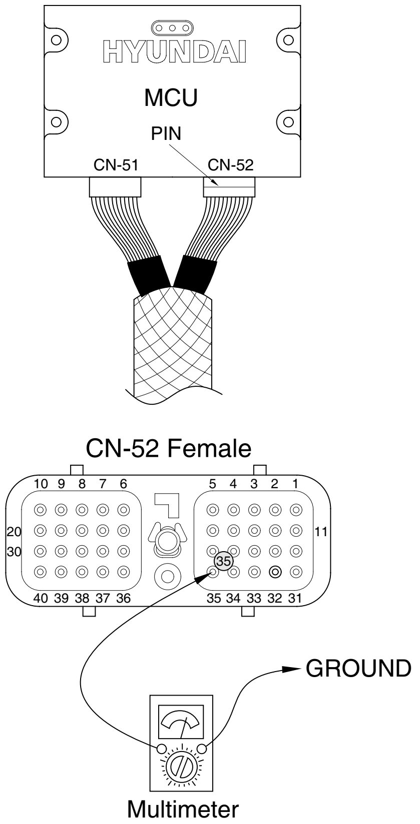
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (35) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

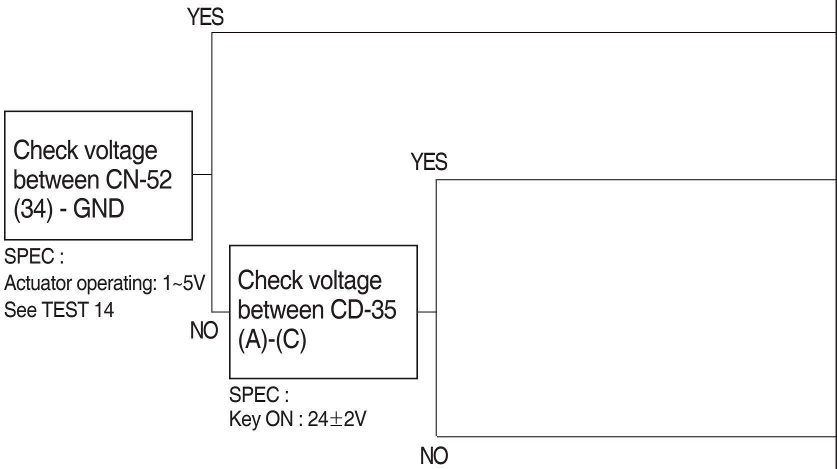


11. MALFUNCTION OF ARM IN/BUCKET IN PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 133, FMI 0~4

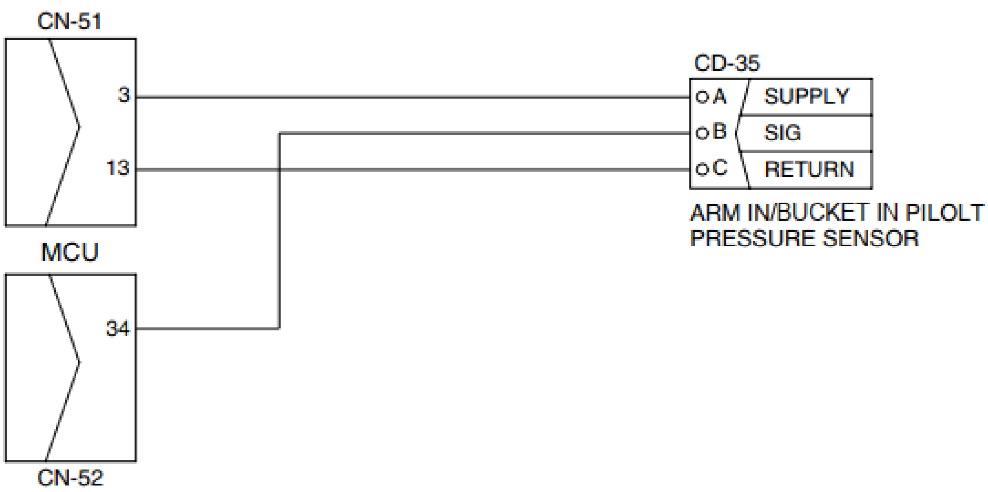
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective boom up pressure sensor short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (34)-CD-35 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-35 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-35(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 14 : Check voltage at CN-52(34) and ground.

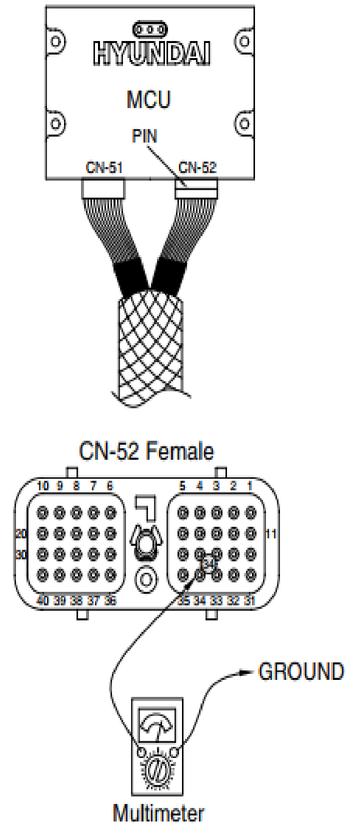
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (34) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

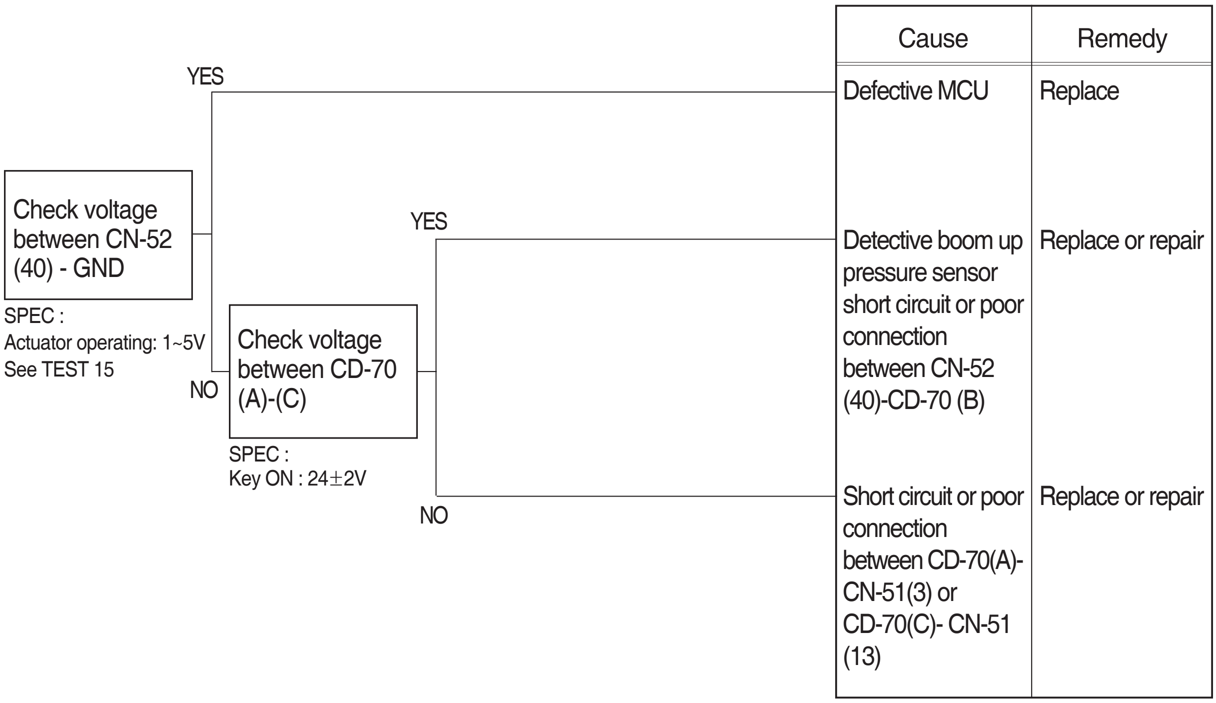


12. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

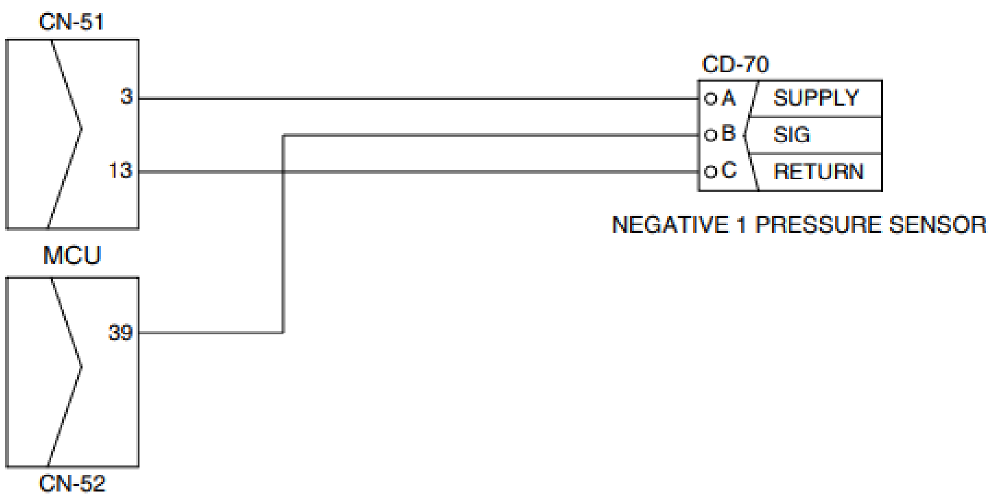
· Fault code : HCESPN 123, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) **Test 15** : Check voltage at CN-52(39) and ground.

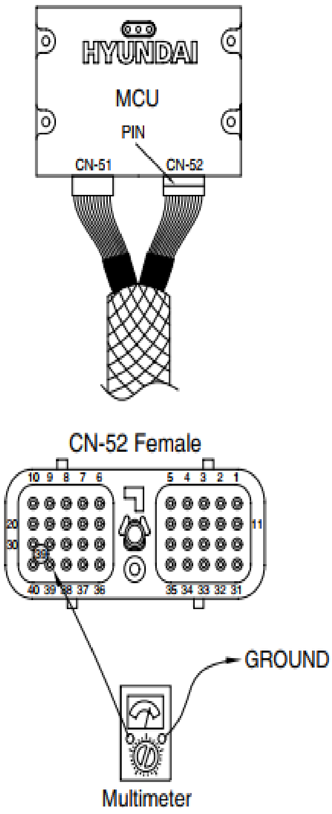
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (39) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

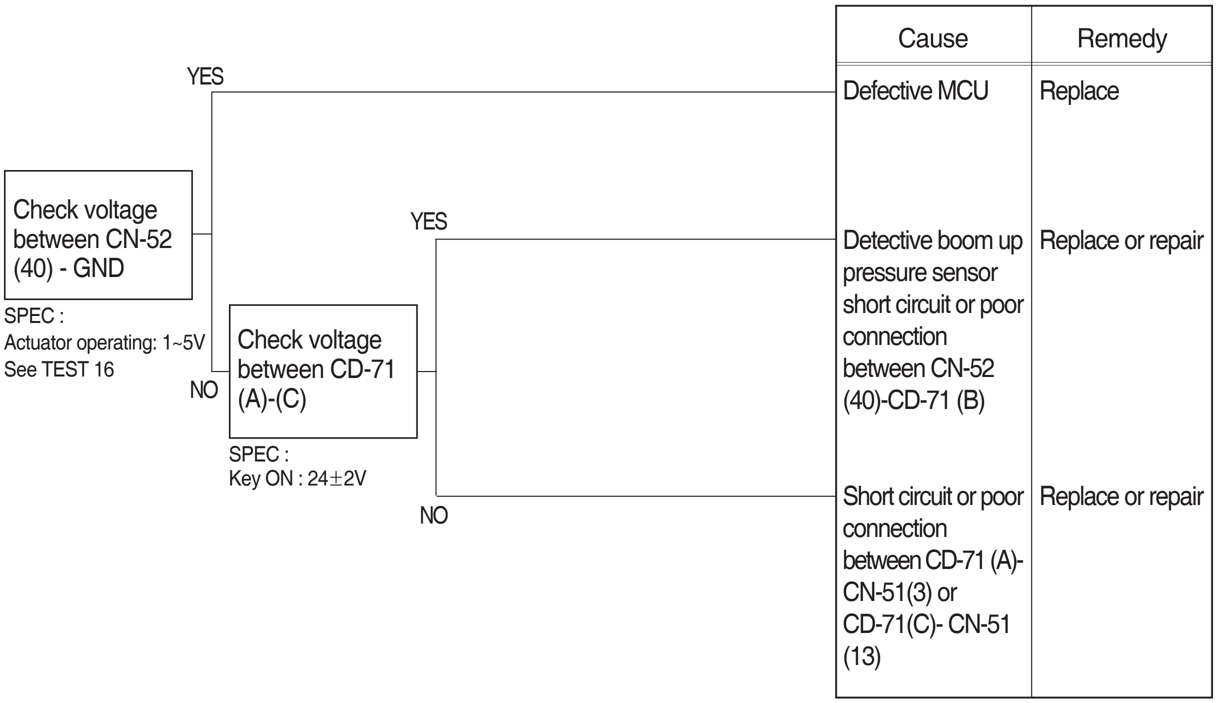


13. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

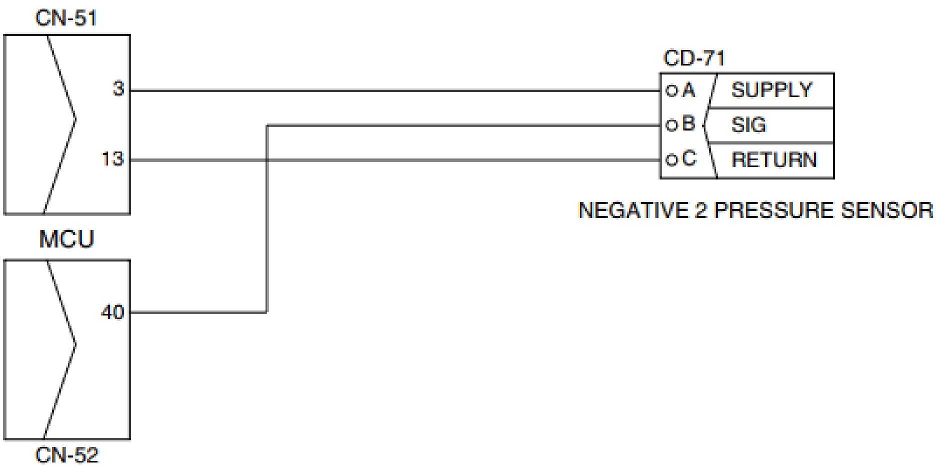
· Fault code : HCESPN 124, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) **Test 16** : Check voltage at CN-52(40) and ground.

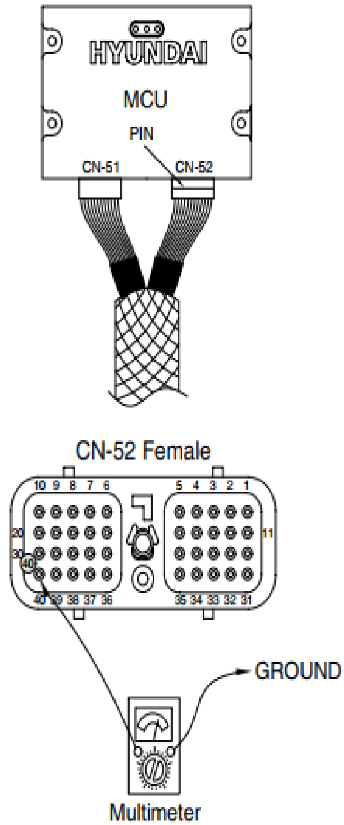
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (40) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

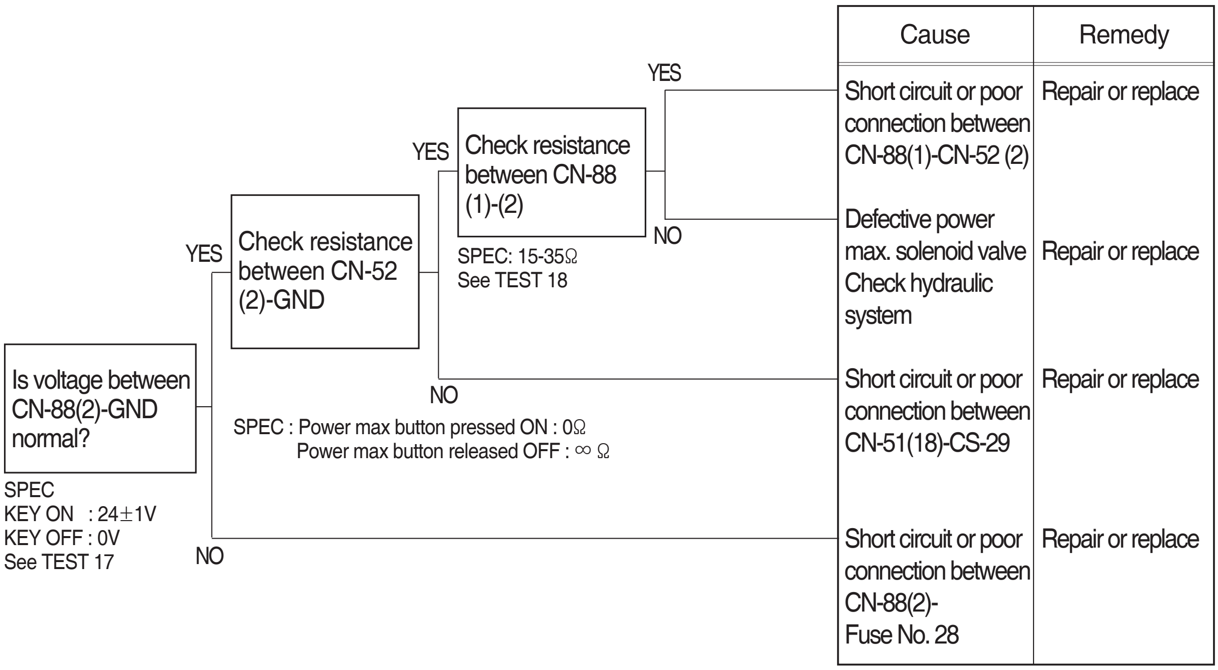


14. MALFUNCTION OF POWER MAX

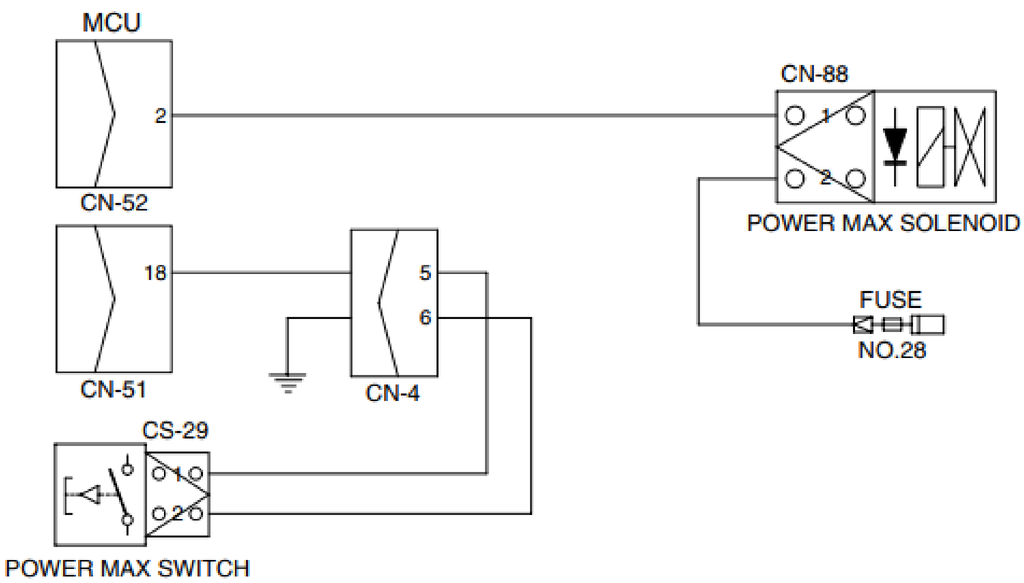
· Fault code : HCESPN 166, FMI 4 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



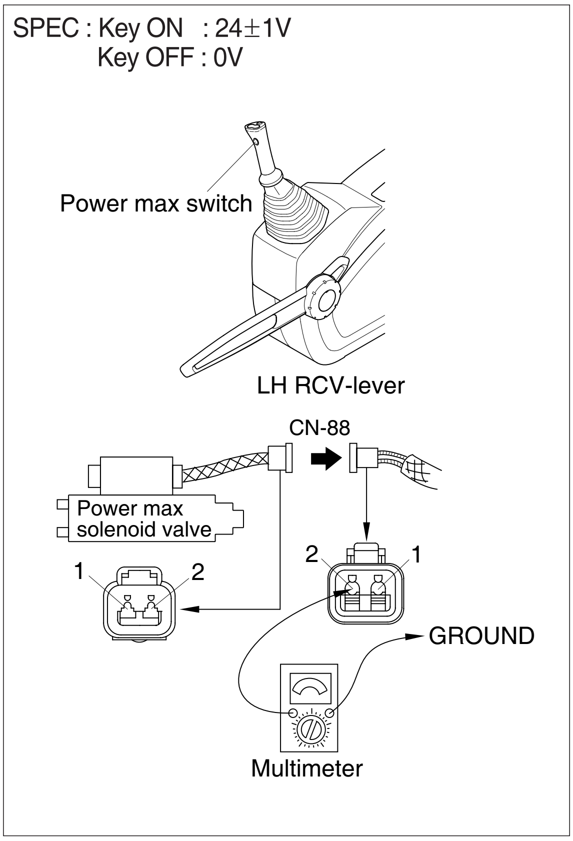
Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

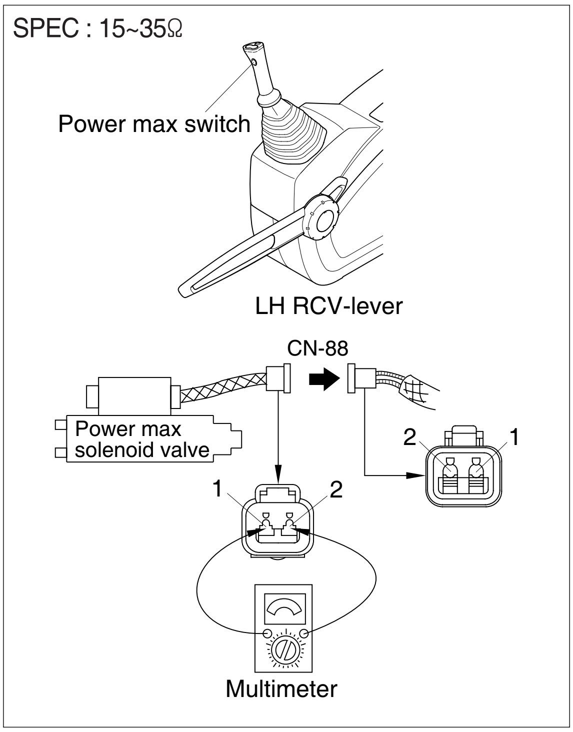
(1) Test 17: Check voltage between connector CN-88(2) - GND.

① Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
② Start key ON.
③ Check voltage as figure.



(2) Test 18: Check resistance of the solenoid valve between CN-88(1)-(2).

① Starting key OFF.
② Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
③ Check resistance as figure.



15. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

· Fault code : HCESPN 141, FMI 5 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

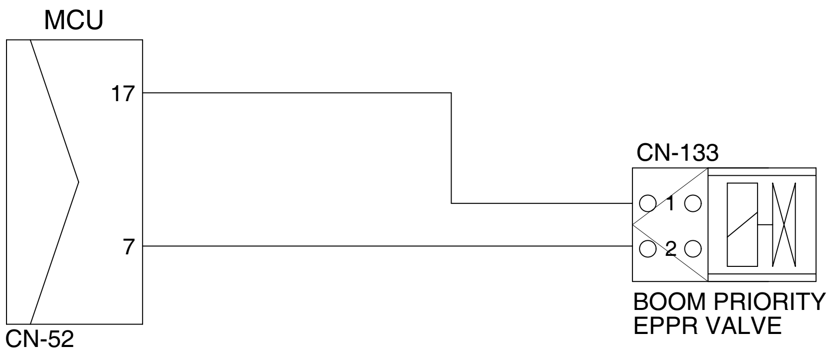
1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

Check resistance between CN-133(1)-(2)

SPEC : 20~30V
KEY : ON

	Cause	Remedy
YES	Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52(17)-CN-133 (1) or CN-52(7)-CN-133(2)	Repair or replace
NO	Defective EPPR valve	Repair or replace

Wiring diagram



SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

GROUP 1 OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST

1. PURPOSE

Performance tests are used to check:

1) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A NEW MACHINE

Whenever a new machine is delivered in parts and reassembled at a customer's site, it must be tested to confirm that the operational performance of the machine meets Hyundai spec.

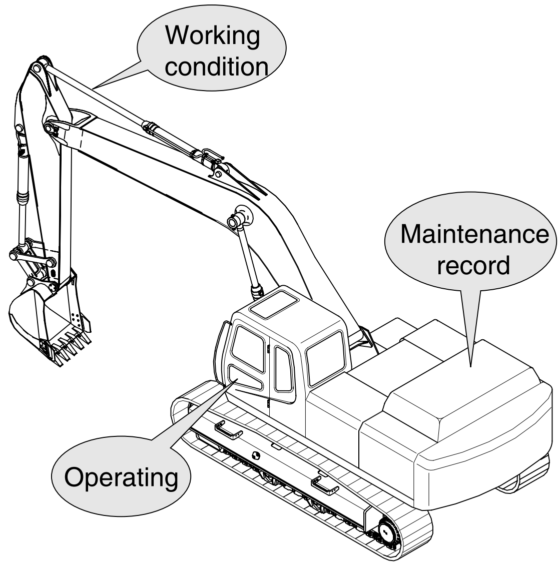
2) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A WORKING MACHINE

With the passage of time, the machine's operational performance deteriorates, so that the machine needs to be serviced periodically to restore it to its original performance level.

Before servicing the machine, conduct performance tests to check the extent of deterioration, and to decide what kind of service needs to be done (by referring to the "Service Limits" in this manual).

3) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A REPAIRED MACHINE

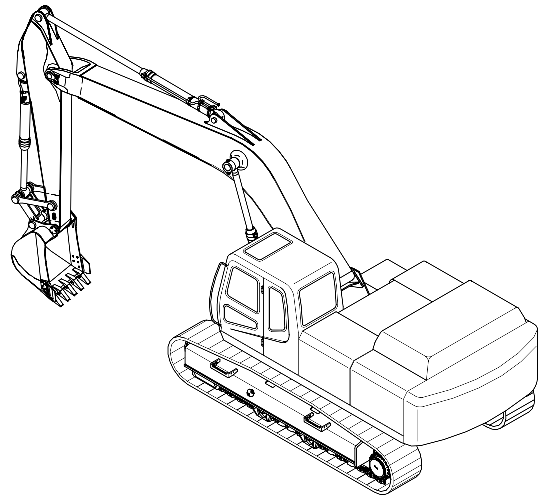
After the machine is repaired or serviced, it must be tested to confirm that its operational performance was restored by the repair and/or service work done.



2. TERMINOLOGY

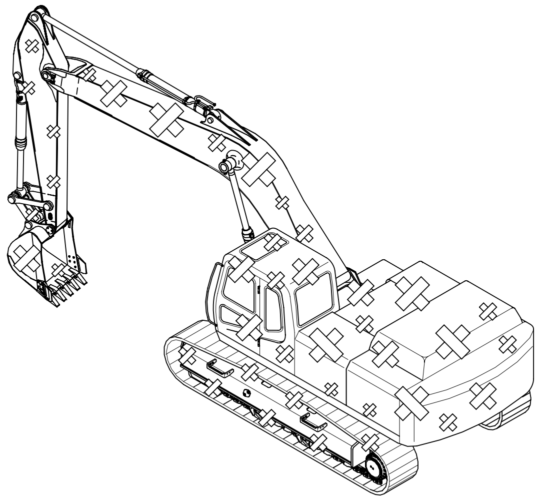
1) STANDARD

Specifications applied to the brand-new machine, components and parts.



2) SERVICE LIMIT

The lowest acceptable performance level. When the performance level of the machine falls below this level, the machine must be removed from work and repaired. Necessary parts and components must be replaced.



3. OPERATION FOR PERFORMANCE TESTS

1) Observe the following rules in order to carry out performance tests accurately and safely.

(1) The machine

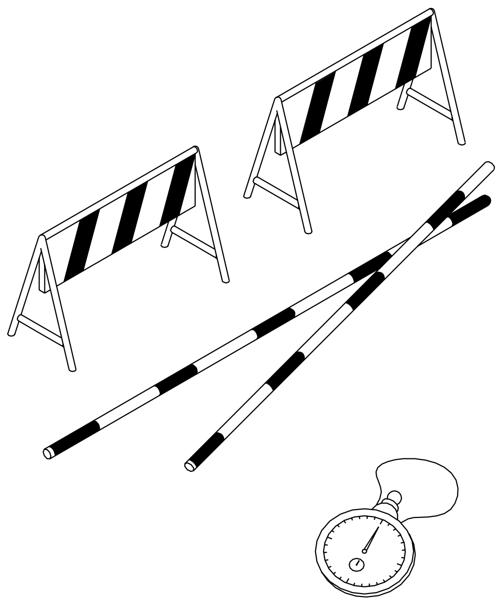
Repair any defects and damage found, such as oil or water leaks, loose bolts, cracks and so on, before starting to test.

(2) Test area

① Select a hard, flat surface.

② Secure enough space to allow the machine to run straight more than 20 m, and to make a full swing with the front attachment extended.

③ If required, rope off the test area and provide signboards to keep unauthorized personnel away.



(3) Precautions

① Before starting to test, agree upon the signals to be employed for communication among coworkers. Once the test is started, be sure to communicate with each other using these signals, and to follow them without fail.

② Operate the machine carefully and always give first priority to safety.

③ While testing, always take care to avoid accidents due to landslides or contact with high voltage power lines. Always confirm that there is sufficient space for full swings.

④ Avoid polluting the machine and the ground with leaking oil. Use oil pans to catch escaping oil. Pay special attention to this when removing hydraulic pipings.

(4) Make precise measurements

① Accurately calibrate test instruments in advance to obtain correct data.

② Carry out tests under the exact test conditions prescribed for each test item.

③ Repeat the same test and confirm that the test data obtained can be procured repeatedly. Use mean values of measurements if necessary.

2) ENGINE SPEED

(1) Measure the engine speed at each power mode

※ The engine speed at each power mode must meet standard RPM; if not, all other operational performance data will be unreliable. It is essential to perform this test first.

(2) Preparation

① Warm up the machine, until the engine coolant temperature reaches 50˚C or more, and the hydraulic oil is 50±5˚C.

② Set the accel dial at 10 (max) position.

③ Push the H-mode switch and confirm that the fuel injection pump governor lever comes into contact with the high-idle stopper.

④ Measure the engine RPM.

(3) Measurement

① Start the engine. The engine will run at start idle speed. Measure engine speed with a engine rpm display.

② Measure and record the engine speed at each mode (P, S, E).

③ Select the P-mode.

④ Lightly operate the bucket control lever a few times, then return the control lever to neutral; The engine will automatically enter the auto-idle speed after 4 seconds.
Measure and record the auto deceleration

⑤ speed.

CLUSTER

Engine RPM display
Power mode switch
Pilot lamp(P, S, E)

(4) Evaluation

The measured speeds should meet the following specifications.

Unit : rpm

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Remarks
R305LVS	Start idle	1050±100	
	P mode	1900±50	
	S mode	1800±50	
	E mode	1700±50	
	Auto decel	1200±100	
	One touch decel	1050±100	

Condition : Set the accel dial at 10 (max) position.

3) TRACK REVOLUTION SPEED

(1) Measure the track revolution cycle time with the track raised off ground.

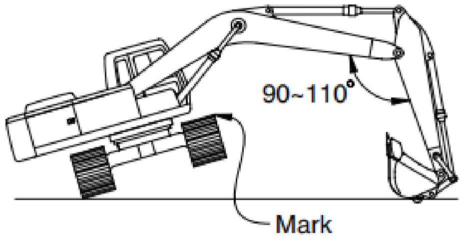
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both side tracks to be equal.

② On the track to be measured, mark one shoe with chalk.

③ Swing the upperstructure 90° and lower the bucket to raise the track off ground. Keep the boom-arm angle between 90 to 110° as shown. Place blocks under machine frame

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
Travel mode switch : 1 or 2 speed
Power mode switch : P mode
Auto idle switch : OFF

② Operate the travel control lever of the raised track in full forward and reverse.

③ Rotate 1 turn, then measure time taken for next 3 revolutions.

④ Raise the other side of machine and repeat the procedureturn.

⑤ Repeat steps ③and ④three times and calculate the average values

(4) Evaluation

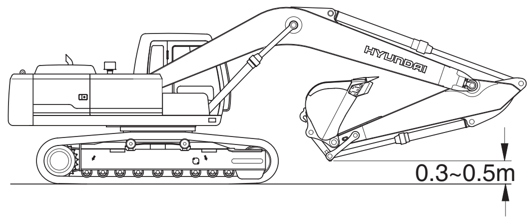
The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	1 Speed	33.5±2.0	—	
	2 Speed	18.6±2.0	—	

4) TRAVEL DEVIATION

(1) Measure the deviation by the tracks from a 20m straight line.



(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.

② Provide a flat, solid test yard 20 m in length, with extra length of 5 m on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.

③ Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 m above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

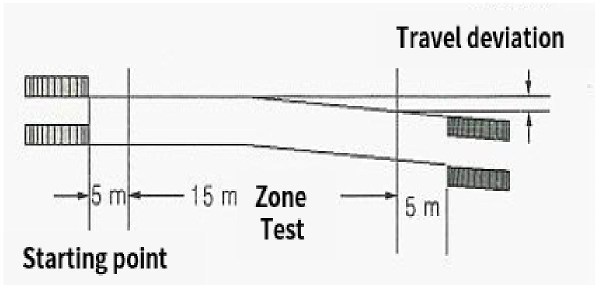
① Measure the amount of mistracking at high and low travel speeds.

② Before beginning each test, select the following switch positions.
Power mode switch : P mode

③ Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.

④ Measure the distance between a straight 20m line and the track made by the machine.

⑤ Repeat steps ④ three times and calculate the average values.



(4) Evaluation

Mistrack should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm / 20 m

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	600 below	—	

5) SWING SPEED

(1) Measure the time required to swing three complete turns.

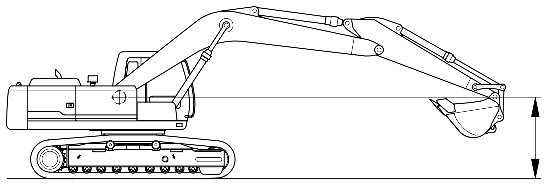
(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch: Each mode

② Operate swing control lever fully.

③ Swing 1 turn and measure time taken to swing next 3 revolutions.

④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three time and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The time required for 3 swings should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable
R305LVS	P mode	16.8±1.5	—

6) SWING FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure the swing drift on the bearing outer circumference when stopping after a 360˚ full speed swing.

(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

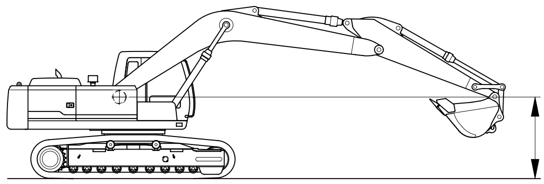
② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Make two chalk marks: one on the swing bearing and one directly below it on the track frame.

⑤ Swing the upperstructure 360˚.

⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Conduct this test in the P mode.(M mode)

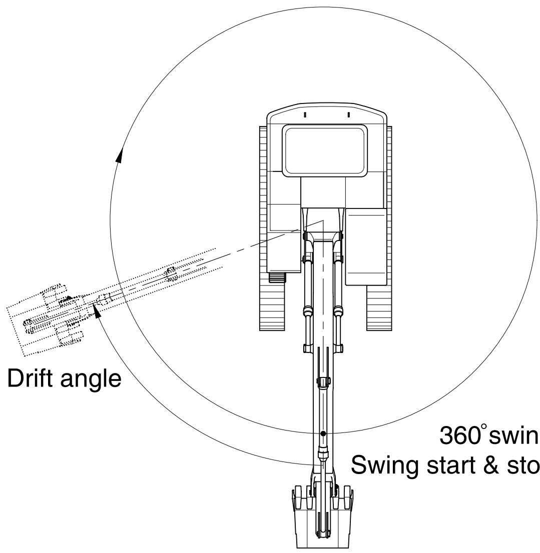
② Select the following switch positions.
Power mode switch : P mode

③ Operate the swing control lever fully and return it to the neutral position when the mark on the upperstructure aligns with that on track frame after swinging 360˚.

④ Measure the distance between the two marks.

⑤ Align the marks again, swing 360˚, then test the opposite direction.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times each and calculate the average values.



(4) Evaluation

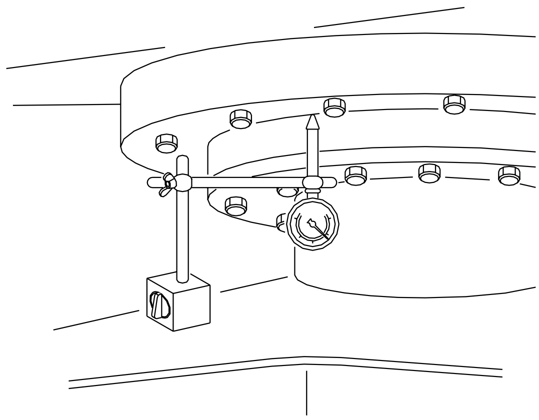
The measured drift angle should be within the following specifications.

Unit : Degree

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	P mode	90 below	157	

7) SWING BEARING PLAY

(1) Measure the swing bearing play using a dial gauge to check the wear of bearing races and balls.



(2) Preparation

① Check swing bearing mounting cap screws for loosening.

② Check the lubrication of the swing bearing. Confirm that bearing rotation is smooth and without noise.

③ Install a dial gauge on the track frame as shown, using a magnetic base.

④ Position the upperstructure so that the boom aligns with the tracks facing towards the front idlers.

⑤ Position the dial gauge so that its needle point comes into contact with the bottom face of the bearing outer race.

⑥ Bucket should be empty.

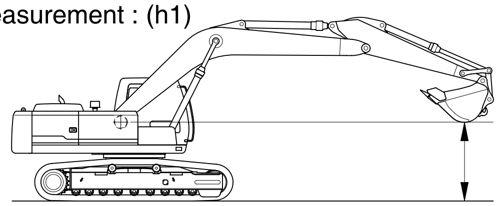
(3) Measurement

① With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bottom face of the bucket to the same height of the boom foot pin.
Record the dial gauge reading (h1).

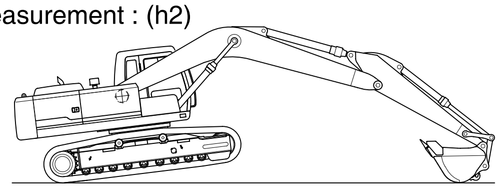
② Lower the bucket to the ground and use it to raise the front idler 50cm.
Record the dial gauge reading (h2).

③ Calculate bearing play(H) from this data (h1 and h2) as follows.
H=h2-h1

Measurement : (h1)



Measurement : (h2)



(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	0.5 ~ 1.5	3.0	

8) HYDRAULIC CYLINDER CYCLE TIME

(1) Measure the cycle time of the boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders.

(2) Preparation

① To measure the cycle time of the boom cylinders:
With the arm rolled out and the empty bucket rolled out, lower the bucket to the ground, as shown.

② To measure the cycle time of the arm cylinder.
With the empty bucket rolled in, position the arm so that it is vertical to the ground. Lower the boom until the bucket is 0.5 m above the ground.

③ To measure the cycle time of the bucket cylinder.
The empty bucket should be positioned at midstroke between roll-in and roll-out, so that the sideplate edges are vertical to the ground.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

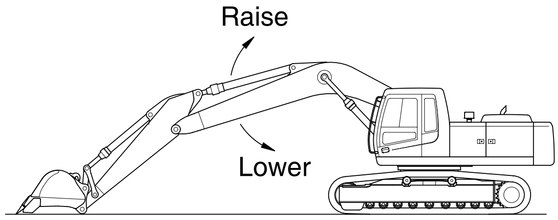
(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
· Power mode switch : P mode

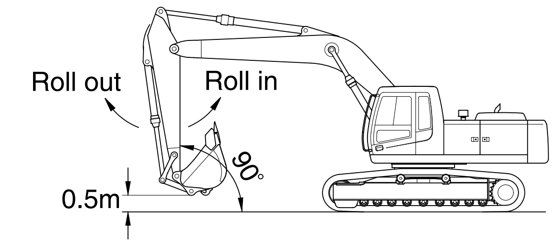
② To measure cylinder cycle times.

- Boom cylinders.
  Measure the time it takes to raise the boom, and the time it takes to lower the boom. To do so, position the boom at one stroke end then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Arm cylinder.
  Measure the time it takes to roll in the arm, and the time it takes to roll out the arm. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.

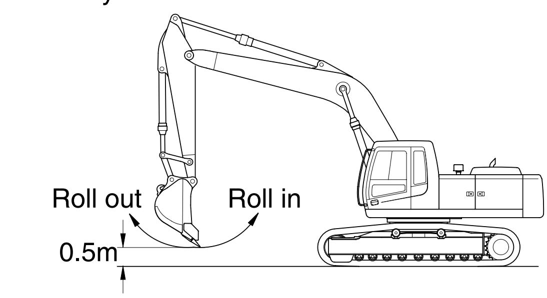
Boom cylinder



Arm cylinder



Bucket cylinder



- Bucket cylinders
  Measure the time it takes to roll in the bucket, and the time it takes to roll out the bucket. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Repeat each measurement 3 times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds

Model	Function		Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	Boom raise		3.9±0.4	—	
	Boom lower		2.6±0.4	—	
	Arm in	Regen ON	3.0±0.4	—	
	Arm out		3.2±0.3	—	
	Bucket load		2.5±0.4	—	
	Bucket dump		2.5±0.3	—	

9) DIG FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure dig function drift, which can be caused by oil leakage in the control valve and boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders, with the loaded bucket. When testing the dig function drift just after cylinder replacement, slowly operate each cylinder to its stroke end to purge air.

(2) Preparation

① Load bucket fully. Instead of loading the bucket, weight (W) of the following specification can be used.

· $W=M^3 \times 1.5$

Where :

M^3 = Bucket heaped capacity (m^3)

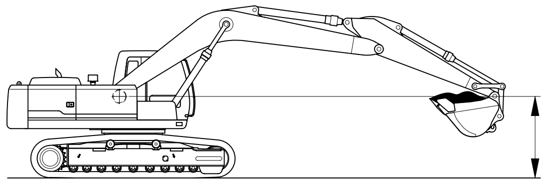
1.5 = Soil specific gravity

② Position the arm cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm extended from the fully retracted position.

③ Position the bucket cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm retracted from the fully extended position.

④ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin.

⑤ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Stop the engine.

② Five minutes after the engine has been stopped, measure the changes in the positions of the boom, arm and bucket cylinders.

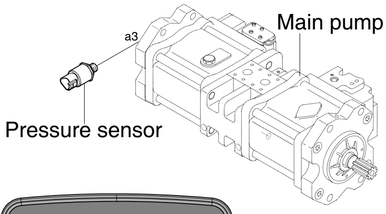
③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(4) The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm / 5 min

Model	Drift to be measured	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	Boom cylinder	10 below	20	
	Arm cylinder	10 below	20	
	Bucket cylinder	40 below	60	

10) PILOT PRIMARY PRESSURE



(1) Preparation

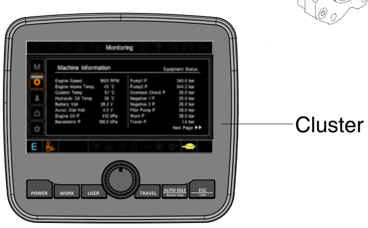
① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

- Power mode switch : P mode
- Auto decel switch : OFF

② Measure the primary pilot pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster.



(3) Evaluation

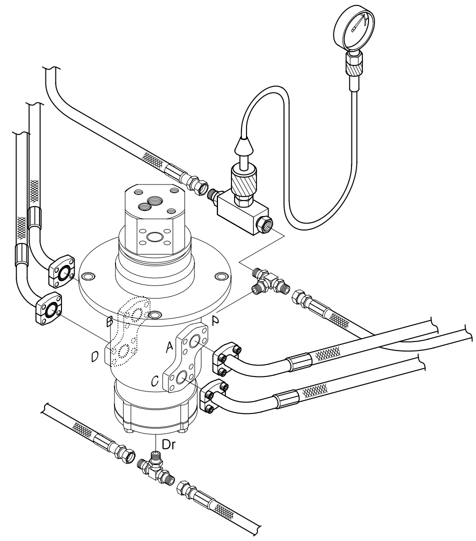
The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications:

Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R305LVS	P mode	40^{+2}_{-0}	-	

11) FOR TRAVEL SPEED SELECTING PRESSURE

(1) Preparation



① Stop the engine.
② Remove the top cover of the hydraulic tank oil supply port with a wrench.
③ Push the pressure release button to bleed air.
④ To measure the speed selecting pressure: Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to turning joint P port as shown.
⑤ Start the engine and check for on leakage from the adapter.
⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
Travel mode switch : 1 speed, 2 speed
· Mode selector : P mode
② Measure the travel speed selecting pressure in the Hi or Lo mode.
③ Lower the bucket to the ground to raise the track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the fast speed pressure.
④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

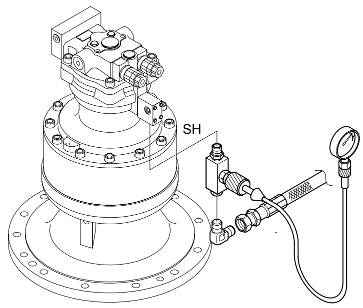
Unit : kgf / cm ^{2}

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R305LVS	1 Speed	0	-	
	2 Speed	40±2	-	

12) SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASING PILOT "SH" PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Stop the engine.
② Remove the top cover of the hydraulic tank oil supply port with a wrench.
③ The pressure release L wrench to bleed air.
④ Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to swing motor SH port, as shown.
⑤ Start the engine and check for oil leakage from the adapter.
⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
Power mode switch : P mode
② Operate the swing function or arm roll in function and measure the swing brake control pressure with the brake disengaged.
Release the control lever to return to neutral and measure the control pressure when the brake is applied.
Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Description	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R305LVS	Brake disengaged	40	—	
	Brake applied	0	—	

13) MAIN PUMP DELIVERY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

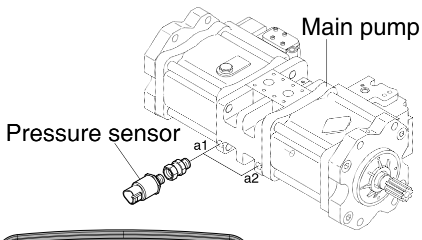
① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}C$.

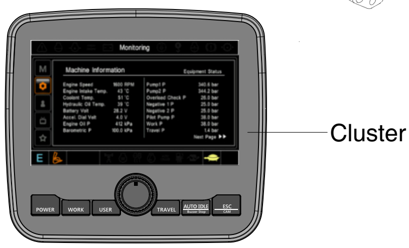
(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Measure the main pump delivery pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster (high idle).





(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications.

Unit : kgf/cm^2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R305LVS	High ilde	40 ± 2	—	

14) SYSTEM PRESSURE REGULATOR RELIEF SETTING

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

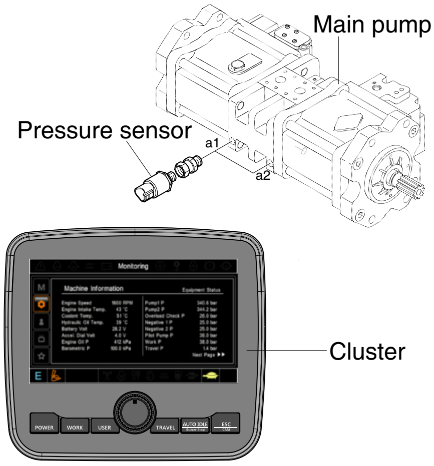
(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
Power mode switch : P mode

② Slowly operate each control lever of boom, arm and bucket functions at full stroke over relief and measure the pressure.

③ In the swing function, place bucket against an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.

④ In the travel function, lock undercarriage with an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

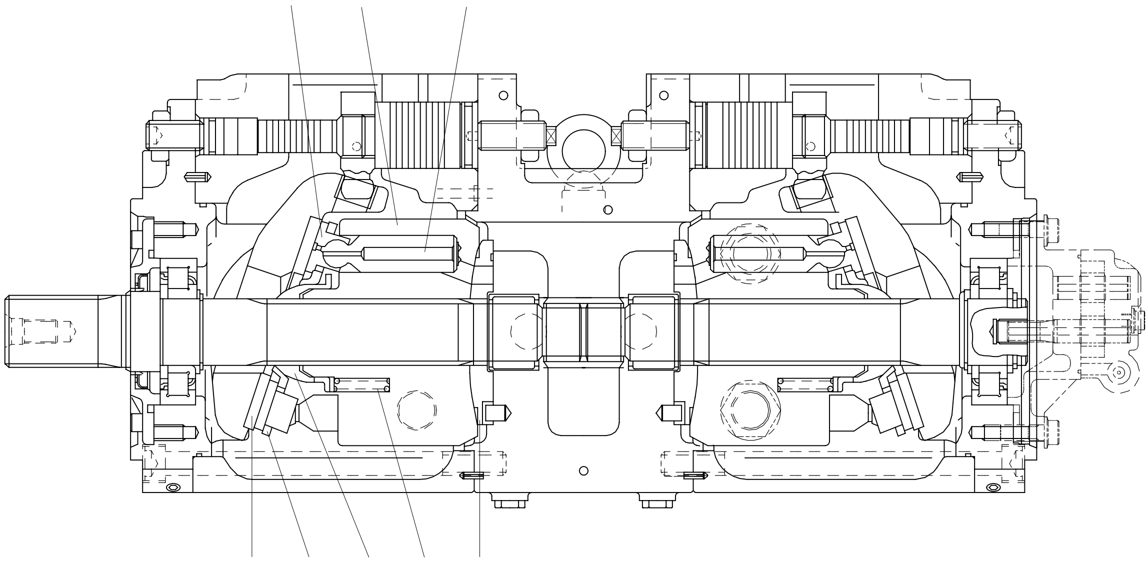
Unit : kgf / cm^2

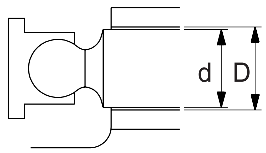
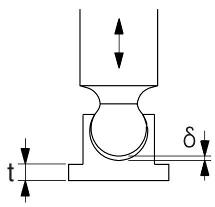
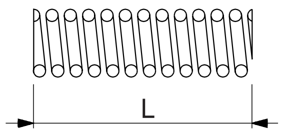
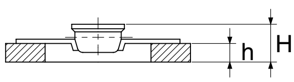
Model	Description	Standard	Remarks
R305LVS	Boom, Arm, Bucket	350(380)±10	400±10 (Port relief)
	Travel	350±10	
	Swing	300±10	

(   ) : Power boost

GROUP 2 MAJOR COMPONENT

1. MAIN PUMP



Part name & inspection item		Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston(1) & cylinder bore(2) (D-d)		0.043	0.070	Replace piston or cylinder.
Play between piston(1) & shoe caulking section(3) (δ)		0-0.1	0.3	Replace assembly of piston & shoe.
Thickness of shoe (t)		5.4	5.0	
Free height of cylinder spring(4) (L)		47.9	47.1	Replace cylinder spring.
Combined height of set plate(5) & spherical bushing(6) (H-h)		23.8	22.8	Replace retainer or set plate.
Surface roughness for valve plate (sliding face) (7,8), swash plate (shoe plate area) (9), & cylinder(2) (sliding face)	Surface roughness necessary to be corrected	3z		Lapping
	Standard surface roughness (corrected value)	0.4z or lower		

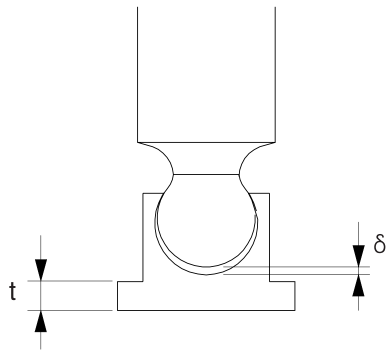
2. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

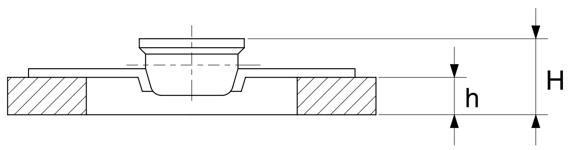
Part name	Inspection item	Criteria & measure
Casing	· Existence of scratch, rusting or corrosion.	· In case of damage in following section, replace part - Sliding sections of casing fore and spool, especially land sections applied with holding pressure - Seal pocket section where spool is inserted - Seal section of port where O-ring contacts - Seal section of each relief valve for main, travel, and port - Other damages that may damage normal functions
Spool	· Existence of scratch, gnawing, rusting or corrosion. · Insert spool in casing hole, rotate and reciprocate it.	· Replacement when its outside sliding section has scratch (especially on seals contacting section) · Correction or replacement when O-ring is damaged or when spool does not move smoothly
Load check valve	· Damage of load check valve or spring	· Repair or replace of improper seat contact
Around spring	· Rusting, corrosion, deformation or breaking of spring, spring seat, plug or cover.	· Replacement for significant damage
Around seal for spool	· External oil leakage.	· Replacement
Main relief valve, Over relief valve	· External rusting or damage. · Contacting face of valve seat.	· Replacement · Replacement when damaged

3. SWING DEVICE

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.041	0.060	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (δ)	0.025	0.1	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	6.6	6.5	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of retainer plate and spherical bushing (H-h)	17.6	17.3	Replace set of retainer plate and sperical bushing
Thickness of friction plate	2.94	2.70	Replace





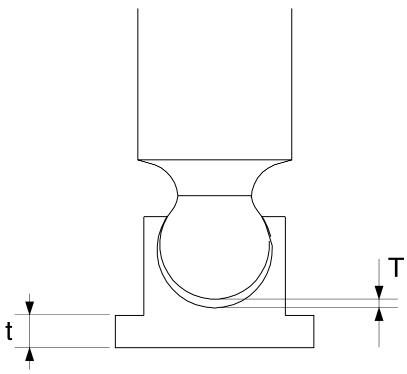
2) SLIDING PARTS

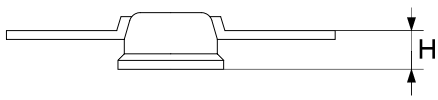
Part name	Standard roughness	Allowable roughness	Remark
Shoe	Rmax=1S (Ra=0.2a) (LAPPING)	4S (Ra=0.1a)	
Shoe plate	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	3S (Ra=0.8a)	
Cylinder	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	3S (Ra=0.8a)	
Valve plate	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	2S (Ra=0.5a)	

4. TRAVEL MOTOR

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.025	0.050	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section(T)	0	0.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe(t)	4.5	4.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of set plate and ball guide(H-h)	7.3	7.0	Replace set of set plate and ball guide
Thickness of friction plate	3.0	2.6	Replace





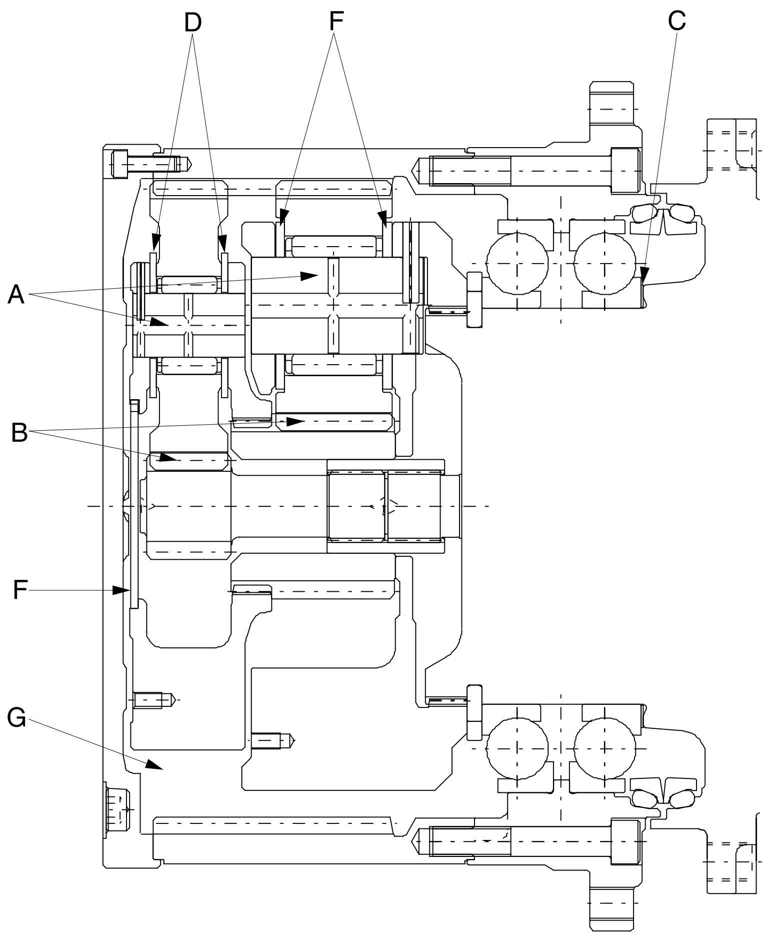
2) SLIDING PARTS

Part name	Standard roughness	Remark
Shoe	0.8S	—
Shoe plate	0.8S	—
Cylinder	0.8S	—
Valve plate	0.8S	—

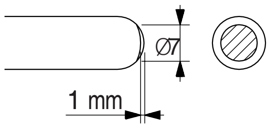
5. TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR

The followings are the general maintenance standards. However, it is most important to determine which parts should be replaced, depending on the characteristics shown before disassembling, damages or discoloration of exterior view, the purpose of disassembling, the expected remaining service life etc..

Item	Part name	Criteria	Allowable limit	Remedy
A	Wear of planetary shaft	Smooth, without abnormal wear or seizure	←	Replace 3 pieces as a set
B	Condition of tooth surface	Smooth, without abnormal wear or seizure	Not over 1.6 of pitching, no cracks at root	Replace 3 pieces as a set for planetary pinion
C	Thrust clearance of angular bearings (2)	-0.08~0.02 mm	←	Adjust shim thickness Refer to 8-101 (5)
D	Thickness of thrust washer 1 (18)	3.3~3.7 mm	Wear 0.1 mm	Replace
E	Thickness of thrust washer 2 (11)	5.3~5.7 mm	Wear 0.1 mm	Replace
F	Thickness of thrust plate (23)	4.34~4.66 mm	Wear 0.15 mm	Replace
G	Lubrication oil	2000 working hours (machine hour meter)		Replace



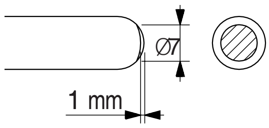
6. RCV LEVER

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage becomes more than 1000 cc/m at neutral handle position, or more than 2000 cc/m during operation.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 30 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μm, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

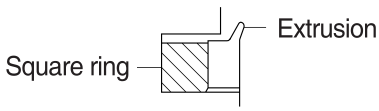
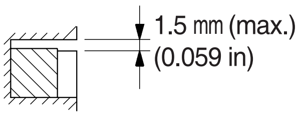
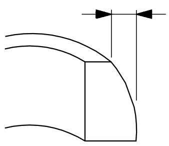
2. When loosening the hexagon socket head cap screw (125), replace the seal washers (121) without fail.

7. RCV PEDAL

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage effect to the system. For example, the primary pressure drop.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 30 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μm, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

8. TURNING JOINT

Part name		Maintenance standards	Remedy
Body, Stem	Sliding surface with sealing sections.	Plating worn or peeled due to seizure or contamination.	Replace
	Sliding surface between body and stem other than sealing section.	·Worn abnormality or damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth due to seizure contamination.	Replace
		·Damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth.	Smooth with oilstone.
	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	·Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
		·Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		·Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Smooth
Cover	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	·Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
		·Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		·Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Replace
Seal set	-	·Extruded excessively from seal groove square ring. 	Replace
	-	·Slipper ring 1.5 mm (0.059 in) narrower than seal groove, or narrower than back ring. 	Replace
	-	·Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) ~ 1.5 mm (MAX.) (0.059 in) 	Replace

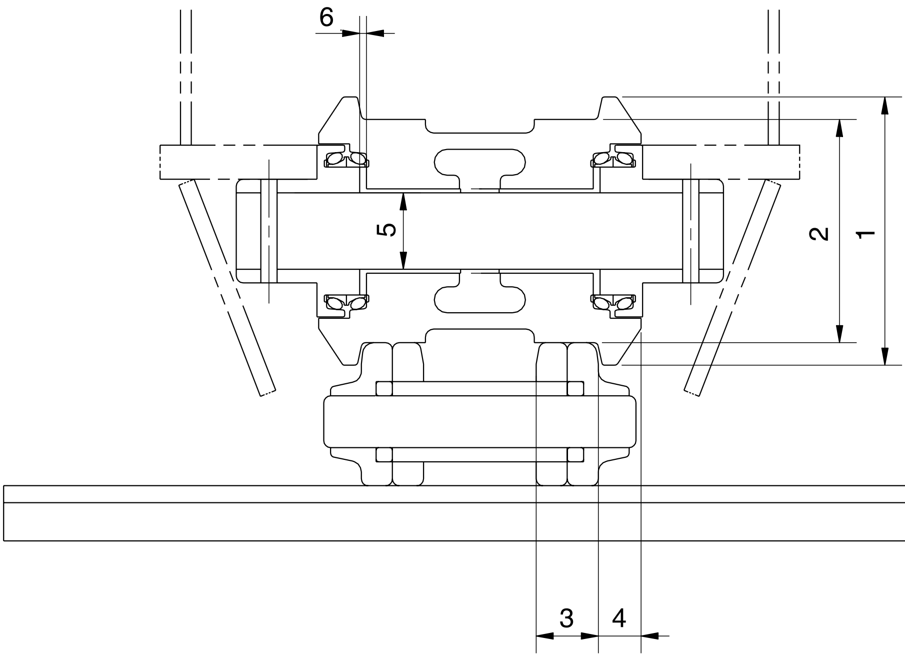
9. CYLINDER

Part name	Inspecting section	Inspection item	Remedy
Piston rod	·Neck of rod pin	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Weld on rod hub	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Stepped part to which piston is attached.	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Threads	·Presence of crack	·Recondition or replace
	·Plated surface	·Plating is not worn off to base metal.	·Replace or replate
		·Rust is not present on plating.	·Replace or replate
		·Scratches are not present.	·Recondition, replate or replace
	·Rod	·Wear of O.D.	·Recondition, replate or replace
	·Bushing at mounting part	·Wear of I.D.	·Replace
Cylinder tube	·Weld on bottom	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Weld on head	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Weld on hub	·Presence of crack	·Replace
	·Tube interior	·Presence of faults	·Replace if oil leak is seen
	·Bushing at mounting part	·Wear on inner surface	·Replace
Gland	·Bushing	·Flaw on inner surface	·Replace if flaw is deeper than coating

GROUP 3 TRACK AND WORK EQUIPMENT

1. TRACK

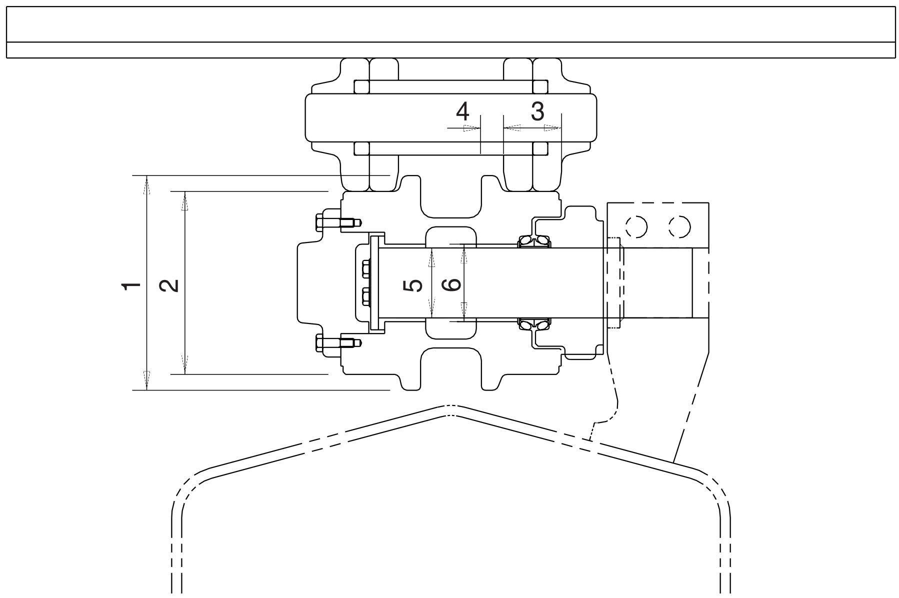
1) TRACK ROLLER



Unit : mm

No.	Check item	Criteria		Remedy
1	Outside diameter of flange	Standard size		Rebuild or replace
		Ø216		
2	Outside diameter of tread	Ø180		
3	Width of tread	50		
4	Width of flange	57		
5	Clearance between shaft and bushing	Standard size & tolerance		Replace bushing
		Shaft	Hole	
		$Ø80^{\ 0}_{-0.03}$	$Ø80^{+0.05}_{\ 0}$	
6	Side clearance of roller (both side)	Standard clearance		Replace
		0.16~1.24		

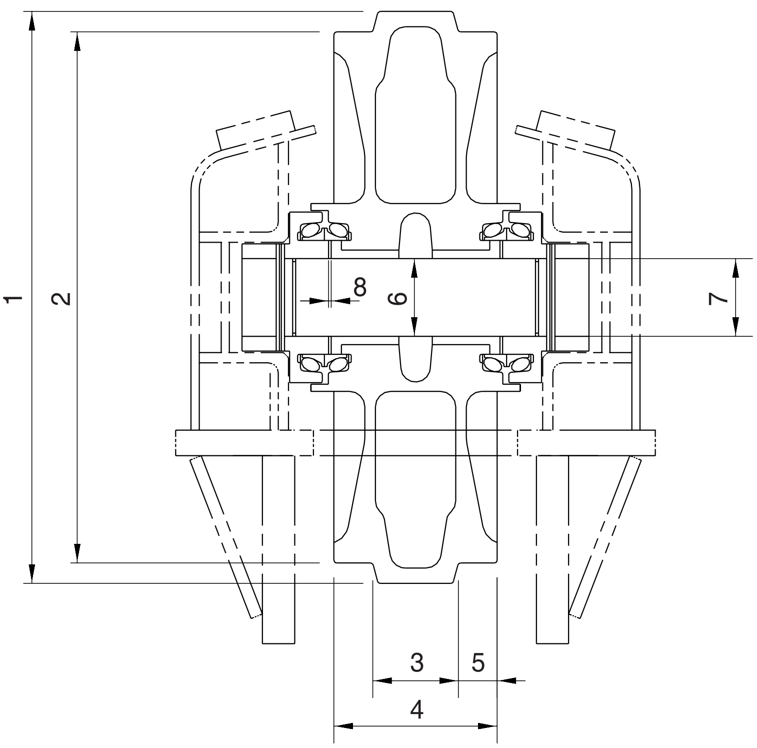
2) CARRIER ROLLER



Unit : ㎜

No.	Check item	Criteria		Remedy
1	Outside diameter of flange	Standard size		Rebuild or replace
		Ø200		
2	Outside diameter of tread	Ø168		
3	Width of tread	54		
4	Width of flange	19		
5	Clearance between shaft and bushing	Standard size & tolerance		Replace bushing
		Shaft	Hole	
		Ø55 $^{+0.085}_{+0.066}$	Ø55 $^{+0.37}_{+0.33}$	
6	Clearance between shaft and support	Ø58 $^{0}_{-0.1}$	Ø58 $^{+0.5}_{+0.3}$	Replace

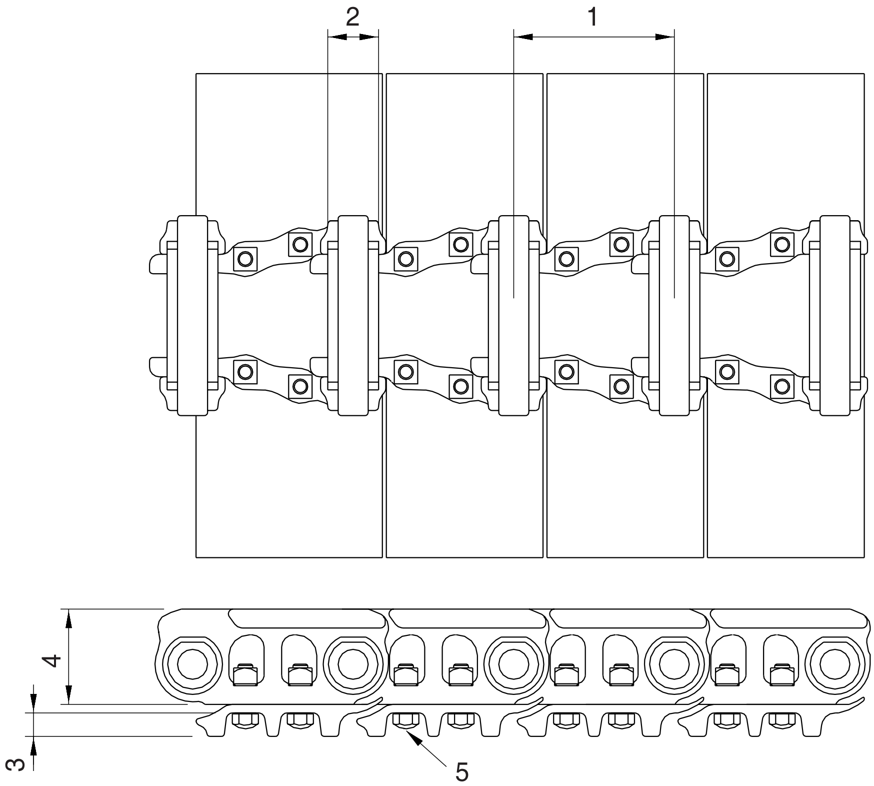
3) IDLER



Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="2">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">Outside diameter of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td rowspan="6">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Ø646</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Outside diameter of tread</td><td colspan="2">Ø594</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Width of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">98</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Total width</td><td colspan="2">203</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Width of tread</td><td colspan="2">52.5</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td rowspan="3">Clearance between shaft and bushing</td><td colspan="2">Standard size & tolerance</td><td rowspan="3">Replace bushing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shaft</td><td>Hole</td></tr>
<tr><td>$Ø90^{\,0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>$Ø90.35^{+0.05}_{\,0}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Clearance between shaft and support</td><td>$Ø90^{\,0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>$Ø90^{+0.09}_{+0.036}$</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>Side clearance of idler (both side)</td><td colspan="2">Standard clearance
0.4 to 1.2</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
</table>

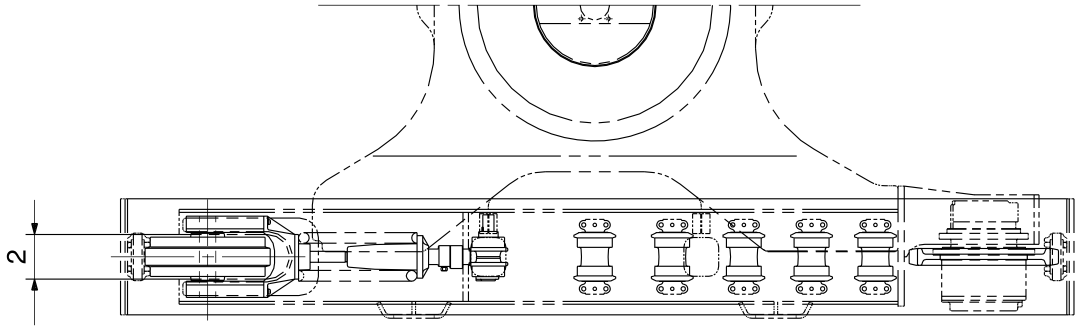
4) TRACK

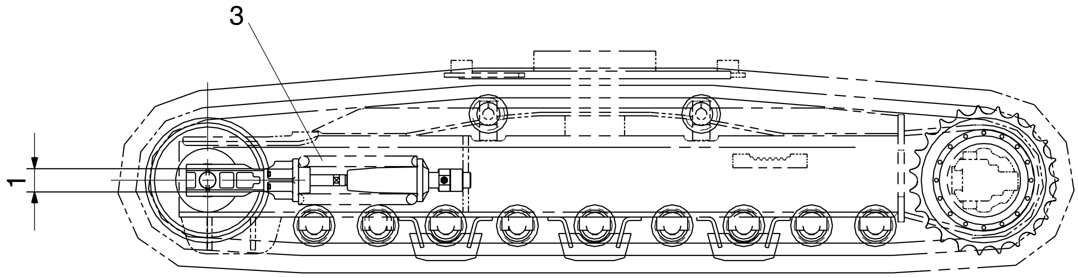


Unit : ㎜

No.	Check item	Criteria	Remedy
1	Link pitch	Standard size	Turn or replace
		216	
2	Outside diameter of bushing	Ø66.85	Rebuild or replace
3	Height of grouser	30	
4	Height of link	116	
5	Tightening torque	Initial tightening torque : 115±5 kgf·m	Retighten

5) TRACK FRAME AND RECOIL SPRING

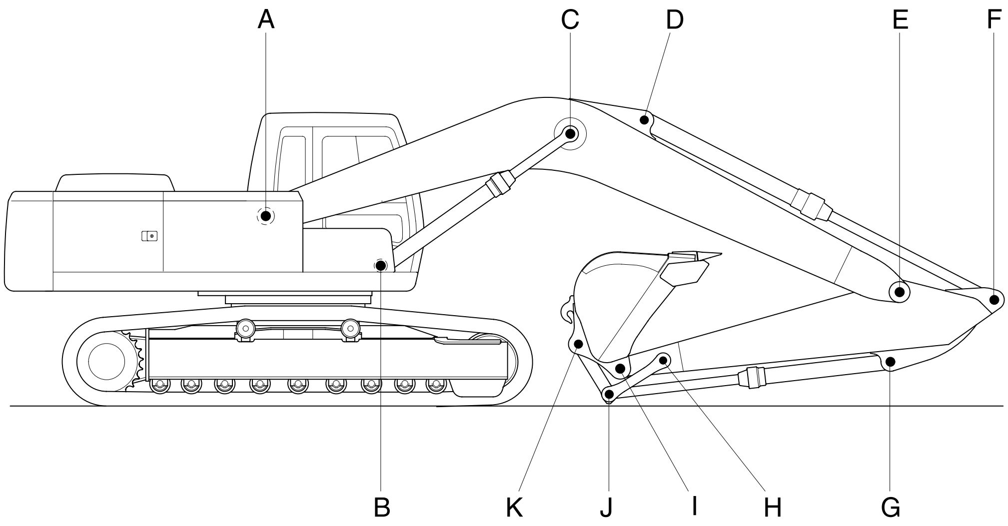




Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="3">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1</td><td rowspan="3">Vertical width of idler guide</td><td></td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td rowspan="5">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Track frame</td><td colspan="2">132</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td colspan="2">130</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td rowspan="2">Horizontal width of idler guide</td><td>Track frame</td><td colspan="2">292</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td colspan="2">290</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td rowspan="3">Recoil spring</td><td colspan="3">Standard size</td><td rowspan="3">Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Free length</td><td>Installation length</td><td>Installation load</td></tr>
<tr><td>710</td><td>580</td><td>19210 kgf</td></tr>
</table>

2. WORK EQUIPMENT



Unit : ㎜

Mark	Measuring point (Pin and Bushing)	Normal value	Pin	Bushing	Remedy & Remark
			Recomm. service limit	Recomm.service limit	
A	Boom Rear	110	109	110.5	Replace
B	Boom Cylinder Head	90	89	90.5	〃
C	Boom Cylinder Rod	100	99	100.5	〃
D	Arm Cylinder Head	90	89	90.5	〃
E	Boom Front	100	99	100.5	〃
F	Arm Cylinder Rod	90	89	90.5	〃
G	Bucket Cylinder Head	90	89	90.5	〃
H	Arm Link	80	79	80.5	〃
I	Bucket and Arm Link	90	89	90.5	〃
J	Bucket Cylinder Rod	80	79	80.5	〃
K	Bucket Link	90	89	90.5	〃

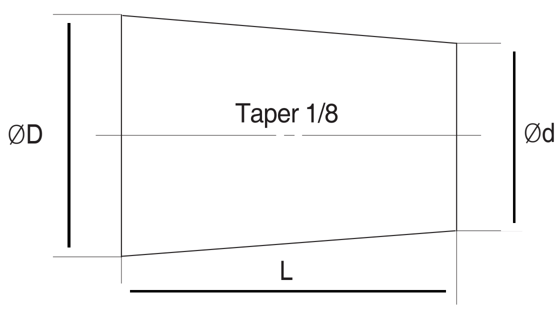
SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

GROUP 1 PRECAUTIONS

1. REMOVAL WORK

1) Lower the work equipment completely to the ground.
   If the coolant contains antifreeze, dispose of it correctly.
2) After disconnecting hoses or tubes, cover them or fit blind plugs to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
3) When draining oil, prepare a container of adequate size to catch the oil.
4) Confirm the match marks showing the installation position, and make match marks in the necessary places before removal to prevent any mistake when assembling.
5) To prevent any excessive force from being applied to the wiring, always hold the connectors when disconnecting the connectors.
6) Fit wires and hoses with tags to show their installation position to prevent any mistake when installing.
7) Check the number and thickness of the shims, and keep in a safe place.
8) When raising components, be sure to use lifting equipment of ample strength.
9) When using forcing screws to remove any components, tighten the forcing screws alternately.
10) Before removing any unit, clean the surrounding area and fit a cover to prevent any dust or dirt from entering after removal.
11) When removing hydraulic equipment, first release the remaining pressure inside the hydraulic tank and the hydraulic piping.
12) If the part is not under hydraulic pressure, the following corks can be used.

Nominal number	Dimensions		
	D	d	L
06	6	5	8
08	8	6.5	11
10	10	8.5	12
12	12	10	15
14	14	11.5	18
16	16	13.5	20
18	18	15	22
20	20	17	25
22	22	18.5	28
24	24	20	30
27	27	22.5	34



2. INSTALL WORK

1) Tighten all bolts and nuts (sleeve nuts) to the specified torque.

2) Install the hoses without twisting or interference.

3) Replace all gaskets, O-rings, cotter pins, and lock plates with new parts.

4) Bend the cotter pin or lock plate securely.

5) When coating with adhesive, clean the part and remove all oil and grease, then coat the threaded portion with 2-3 drops of adhesive.

6) When coating with gasket sealant, clean the surface and remove all oil and grease, check that there is no dirt or damage, then coat uniformly with gasket sealant.

7) Clean all parts, and correct any damage, dents, burrs, or rust.

8) Coat rotating parts and sliding parts with engine oil.

9) When press fitting parts, coat the surface with antifriction compound (LM-P).

10) After installing snap rings, check that the snap ring is fitted securely in the ring groove (check that the snap ring moves in the direction of rotation).

11) When connecting wiring connectors, clean the connector to remove all oil, dirt, or water, then connect securely.

12) When using eyebolts, check that there is no deformation or deterioration, and screw them in fully.

13) When tightening split flanges, tighten uniformly in turn to prevent excessive tightening on one side.

14) When operating the hydraulic cylinders for the first time after repairing and reassembling the hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or other hydraulic equipment or piping, always bleed the air from the hydraulic cylinders as follows:

(1) Start the engine and run at low idling.

(2) Operate the control lever and actuate the hydraulic cylinder 4-5 times, stopping 100mm before the end of the stroke.

(3) Next, operate the piston rod to the end of its stroke to relieve the circuit. (The air bleed valve is actuated to bleed the air.)

(4) After completing this operation, raise the engine speed to the normal operating condition.

※ If the hydraulic cylinder has been replaced, carry out this procedure before assembling the rod to
※ the work equipment.
Carry out the same operation on machines that have been in storage for a long time after completion of repairs.

3. COMPLETING WORK

1) If the coolant has been drained, tighten the drain valve, and add water to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the water through the system. Then check the water level again.

2) If the hydraulic equipment has been removed and installed again, add engine oil to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the oil through the system. Then check the oil level again.

3) If the piping or hydraulic equipment, such as hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or motors, have been removed for repair, always bleed the air from the system after reassembling the parts.

4) Add the specified amount of grease (molybdenum disulphied grease) to the work equipment related parts.

GROUP 2 TIGHTENING TORQUE

1. MAJOR COMPONENTS

No.	Descriptions		Bolt size	Torque	
				kgf·m	lbf·ft
1	Engine	Engine mounting bolt (engine-bracket)	M14 × 2.0	10 ± 1.0	72.3 ± 7.2
2		Engine mounting bolt (bracket-frame)	M22 × 2.5	90 ± 7.0	651 ± 51
3		Radiator mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
4		Coupling mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ±2.5	336 ±18.1
5		Fuel tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.7	419 ± 62.9
6	Hydraulic system	Main pump housing mounting bolt	M10 × 1.5	6.9 ± 0.3	49.9 ± 2.2
7		Main pump mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	42 ± 4.5	304 ± 32.5
8		Main control valve mounting nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3 ± 1.3	89.0 ± 9.4
9		Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.7	419 ± 62.9
10		Turning joint mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3 ± 1.3	89.0 ± 9.4
11	Power train system	Swing motor mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	58.4 ± 6.4	422 ± 46.3
12		Swing bearing upper part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	97.8 ± 10	707 ± 72.3
13		Swing bearing lower part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	97.8 ± 10	707 ± 72.3
14		Travel motor mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	84 ± 8.0	608 ± 57.8
15		Sprocket mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 6.0	419 ± 43.4
16	Under carriage	Carrier roller mounting bolt, nut	M16 × 2.0	29.7± 3.0	215 ± 21.7
17		Track roller mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 6.0	419 ± 43.4
18		Track tension cylinder mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
19		Track shoe mounting bolt, nut	M20 × 1.5	115 ± 5.0	831 ± 36
20		Track guard mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.7	419 ± 62.9
21	Others	Counterweight mounting bolt	M36 × 3.0	337 ± 33	2440 ± 72.3
22		Cab mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7
23		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3 ± 5.8

※ For tightening torque of engine and hydraulic components, see engine maintenance guide and service manual.

2. TORQUE CHART

Use following table for unspecified torque.

1) BOLT AND NUT

(1) Coarse thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf·m	lbf·ft	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M 6×1.0	0.85 ~ 1.25	6.15 ~ 9.04	1.14 ~ 1.74	8.2 ~ 12.6
M 8×1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.7	2.7 ~ 4.1	19.5 ~ 29.7
M10×1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	28.9 ~ 43.4	5.5 ~ 8.3	39.8 ~ 60.0
M12×1.75	7.4 ~ 11.2	53.5 ~ 81.0	9.8 ~ 15.8	70.9 ~ 114
M14×2.0	12.2 ~ 16.6	88.2 ~ 120	16.7 ~ 22.5	121 ~ 163
M16×2.0	18.6 ~ 25.2	135 ~ 182	25.2 ~ 34.2	182 ~ 247
M18×2.0	25.8 ~ 35.0	187 ~ 253	35.1 ~ 47.5	254 ~ 344
M20×2.5	36.2 ~ 49.0	262 ~ 354	49.2 ~ 66.6	356 ~ 482
M22×2.5	48.3 ~ 63.3	349 ~ 458	65.8 ~ 98.0	476 ~ 709
M24×3.0	62.5 ~ 84.5	452 ~ 611	85.0 ~ 115	615 ~ 832
M30×3.0	124 ~ 168	898 ~ 1214	169 ~ 229	1223 ~ 1656
M36×4.0	174 ~ 236	1261 ~ 1704	250 ~ 310	1808 ~ 2242

(2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf·m	lbf·ft	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M 8×1.0	2.2 ~ 3.4	15.9 ~ 24.6	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8
M10×1.2	4.5 ~ 6.7	32.5 ~ 48.5	5.9 ~ 8.9	42.7 ~ 64.4
M12×1.25	7.8 ~ 11.6	56.4 ~ 83.9	10.6 ~ 16.0	76.7 ~ 116
M14×1.5	13.3 ~ 18.1	96.2 ~ 131	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174
M16×1.5	19.9 ~ 26.9	144 ~ 195	26.6 ~ 36.0	192 ~ 260
M18×1.5	28.6 ~ 43.6	207 ~ 315	38.4 ~ 52.0	278 ~ 376
M20×1.5	40.0 ~ 54.0	289 ~ 391	53.4 ~ 72.2	386 ~ 522
M22×1.5	52.7 ~ 71.3	381 ~ 516	70.7 ~ 95.7	511 ~ 692
M24×2.0	67.9 ~ 91.9	491 ~ 665	90.9 ~ 123	658 ~ 890
M30×2.0	137 ~ 185	990 ~ 1339	182 ~ 248	1314 ~ 1796
M36×3.0	192 ~ 260	1390 ~ 1880	262 ~ 354	1894 ~ 2562

2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS TYPE)

Thread size (UNF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130.2
1-7/16-12	41	21	151.9
1-11/16-12	50	35	253.2

4) FITTING

Thread size	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

GROUP 3 PUMP DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

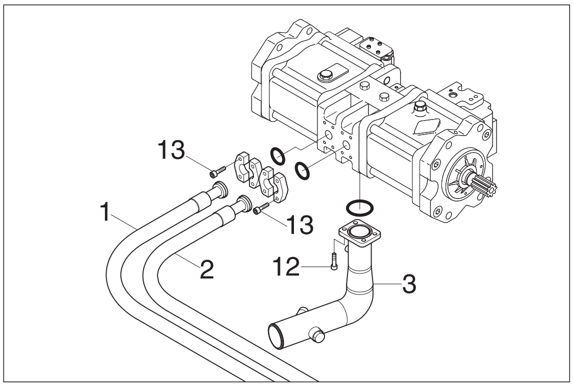
⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

(4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensors and so on.

(5) Loosen the drain plug under the hydraulic tank and drain the oil from the hydraulic tank.

· Hydraulic tank quantity : 190 ℓ

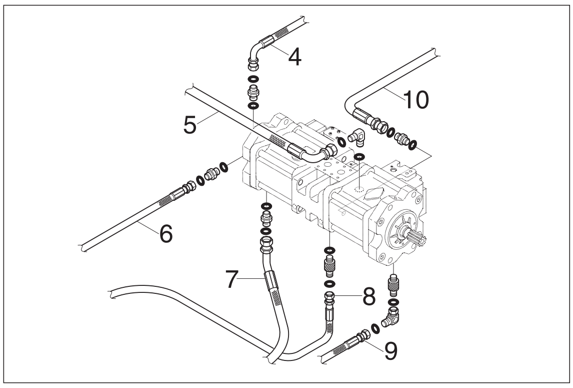
(6) Remove bolts (13) and disconnect pipe (1,2).



(7) Disconnect pilot line hoses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10).

(8) Remove bolts(12) and disconnect pump suction tube (3).

※ **When pump suction tube is disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.**



(9) Sling the pump assembly and remove the pump mounting bolts.

· Weight : 140 kg (310 lb)

※ **Pull out the pump assembly from housing. When removing the pump assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.**

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal

(2) Remove the suction strainer and clean it.

(3) Replace the return filter with a new one.

(4) Remove breather and clean it.

(5) After adding oil to the hydraulic tank to the specified level.

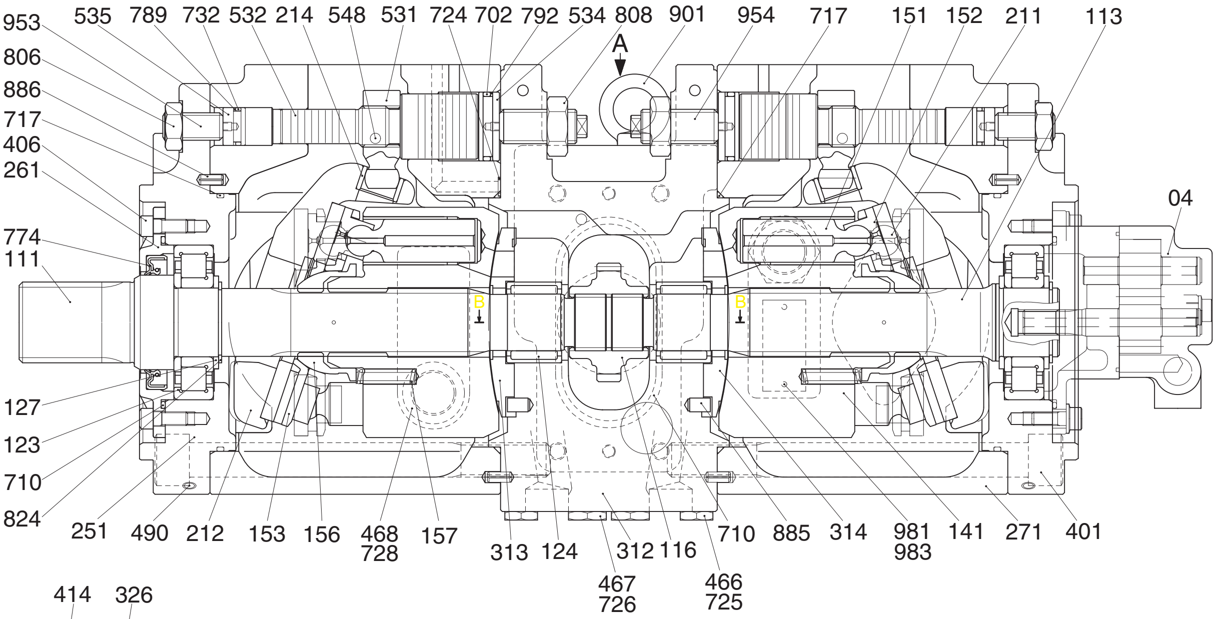
(6) Bleed the air from the hydraulic pump.
① Remove the air vent plug (2EA)
② Tighten plug lightly
③ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
④ Tighten plug.

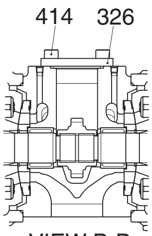
(7) Start the engine, run at low idling (3~5 minutes) to circulate the oil through the system.

(8) Confirmed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leaks or not.

2. MAIN PUMP (1/2)

1) STRUCTURE

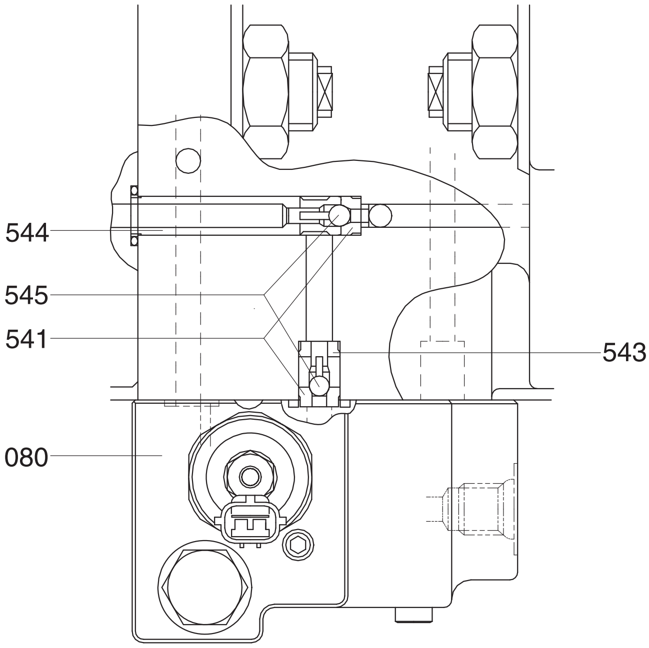




VIEW B-B

04	Gear pump	271	Pump casing	710	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	312	Valve block	717	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	313	Valve plate (R)	724	O-ring
116	Gear	314	Valve plate (L)	725	O-ring
123	Roller bearing	326	Cover	728	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	406	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
141	Cylinder block	414	Hexagon socket bol	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	466	VP plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	467	VP plug	806	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	468	VP plug	808	Hexagon head nut
156	Spherical bushing	490	VP plug	824	Snap ring
157	Cylinder spring	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
211	Shoe plate	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
212	Swash plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
214	Bushing	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
251	Swash plate support	548	Feedback pin	954	Set screw
261	Seal cover (F)	702	O-ring		

MAIN PUMP (2/2)



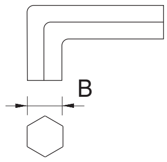
VIEW A

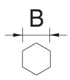
080	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

Tool name & size	B	Hexagon socket head bolt	PT plug (PT thread)	PO plug (PF thread)	Hexagon socket head setscrew
Allen wrench 	4	M 5	BP-1/16	-	M 8
	5	M 6	BP1/ 8	-	M10
	6	M 8	BP-1/ 4	PO-1/4	M12, M14
	8	M10	BP-3/ 8	PO-3/8	M16, M18
	17	M20, M22	BP-1	PO-1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2	-

Tool name & size	B	Hexagon head bolt	Hexagon head bolt	VP plug (PF thread)
Double ring spanner, socket wrench, double (single) open end spanner 	19	M12	M12	VP-1/4
	24	M16	M16	-
	27	M18	M18	VP-1/2
	30	M20	M20	-
	36	-	-	VP-3/4

Tool name & size	Part name
Adjustable angle wrench	Medium size, 1 set
Screw driver	Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets
Hammer	Plastic hammer, 1 set
Pliers	For snap ring, TSR-160
Steel bar	Steel bar of key material approx. 10×8×200
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12
	M16	24.0	173.6	0.55	14
	M18	34.0	245.9	0.55	14
	M20	44.0	318.3	0.67	17
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6
	PT 3/ 8	3.5	25.3	0.31	8
	PT 1/ 2	5.0	36.2	0.39	10
PF plug (material : S45C)	PF 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	PF 1/ 2	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	PF 3/ 4	15.0	108.5	0.55	14
	PF 1	19.0	137.4	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/4	27.0	195.3	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/2	28.0	202.5	0.67	17

3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Select place suitable to disassembling.

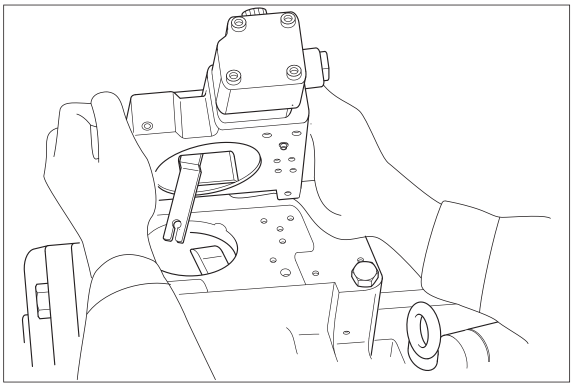
※ Select clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth or so on, on overhaul workbench top to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc, from pump surfaces with cleaning oil or so on.

(3) Remove drain port plug (468) and let oil out of pump casing. (front and rear pump).

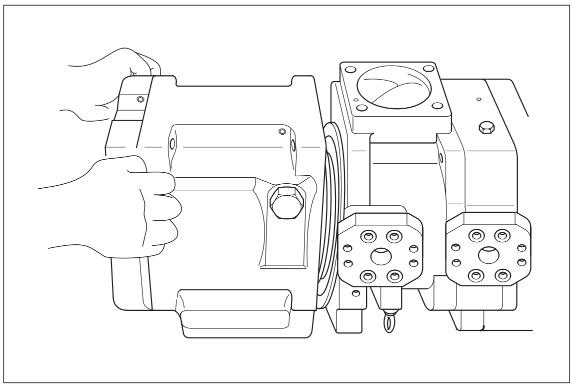
(4) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413) and remove regulator.
Remove hexagon socket head bolts (416) and remove gear pump.



(5) Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (401) fixing swash plate support (251), pump casing (271) and valve block (312).

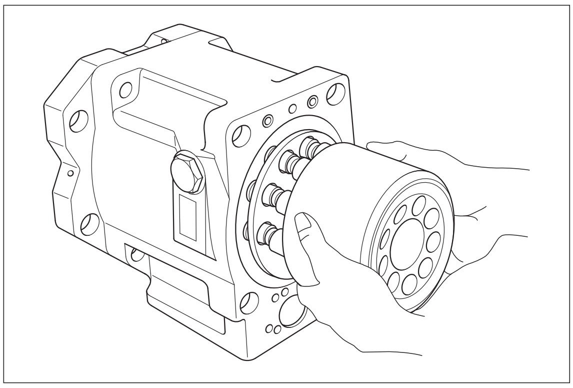
(6) Place pump horizontally on workbench with its regulator-fitting surface down, and separate pump casing (271) from valve block (312).

※ Before bringing this surface down, spread rubber sheet on workbench without failing to prevent this surface from being damaged.



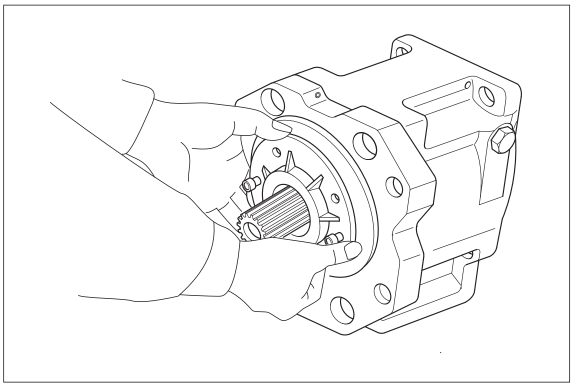
(7) Pull cylinder (141) out of pump casing (271) straightly over drive shaft (111). Pull out also pistons (151), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder springs (157) simultaneously.

※ Take care not to damage sliding surfaces of cylinder, spherical bushing, shoes, swash plate, etc.



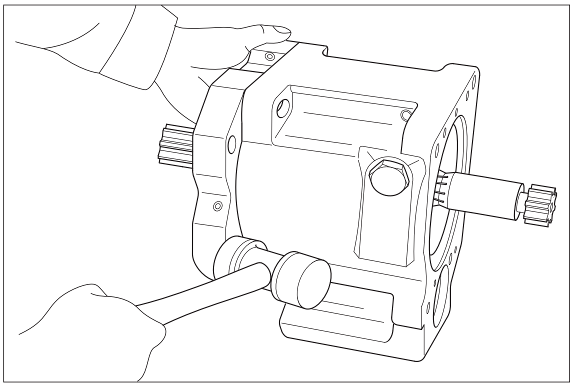
(8) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (406) and then seal cover (F) (261).
Fit bolt into pulling out tapped hole of seal cover (F), and cover can be removed easily.

※ Since oil seal is fitted on seal cover (F), take care not to damage it when removing cover.

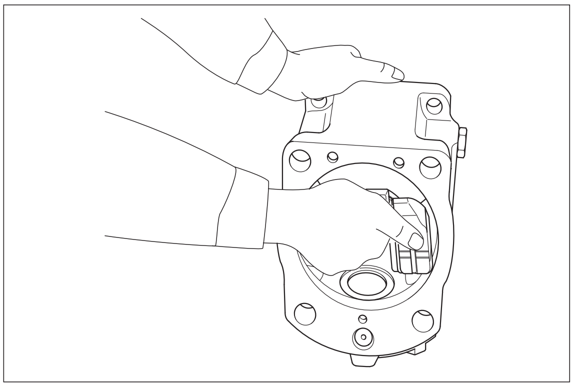


(9) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (408) and then seal cover (R, 262).
In case of fitting a gear pump, first, remove gear pump.

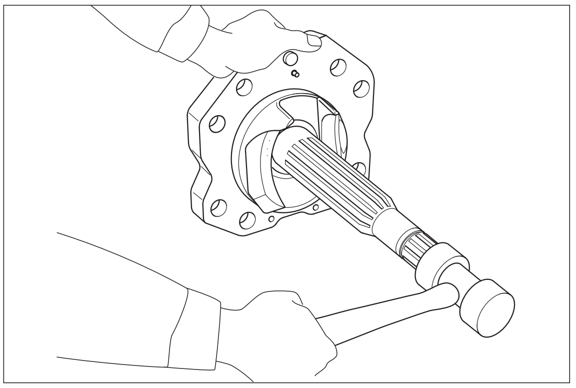
(10) Tapping lightly fitting flange section of swash plate support (251) on its pump casing side, separate swash plate support from pump casing.



(11) Remove shoe plate (211)and swash plate (212) from pump casing (271).

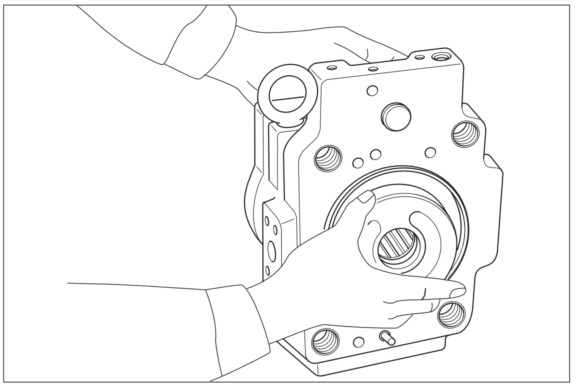


(12) Tapping lightly shaft's end of drive shafts (111, 113) with plastic hammer, take out drive shafts from swash plate supports.



(13) Remove valve plates (313, 314) from valve block (312).

※ These may be removed in work 6.



(14) If necessary, remove stopper (L, 534), stopper (S, 535), servo piston (532) and tilting pin(531) from pump casing (271), and needle bearing (124) and gear (116) from valve block (312).

※ In removing tilting pin, use a protector to prevent pin head from being damaged.

※ Since loctite is applied to fitting areas of tilting pin and servo piston, take care not to damage servo piston.

※ Do not remove needle bearing as far as possible, except when it is considered to be out of its life span.

※ Do not loosen hexagon nuts of valve block and swash plate support.
Once loosened, flow setting will be changed.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For reassembling reverse the disassembling procedures, paying attention to the following items.

① Do not fail to repair the parts damaged during disassembling, and prepare replacement parts in advance.

② Clean each part fully with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.

③ Do not fail to apply clean working oil to sliding sections, bearings, etc. before assembling them.

④ In principle, replace seal parts, such as O-rings, oil seals, etc.

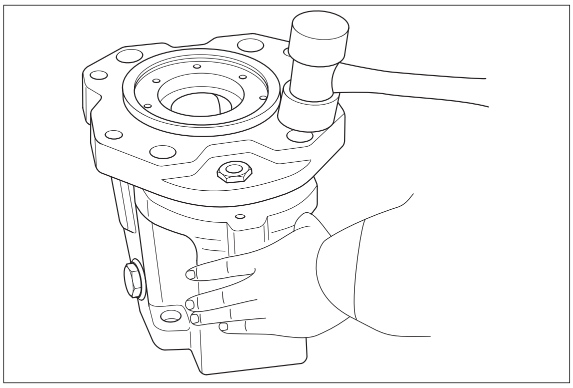
⑤ For fitting bolts, plug, etc., prepare a torque wrench or so on, and tighten them with torques shown in Section 2-3.

⑥ For the double-pump, take care not to mix up parts of the front pump with those of the rear pump.

(2) Fit swash plate support (251) to pump casing (271), tapping the former lightly with a hammer.

※ After servo piston, tilting pin, stopper (L) and stopper (S) are removed, fit them soon to pump casing in advance for reassembling.

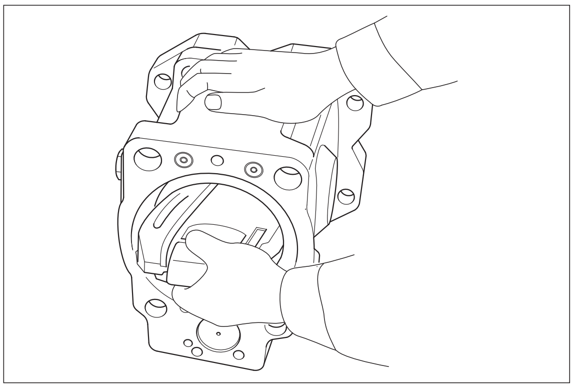
※ In tightening servo piston and tilting pin, use a protector to prevent tilting pin head and feedback pin from being damaged. In addition, apply lock-tight (medium strength) to their threaded sections.



(3) Place pump casing with its regulator fitting surface down, fit tilting bush of swash plate to tilting pin (531), and fit swash plate (212) to swash plate support (251) correctly.

※ Confirm with fingers of both hands that swash plate can be removed smoothly.

※ Apply grease to sliding sections of swash plate and swash plate support, and drive shaft can be fitted easily.

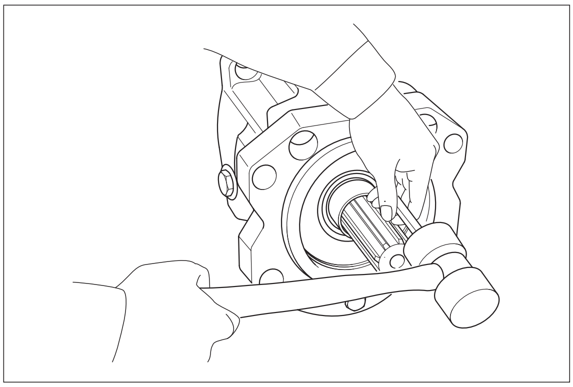


(4) To swash plate support (251), fit drive shaft (111) set with bearing (123), bearing spacer (127) and snap ring (824).

※ Do not tap drive shaft with hammer or so on.

※ Assemble them into support, tapping outer race of bearing lightly with plastic hammer.

※ Fit them fully, using steel bar or so on.

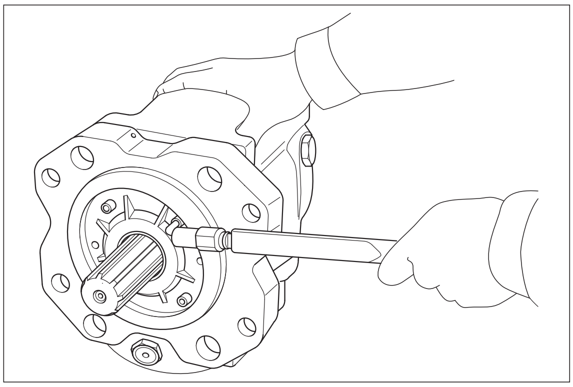


(5) Assemble seal cover (F, 261) to pump casing (271) and fix it with hexagon socket head bolts (406).

※ Apply grease lightly to oil seal in seal cover (F).

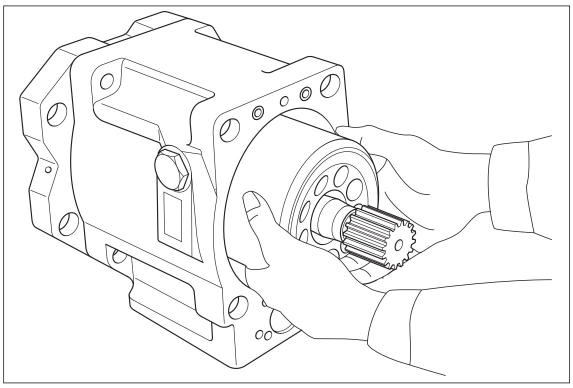
※ Assemble oil seal, taking full care not to damage it.

※ For tandem type pump, fit rear cover (263) and seal cover (262).

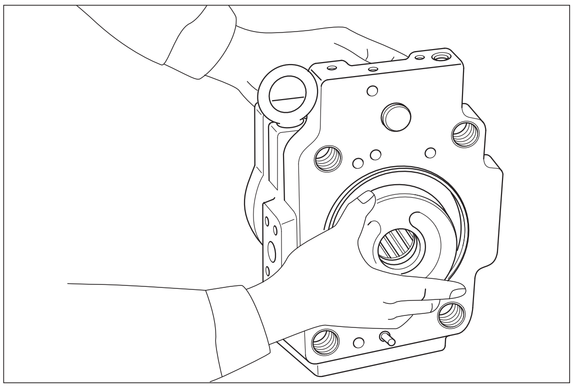


(6) Assemble piston cylinder subassembly 〔Cylinder (141), piston subassembly (151, 152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156), spacer (158) and cylinder spring (157).〕

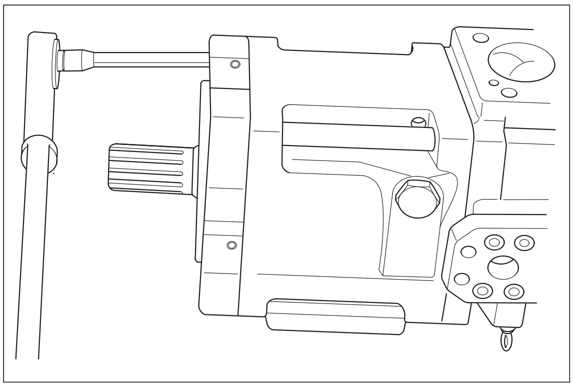
Fit spline phases of retainer and cylinder. Then, insert piston cylinder subassembly into pump casing.



(7) Fit valve plate (313) to valve block (312), entering pin into pin hole.
※ Take care not to mistake suction / delivery directions of valve plate.

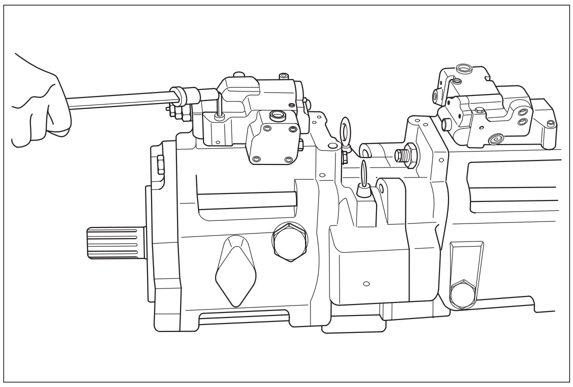


(8) Fit valve block (312) to pump casing (271) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (401).
※ At first assemble this at rear pump side, and this work will be easy.
※ Take care not to mistake direction of valve block.



※ Clockwise rotation (viewed from input shaft side)
※ Fit block with regulator up and with delivery flange left, viewed from front side.

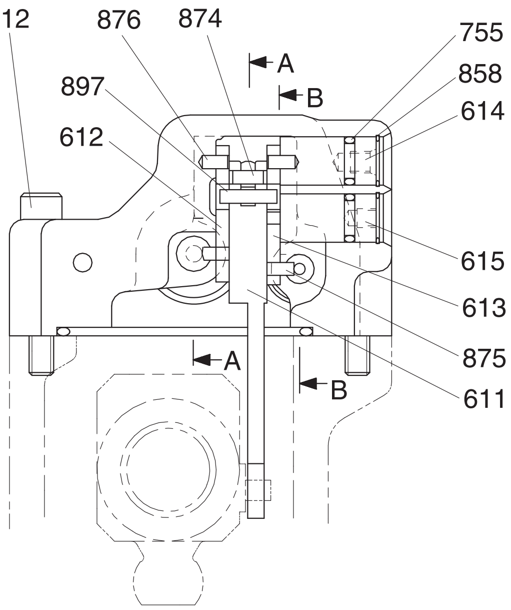
(9) Putting feedback pin of tilting pin into feedback lever of regulator, fit regulator and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413).
※ Take care not to mistake regulator of front pump for that of rear pump.

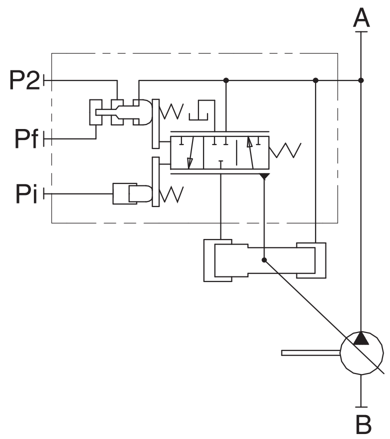


(10) Fit drain port plug (468).
This is the end of reassembling procedures.

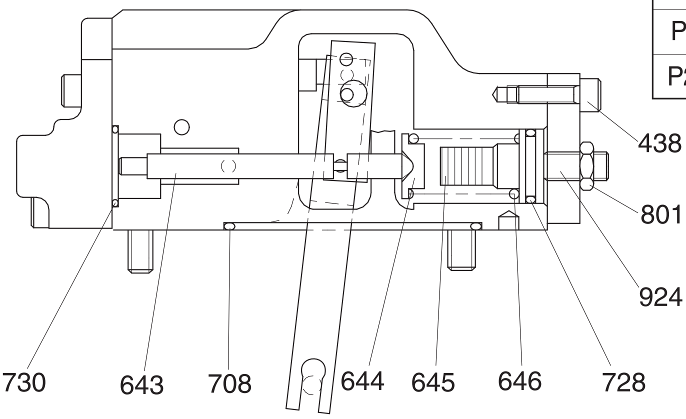
3. REGULATOR

1) STRUCTURE(1/2)

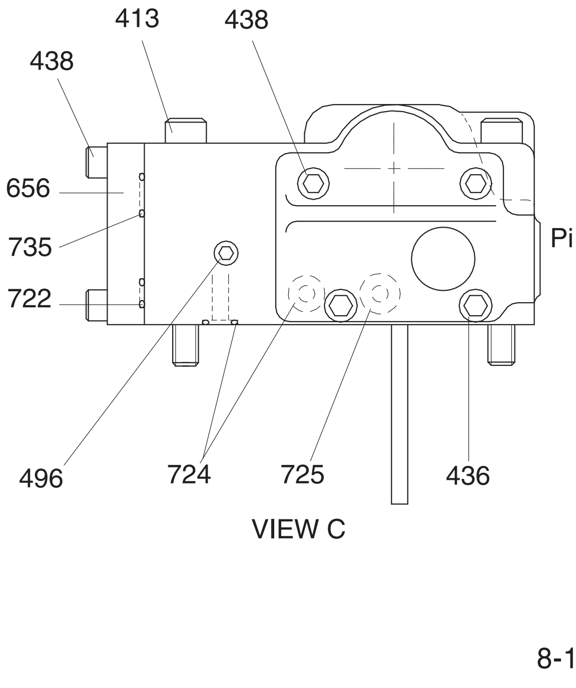




Port	Port name	Port size
A	Delivery port	1"
B	Suction port	2 1/2"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-

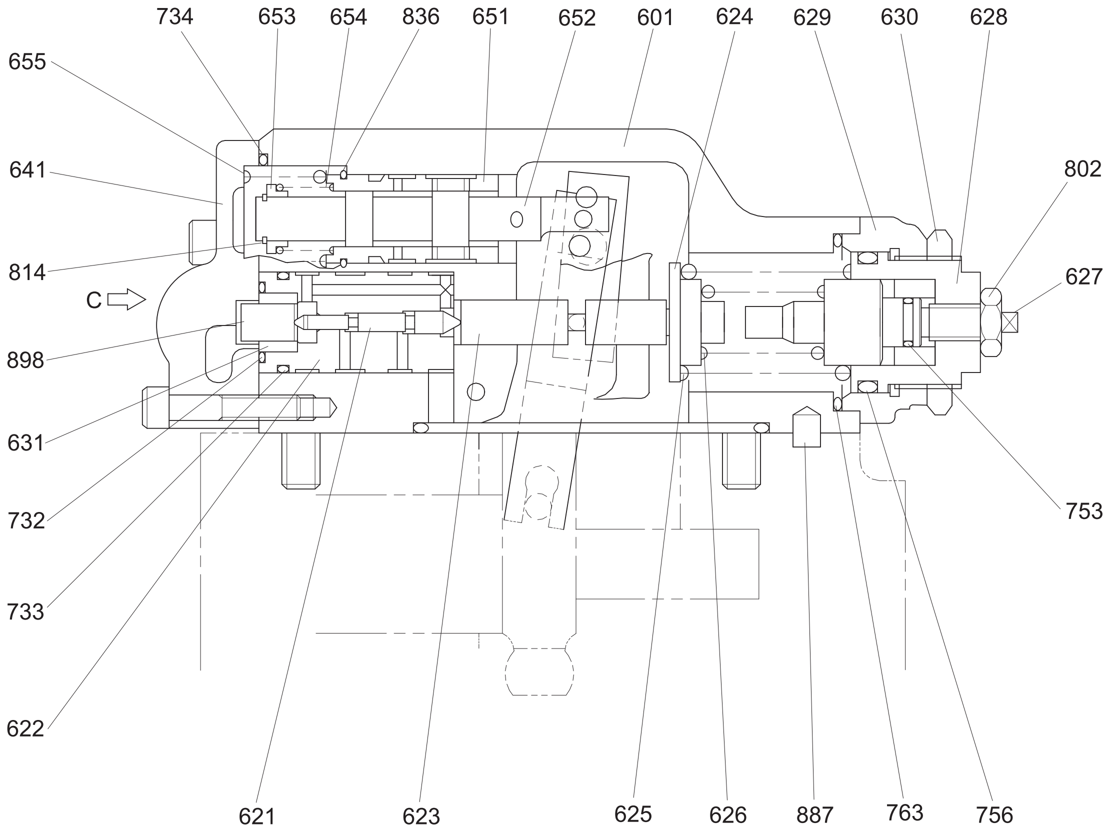


SECTION B-B



VIEW C

REGULATOR (2/2)



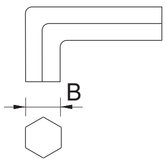
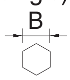
SECTION A-A

412	Hexagon socket screw	630	Lock nut	733	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket screw	631	Sleeve, pf	734	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket screw	641	Pilot cover	735	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket screw	643	Pilot piston	753	O-ring
496	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	755	O-ring
601	Casing	645	Adjust stem (Q)	756	O-ring
611	Feed back lever	646	Pilot spring	763	O-ring
612	Lever (1)	651	Sleeve	801	Nut
613	Lever (2)	652	Spool	802	Nut
614	Fulcrum plug	653	Spring seat	814	Snap ring
615	Adjust plug	654	Return spring	836	Snap ring
621	Compensator piston	655	Set spring	858	Snap ring
622	Piston case	656	Block cover	874	Pin
623	Compensator rod	708	O-ring	875	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	722	O-ring	876	Pin
625	Outer spring	724	O-ring	887	Pin
626	Inner spring	725	O-ring	897	Pin
627	Adjust stem (C)	728	O-ring	898	Pin
628	Adjust screw (C)	730	O-ring	924	Set screw
629	Cover (C)	732	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

Tool name & size		Part name			
Allen wrench 	B	Hexagon socket head bolt	PT plug (PT thread)	PO plug (PF thread)	Hexagon socket head setscrew
	4	M 5	BP-1/16	-	M 8
	5	M 6	BP1/ 8	-	M10
	6	M 8	BP-1/ 4	PO-1/4	M12, M14
Socket wrench, double (single) open end 	-	Hexagon head bolt	Hexagon nut	VP plug (PF thread)	
	6	M 8	M 8	-	
Adjustable angle wrench		Small size, Max 36 mm			
Screw driver		Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets			
Hammer		Plastic hammer, 1 set			
Pliers		For snap ring, TSR-160			
Steel bar		Steel bar of key material approx. 10×8×200			
Torque wrench		Capable of tightening with the specified torques.			
Pincers		-			
Bolt		M4, Length : 50 mm			

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6
PF plug (material : S45C)	PT 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6

3) DISASSEMBLY

Since the regulator consists of small precision finished parts, disassembly and assembly are rather complicated.

For this reason, replacement of a regulator assembly is not recommended, unless there is a special reason, but in case disassembly is necessary for an unavoidable reason, read through this manual to the end before starting disassembly.

(1) Choose a place for disassembly.

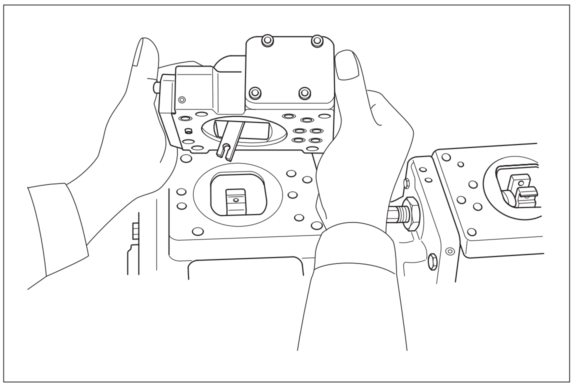
※ Choose a clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth, or so on on top of work-bench to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc. from surfaces of regulator with clean oil.

(3) Remove hexagon socket head screw (412, 413) and remove regulator main body from pump main body.

※ Take care not to lose O-ring.

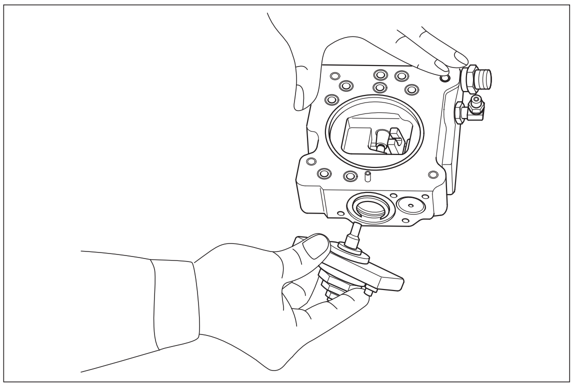


(4) Remove hexagon socket head screw (438) and remove cover (C, 629).

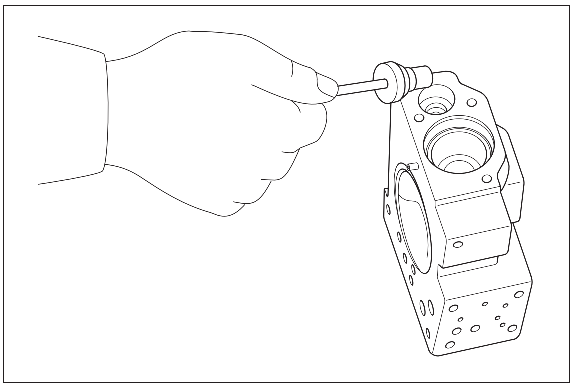
※ Cover (C) is fitted with adjusting screw (C, 628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (801) and adjusting screw (924).

Do not loosen these screws and nuts.

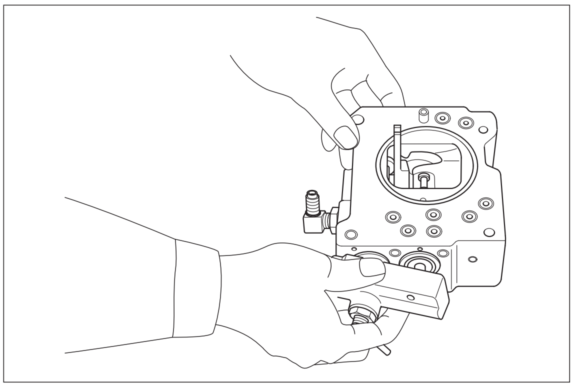
If they are loosened, adjusted pressure-flow setting will vary.



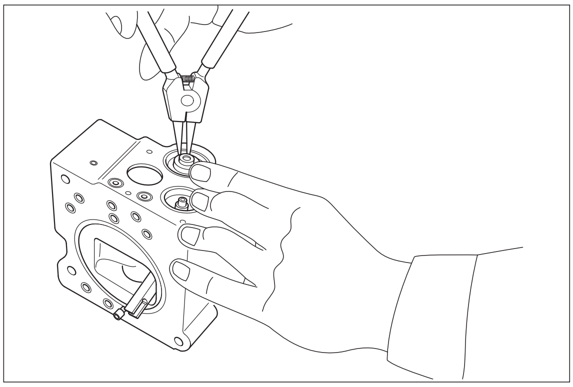
(5) After removing cover (C, 629) subassembly, take out outer spring (625), inner spring (626) and spring seat (C, 624) from compensating section.
Then draw out adjusting stem (Q, 645), pilot spring (646) and spring seat (644) from pilot section.
※ Adjusting stem (Q, 645) can easily be drawn out with M4 bolt.



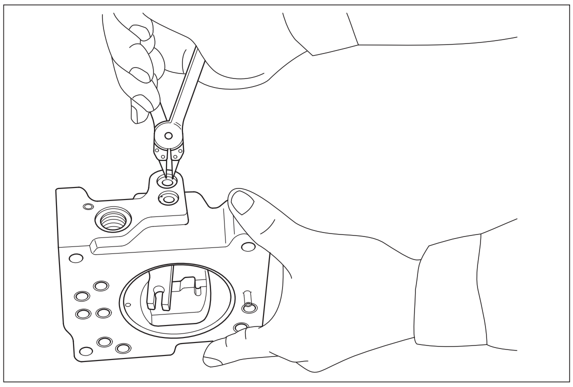
(6) Remove hexagon socket head screws (436, 438) and remove pilot cover (641).
After removing pilot cover, take out set spring (655) from pilot section.

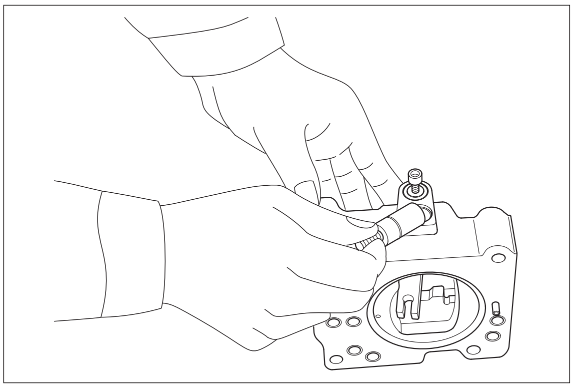


(7) Remove snap ring (814) and take out spring seat (653), return spring (654) and sleeve (651).
Sleeve (651) is fitted with snap ring (836).
※ When removing snap ring (814), return spring (654) may pop out.
※ Take care not to lose it.



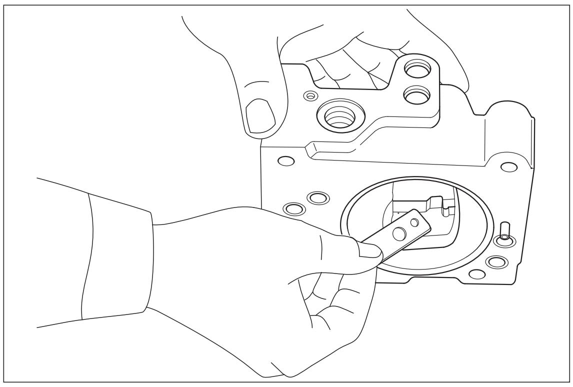
(8) Remove locking ring (858) and take out fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615).
※ Fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615) can easily be taken out with M6 bolt.





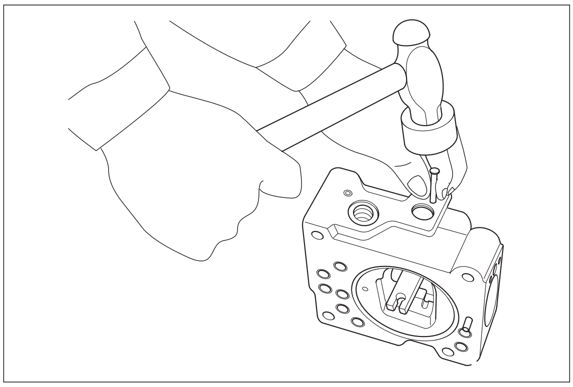
(9) Remove lever (2, 613). Do not draw out pin (875).

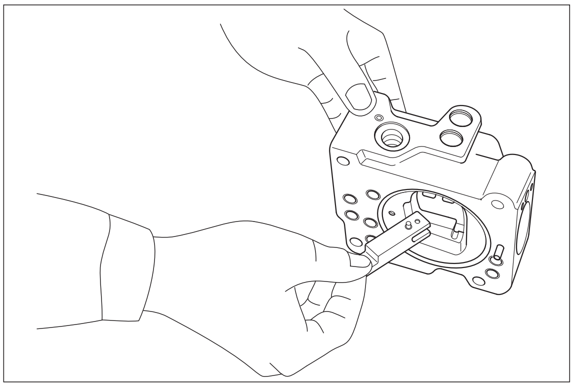
※ Work will be promoted by using pincers or so on.



(10) Draw out pin (874) and remove feedback lever (611).

※ Push out pin (874, 4 mm in dia.) from above with slender steel bar so that it may not interfere with lever (1, 612).





(11) Remove lever (1, 612). Do not draw out pin (875).

(12) Draw out pilot piston (643) and spool (652).

(13) Draw out piston case (622), compensating piston (621) and compensating rod (623).

※ Piston case (622) can be taken out by pushing compensating rod (623) at opposite side of piston case.

This completes operation.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For assembly, reverse disassembly procedures, but pay attention to the following items.

① Always repair parts that were scored at disassembly.
Get replacement parts ready beforehand.

② Mixing of foreign matter will cause malfunction.
Therefore, wash parts well with cleaning oil, let them dry with jet air and handle them in clean place.

③ Always tighten bolts, plugs, etc. to their specified torques.

④ Do not fail to coat sliding surfaces with clean hydraulic oil before assembly.

⑤ Replace seals such as O-ring with new ones as a rule.

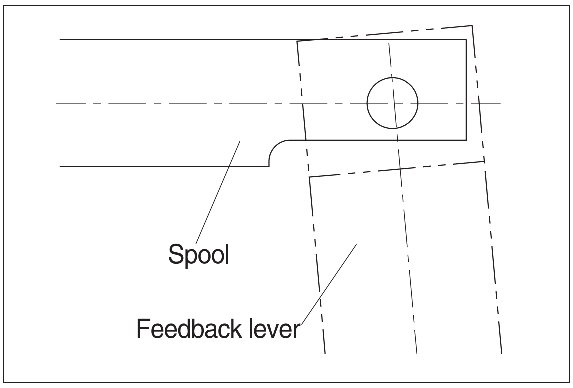
(2) Put compensating rod (623) into compensating hole of casing (601).

(3) Put pin force-fitted in lever (1, 612) into groove of compensating rod and fit lever (1) to pin force-fitted in casing.

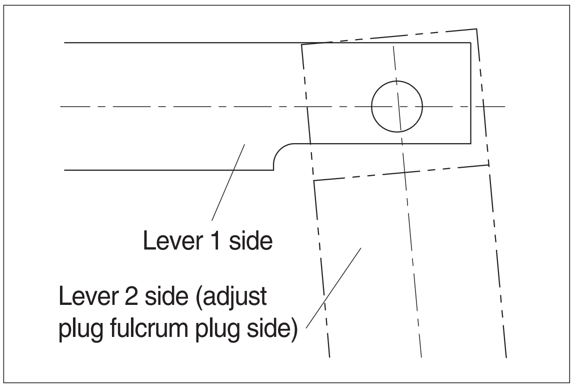
(4) Fit spool (652) and sleeve (651) into hole in spool of casing.

※ Confirm that spool and sleeve slide smoothly in casing without binding.

※ Pay attention to orientation of spool.

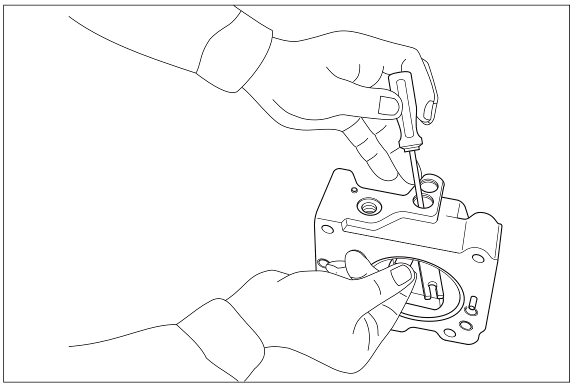


(5) Fit feedback lever (611), matching its pin hole with pin hole in spool.
Then insert pin (874).
※ Insert pin in feedback lever a little to ease operation.
※ Take care not to mistake direction of feedback lever.



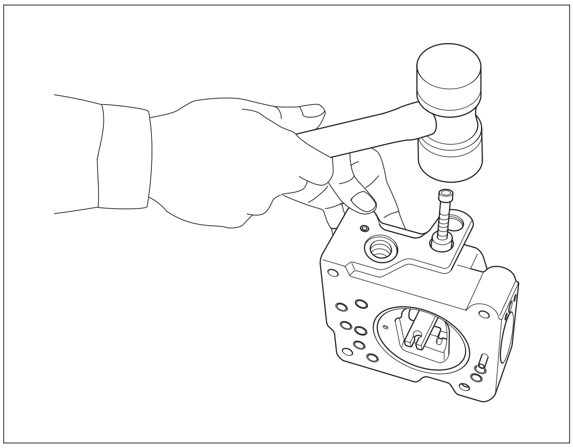
(6) Put pilot piston (643) into pilot hole of casing.
※ Confirm that pilot piston slides smoothly without binding.

(7) Put pin force-fitted in lever (2, 613) into groove of pilot piston.
Then fix lever (2).

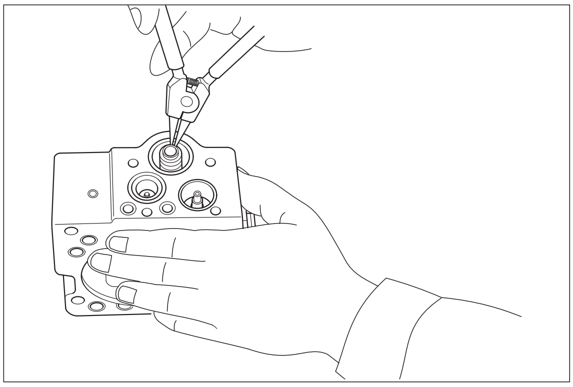


(8) Fit fulcrum plug (614) so that pin force-fitted in fulcrum plug(614) can be put into pin hole of lever (2).
Then fix locking ring (858).

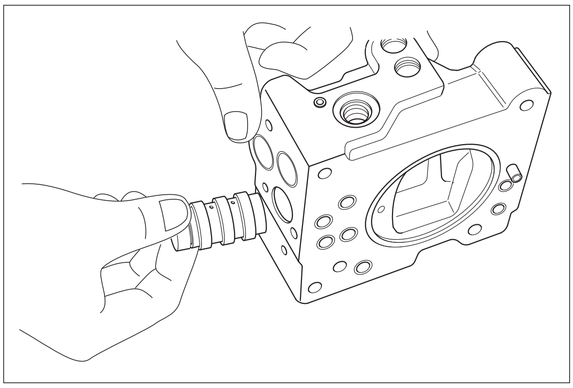
(9) Insert adjusting plug (615) and fit locking ring.
※ Take care not to mistake inserting holes for fulcrum plug and adjusting plug.
At this point in time move feedback lever to confirm that it has no large play and is free from binding.



(10) Fit return spring (654) and spring seat (653) into spool hole and attach snap ring (814).

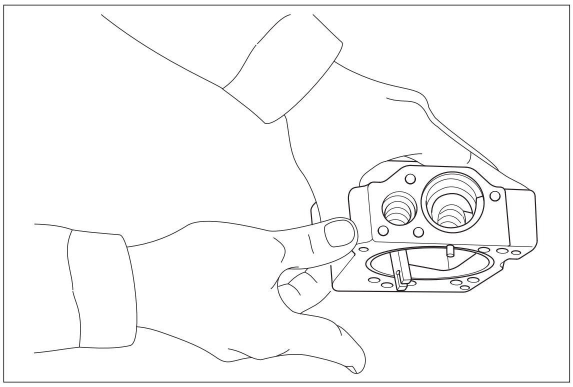


(11) Fit set spring (655) to spool hole and put compensating piston (621) and piston case (622) into compensating hole.
Fit pilot cover (641) and tighten it with hexagonal socket head screws (436, 438).

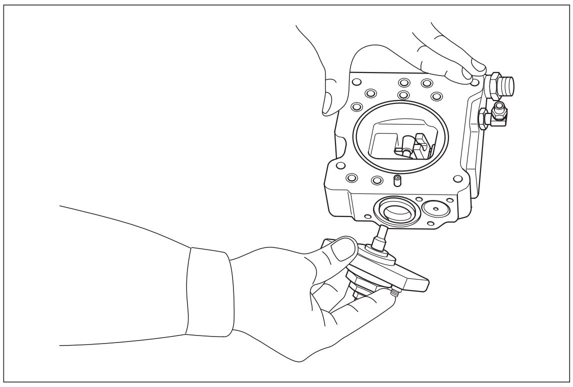


(12) Put spring seat (644), pilot spring (646) and adjusting stem (Q, 645) into pilot hole. Then fix spring seat (624), inner spring (626) and outer spring (625) into compensating hole.

※ When fitting spring seat, take care not to mistake direction of spring seat.



(13) Install cover (C, 629) fitted with adjusting screws (628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (802) and adjusting screw (924).
Then tighten them with hexagonal socket head screws (438).
This completes assembly.



GROUP 4 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

1) REMOVAL

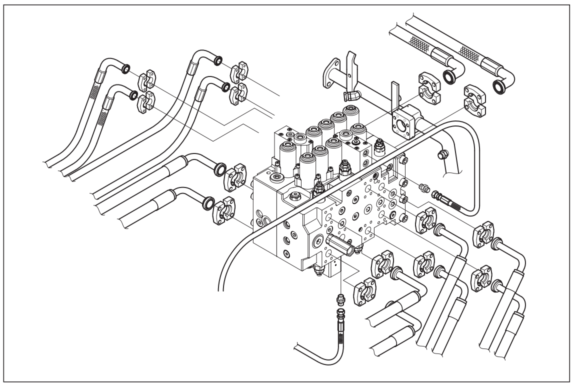
(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

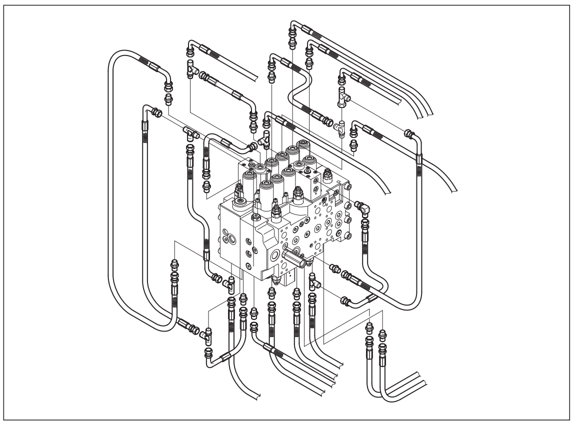


(4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensor and so on.

(5) Remove bolts and disconnect pipe.

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses.

(7) Disconnect pilot piping.



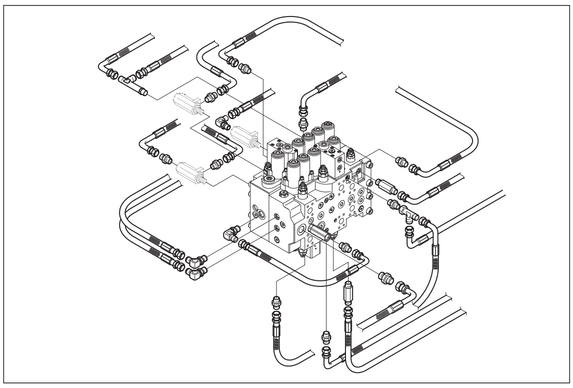
(8) Sling the control valve assembly and remove the control valve mounting bolt.
 · Weight : 200 kg (441lb)

(9) Remove the control valve assembly.
When removing the control valve assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL

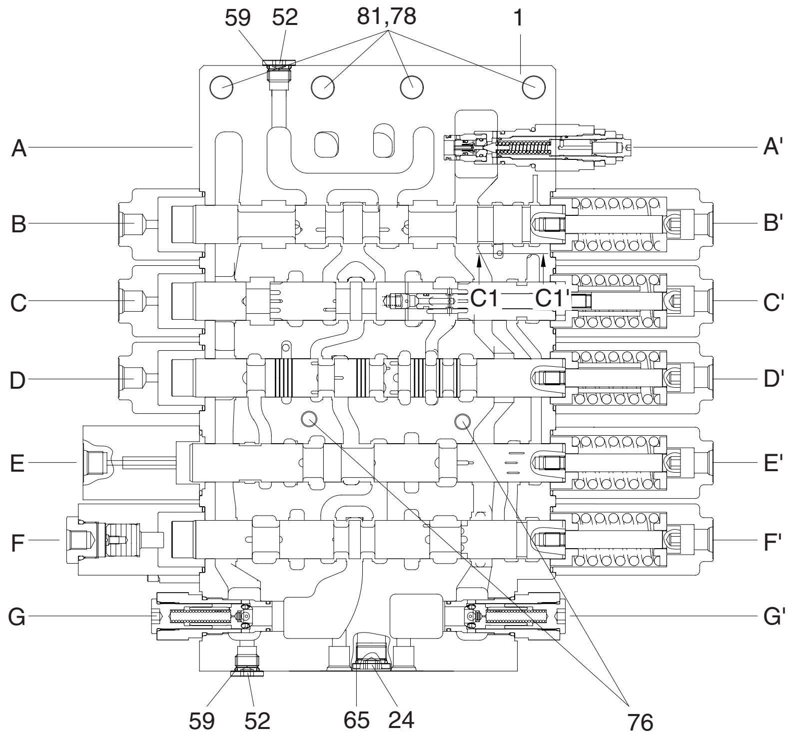
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Bleed the air from below items.
① Cylinder (boom, arm, bucket)
② Swing motor
③ Travel motor
※ See each item removal and install.

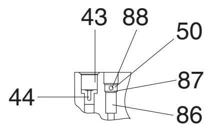


(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and recheck the hydraulic oil leak or not.

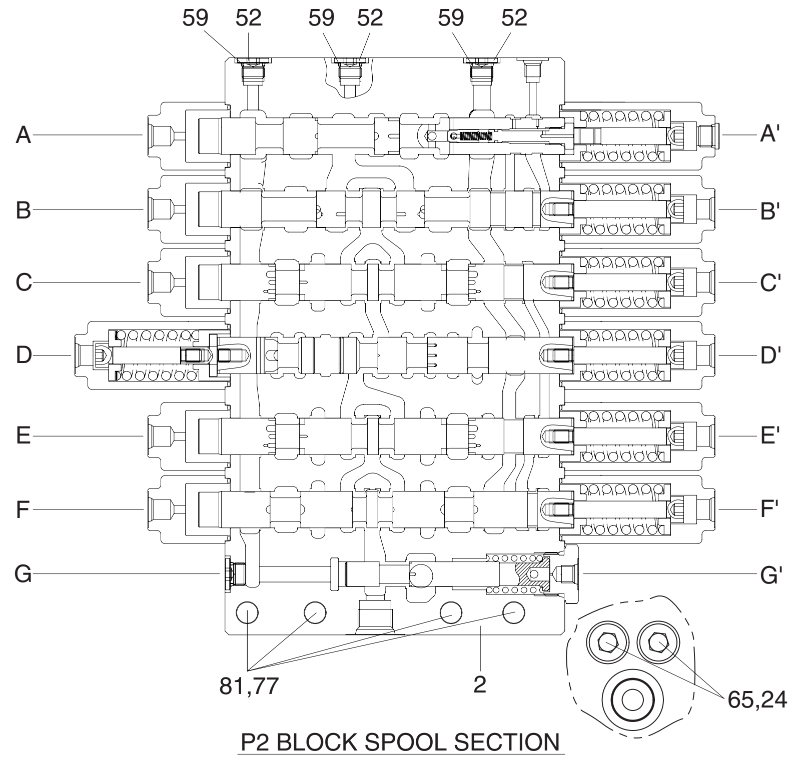
2. STRUCTURE



P1 BLOCK SPOOL SECTION

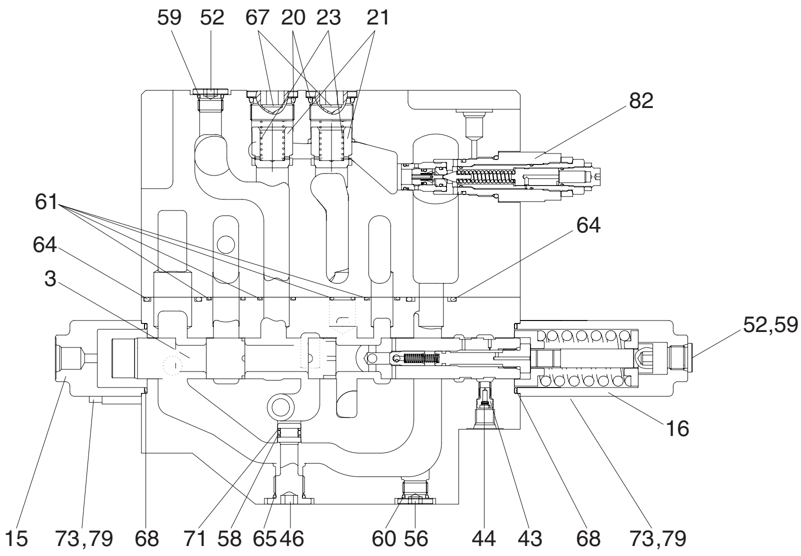


SECTION C1-C1'

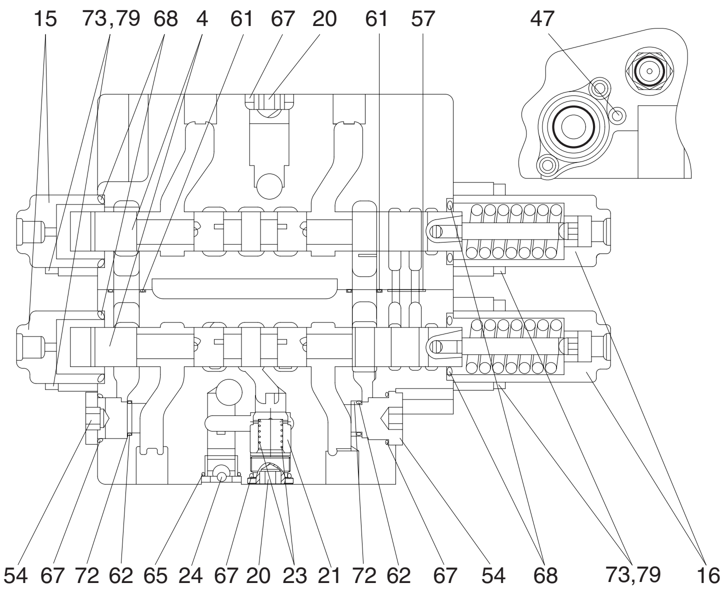


P2 BLOCK SPOOL SECTION

1	Housing (P1)
2	Housing (P2)
24	Plug
43	Orifice-signal
44	Coin type filter
50	O-ring
52	Plug
59	O-ring
65	O-ring
76	Hex socket head bolt
77	Hex socket head bolt
78	Hex socket head bolt
81	Spring washer
86	Poppet
87	Check spring
88	Plug

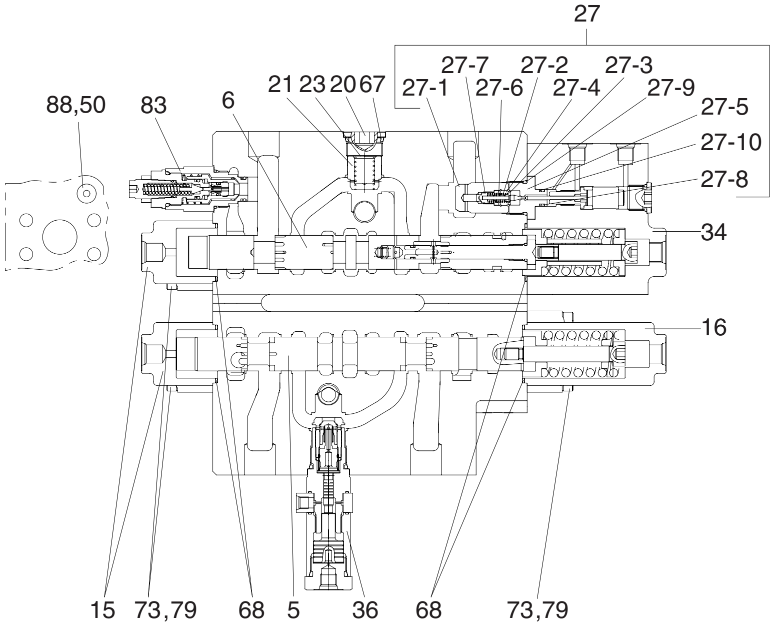


A-A' (STRAIGHT-TRAVEL & SUPPLY)

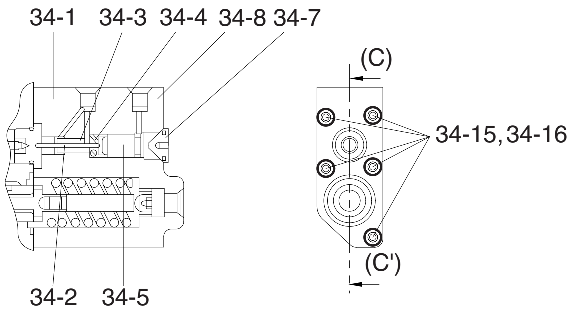


B-B' (TRAVEL RIGHT & LEFT)

3	Spool-straight
4	Spool-travel
15	Cover A-pilot
16	Cover B1-pilot
20	Plug
21	Poppet 1-check valve
23	Spring 1-check valve
24	Plug
43	Orifice-signal
44	Coin type filter
46	Plug
47	Plug
52	Plug
54	Plug
56	Plug
57	O-ring
58	O-ring
59	O-ring
60	O-ring
61	O-ring
62	O-ring
64	O-ring
65	O-ring
67	O-ring
68	O-ring
71	Back-up ring
72	Back-up ring
73	Hex socket head bolt
79	Washer
82	Main relief valve

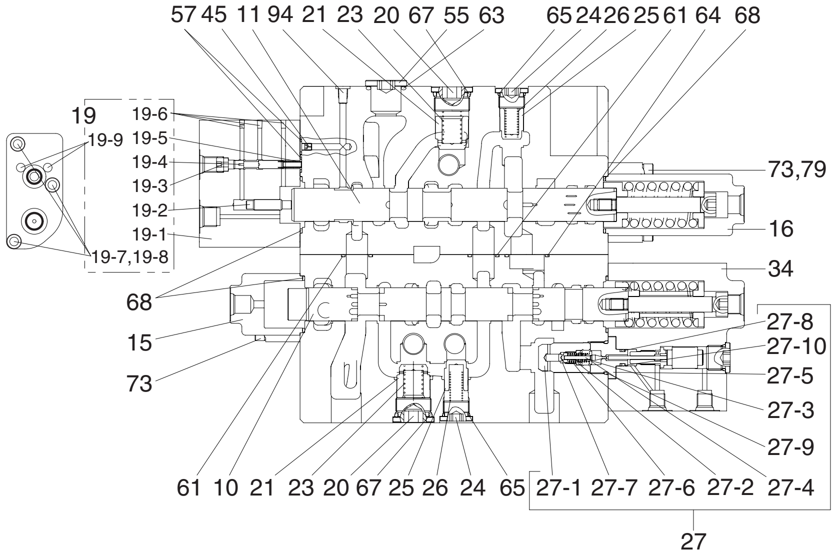


C-C' (SWING & BOOM 1)

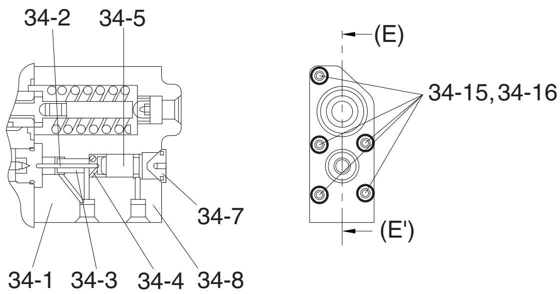


34 DETAIL (HOLDING ASSY)

5	Spool-swing	27-5	Poppet seat	34-7	Plug
6	Spool-boom	27-6	C-ring	34-8	Plug
15	Cover A-pilot	27-7	Restrictor-lock valve	34-15	Socket bolt
16	Cover B1-pilot	27-8	O-ring	34-16	Spring washer
20	Plug	27-9	O-ring	36	Logic valve
21	Poppet 1-check valve	27-10	Back up ring	50	O-ring
23	Spring 1-check valve	34	Holding kit A1	67	O-ring
27	Holding kit B	34-1	Block-holding P1	68	O-ring
27-1	Poppet	34-2	Piston 1-holding	73	Hex socket head bolt
27-2	Spring	34-3	Guide piston-holding	79	Washer
27-3	Poppet guide	34-4	Spring 1-lock valve	83	Overload relief valve
27-4	Pilot poppet	34-5	Piston 2-holding	88	Plug

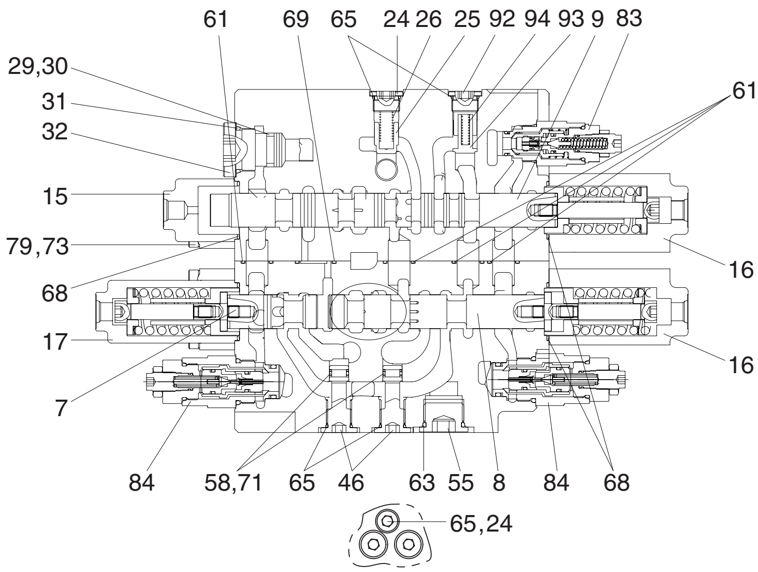


E-E' (ARM & ARM REGENRATION)

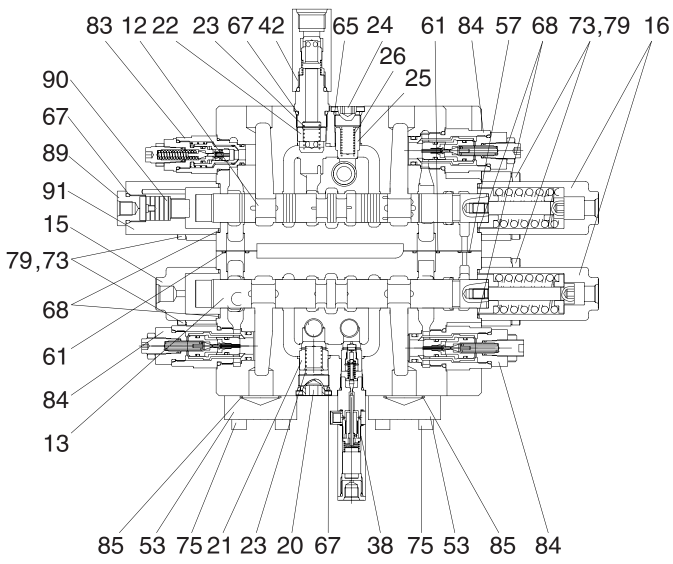


34 DETAIL (HOLDING ASSY)

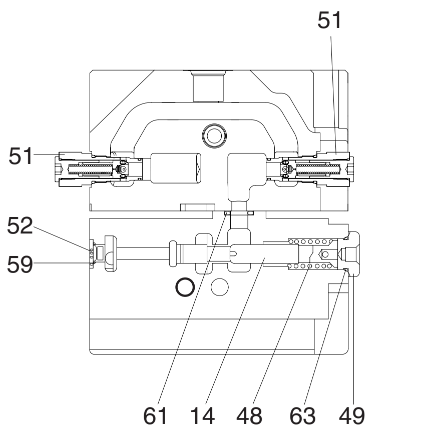
10	Spool-arm 1	25	Poppet 2-check valve	34-5	Piston 2-holding
11	Spool-arm regeneration	26	Spring 2-check valve	34-7	Plug
15	Cover A-pilot	27	Poppet-lock valve	34-8	Plug
16	Cover B1-pilot	27-1	Poppet	34-15	Socket bolt
19	Arm-regeneration	27-2	Spring	34-16	Spring washer
19-1	Block-regeneration	27-3	Poppet guide	45	Orifice-plug
19-2	Piston-cut off	27-4	Pilot poppet	55	Plug
19-3	Stopper-regeneration	27-5	Poppet seat	57	O-ring
19-4	Spool-regeneration	27-6	C-ring	61	O-ring
19-5	Spring-regeneration	27-7	Restrictor-lock valve	63	O-ring
19-6	Plug	27-8	O-ring	64	O-ring
19-7	Socket bolt	27-9	O-ring	65	O-ring
19-8	Spring wahser	27-10	Back up ring	67	O-ring
19-9	Pin-regeneration	34	Holding kit A1	68	O-ring
20	Plug	34-1	Block-holding P1	73	Hex socket head bolt
21	Poppet 1-check valve	34-2	Piston 1-holding	79	Washer
23	Spring 1-check valve	34-3	Guide piston-holding	94	Plug
24	Plug	34-4	Spring 1-lock valve		



D-D' (SWING PRIORITY-BOOM2 & ARM2)



F-F' (OPTION & BUCKET)



G-G' (CENTER BYPASS CUT-OFF
& NEGATIVE CONTROL)

7	Spool-swing priority
8	Spool-boom 2
9	Spool-arm 2
12	Spool-bucket
13	Spool-option
14	Spool-bypass cut
15	Cover A-pilot
16	Cover B1-pilot
17	Cover B2-pilot
20	Plug
21	Poppet 1-check valve
22	Poppet-L/C bucket
23	Spring 1-check valve
24	Plug
25	Poppet 2-check valve
26	Spring 2-check valve
29	Back up ring
30	O-ring
31	O-ring
32	Plug
38	Load check valve assy
42	Check valve
46	Plug
48	Spring-bypass cut spool
49	Plug-bypass cut spool
51	Negative control valve
52	Plug
53	Flange
55	Plug
57	O-ring
58	O-ring
59	O-ring
61	O-ring
63	O-ring
65	O-ring
67	O-ring
68	O-ring
69	O-ring
71	Back-up ring
73	Hex socket head bolt
75	Socket bolt
79	Washer
83	Overload relief valve
84	Overload relief valve
85	O-ring
89	Plug
90	Piston
91	Pilot cover C1
92	Plug
93	Poppet
94	Spring

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

(1) As hydraulic equipments, not only this valve are constructed precisely with very small clearances, disassembling and assembling must be carefully done in a clean place with preventing dusts and contaminants from entering.

(2) Prepare the section drawing and study the structure of MCV and then start disassembly work.

(3) When removing the control valve from the machine, install caps on every ports, and wash the outside of the assembly with confirming the existence of caps before disassembling.
Prepare a suitable table and some clean papers or rubber mat on the table for disassembling.

(4) If the components are left disassembled, they may get rust. Make sure to measure the greasing and sealing.

(5) For carrying the control valve, never hold with pilot cover or relief valve and overload relief valve and carefully treat the valves.

(6) Do not tap the valve even if the spool movement is not smooth.

(7) Several tests for such as relief characteristics, leakage, overload relief valve setting and flow resistance are required after re-assembling, and the hydraulic test equipments for those tests are needed.
Therefore, do not disassemble what cannot perform test adjustment, even if it can disassemble.

※ Be sure to observe the mark (※) description in the disassembly and assembly procedures.

2) TOOLS

Before disassembling the control valve, prepare the following tools beforehand.

Name of tool	Quantity	Size (mm)
Vice mounted on bench (soft jaws)	1 unit	
Hexagon wrench	Each 1 piece	5, 6, 10, 12 and 14
Socket wrench	Each 1 piece	27 and 32
Spanner	Each 1 piece	26 and 32 (main relief valve)

3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Removing spool

① **The case of the section without holding valve**
Instruction for removing the travel spool (for instance) is follows :
Remove two hex socket bolts by 5 mm allen key wrench, then remove pilot cover.

※ Pay attention not to lose the O-ring under the pilot cover.

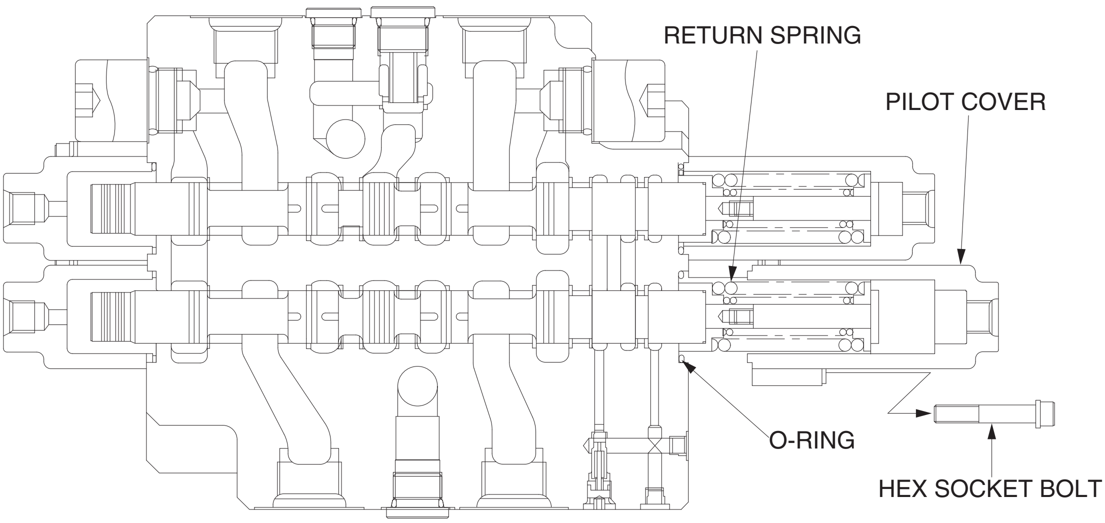
As the return spring portion of travel spool comes out, pull the spring straight slowly, by which spool assembly is removed.

※ The spools have to remove from the spring side.

Other spools (no lock valve type) can be removed in the same manner but the swing priority spool is reversed.

※ When spool replace, do not disassemble of a spool by any cases. Please replace by spool assembly.

※ Please attach using a tag etc. in the case of two or more kinds of spool replace, and understand a position.



② **The case of the section with holding valve**

Instruction for removing the boom spool (for instance) is follows :

Remove five hex socket bolts with washer by 5 ㎜ allen key wrench. Then remove pilot cover with internal parts below figure.

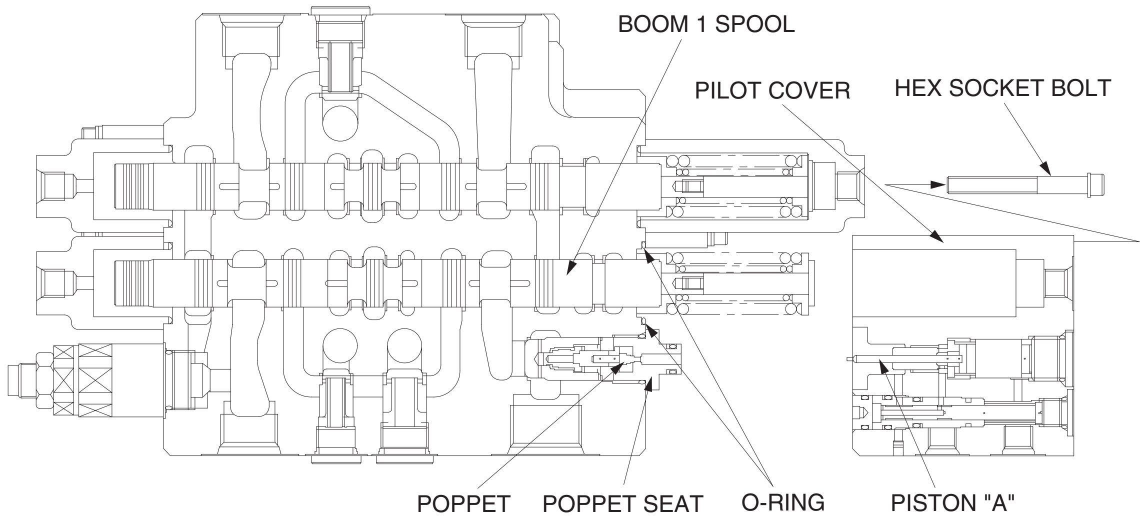
※ Be careful not to separate O-ring and poppet under pilot cover.

※ Pay attention not to damage the exposed piston A under pilot cover.

As the return spring portion of boom 1 spool comes out, pull the spring straight slowly, by which spool assembly is removed.

※ The spools have to remove form the spring side.

※ When spool replace, do not disassemble of a spool by any cases, please replace by spool assembly.



(2) Removing holding valve

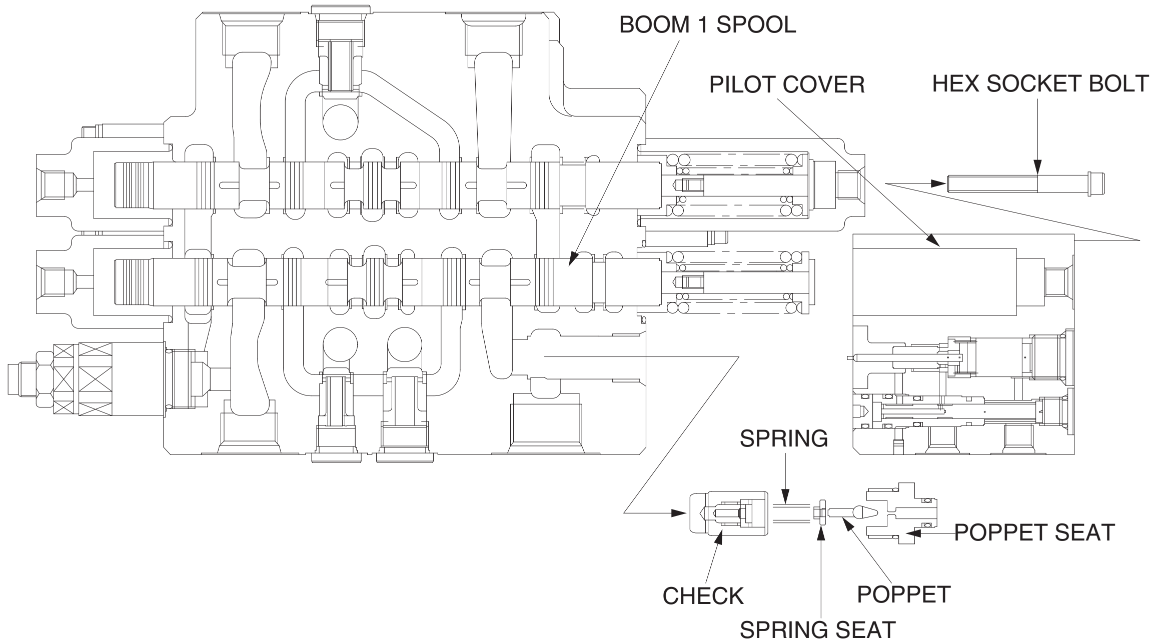
Remove the pilot cover with the holding valve as described on previous page.

※ Do not disassembled internal parts of the pilot cover.

Loosen the poppet seat by 26 ㎜ spanner and remove the poppet, the spring seat, the spring and the check in order.

※ Pay attention not to lose the poppet.

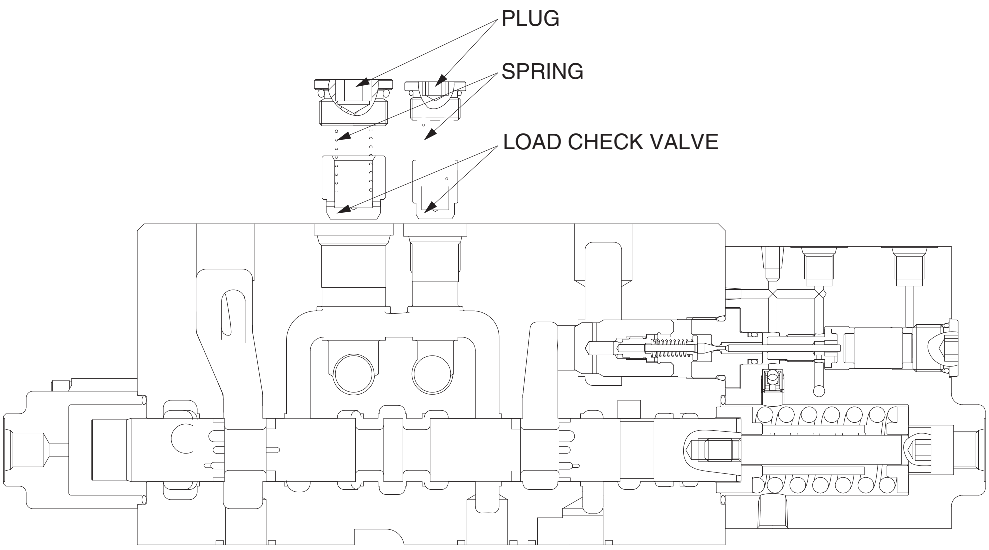
※ Do not disassembled internal parts of the check because the plug, functioning orifice, can damage easily.



(3) Removing load check valve and negative relief valve

① The load check valve

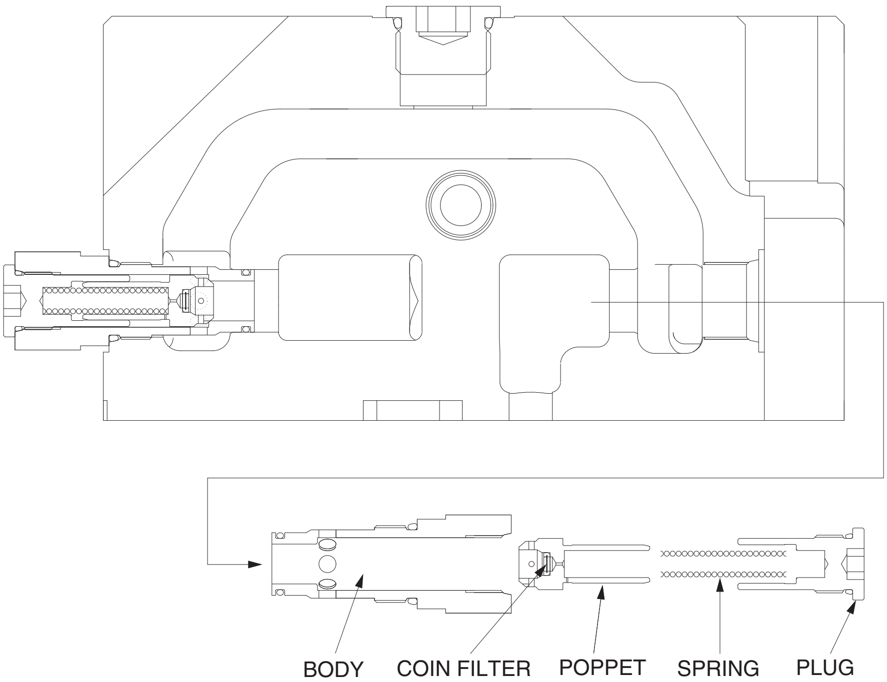
- Fix the body to suitable work bench. Loosen the plug by 10 ㎜ allen key wrench.
- Remove the spring and the load check valve with pincers or magnet.



② The negative relief valve

Loosen the socket by 12 ㎜ allen key wrench.

Remove the spring, the spring holder, the piston and the negative control poppet.



※ Do not disassemble the coin filter inside the negative control poppet because of forced fit.

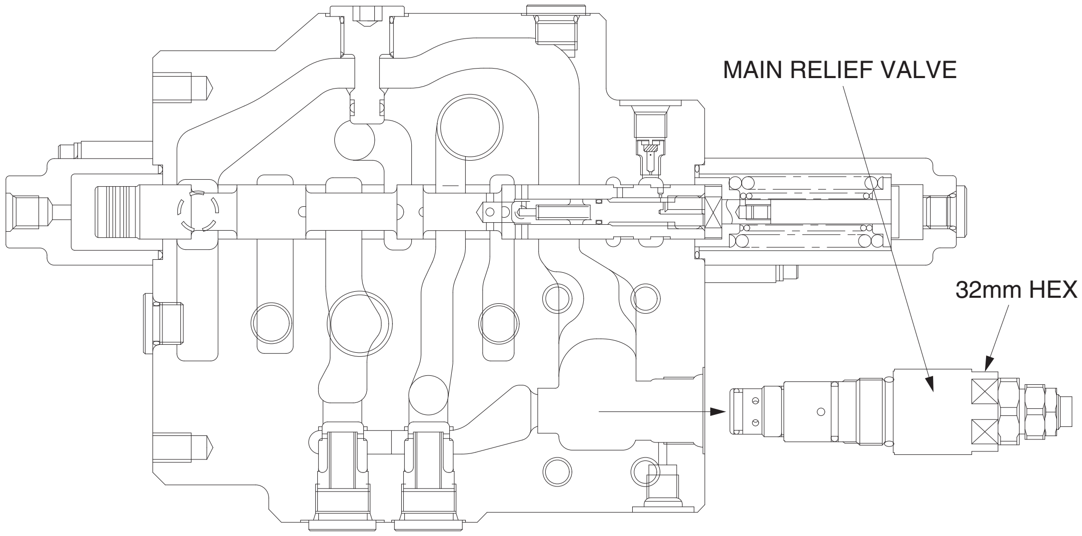
(4) Removing main relief valve and overload relief valve

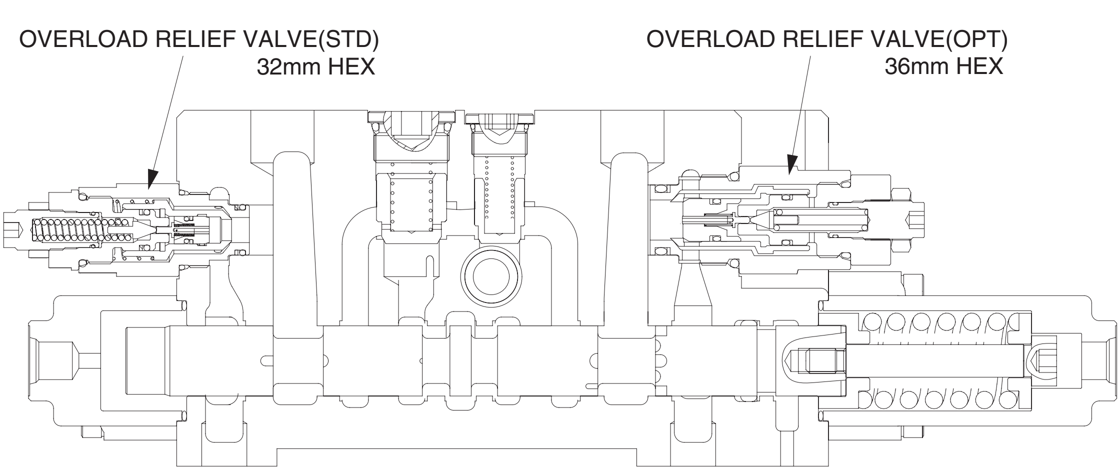
Fix the valve body to suitable work bench. Remove the main relief valve by 32 ㎜ spanner and remove the overload relief valve 32 ㎜ spanner (standard) or 36 ㎜ spanner (optional).

※ When disassembled, tag the relief valve for identification so that they can be reassembled correctly.

※ Pay attention not to damage seat face of disassembled main relief and overload relief valve.

※ Main relief and overload relief valve are very critical parts for performance and safety of the machine. Also, the pressure set is very difficult. Therefore, any abnormal parts are found, replace it with completely new relief valve assembly.

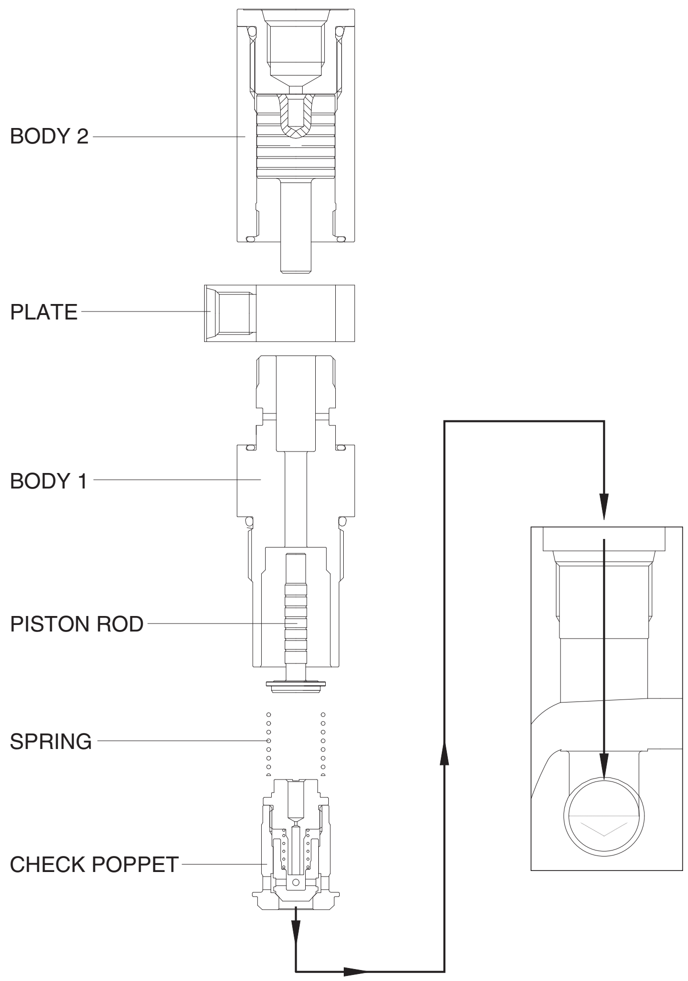




(5) Removing the swing logic valve and bucket logic valve

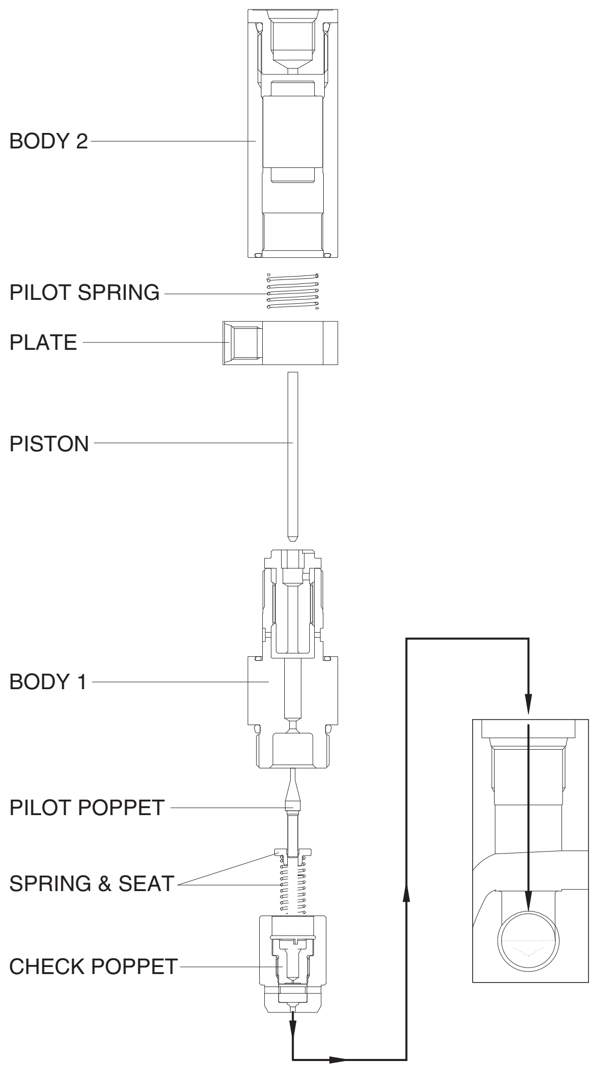
- Fix the valve body to suitable work bench.
- Loosen the body 2 by 32 ㎜ spanner (swing logic valve) or 24 ㎜ spanner (bucket logic valve) and remove it.
- Remove the banjo plate.
- Loosen the body 1 as the same spanner of body 2 and remove it.
- Remove the check poppet and spring.

※ Pay attention not to damage seat face of removed check poppet.
※ Do not disassemble the check poppet and replace it with a assembly in case any abnormal parts are found.
※ Pay attention not to lose and separation while disassembling and assembling.



(6) Removing the option ON/OFF valve

- Fix the valve body to suitable work bench.
- Loosen the body 2 by 24 mm spanner and remove it.
- Remove the banjo plate.
- Loosen the body 1 as the same spanner of body 2 and remove it.
- Remove the pilot poppet, spring and seat.
- Remove the check poppet.



4) ASSEMBLY

(1) Precaution

① When you assemble, please wash all parts by pure cleaning liquid.
② For re-assembling, basically use only bland new seals for all portions.
③ Apply grease or hydraulic oil to the seals and seal fitting section to make the sliding smooth, unless otherwise specified.
④ Pay attention not to roll the O-ring when fitting and it may cause oil leakage.
⑤ Do not tap the valve even if the spool movement is not smooth.
⑥ Prepare the section drawing and study the structure of MCV and then start disassembly work.
⑦ Tighten bolt and parts with thread for all section by torque wrench to the respective tightening torque.

(2) Assembly

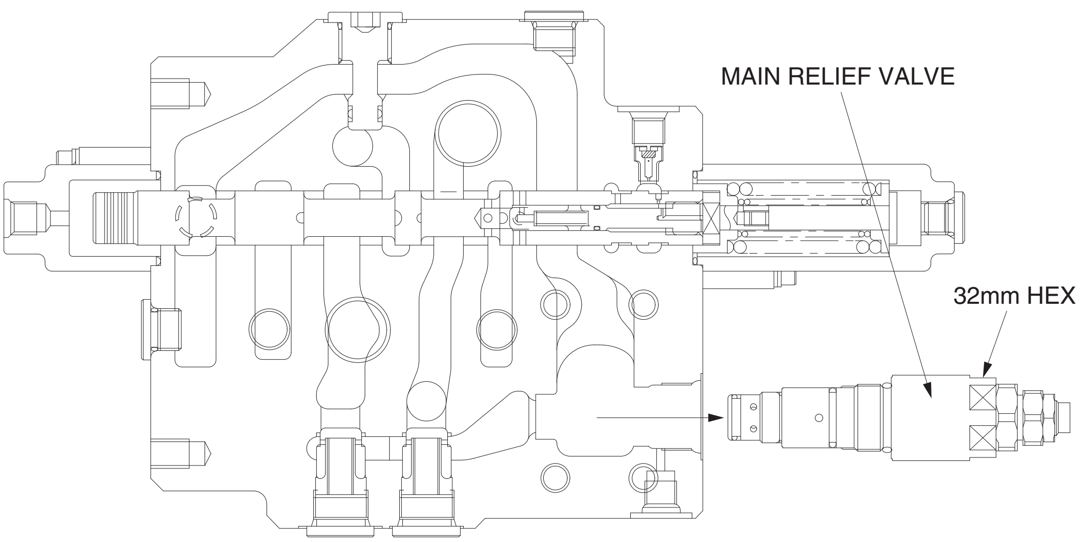
Explanation only is shown for the assembly, refer to the figures shown in the previous disassembly section.

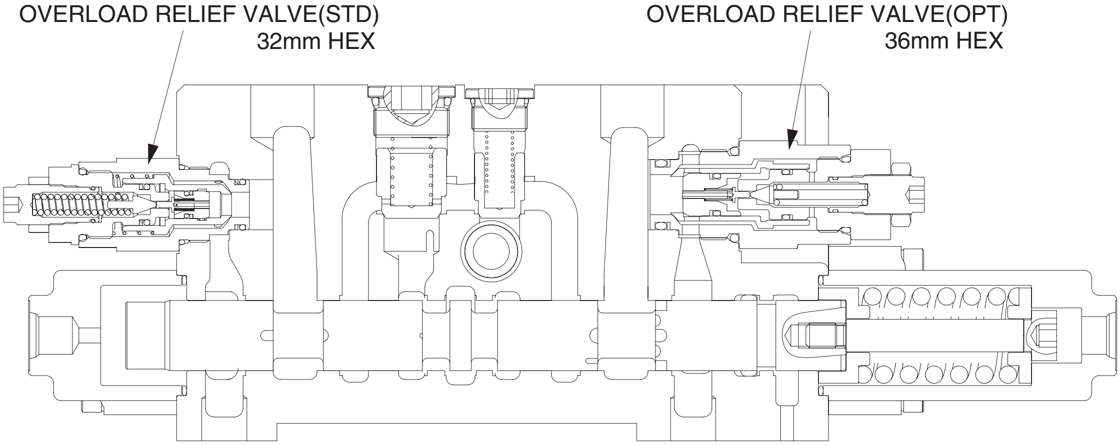
① Main relief and overload relief valve

Fix the valve body to suitable work bench.

Install main relief valve and overload relief valve into the body and tighten to the specified torque by 32 mm torque wrench.

· Tightening torque : 8~9 kgf·m (57.8~65.1 lbf·ft)



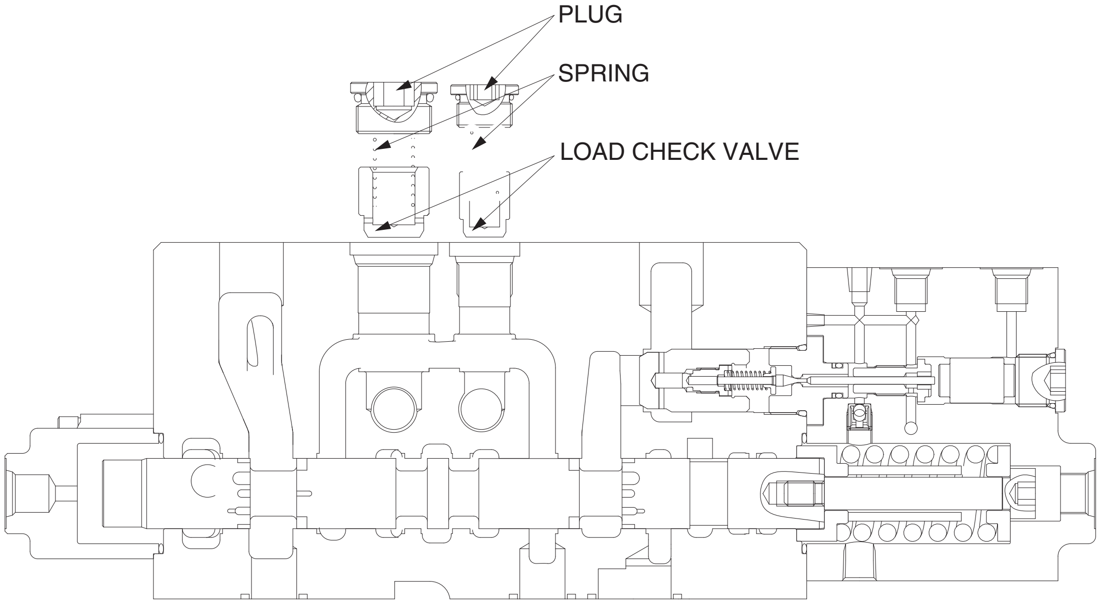


② **Load check valve**

Assemble the load check valve and spring.

Put O-rings on to plug and tighten plug to the specified torque by 10 ㎜ torque wrench.

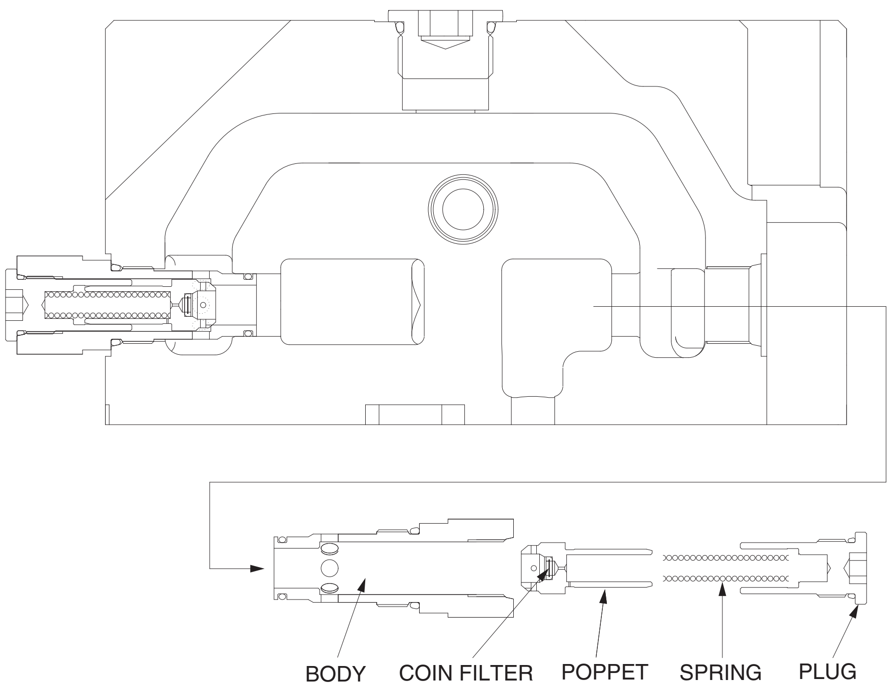
· Tightening torque : 6~7 ㎏f·m (43.4~50.6 ℓbf·ft)



③ **Negative control relief valve**

Assemble the nega-con poppet, piston, spring holder and spring into body in order and tighten the socket to the specified torque by 12 mm torque wrench.

· Tightening torque : 8~9 ㎏f·m (57.8~65.1 ℓbf·ft)



④ **Holding valves**

Assemble the check, spring seat and poppet into the hole of valve body in order.

Tighten the poppet seat to the specified torque by 25 mm torque wrench.

· Tightening torque : 6~7 kgf·m (43.4~50.6 lbf·ft)

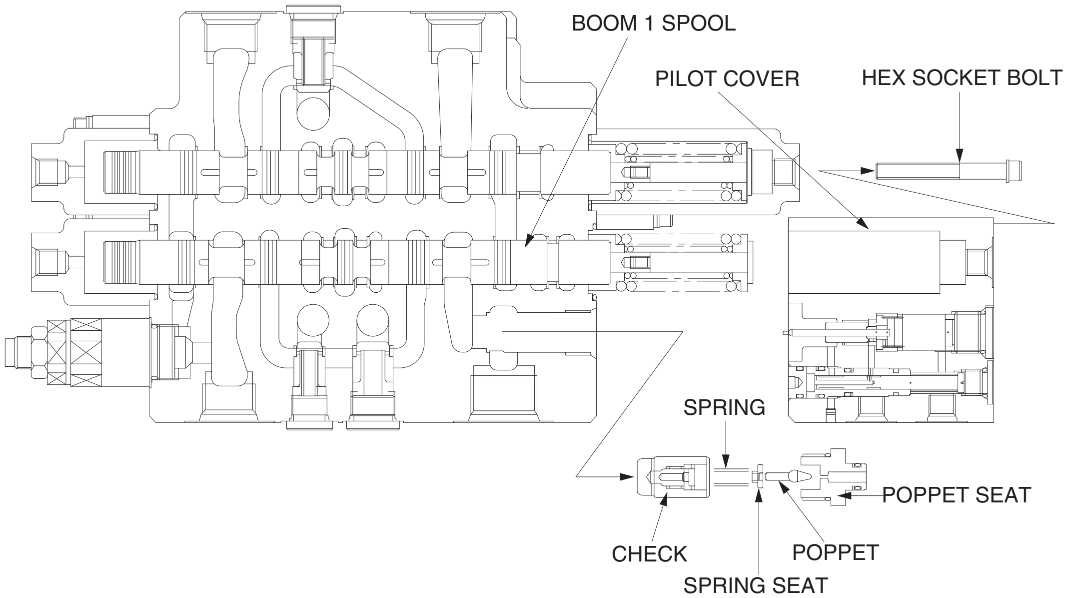
Fit the "piston A" under pilot cover with internal parts into hole on the poppet seat.

Tighten hexagon socket head bolt to specified torque by 5 mm torque wrench.

· Tightening torque : 1~1.1 kgf·m (7.23~7.96 lbf·ft)

※ Pay attention poppet not to separation.

※ Confirm that O-rings have been well fitted on the groove of body. (apply grease on O-ring)



⑤ Main spool

Put the spool position upward and fix it to the vise. Carefully insert the previously assembled spool assemblies into their respective bores within of body.

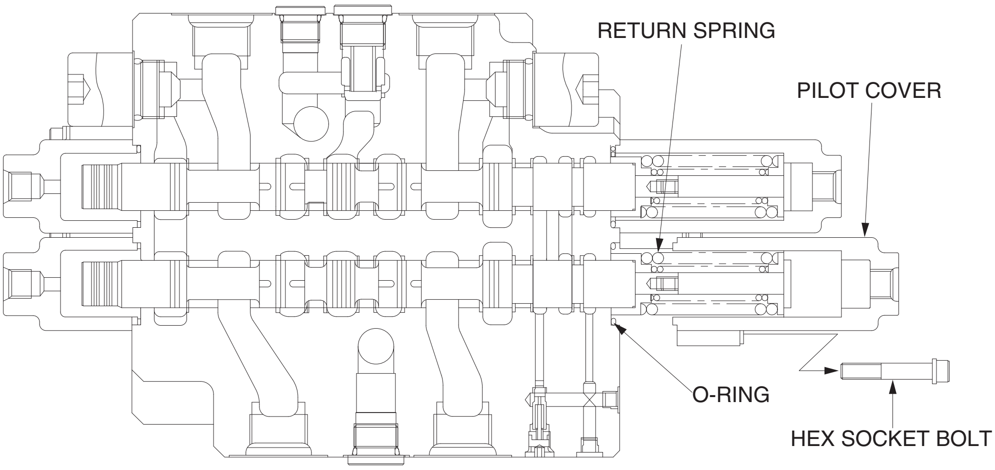
Fit spool assemblies into body carefully and slowly. Do not under any circumstances push them forcibly in.

Fit the pilot cover to the groove of the valve body.

Confirm that O-rings have been fitted on the groove of body. (apply grease on O-ring)

Tighten the two socket bolt to the specified torque by 5 mm torque wrench.

· Tightening torque : 1~1.1 kgf·m (7.23~7.96 lbf·ft)

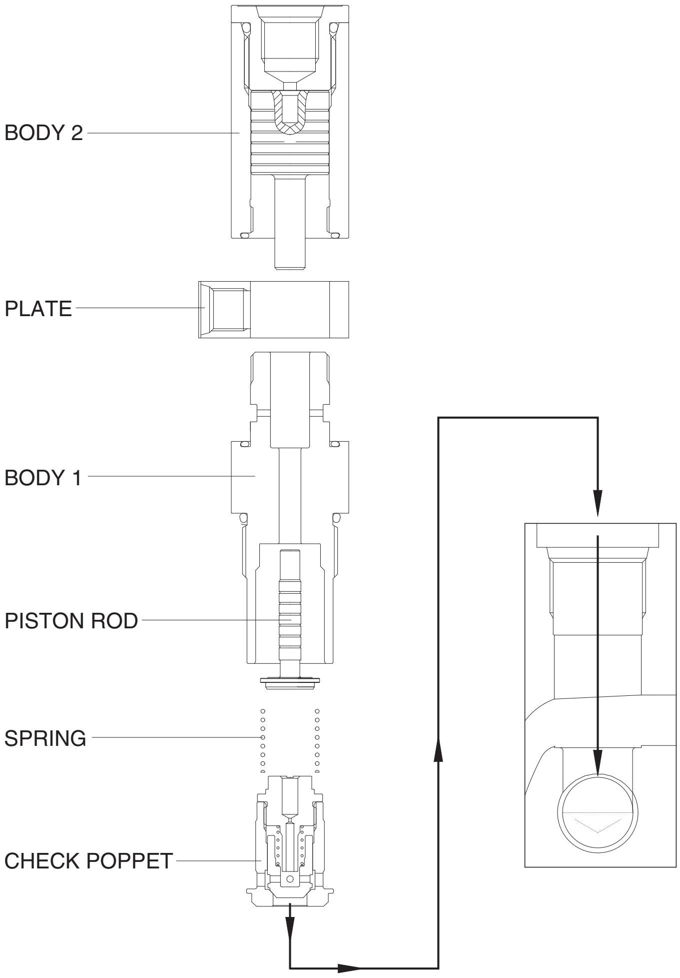


⑥ **The swing logic valve and bucket logic valve**

- Assemble the piston rod, spring and check poppet into the body 1 in order.
- Install the body 1 assembly into valve body and tighten to the specified torque.
  · Tightening torque : 2.9 kgf·m (21.0 lbf·ft)
- Assemble the banjo plate.

※ Confirm O-ring has been seated on the groove of banjo plate.

- Tighten the body 2 to the specified torque.
  · Tightening torque : 1.5 kgf·m (10.8 lbf·ft)



⑦ **Option ON/OFF valve**

- Assemble the check poppet into the valve body.

※ Push the check poppet about half of hole.

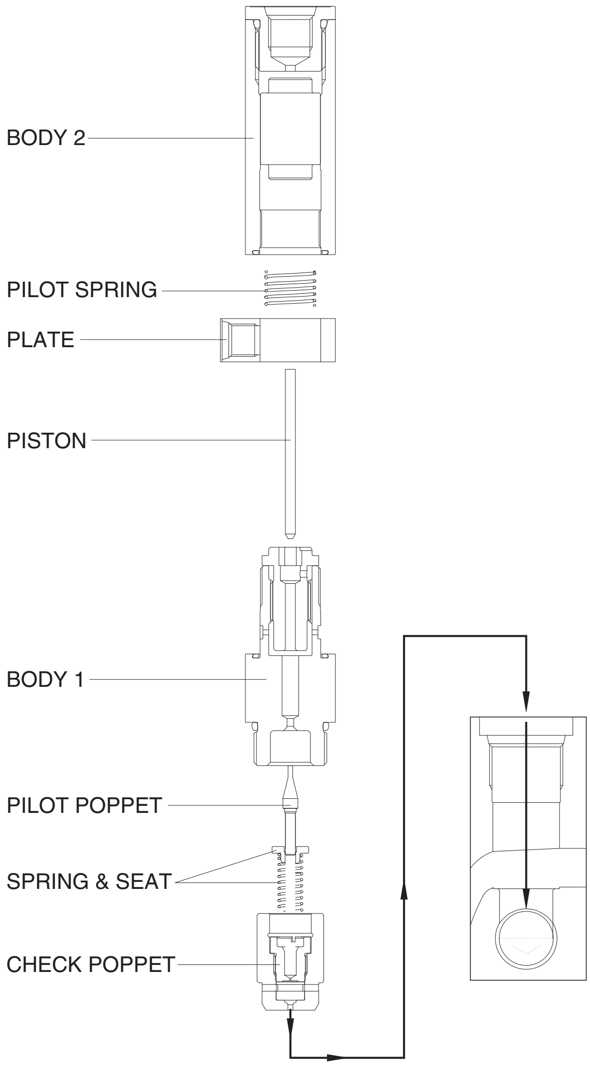
- Assemble the pilot poppet, spring and seat into check poppet.

※ As it can not be fixed, hang it diagonally.

- Insert the end of pilot poppet into the machined center hole of body 1 and push it complete
- slowly. Then tighten to the specified torque.
  · Tightening torque : 2.9 kgf·m (21.0 lbf·ft)

※ Tighten socket piston.

- When push the piston to the end, confirm the repulsive spring force.
- Assemble the banjo plate.
- Put the pilot spring into body 2 and assemble it into body 1 and then tighten to the specified torque.
  · Tightening torque : 1.5 kgf·m (10.8 lbf·ft)



GROUP 5 SWING DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

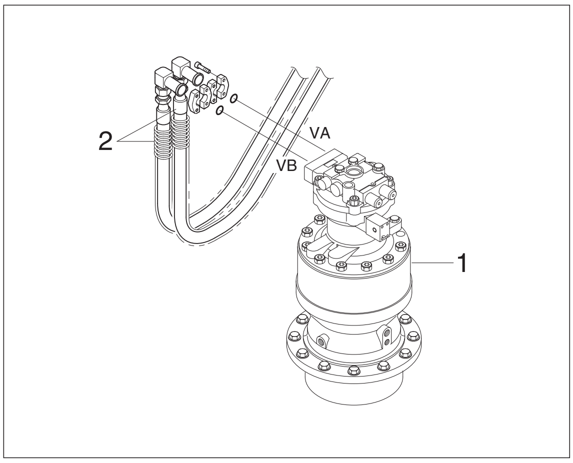
※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

(4) Disconnect hose assembly (2).

(5) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8).

(6) Sling the swing motor assembly (1) and remove the swing motor mounting socket bolts (9).

· Motor device weight : 61 ㎏ (135 ℓb)



(7) Remove the swing motor assembly.

※ When removing the swing motor assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Bleed the air from the swing motor.

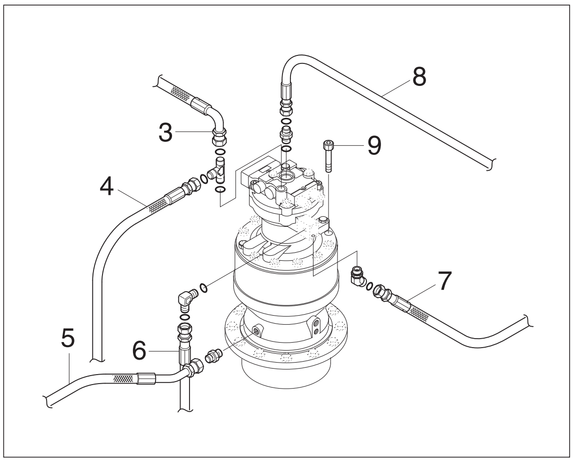
① Remove the air vent plug.

② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.

③ Tighten plug lightly.

④ Start the engine, run at low idling and check oil come out from plug.

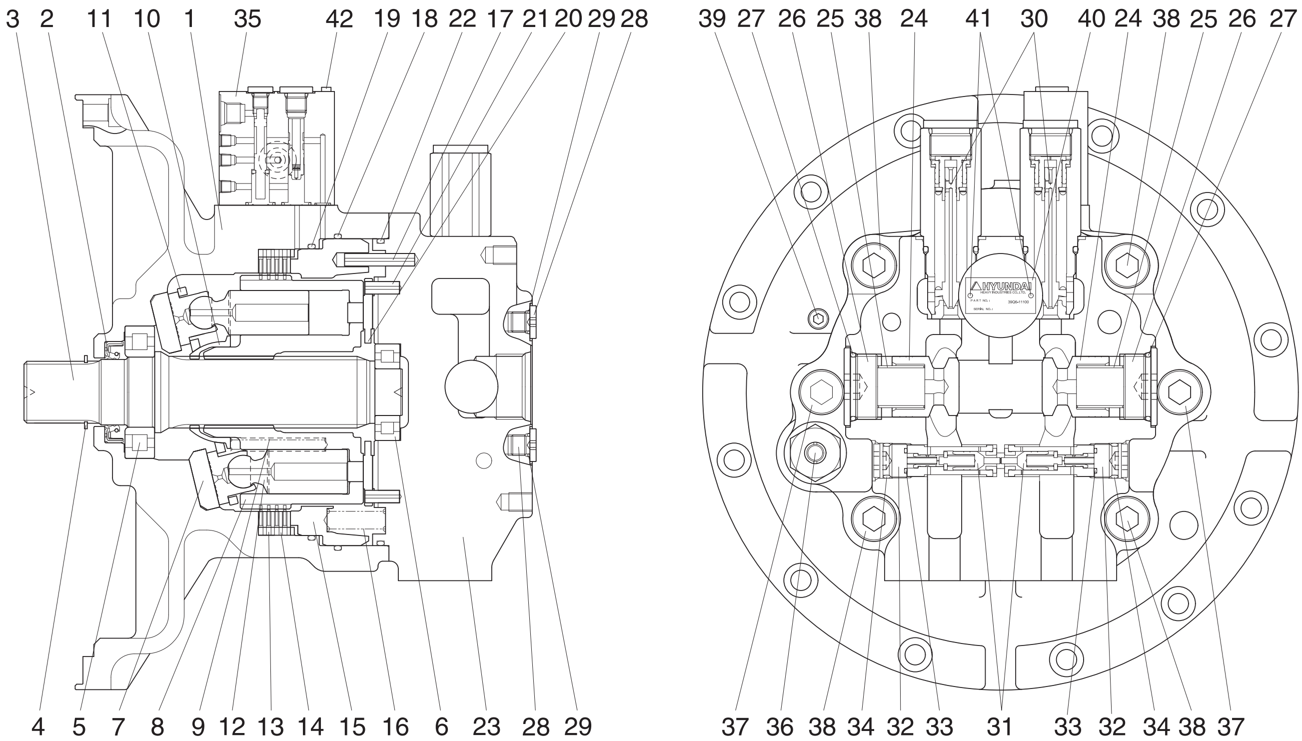
⑤ Tighten plug fully.



(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF SWING MOTOR

1) STRUCTURE



1	Casing	15	Parking piston	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Brake spring	30	Relief valve assy
3	Shaft	17	Spring pin	31	Reactionless valve assy
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Plug
5	Roller bearing	19	O-ring	33	O-ring
6	Needle bearing	20	Valve plate	34	O-ring
7	Swash plate	21	Spring pin	35	Time delay valve assy
8	Cylinder block	22	O-ring	36	Level gauge
9	Spring	23	Valve casing	37	Socket bolt
10	Ball guide	24	Check valve	38	Socket bolt
11	Retainer plate	25	Spring	39	Plug
12	Piston assy	26	Plug	40	Name plate
13	Friction plate	27	O-ring	41	Rivet
14	Separate plate	28	Plug	42	Socket bolt

2) DISASSEMBLY

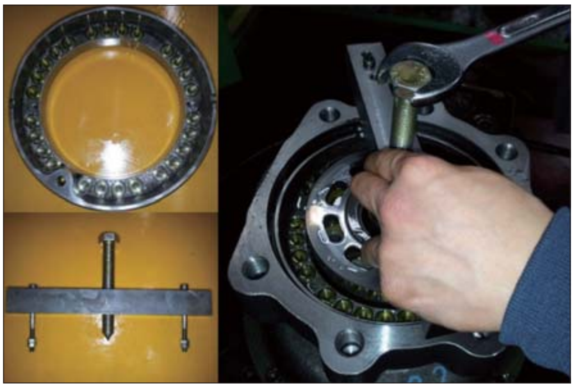
(1) Disassemble drive shaft

① Unloosing socket bolt (time delay valve, 42) and disassemble time delay valve assy (35) from casing (1).

② Disassemble level gauge (36) from casing (1).

③ Hang valve casing (23) on hoist, unloose socket bolt (37, 38) and disassemble from casing (1).

④ Disassemble spring (16) and using a jig, disassemble parking piston (15) from casing (1).



⑤ Disassemble respectively cylinder block sub (8), friction plate (13), separate plate (14) from casing (1).

⑥ Disassemble swash plate (7) from casing (1).

⑦ Using a plier jig, disassemble snap ring (4) from casing (1).

⑧ Disassemble shaft assy (3), oil seal (2) and O-ring (18, 22) from casing (1).

(2) Disassemble cylinder block sub

① Disassemble piston assy (12) from cylinder block (8).

② Disassemble ball guide (10) and spring (cylinder block, 9) from cylinder block (8).
- Ball guide × 1EA
- Spring × 9EA

(3) Disassemble valve casing sub

① Disassemble spring pin (17, 21), valve plate (20), O-ring (22) from valve casing (23).

② Using a torque wrench, disassemble relief valve (30) from valve casing (23).

③ Using a torque wrench, disassemble plug (32) from valve casing (23) and disassemble O-ring (33, 34) and reactionless valve assy (31).

④ Using a torque wrench, disassemble check valve (24) from valve casing (23).

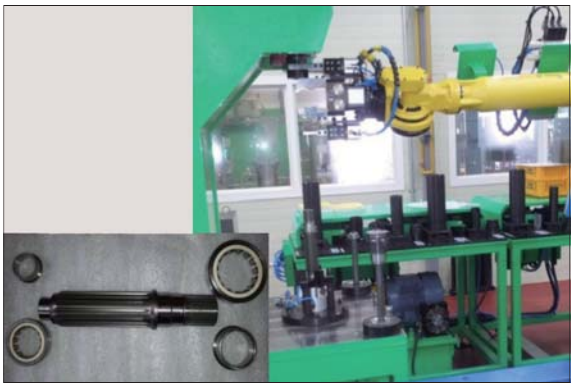
⑤ Disassemble plug (28), O-ring (29) from valve casing (23).

3) ASSEMBLING

(1) Assemble shaft sub

① Put roller bearing (3) on preheater and provide heat to inner race.
(Temperature in conveyor : 120°C for 3~5 minutes)

② Using a robot machine, assemble and press preheated roller bearing (3) into shaft (5).



(2) Assemble cylinder block sub

① Assemble 9 springs (cylinder block, 9) into cylinder block (8).

・Spring × 9EA

② Assemble ball guide (10) into cylinder block (8).

・Ball guide × 1EA

③ Assemble 9 piston assy (12) into retainer plate (11).

- Piston assy × 9EA
- Retainer plate × 1EA

④ Assemble parts of procedure ② and ③.

(3) Assemble valve casing sub

① **Assemble make up check valve sub**

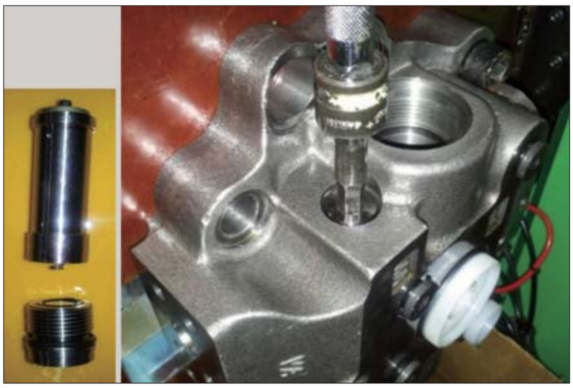
Assemble check valve (24), O-ring (27), plug (26) in that order and then screw it torque wrench.

- Make up check valve × 2EA
- Spring × 2EA
- Plug × 2EA
- O-ring × 2EA
- Tightening torque : 38 ± 3.8 kgf · m (275 ± 27.5 lbf · ft)

② **Assemble reactionless valve assy**

Assemble reactionless valve assy (31), plug (32), O-ring (33, 34) in that order and then screw it a torque wrench.

- Reactionless valve assy (31) × 2EA
- Plug (32) × 2EA
- O-ring (33, 34) × 2EA
- Tightening torque : 22 ± 1.5 kgf · m (159 ± 11 lbf · ft)

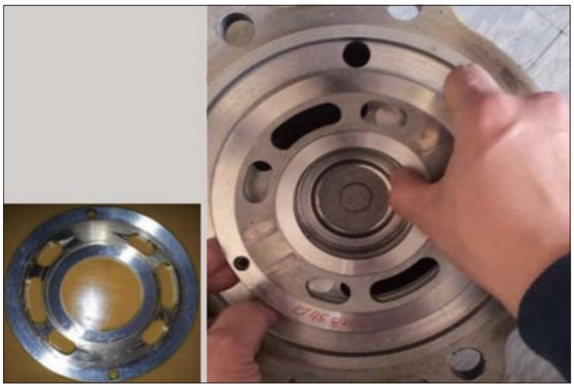


③ Using a torque wrench, assemble relief valve (30) 2 sets into valve casing (23).
  · Relief valve (30) × 2EA
  · Tightening torque : 18 ± 1.8 kgf · m
    (130 ± 13 lbf · ft)

④ Assemble plug (28) and O-ring (27) into valve casing (23).
  · Plug (28) × 3EA
  · O-ring (27) × 3EA
  · Tightening torque : 4.5 ± 0.4 kgf · m
    (32.5 ± 2.9 lbf · ft)

⑤ Assemble needle bearing (6) into valve casing (23) and assemble spring pin (17, 21) into valve casing (23).
  · Needle bearing (6) × 1EA
  · Spring pin (17, 21) × 1EA

⑥ Apply some grease valve plate (20) and assemble it into valve casing (23).



(4) Assemble drive shaft sub

① Using a jig, assemble oil sealing (2) into casing (1).

② Fit shaft sub (shaft+roller bearing) into casing (1).

③ Using a plier jig, assemble snap ring (4) to shaft (3).

· Snap ring × 1EA

④ Apply some grease swash plate (7) and assemble it into casing (1).

· Swash plate × 1EA

⑤ Insert O-ring (18, 19) into casing (1).
- O-ring (18) × 1EA
- O-ring (19) × 1EA

⑥ Assemble cylinder block (8) into casing (1).

⑦ Assemble separate plate (14) and friction plate (13) 4 sets into casing (1) and fit parking piston (15) into casing (1) by a jig or a press.
- Separate plate × 4EA
- Friction plate × 4EA
- Parking piston × 1EA

⑧ Assemble spring (parking piston, 16) into parking piston (15).
- Spring × 26EA

⑨ Lift up valve casing (23) on casing (1) by a crane and assemble it with socket bolts (37, 38).

· Tightening torque : 33±3.3 kgf · m
(239±23.9 lbf · ft)

⑩ Assemble level gauge (36) and plug (39) into casing (1).

· Tightening torque (36) : 15±1.0 kgf · m
(108.5±7.2 lbf · ft)

· Tightening torque (39) : 3±0.3 kgf · m
(21.7±2.2 lbf · ft)

⑪ Assemble time delay valve assy (35) into valve casing (23) with socket bolt (42).

· Time delay valve×1EA

· Socket bolt×3EA

· Tightening torque (42) : 1.3±0.1 kgf · m
(9.4±0.72 lbf · ft)

⑫ **Air pressing test**

Be sure of leakage, after press air into assembled motor and put it in water for 1 minute (pressure : 2 kgf/cm^2).

⑬ **Leakage check**

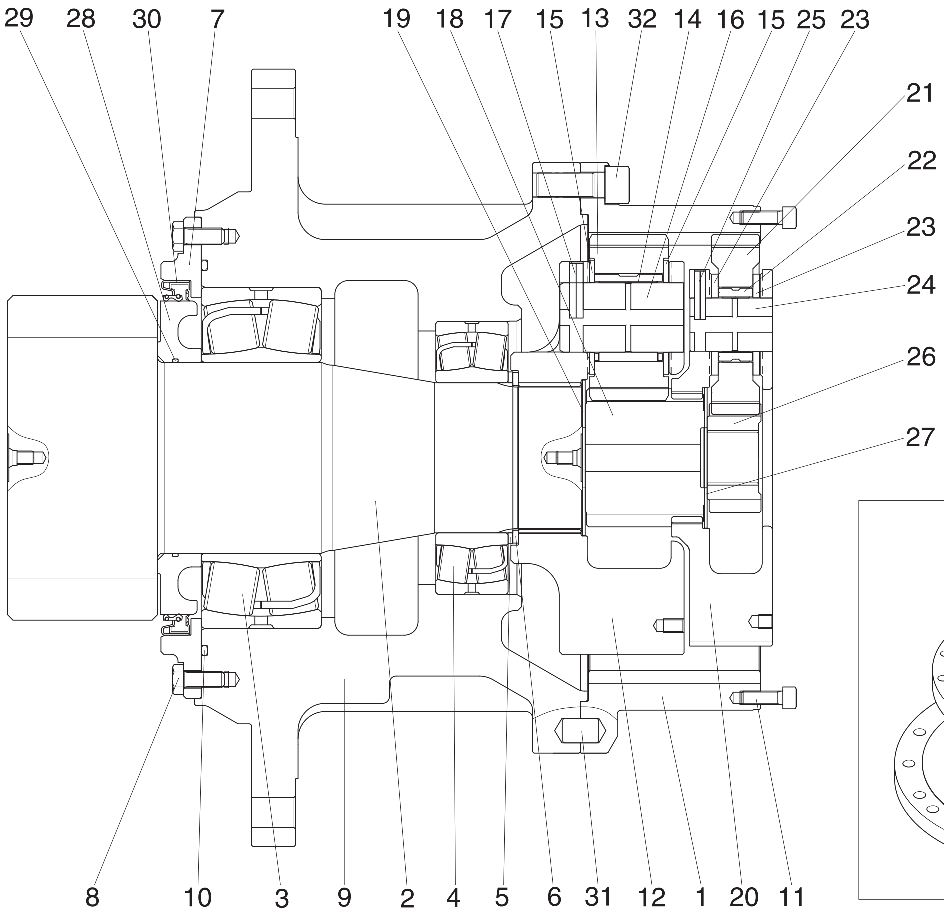
Place motor on a bench tester and after cleaning motor by color check No.1, paint No.3 and be sure of leakage.

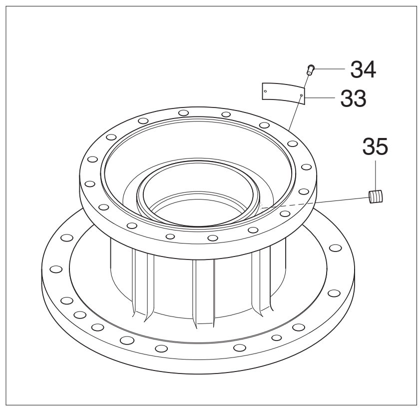
⑭ **Mount test bench**

Mounting motor a test bench, test the availability of each part.

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF REDUCTION GEAR

1) STRUCTURE





1	Ring gear	13	Planetary gear 2	25	Spring pin 1
2	Drive shaft	14	Needle bearing 2	26	Sun gear 1
3	Bearing	15	Thrust washer 2	27	Thrust plate 1
4	Bearing	16	Carrier pin 2	28	Sleeve
5	Thrust plate	17	Spring pin 2	29	O-ring
6	Snap ring	18	Sun gear 2	30	Oil seal
7	Cover	19	Thrust plate 2	31	Parallel pin
8	Hex head bolt	20	Carrier 1	32	Hex socket head bolt
9	Casing	21	Planetary gear 1	33	Name plate
10	O-ring	22	Needle bearing 1	34	Rivet
11	Hex socket head bolt	23	Thrust washer 1	35	Plug
12	Carrier 2	24	Carrier pin 1		

2) DISASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Preparation

① The reduction gear removed from machine is usually covered with mud.
Wash out side of reduction gear and dry it.
② Setting reduction gear on work stand for disassembling.
③ Mark for mating
Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.
⚠ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling not let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

(2) Disassemble the swing motor

① Loosen the hex wrench bolt (11, M10), and remove the swing motor.

(3) Disassemble the carrier No.1 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.1 (26), tightening eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.1 (20), then disassemble carrier No.1 assy.

(4) Disassemble the carrier No.2 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.2 (18), tighten eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.2 (12), then disassemble carrier No.2 assy.

(5) Disassemble carrier No.1 assy

① Hold jig to spring pin No.1 (26), then tap jig with a hammer, so that place spring pin in the center of carrier pin No.1 (24).

※ Do not reuse spring pin.
※ Disassemble method of carrier No.2 assy is same.

② Disassemble carrier pin No.1 (24), then disassemble planetary gear No.1 (21), thrust washer No.1 (23) from the carrier No.1 (20).

(6) Disassemble the ring gear (1).

① Separate ring gear (1) from casing (9).

※ Separate casing (9) by using the groove area because loctite is spread on joining surface of ring gear (1) and casing (9) to prevent oil leakage.

(7) Disassemble the drive shaft (2).

① Using the snapring plier, disassemble snap ring (6),then disassemble thrust plate (5).

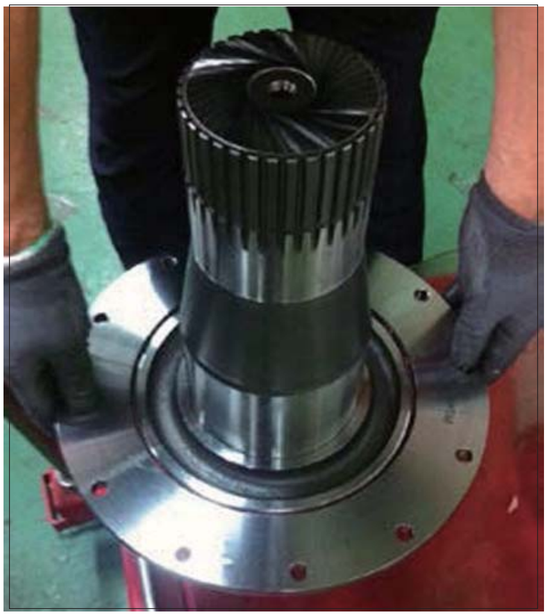
② Turn casing (9) over to face pinion gear upward. Then unscrew hex.head bolt (8) 12ea by using the tool.

③ Disassemble drive shaft sub assy by using the press machine.

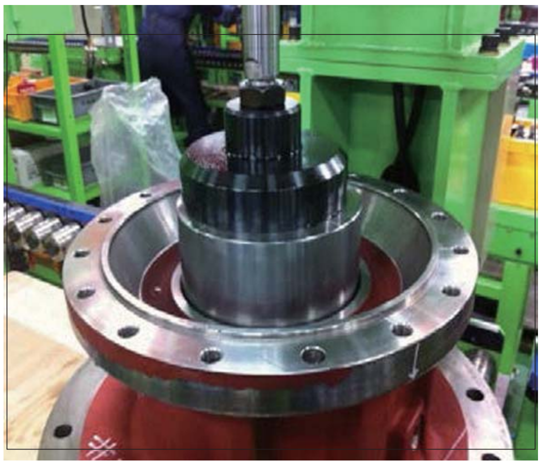
※ The drive shaft sub assy fall all together, so becareful when removing it.

④ Disassemble sph. roller bearing (3), cover (7), oil seal (30), and sleeve (28) from the drive shaft (2).

※ Do not reuse oil seal (30).



(8) Separate sph. roller bearing (4) from casing (9) by using the press machine.



3) ASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Even though assembly is accomplished by reversing disassembly steps, be careful of the following.

① Repair the damaged part when disassembling, prepare parts for the exchange in advance.

② All parts should be cleaned with cleaner, and dried with compressed air.

③ Sliding surface, O-ring, bearing and oil seal should be lubricated with clean hydraulic oil, prior to final assembly.

④ Replacement O-ring and oil seal with new parts is generally recommended.

⑤ Use a torque wrench to make sure that assembly fasteners are tightened to specified values.

⑥ When assembling bolt, spread Loctite.

(2) Assemble drive shaft (2).

① After heating sleeve (28) for 5 minutes at 80 ~ 90˚C, assemble O-ring (29).

※ Apply grease to the O-ring (29) to prevent damage.

② Apply grease to the oil seal (30), placed on the jig and then assemble it to cover (7) by using the press machine.

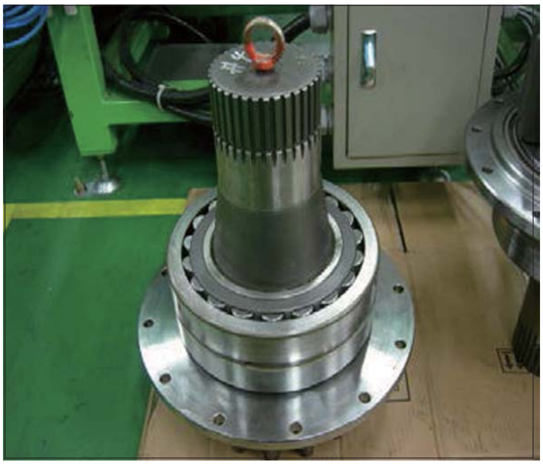
※ Apply grease to oil seal lip portion.
※ Be careful of damage of oil seal.

③ Assemble sleeve (28) and cover (7) to drive shaft (2).

※ Be careful of the direction of cover (7), sleeve (28).

※ Be careful of damage of oil seal.

④ After heating sph. roller bearing (3) for 13 minutes at 80~90˚C and doing demagnetization, then assemble it to drive shaft (2).



⑤ After assembling O-ring (10) on casing (9), assemble drive shaft sub assy by using a press machine.

⑥ After spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (8), screw them to fix casing (9) and cover (7).

※ Tightening torque : 8.8±0.9 kgf · m
(63.7±6.51 lbf · ft)

※ Screwing when rust inhibitor is not remove.

(3) Assemble sph. roller bearing (4).

① Assemble sph. roller bearing (4) to casing (9) by using the press machine.

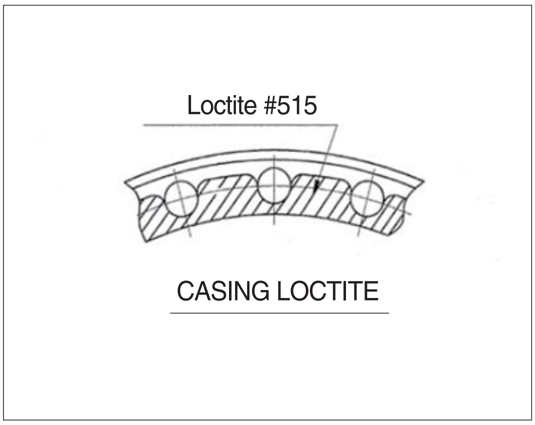
② After assembling thrust plate (5), assemble snap ring (6) to assembly groove of drive shaft (2).

※ Assemble selected thrust plate (5) to make gap (0.1~0.3 mm) between snap ring (6) and sph. roller bearing (4).

(4) Assemble ring gear (1).

① Spread the loctite #515 on the casing (9) with reference to the right detail view.

※ Loctite should not flow into casing (9).



② After press-fitting parallel pin (31) with a hammer on the casing (9). Then spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (32), screw them.

※ Tightening torque : 33±3.3 kgf · m
(239±23.9 lbf · ft)

※ Screwing when rust inhibitor is not removed.

(5) Assemble carrier No.1 assy

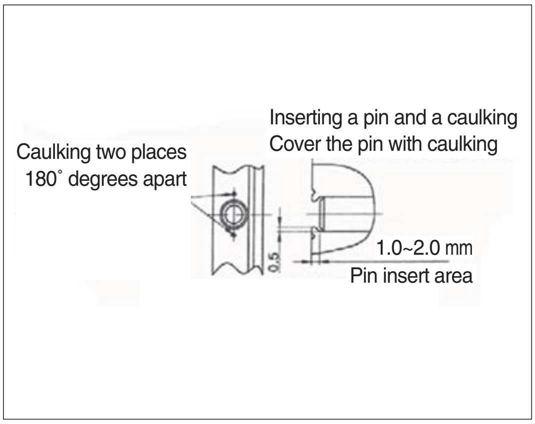
① After assembling thrust plate No.1 (27) on carrier No.1 (20), assemble thrust washer No.1 (23), planetary gear No.1 (21), then assemble carrier pin No.1 (24) by using the hammer.

※ Assembly method of carrier No.2 assy is same.

② Assemble spring pin No.1 (25) to fix carrier No.1 (20) and spring pin No.1 (25) by using the jig.

③ Caulking is performed on the assembled spring pin unit.

※ To cover pins, implement the caulking in two places that are located direction of 180 degrees around assembled spring pin No.1 (25).



(6) Assemble carrier No.2 assy

① Lift pre-assembled carrier No.2 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1). Then, press-fit it with polyurethane hammer.

※ Check caulking and rotating state before assembly.

(7) Assemble sun gear No.2 (18).

① Shaking sun gear No.2 (18) from side to side, assemble it to carrier No.2 assy to engage with planetary gear No.2 (13).

(8) Assemble carrier No.1 assy.
Lift carrier No.1 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1).

※ Check rotating state before assembly.

(9) Assemble sun gear No.1 (26).

① Shaking sun gear No.1 (26) from side to side, assembleit to engage planetary gear No.1 (21). Then fill with gear oil 11 liter.

GROUP 6 TRAVEL DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

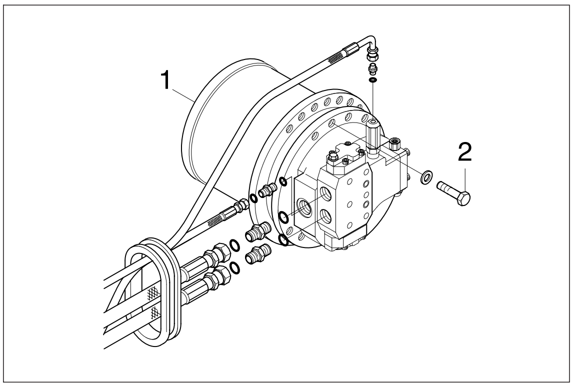
(1) Swing the work equipment 90° and lower it completely to the ground.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



(4) Remove the track shoe assembly.
For details, see **removal of track shoe assembly.**

(5) Remove the cover.

(6) Remove the hose.
※ Fit blind plugs to the disconnected hoses.

(7) Remove the bolts and the sprocket.

(8) Sling travel device assembly (1).

(9) Remove the mounting bolts (2), then remove the travel device assembly.
· Weight : 305 kg (670 lb)

2) INSTALL

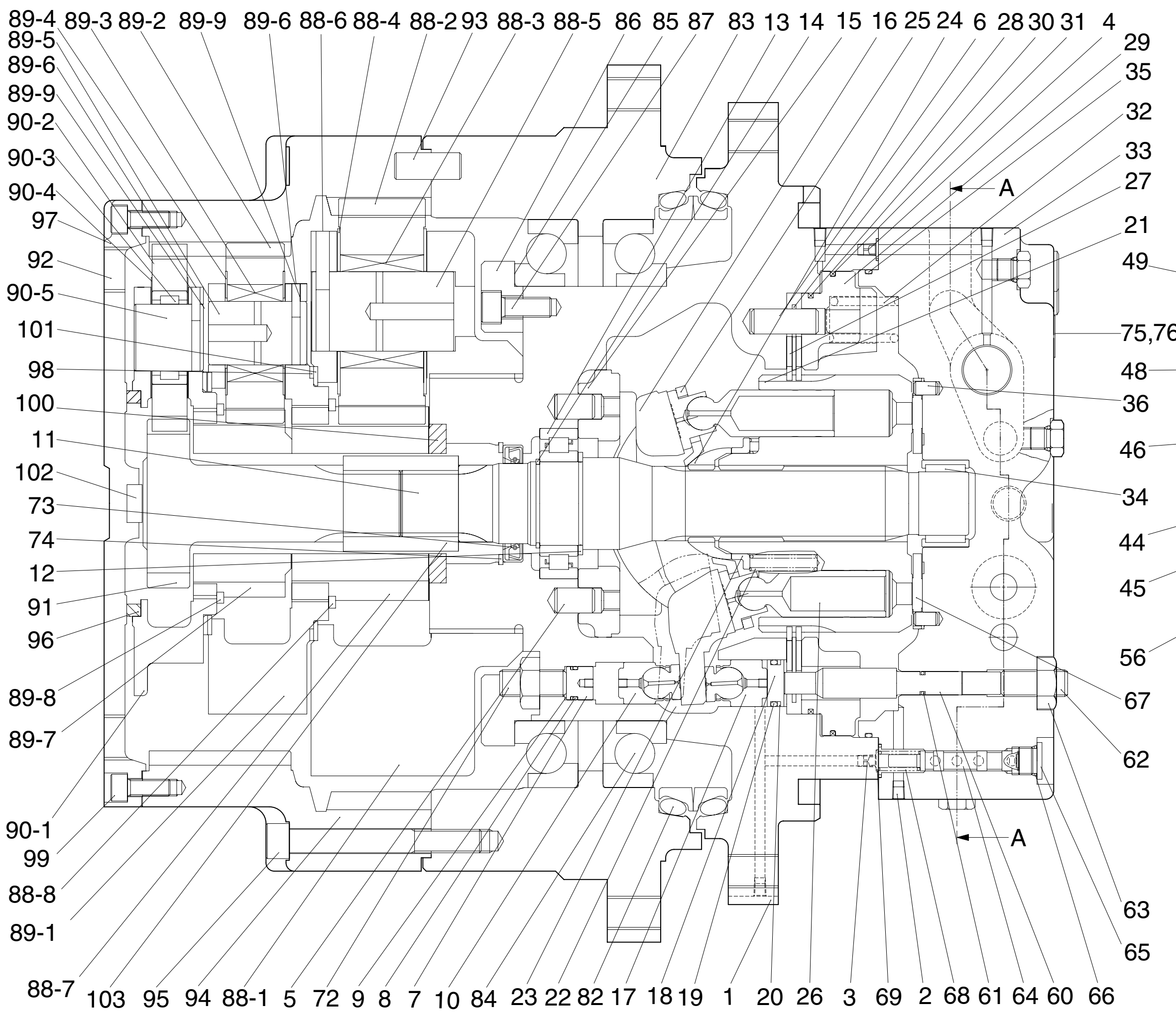
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

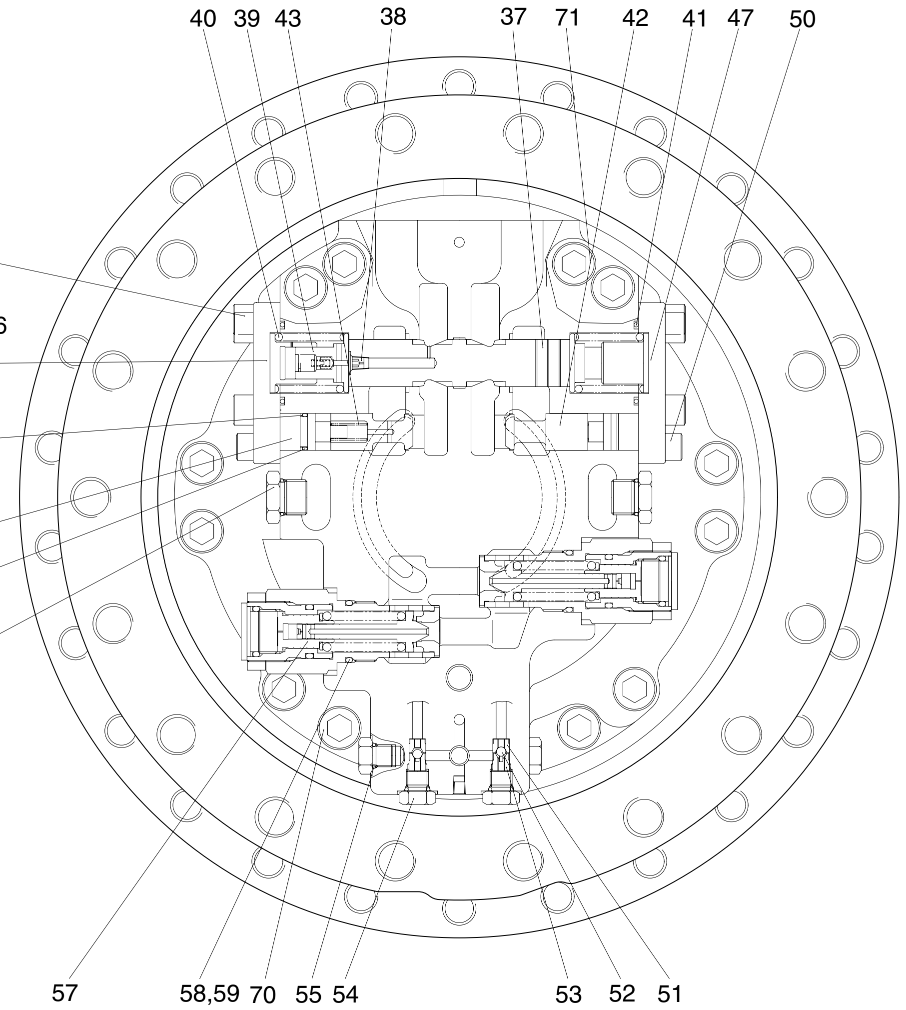
(2) Bleed the air from the travel motor.
① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.

(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR





SECTION A-A

1	Casing	16	Plate	31	Ring	46	Back up ring	61	O-ring	83	Housing	89-1	Carrier No.2	91	Sun gear No.1
2	Plug	17	Piston	32	Spring	47	Cap	62	Lock screw	84	Bearing	89-2	Planetary gear No.2	92	Plug
3	Screw	18	Stopper	33	Valve casing	48	Cap	63	Nut	85	Shim	89-3	Needle No.2	93	Lock pin
4	Screw	19	O-ring	34	Needle bearing	49	Bolt	64	Spool	86	Retainer	89-4	Thrust washer No.2	94	Ring gear
5	Pin	20	Back up ring	35	O-ring	50	Socket bolt	65	Plug	87	Bolt	89-5	Pin No.2	95	Bolt
6	Pin	21	Cylinder block	36	Pin	51	Seat	66	O-ring	88	Carrier No.3	89-6	Spring pin No.2	96	Thrust ring No.1
7	Stopper	22	Cylinder spring	37	Spool	52	Steel ball	67	Valve plate	88-1	Carrier No.3	89-7	Sun gear No.2	97	Cover
8	O-ring	23	Spacer	38	Screw	53	Stopper	68	Spring	88-2	Planetary gear No.3	89-8	Snap ring No.2	98	Thrust ring No.2
9	Back up ring	24	Guide	39	Damping check	54	Plug	69	O-ring	88-3	Needle No.3	89-9	Spring pin No.2	99	Bolt
10	Piston	25	Plate	40	Spring	55	O-ring	70	Socket bolt	88-4	Thrust washer No.3	90	Carrier No.1	100	Motor ring
11	Shaft	26	Piston & Shoe assy	41	O-ring	56	Plug	71	Socket bolt	88-5	Pin No.3	90-1	Carrier No.1	101	Thrust ring No.3
12	Spacer	27	Plate	42	Plunger	57	Relief valve	72	Lock screw	88-6	Spring pin No.3	90-2	Planetary gear No.1	102	Pad
13	Roller bearing	28	Plate	43	Spring	58	O-ring	73	Oil seal	88-7	Sun gear No.3	90-3	Needle bearing No.1	103	Coupling
14	Stop ring	29	Brake	44	Stopper	59	Back up ring	74	Lock ring	88-8	Snap ring No.3	90-4	Thrust washer No.1		
15	Support	30	Ring	45	O-ring	60	Rod	82	Floating Seal	89	Carrier No.2	90-5	Pin No.1		

2) TOOL AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Name of tools	B-size	Name of part applied
Hexagonal L-Wrench	4	Plug (2), Orifice screw (3, 4, 38)
	8	Hex socket bolt (50), Lock screw (62, 72), Plug (65)
	10	Hex socket bolt (49)
	46	Hex (57)
Socket wrench/ spanner	19	Hp plug (54)
	24	Hex nut (63)
	27	Hp plug (56)
Snap-ring plier (for holes, axis)		Ring stop (14), Ring lock (74)
Solder hammer		Needle bearing (34), Pin (5, 6, 36)
Torque wrench		Size : 500, 3000
Jig for assembling oil seal		Oil seal (73)
Induction heating apparatus for bearing		Roller bearing (13)

(2) Tightening torque

NO.	Part name	Standard	Size	Torque	
				kgf・m	lbf・ft
2	Plug	NPTF 1/16	4	0.9±0.2	6.51±1.45
3, 4, 38	Orifice screw	NPTF 1/16	4	0.7	5.06
49	Hex socket bolt	M12	10	10	72.33
50	Hex socket bolt	M10	8	6.7	48.46
54	Plug	PF 1/4	19	3.7	26.76
56	Plug	PF 1/2	27	11	79.56
57	Relief valve	HEX 46	46	18±1.0	130±7.0
63	Nut	M16	24	24	173.59
65	Plug	PF 3/8	8	7.5	54.25
70, 72	Hex socket bolt	M16	14	24	173.59
71	Hex socket bolt	M16	14	24	173.59

2. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

(1) Generally, hydraulic equipment is precisely manufactured and clearances between each parts are very narrow. Therefore, disassembling and assembling works should be performed on the clean place where dusts hardly gather. Tools and kerosene to wash parts should also be clean and handled with great care.

(2) When motor is removed from the host machine, wash around the ports sufficiently and put the plugs so that no dust and/or water may invade. Take off these plugs just before the piping works when re-attach it to the host machine.

(3) Before disassembling, review the sectional drawing and prepare the required parts, depending on the purpose and the range of disassembling.
Seals, O-rings, etc., if once disassembled, are not reusable.
There are some parts that should be replaced as a subassembly.
Consult with the parts manual in advance.

(4) The piston can be inserted to whichever cylinder block for the initial assembling.
However, their combination should not be changed if they are once used. To reuse them, put the matching mark on both pistons and cylinder block before disassembling.

⚠ **Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.**

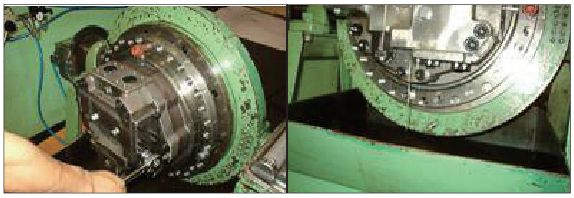
2) DISASSEMBLEING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Fix a hydraulic motor on jig with four pieces of bolts (M16×60L).

※ When rotating jig up to 90° in disassembling and assembling, fix a motor making drain plug (56) faced to the bottom.

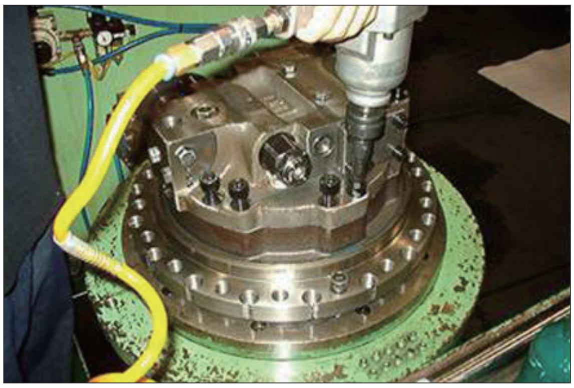
(2) After disassembling drain plug (56), let an oil in a case of a motor discharged.

※ Check whether manufactured chips or metal dust are added in a drain oil.



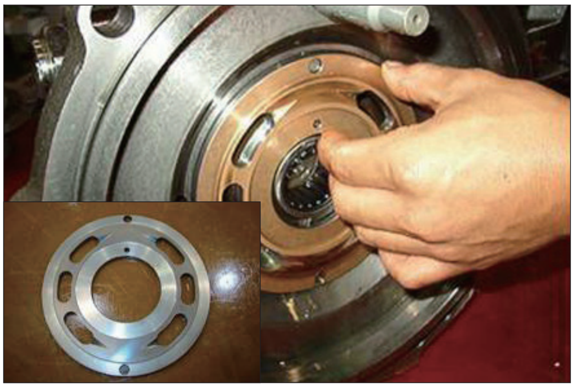
(3) In order to making the out-put axis of a hydraulic motor faced upward, disassemble ring lock (74) with a plier after rotating jig up to 90° in disassembling and assembling.

(4) Disassemble hexgon socket bolts (70, 71) holding valve casing.



(5) After detaching valve casing sub, disassemble valve plate (67).

※ In case of serious abrasion of valve plate, exchange it to a new one.

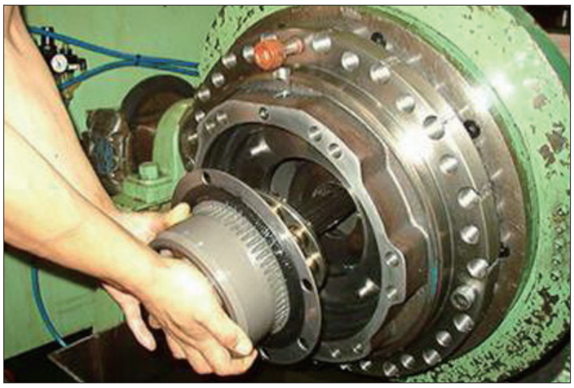


300072TM24A

(6) After taking brake spring (32) and then bonding two pieces of M16 bolts to brake piston (29), disassemble it pulling it upward.

※ There are 10 pieces of brake spring.

(7) First, rotate jig in disassembling and assembling up to 90° , then let a motor faced toward the horizon. then disassemble a cylinder and piston sub.

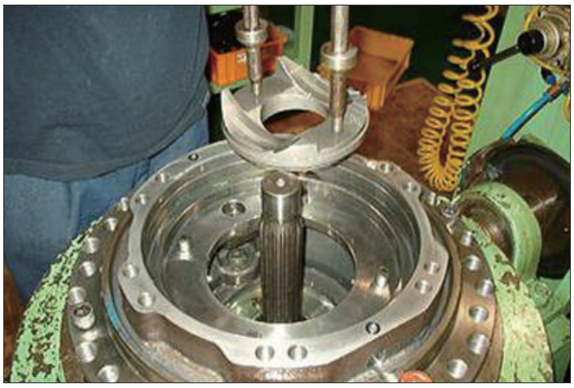


(8) disassemble stopper L (18) and piston swash (17).

※ Piston swash : Use M5 bolt

(9) Disassemble swash plate (16).

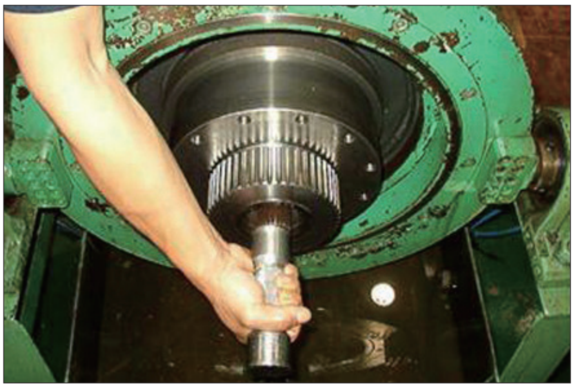
(10) After put M12 into support (15), disassemble support.



(11) disassemble piston swash (10) and stopper (7).

(12) In order to making the turning axis (11) faced upward, put it way from shaft casing tapping the bottom of the turning axis with hammer, after rotating jig up to 90° in disassembling and assembling.

※ Try to deal with roller bearing (13) without any damage.

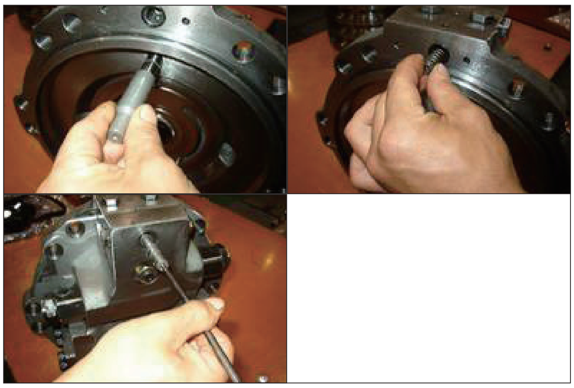


(13) Disassemble valve casing sub.

※ Try to deal with needle bearing (3) without any damage.

① Disassemble plowing road (60), automatic changeover spring (68), and automatic changeover spool (64).

※ Do not touch hexagon nut (63) for controlling the amount of an oil and lock screw (62).
If there is any abnormality on plowing spool and spring, exchange them to new ones.



② After unloading hexagon socket bolts (49, 50) and taking caps (47,48) away, disassemble parts of counter balance valve (37~46).

※ In disassembling counter balance valve, be careful of figuring out the directions such as the right or the left of finger.
If there is any abnormality in spool spring check, exchange it to new one.

(14) Disassemble cylinder sub.

① Disassemble set plate (25) and piston (26) sub.

② Disassemble friction plate (27) and lee plate (28) in cylinder block (21).

③ Dismantle ball guide (24), spacer (23), and cylinder spring (22).

3) ASSEMBLING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Assemble the sub of a turning axis.

① After assembling bearing spacer (12) into a turning axis (11), have cylinder roller bearing (13) thermal-reacted.

a. In the thermal reaction of cylinder roller bearing, use and induction heating apparatus and adjust the temperature as about 100°C.

b. Deal moisturized copper part oil seal in a turning axis without any damage of it.

(2) Assemble ring stop (14) with a plier.

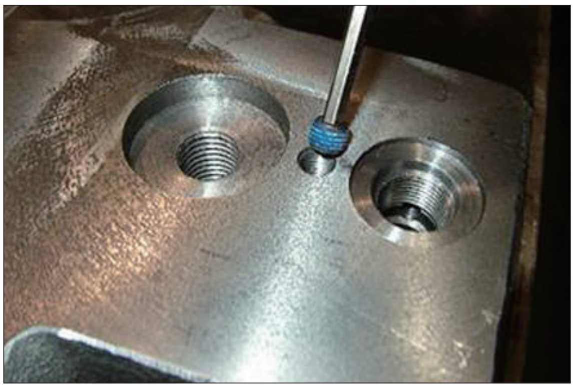
※ Be careful of the direction of ring stop. (The direction of round is the side of bearing)

(3) Assemble valve casing sub.

① Bond seven pieces of plug (2) in valve casing (33) with standard torque.

② After taping plug with seal taper and spread rock tight, assemble it.

· Tightening torque : 7~11 kgf · m (50.63~79.5 lbf · ft)



(4) Compress pin (36) into.

※ Using a hammer, make the height of pin 5mm from the a contact surface of valve plate.

(5) Assemble needle bearing (34).

(6) Assemble seat (51), ball (52), stopper (53), and hp plug (54) with O-ring (55), respectively.

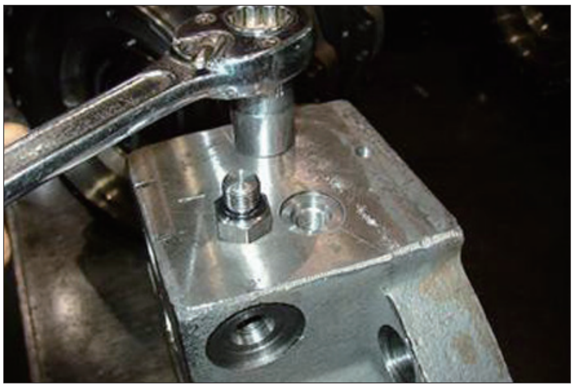
① Be careful of the procedure and direction of assembling seat and stopper.

· Tightening torque : 37 kgf · m (267.6 lbf · ft)

(7) Assemble hp plug (54) set up with O-ring (55).

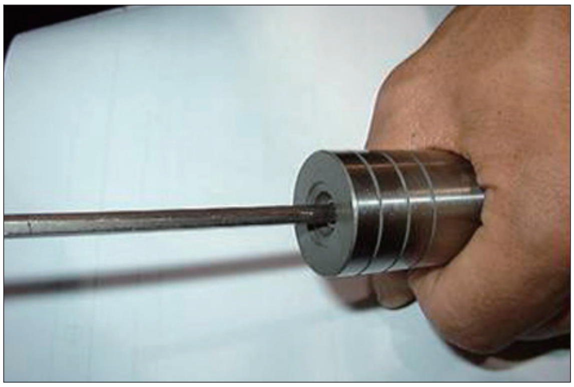
· 5sites

· Tightening torque : 37 kgf · m (267.6 lbf · ft)



(8) Bond orifice screw (38) on the right and left side of spool c.b (37) with a standard torque.

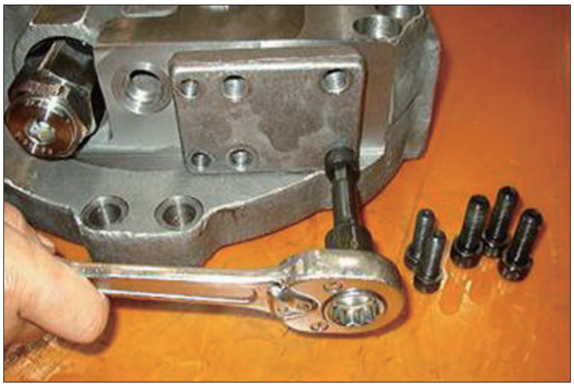
· Tightening torque : 7 kgf · m (50.63 lbf · ft)



(9) Insert hold spool c.b (37) and damper check (39) into valve casing.

(10) Bond cap R (47) and cap L (48) with hexagon socket bolts (49, 50).

① Remember not to exchange cap R, L each other in assembling.
Tightening torque
· M12 : 100 kgf · m (item 49)
· M10 : 67 kgf · m (item 50)

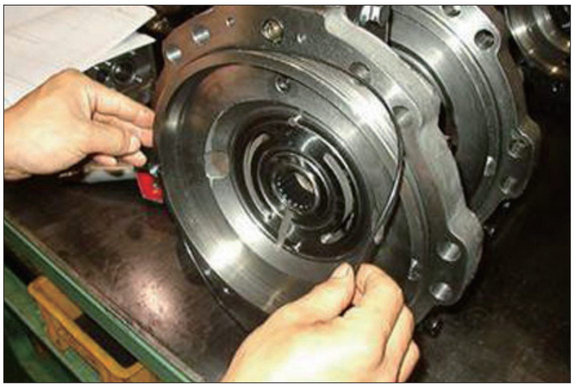


(11) After fastening with torque, insert automatic plowing spool (04), spring (68) and O-ring (69).

· Tightening torque : 75 kgf · m (542.4 lbf · ft)

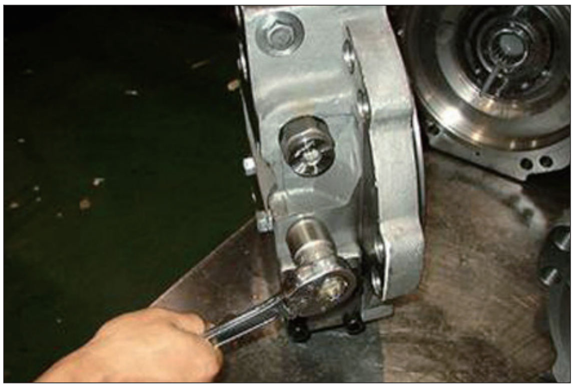
(12)Assemble swash road (60) inserted by O-ring (61).

(13)Insert O-ring (32) into valve casing.



(14)Bond drain plug (30) inserted by O-ring (31) with standard torque.

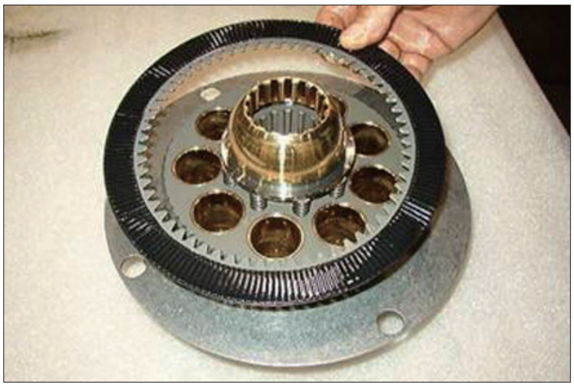
· Tightening torque : 100 kgf · m (723.3 lbf · ft)



(15)Assemble cylinder sub.

① Assemble cylinder spring (22), spacer (23), and spherical surface bush (24) into cylinder (21).
Set the position of spline of spherical surface bush and cylinder.

(16)Assemble friction plate (27) and separated plate (28) into cylinder.



(17)After insert piston shoe (26) into set plate (25), assemble it into cylinder.

(18)Using jig, compress oil seal (73) into shaft casing (01).

(19)Assemble the body of a motor.

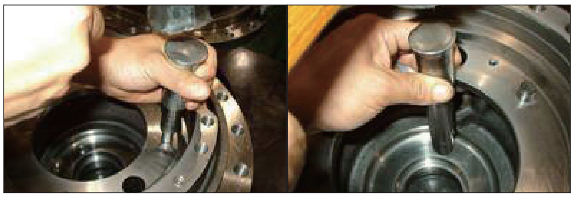
① Bond seven piece of plug (02) in shaft casing plug with standard torque.

a. After taping plug with seal taper and spread rock tight, assemble it.
  · Tightening torque : 7~11 kgf · m
  (50.63~79.5 lbf · ft)

(20) Using a hammer and a handle, compress pin (5, 6).

① Pin(5) : Set the height as 10㎜ from the contact surface of a plate supporter. - 2pieces.

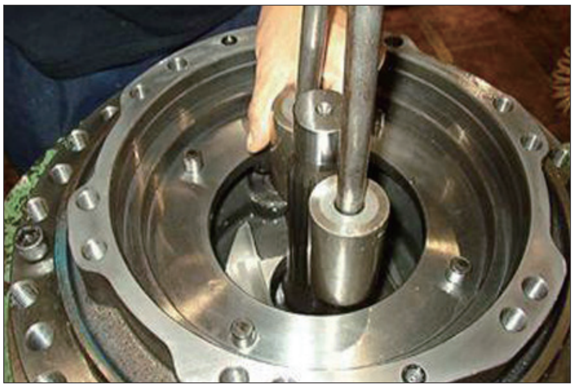
Pin(6) : Set the height as 19㎜ from the manufactured surface of shaft casing. - 4pieces.



(21) Assemble sub of a turning axis.

(22) Assemble plate supporter (15) with M12 bolt.

※ Be careful of the direction of plate supporter driven.

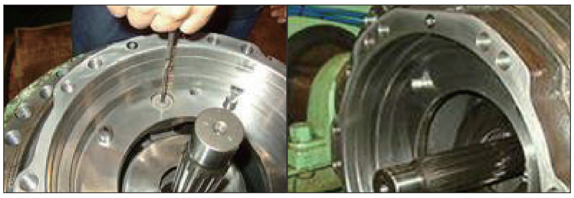


(23) Assemble plate (16) into plate supporter.

① Spread grease in moisturized copper part of plate.

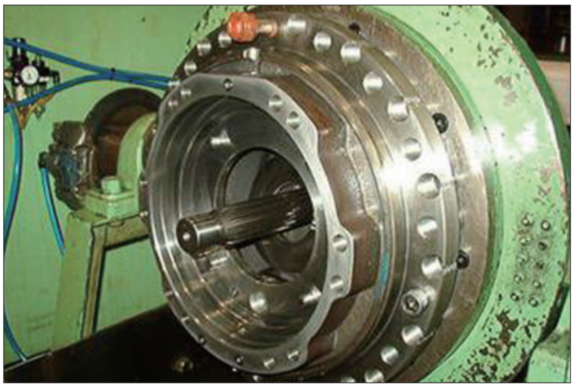
② Confirm the soft movement of plate.

(24) Assemble stopper L (36) combined by plowing piston (35) and O-ring (42).



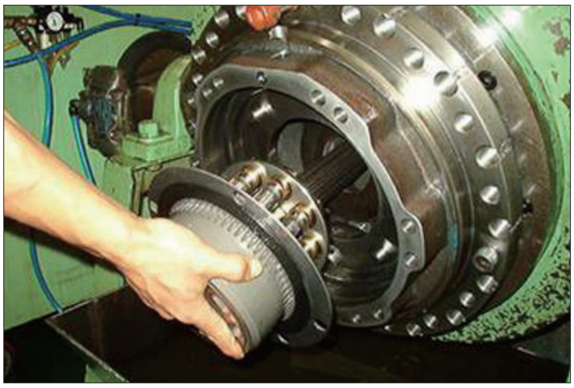
(25) Rotating dismantling and assembling jig up to 90° make shaft from perpendicular to horizontal.

※ Be careful that plate is not segregated from plate supporter.

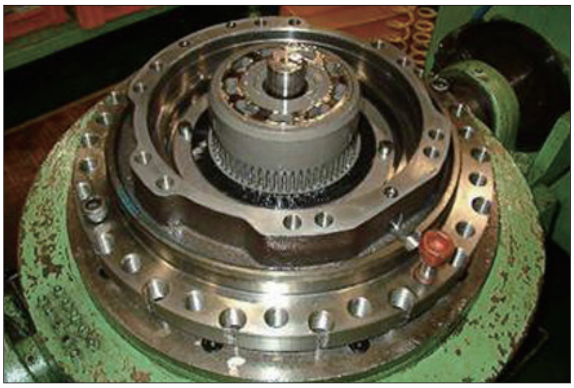


(26) Assemble cylinder sub.

※ Adjusting pin into holes of separated plate, assemble it.



(27) Rotating dismantling and assembling jig up to 90° , make the direction of shaft from the horizon to the perpendicular.



(28) Assemble piston ring (30), piston ring 252 (30) and 278 (31) into brake piston (29).

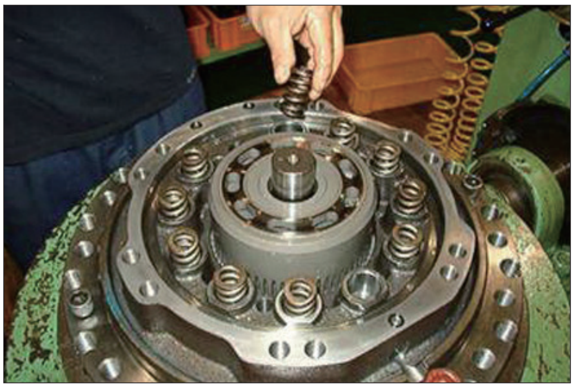
(29) Assemble brake piston into shaft casing.

※ Be careful of the direction of assembling brake piston.

(30) Assemble brake spring (32).

※ Quantity : Spring-10pieces, Holes-11pieces

※ Do not assemble on the top of brake piston.



(31) Insert O-ring (69), after fastening orifice screw (4) with standard torque.

· Quantity and size : (4) 2 pieces- ø 1.0
(56) 1pieces- ø 1.5

· Tightening torque : 7 kgf · m (50.63 lbf · ft)

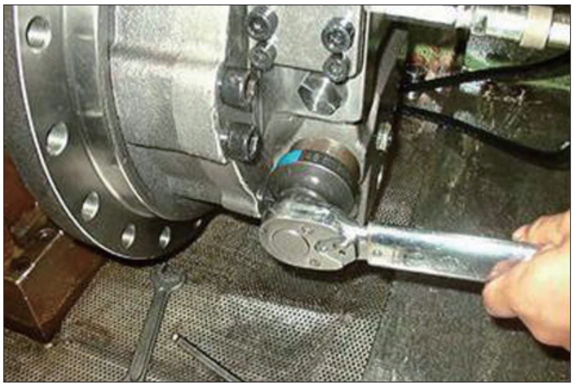
(32)After inserting valve plate (67) into valve casing, bond it into shaft casing with hexagon socket bolt (70).

① Spread grease on the back side of valve plate, in order for valve plate to be adhered well.
② Use a crane in assembling it into valve plate shaft casing.
③ Set holes, ø5, of valve plate heading toward the port of the inlet and outlet of valve casing.
④ Spread grease in the side of plowing spool of plowing spring in order that plowing spring can not be detached.

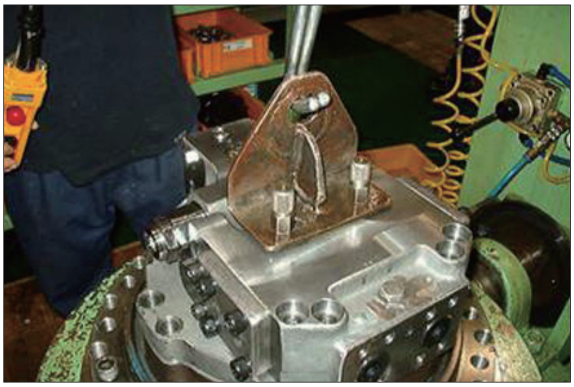
· Tightening torque : 240 kgf · m
(1736 lbf · ft)

· Tightening torque : 180±10 kgf · m
(1302±72.3 lbf · ft)

(33)Bond relief valve (57) with standard torque.



(34)Unloosen four pieces of bolts (M20×50L) fixing a motor and remove the motor away from jig.



3. DISASSEMBLING REDUCTION UNIT

1) Preparation for disassembling

(1) The reduction units removed from excavator are usually covered with mud. Wash outside of propelling unit and dry it.

(2) Locate reducer in order for drain port to be at the lowest level loosen taper screw plug of drain port, and drain oil from reduction gear.

※ While oil is still hot, inside of the unit may be pressurized.

⚠ **Take care of the hot oil gushing out of the unit when loosening the plug.**

(3) Mark for mating

Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.

2) Setting reduction unit (or whole propelling unit) on work stand for disassembling

(1) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (M10, 19) at 3 places from cover (17) almost equally each other, and then install eye bolts (M10).

Lift up the unit using them and place it on work stand with cover upward.

※ Take great care not th pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

3) Removing cover

(1) Remove the rest of hexagon socket head bolts (M10, 19) that secure ring gear.

Loosen all the socket bolts and then, disassemble cover.

(2) As the cover (17) is adhered to ring gear (14), dissemble ring gear (14) and cover (17) by lightly hammering slantwise upward using sharpen punch inserted between the cover and ring gear.

4) Removing NO.1 carrier sub assy

(1) Remove No.1 sun gear

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.1 sun gear.

(2) Screw three eye bolt (M10, 15) in No.1 carrier and lift up and remove No.1 carrier assy.

5) Removing No. 2 carrier sub assy

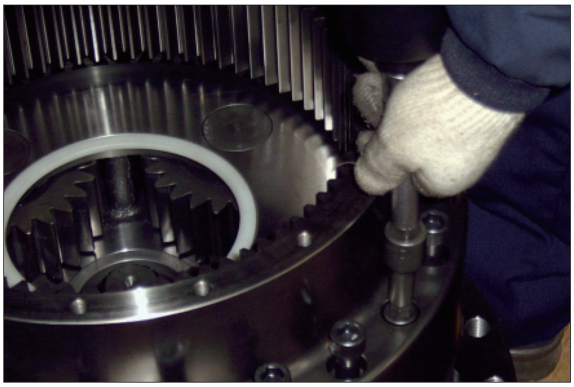
(1) Remove No.2 sun gear

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.2 sun gear.

(2) Screw three M10 eye bolt in No.2 carrier and lift up and remove No.2 carrier assy.

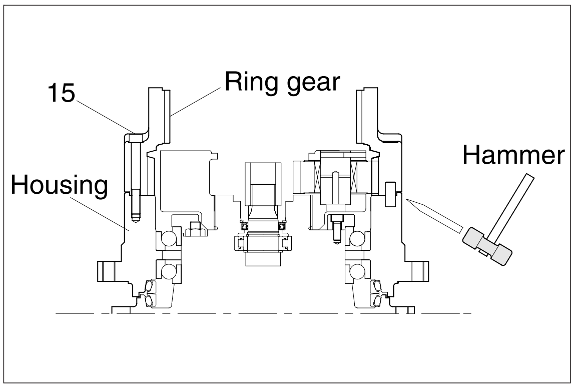
6) Removing ring gear

(1) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (M14, 15) that secure ring gear and housing.

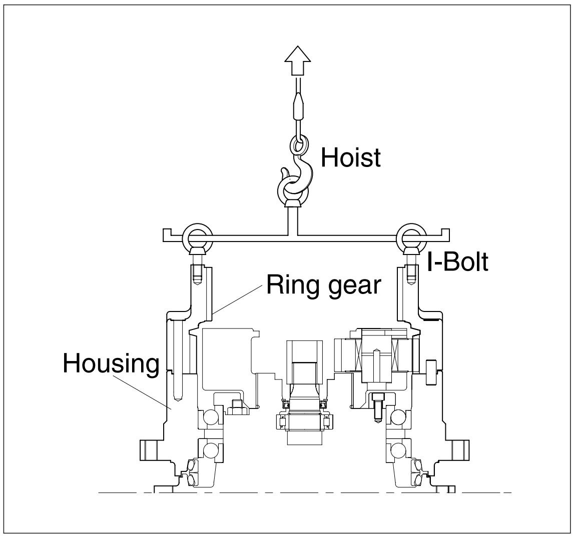


(2) As the ring gear (14) is adhered to housing (3), disassemble ring gear (14) and housing (3) by lightly hammering slantwise upward using sharpen punch inserted between the ring gear and housing.

※ Carefully disassembling ring gear not to make scratch on it.



(3) Screw three eye bolt (M10) in ring gear and lift up and remove it.

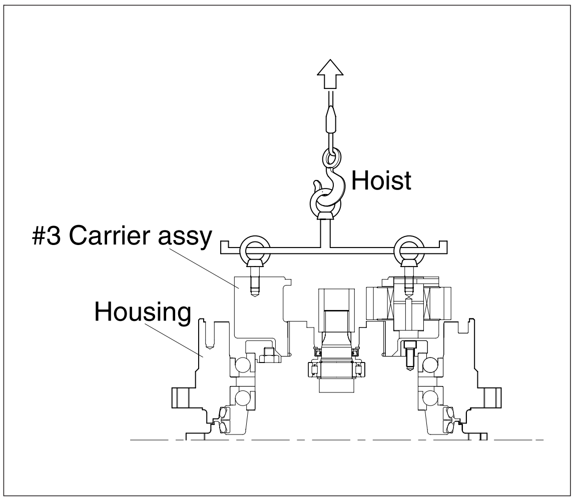


7) Remove No.3 carrier sub assy

(1) Removing No.3 sun gear

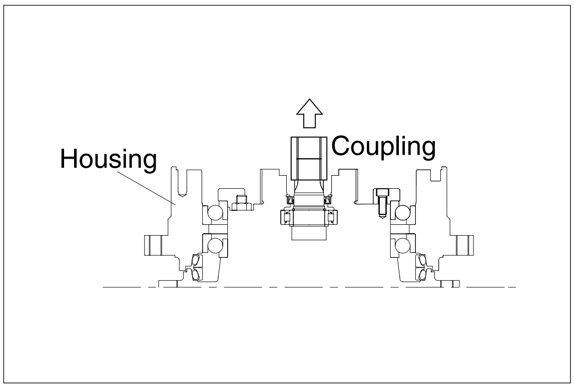
※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.3 sun gear.

(2) Screw three eye bolt(M10) in No.3 carrier and lift up and remove No.3 carrier assy.



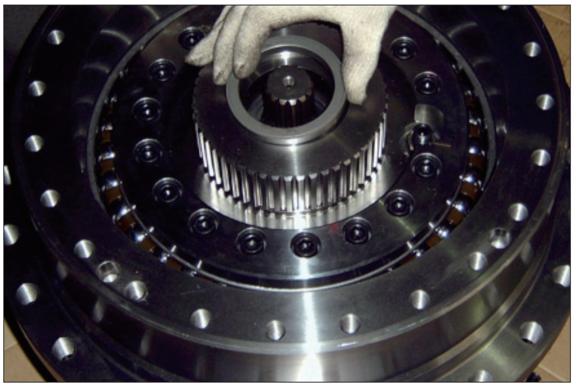
8) Remove coupling

(1) Remove coupling



9) Remove motor ring

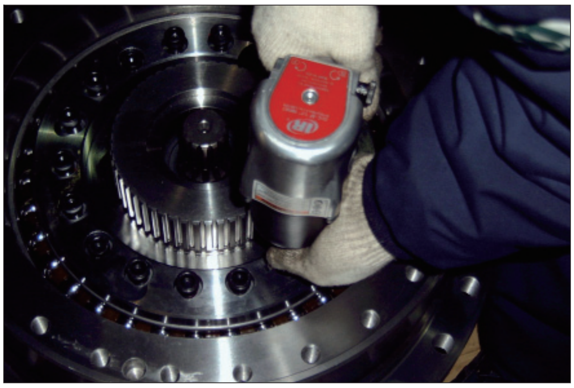
(1) Remove motor ring using hand.



10) Removing retainer & shim

(1) Remove hexagon socket (M12) head bolts that retainer and motor.

(2) Remove retainer & shim.

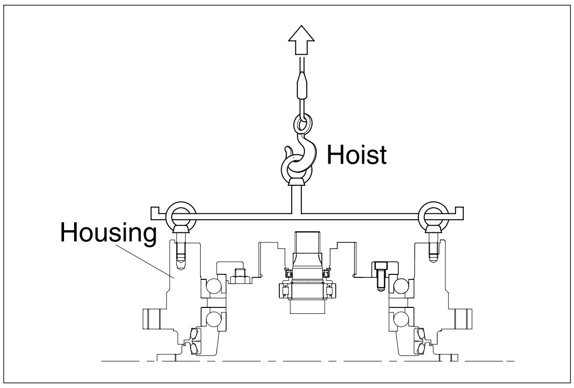


11) Removing housing sub assy

(1) Screw eye bolt (M14) in housing and lift up housing assembly including angular bearing and floating seal.

12) Removing floating seal

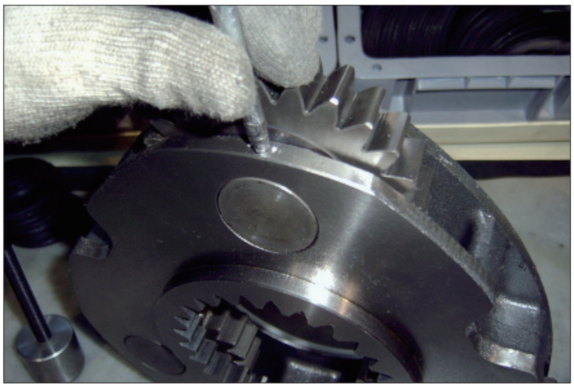
(1) Lift up a piece of floating seal of motor side.



13) Dissembling housing assembly

(1) After turning housing, lift up a piece of floating seal from housing and then remove it.

※ Don't disassemble angular bearing.

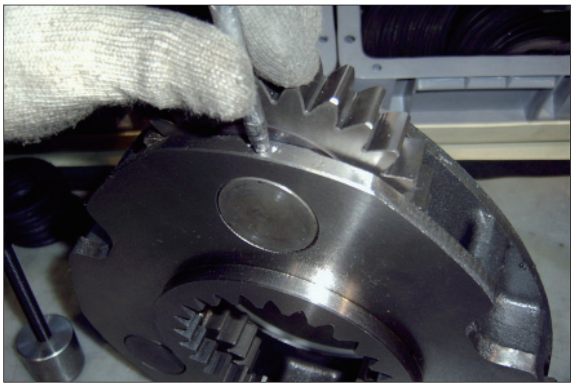


14) Dissembling No.1 carrier

(1) Remove thrust ring (16) from carrier.

(2) Knock spring pin (89-6) fully into No.1 pin (90-5).

(3) Remove planetary, thrust washer, No.1 pin, bearing from carrier.



15) Disassembling No.2,3 carrier

(1) Disassemble (14) carriers, using the same method for No.1 carrier assembly.

6. ASSEMBLING REDUCTION GEAR

- General precautions

  Clean every part by kerosene and dry them by air blow.

  Surfaces to be applied by locktite must be decreased by solvent.

  Check every part for any abnormals.

  Each hexagon socket head bolt should be used with locktite No. 242 applied on its threads.

  Apply gear oil slightly on each part before assembling.

  Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts or tools while assembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

Inspection before reassembling

Thrust washer

· Check if there are seizure, abnormal wear or uneven wear.

· Check if wear is over the allowable limit.

Gears

· Check if there are pitting or seizure on the tooth surface.

· Check if there are cracks on the root of tooth by die check.

Bearings

· Rotate by hand to see if there are something unusual such as noise or uneven rotation.

Floating seal

· Check flaw or score on sliding surface or on O-rings.

1) Assembling No.1 carrier

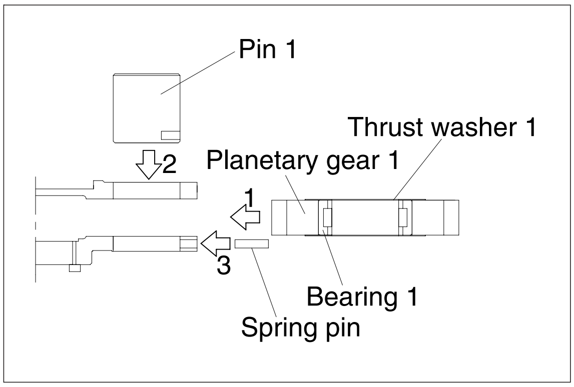
(1) Put No.1 carrier (90-1) on a flat place.

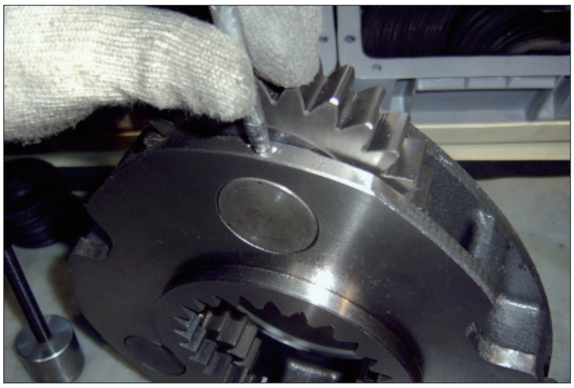
(2) Install No.1 needle bearing (90-3) into No.1 planetary gear (90-2), put 2 ea of No.1 thrust washer (90-4) on both sides of bearing, and then install it into carrier.

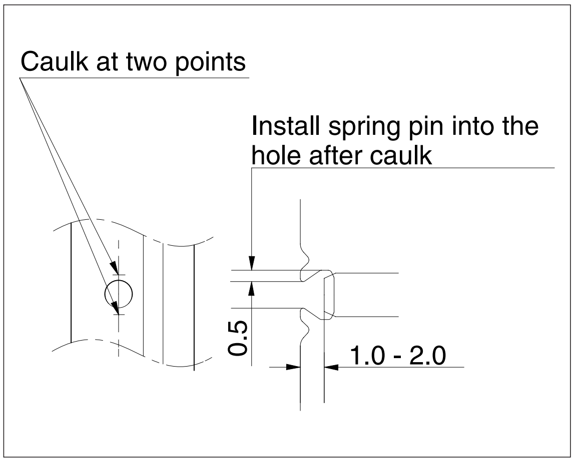
(3) Install No.1 pin (90-5) into No.1 carrier where the holes for No.1 pin (90-5) are to be in line with those of No.1 carrier, and then, install spring pins into the holes.

(4) Caulk carrier holes as shown on the picture.

(5) Assembly ring thrust (96) into carrier.







2) Assembling No.2 carrier

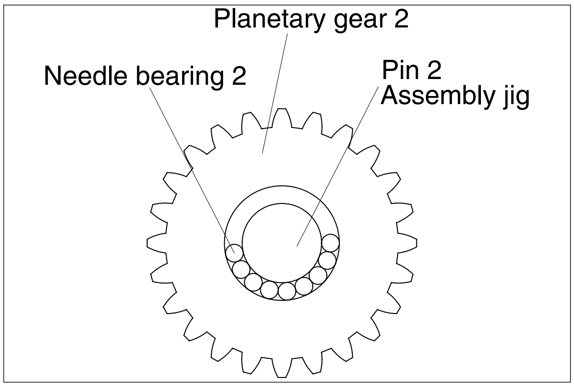
(1) Make No.2 planetary gear (89-2) vertical, assemble 8-9 ea of No.2 needle (89-3), and then, assemble the remaining No.2 needle by use of the assembly jig for No.2 pin (89-5).

(2) Remove out the assembly jig for No.2 pin and assemble 2 ea of No.2 thrust washer (89-4) into No.2 carrier (89-1).

(3) Insert No.2 pin (89-5) into carrier where the holes of No.2 pin (89-5) are in line with those of carrier.

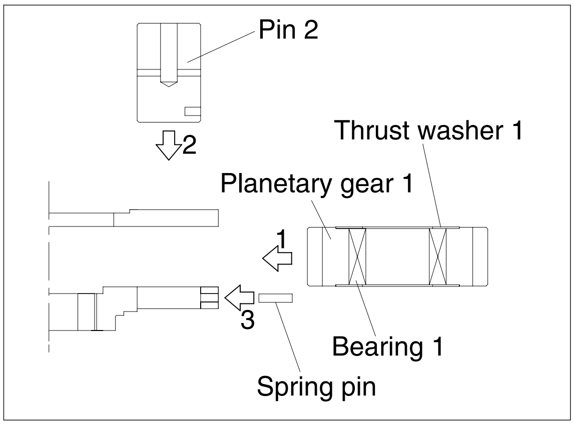
(4) Hammer spring pin (89-6) to insert into carrier hole and No.2 pin hole, and then, caulk. Assemble 2 sets using the same method.

(5) Assemble ring thrust (98) into carrier.



3) Assembling No.3 carrier

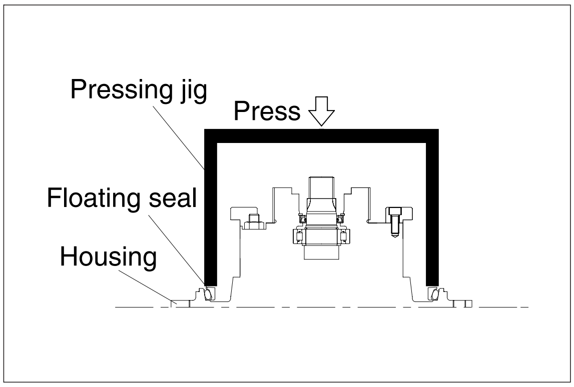
(1) Assemble 4 sets, using the same method for assembly of No.2 carrier.

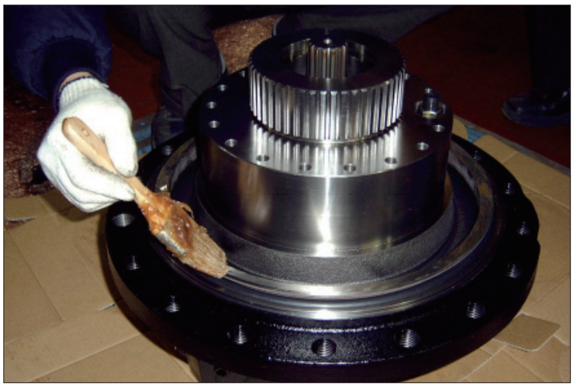


4) Installing floating seal

(1) Assemble floating seal into motor by use of pressing jig.

(2) Grease the contact parts for floating seal which is assembled into motor.



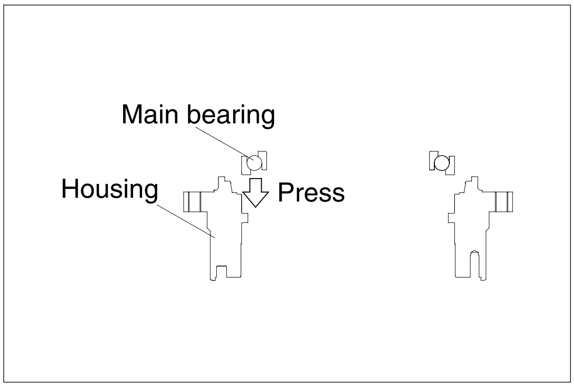


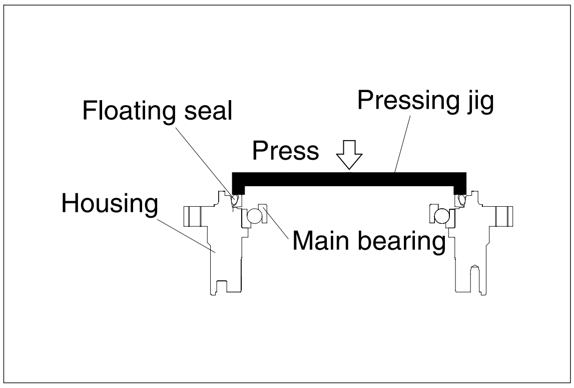
5) Assembling housing

(1) Heat housing at 60~70° C while clearing it out and then, assemble bearing.

(2) Assemble floating seal into housing by use of pressing jig as shown on the picture.

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when assembling bearing and floating seal.



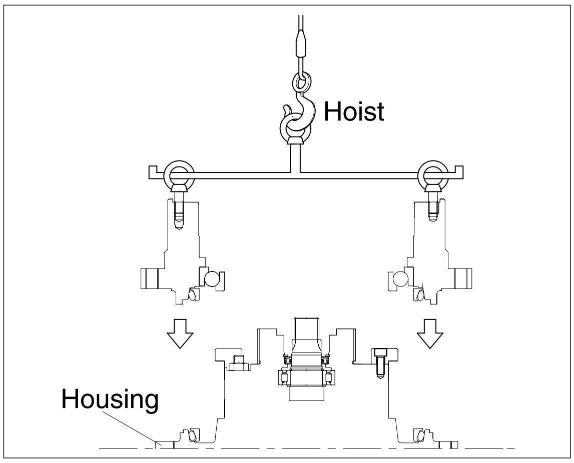


6) Installing housing assembly

(1) Install 2 ea of eye bolt (M14) into housing assembly.

(2) Assemble housing into motor by use of hoist and eye bolt.

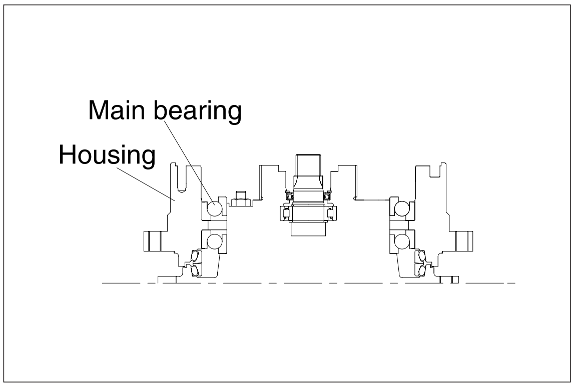
※ Be sure to tighten eye bolt deep enough.



7) Installing main bearing

(1) Heat main bearing at 60~70°C and then, install.

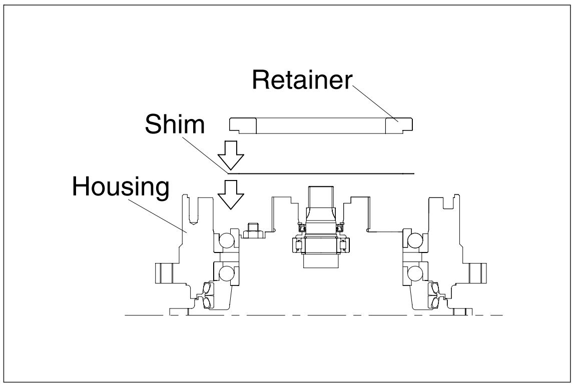
※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when assembling bearing.

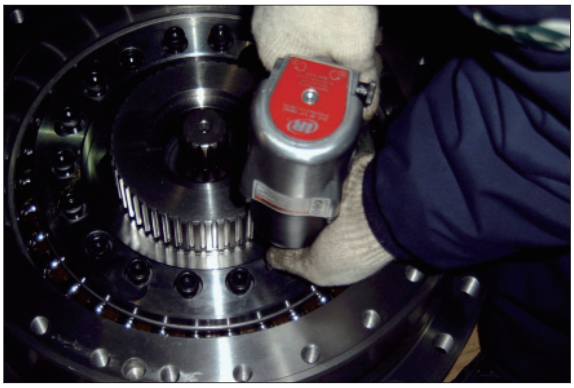


8) Installing retainer (86) and shim (85)

(1) Measure clearance between main bearing and retainer by use of jig to decide the thickness of shim and select and appropriate shim, and then, assemble retainer.

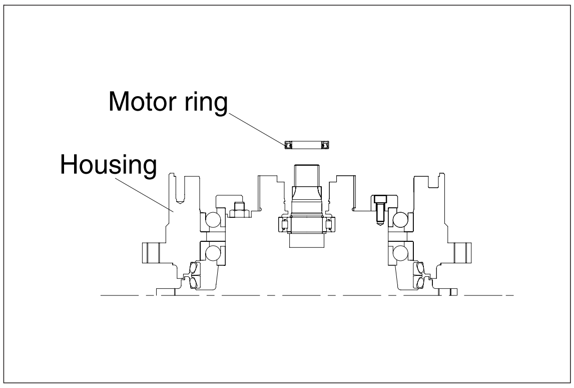
(2) Apply locktite (#242) on hexagon socket head bolt (M12), and then, bolt.





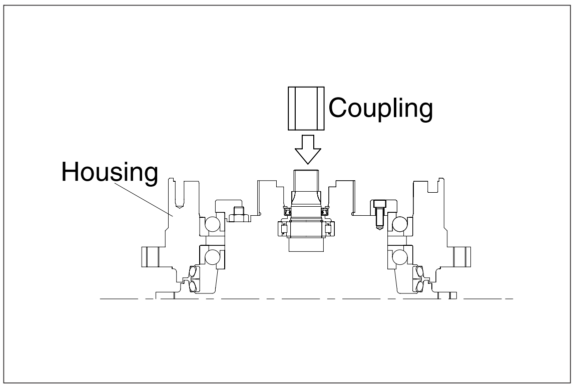
9) Installing motor ring

(1) Insert motor ring into motor to install.



10) Installing coupling

(1) Install coupling on spline of the motor.

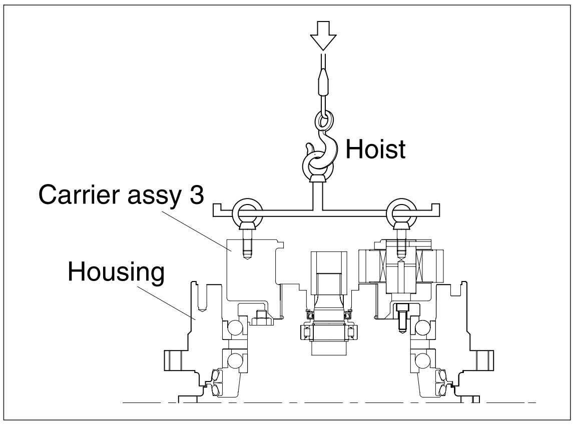


11) Installing No.3 carrier sub assy

(1) Install eye bolt (M10) on No.3 carrier assembly.

(2) Lift No.3 carrier assembly and then, assemble it into reducer.

※ Match it vertical with the spline of the motor and the, slowly lower.



12) Installing ring gear

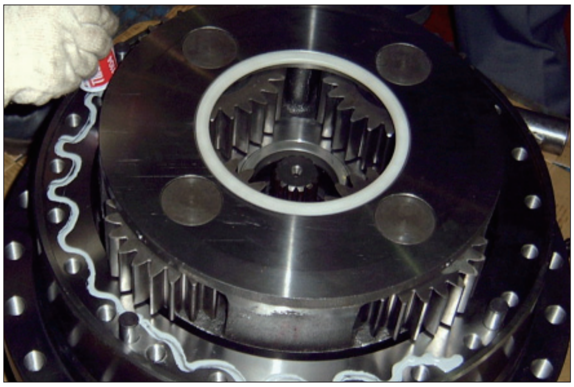
(1) Apply three bond #1104 (Locktite #515) on housing for ring gear without gap.

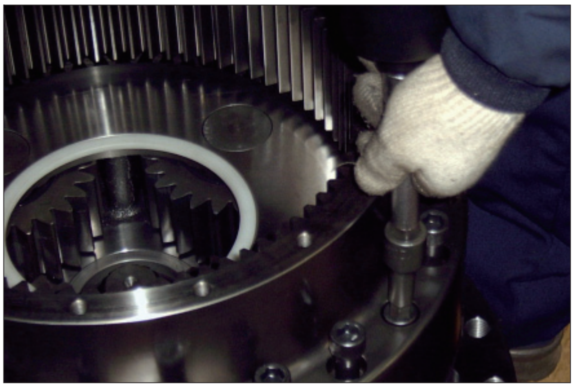
(2) Insert lock pin into housing hole.

(3) Install eye bolt (M12) on the tap for cover of ring gear.

(4) Lift ring gear and then, assemble into housing.

(5) Apply locktite to hexagon socket bolt (M14) and then, bolt, having appropriate torque.

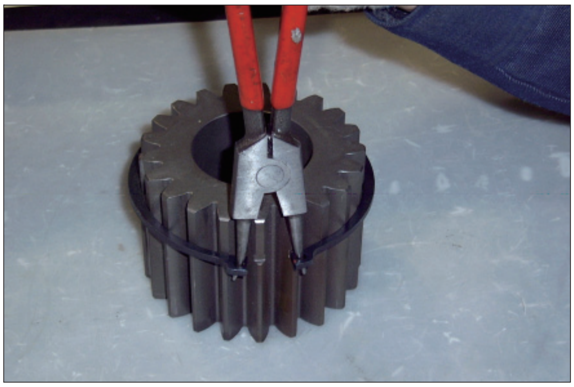




13) Installing No.3 sun gear (88-7)

(1) Install snap ring (88-8) in No.3 sun gear (88-7) by use if snap ring flier.

(2) Install No.3 sun gear on the spline of No.3 carrier, matching teeth of them.



14) Installing No.2 carrier sub assy

(1) Install eye bolt(M10) on No.2 carrier assembly.

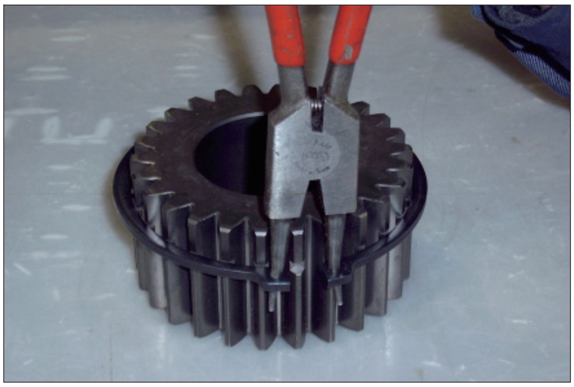
(2) Lift No.2 carrier assembly and then, slowly put it down on ring gear.

(3) Rotate planetary gear by hands and install in ring gear.

15) Installing No.2 sun gear (89-7)

(1) Install snap ring (89-8) on No.2 sun gear (89-7) by use of snap ring flier.

(2) Install No.2 sun gear on the spline of No.2 carrier and No.2 planetary gear, matching teeth of them.



16) Installing No.1 carrier sub assy

(1) Install eye bolt (M10) on No.1 carrier assembly.

(2) Lift No.1 carrier assembly and then, put it down on ring gear slowly.

(3) Rotate planetary gear by hands to install on ring gear, matching their teeth.

17) Installing No.1 sun gear (91)

(1) Put down No.1 sun gear on No.1 carrier, maintaining it vertical with spline of coupling.

(2) Install No.1 sun gear on No.1 planetary gear, matching their teeth.

18) Installing cover (97)

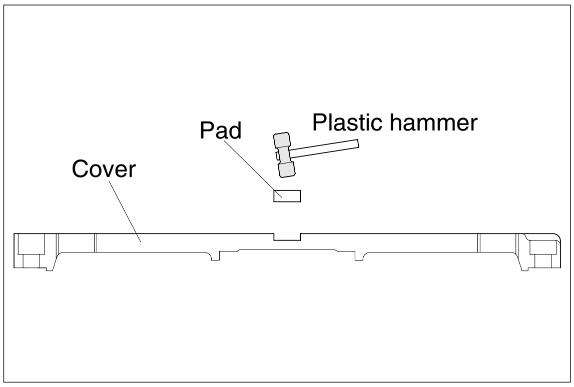
(1) Beat pad with plastic hammer, and press it into the center of cover.

(2) Apply three bond #104 (locktite #515) on the ring gear for without gap.

(3) Put cover on ring gear, apply locktite (#242) in hexagon socket head bolt (M10), and then, bolt.

(4) Fill gear oil (8L) into drain port.

(5) Apply sealing tape (teflon) on PT3/4 plug and then, bolt.



GROUP 7 RCV LEVER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

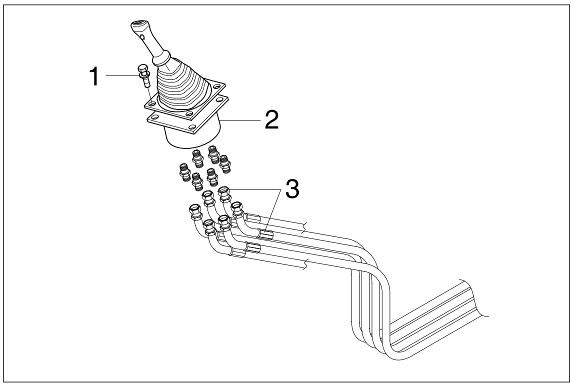
1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**



(4) Loosen the socket bolt (1).

(5) Remove the cover of the console box.

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3).

(7) Remove the pilot valve assembly (2).

※ When removing the pilot valve assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

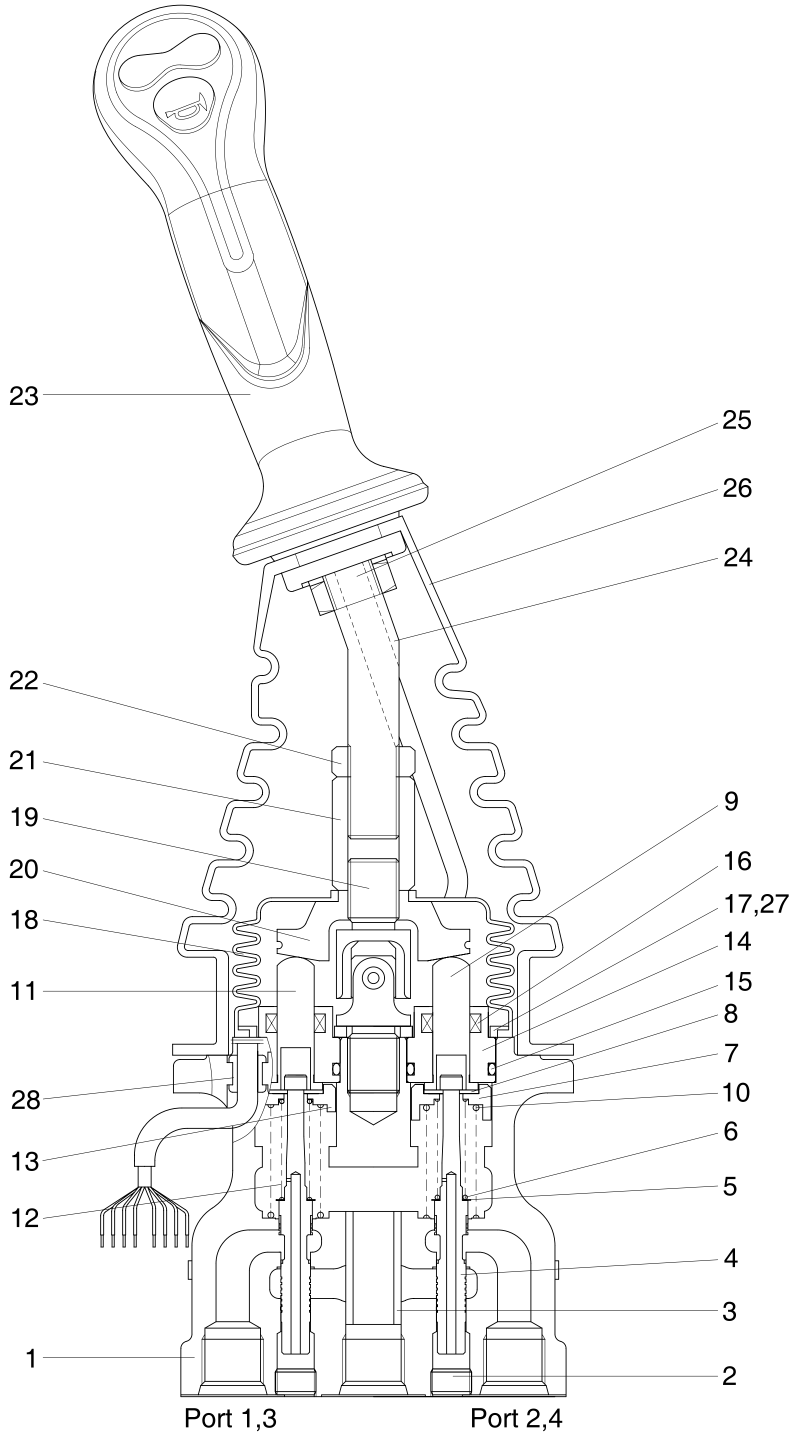
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

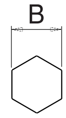
1) STRUCTURE



1	Case	8	Stopper	15	O-ring	22	Lock nut
2	Plug	9	Push rod	16	Rod seal	23	Handle assembly
3	Bushing	10	Spring	17	Plate	24	Handle bar
4	Spool	11	Push rod	18	Boot	25	Nut
5	Shim	12	Spring	19	Joint assembly	26	Boot
6	Spring	13	Spring seat	20	Swash plate	27	Spring pin
7	Spring seat	14	Plug	21	Adjusting nut	28	Bushing

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	6	
Spanner	22	
	27	
(+) Driver	Length 150	
(-) Driver	Width 4~5	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Item	Size	Torque	
			kgf·m	lbf·ft
Plug	2	PT 1/8	3.0	21.7
Joint	19	M14	3.5	25.3
Swash plate	20	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Adjusting nut	21	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Lock nut	22	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5

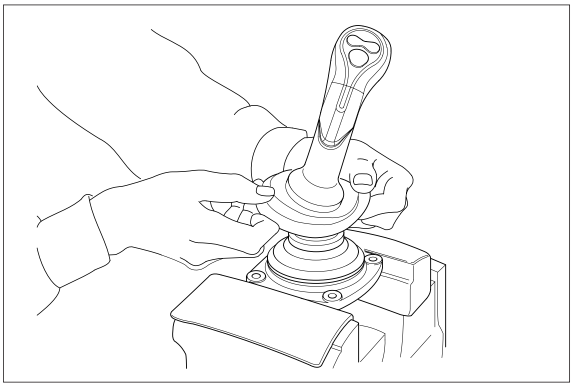
3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Clean pilot valve with kerosene.

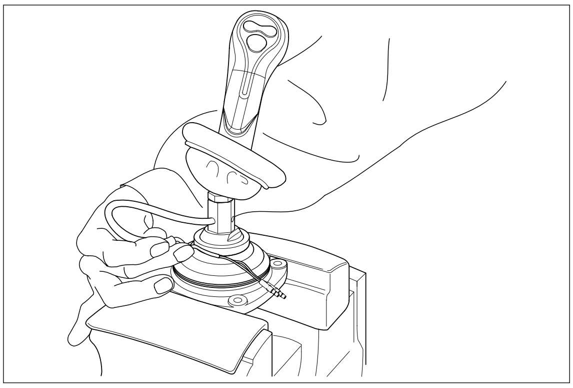
※ Put blind plugs into all ports

(2) Fix pilot valve in a vise with copper (or lead) sheets.

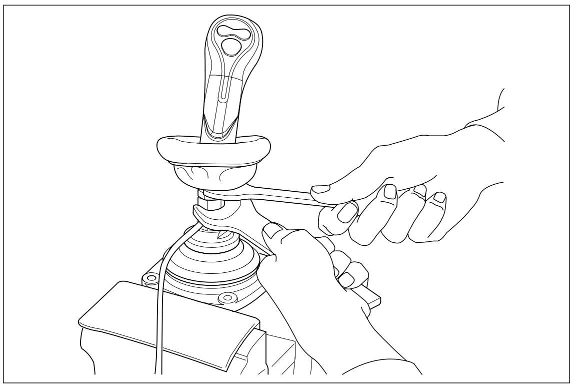
(3) Remove end of boot (26) from case (1) and take it out upwards.



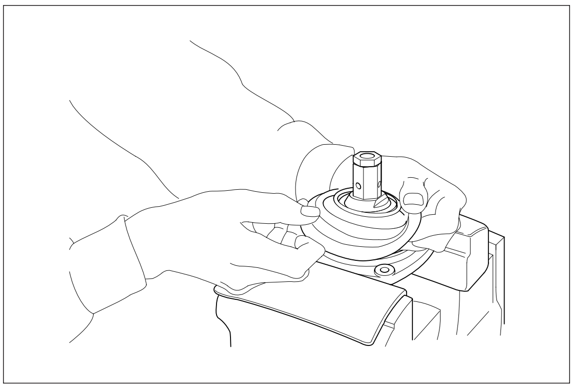
※ For valve with switch, remove cord also through hole of casing.



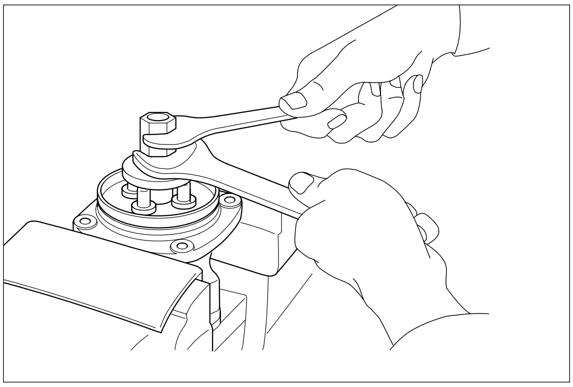
(4) Loosen lock nut (22) and adjusting nut (21) with spanners on them respectively, and take out handle section as one body.

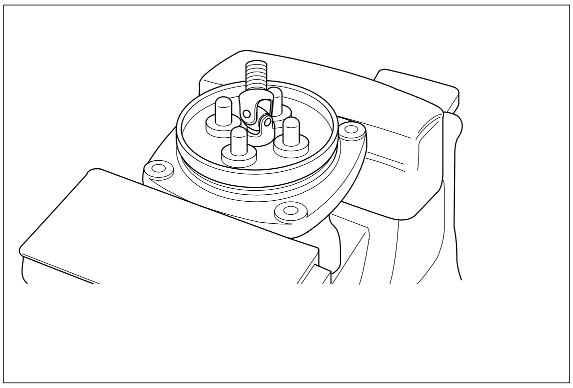


(5) Remove the boot (18).



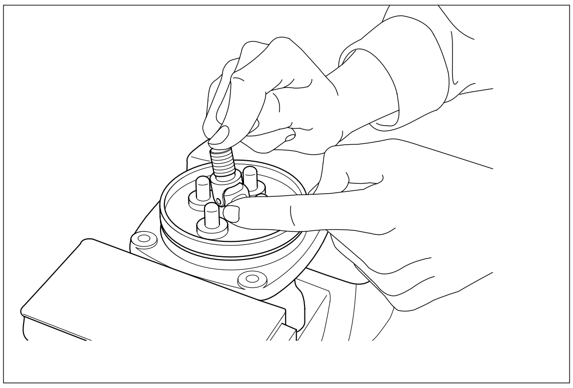
(6) Loosen adjusting nut (21) and swash plate (20) with spanners on them respectively, and remove them.

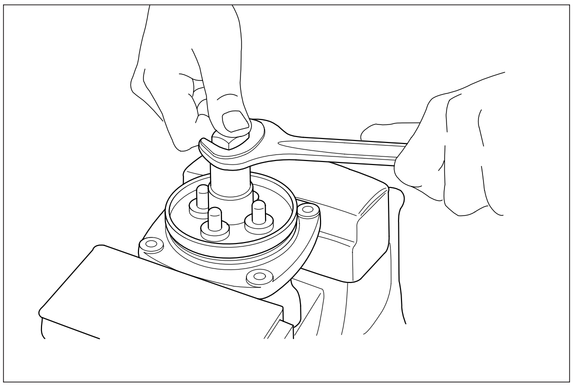




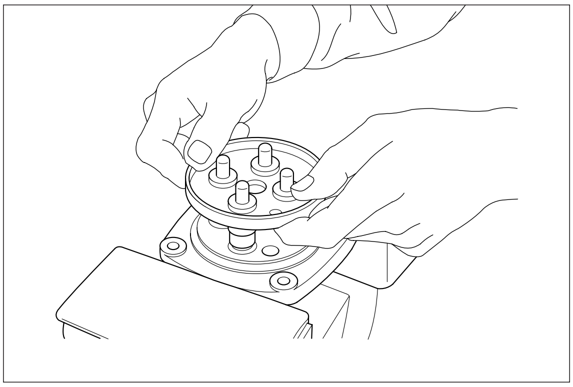
(7) Turn joint anticlockwise to loosen it, utilizing jig (Special tool).

※ When return spring (10) is strong in force, plate (17), plug (14) and push rod (11) will come up on loosening joint.
Pay attention to this.





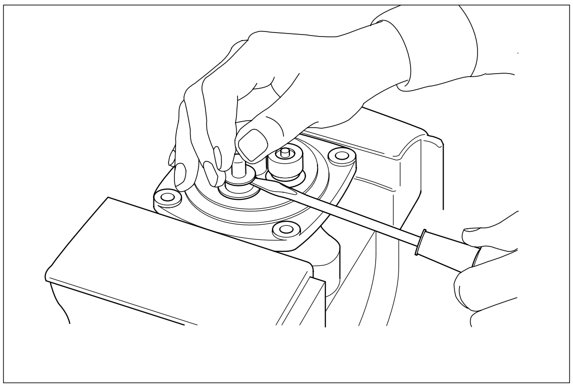
(8) Remove plate (17).



(9) When return spring (10) is weak in force, plug (14) stays in casing because of sliding resistance of O-ring.

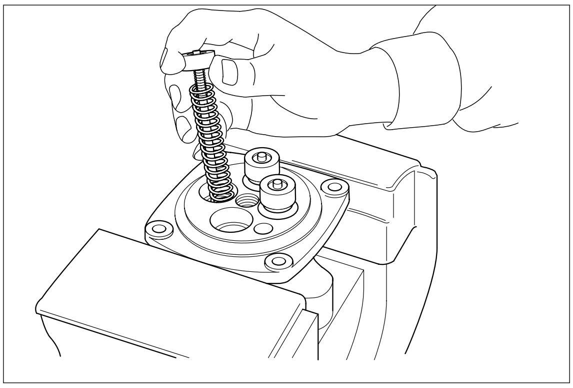
※ Take it out with minus screwdriver.
Take it out, utilizing external periphery groove of plug and paying attention not to damage it by partial loading.

※ During taking out, plug may jump up due to return spring (10) force.
Pay attention to this.

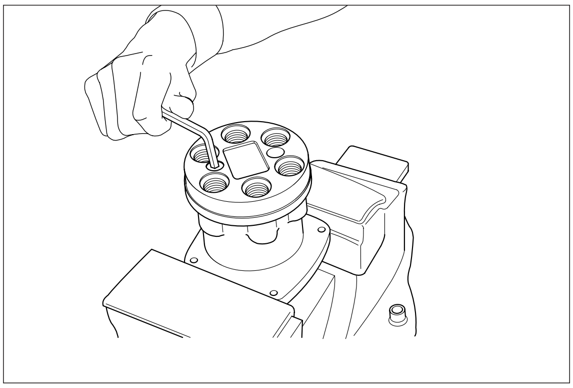


(10) Remove reducing valve subassembly and return spring (10) out of casing.

※ Record relative position of reducing valve subassembly and return springs.



(11) Loosen hexagon socket head plug(2) with hexagon socket screw key.

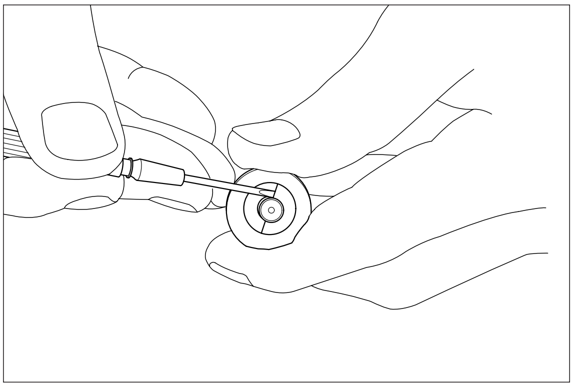


(12) For disassembling reducing valve section, stand it vertically with spool (4) bottom placed on flat workbench. Push down spring seat (7) and remove two pieces of semicircular stopper (8) with tip of small minus screwdriver.

※ Pay attention not to damage spool surface.

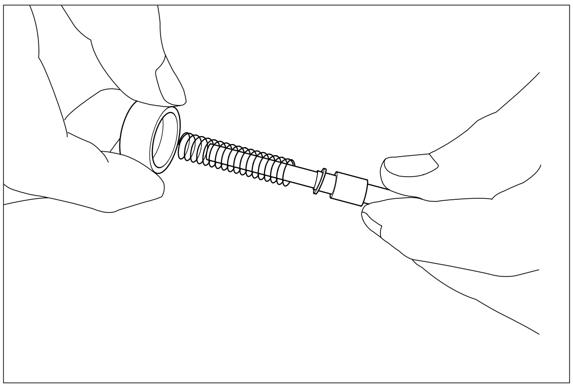
※ Record original position of spring seat (7).

※ Do not push down spring seat more than 6㎜.

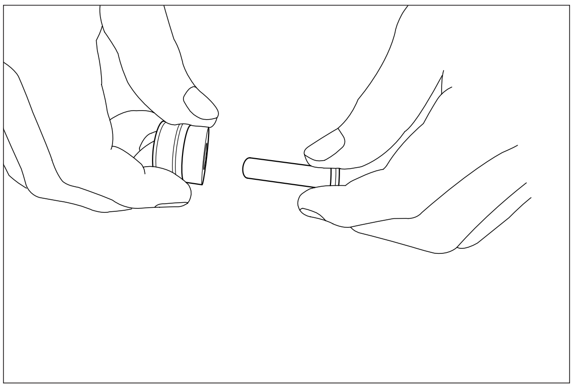


(13) Separate spool (4), spring seat (7), spring (6) and shim (5) individually.

※ Until being assembled, they should be handled as one subassembly group.

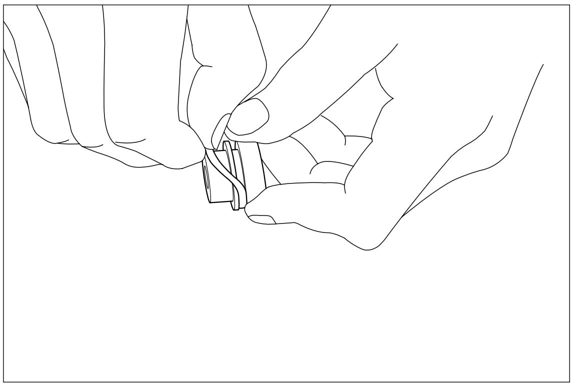


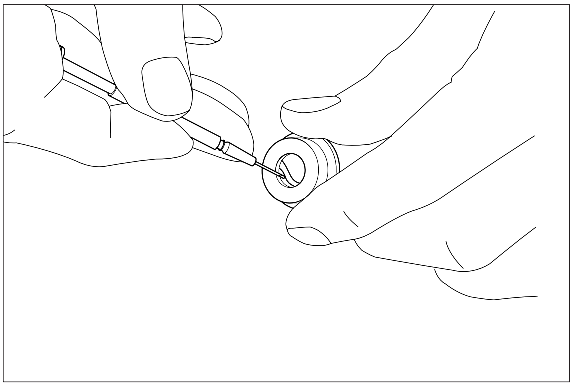
(14) Take push rod (11) out of plug (14).



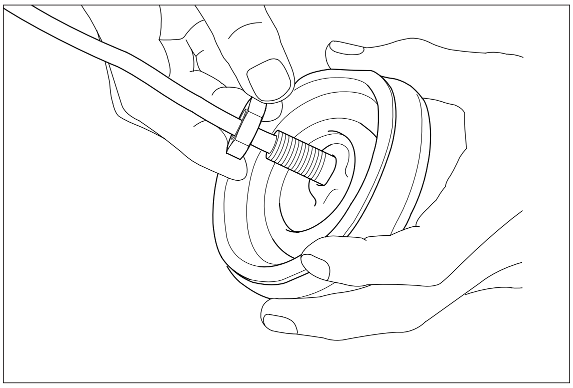
(15) Remove O-ring (15) and seal (16) from plug (14).

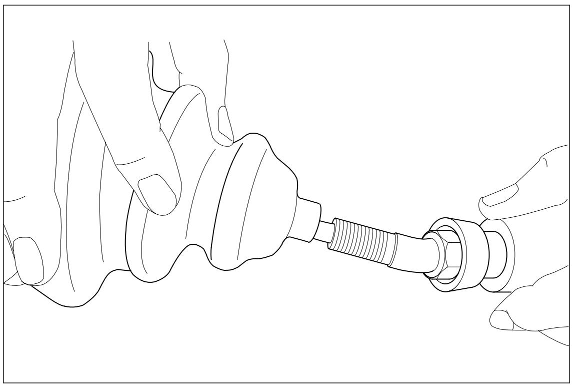
Use small minus screwdriver or so on to remove this seal.





(16) Remove lock nut (22) and then boot (26).





(16) Cleaning of parts

① Put all parts in rough cleaning vessel filled with kerosene and clean them (rough cleaning).

※ If dirty part is cleaned with kerosene just after putting it in vessel, it may be damaged. Leave it in kerosene for a while to loosen dust and dirty oil.

※ If this kerosene is polluted, parts will be damaged and functions of reassembled valve will be degraded.
Therefore, control cleanliness of kerosene fully.

② Put parts in final cleaning vessel filled with kerosene, turning it slowly to clean them even to their insides (finish cleaning).

※ Do not dry parts with compressed air, since they will be damaged and/or rusted by dust and moisture in air.

(17) Rust prevention of parts

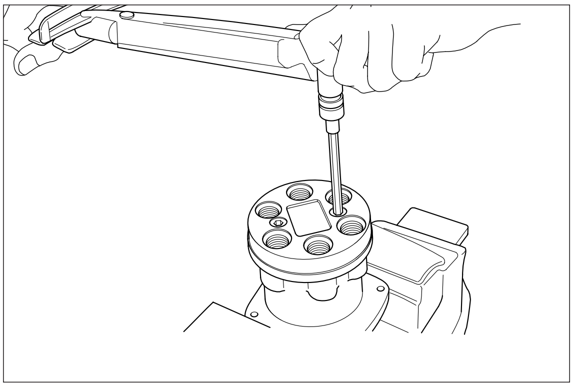
Apply rust-preventives to all parts.

※ If left as they after being cleaned, they will be rusted and will not display their functions fully after being reassembled.

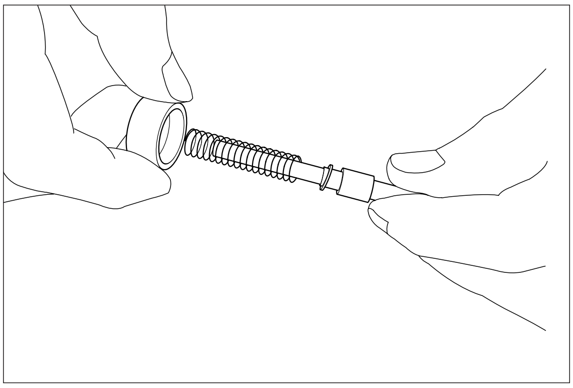
4) ASSEMBLY

(1) Tighten hexagon socket head plug (2) to the specified torque.

※ Tighten two bolts alternately and slowly.

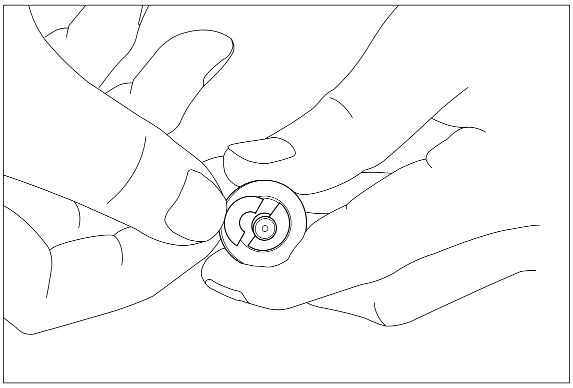


(2) Put shim (5), springs (6) and spring seat (7) onto spool (4) in this order.



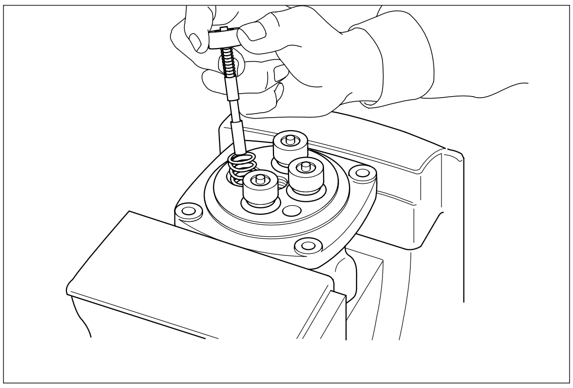
(3) Stand spool vertically with its bottom placed on flat workbench, and with spring seat pushed down, put two pieces of semicircular stopper (8) on spring seat without piling them on.

※ Assemble stopper (8) so that its sharp edge side will be caught by head of spool. Do not push down spring seat more than 6mm.

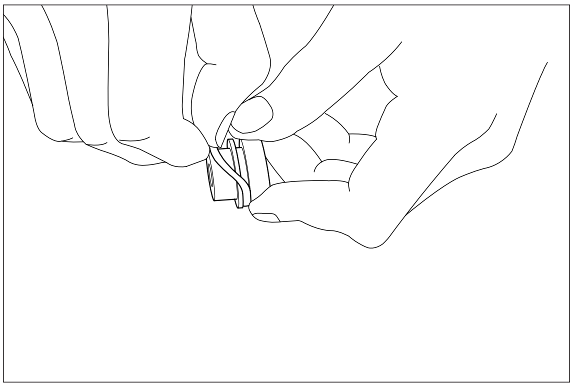


(4) Assemble spring (10) into casing (1). Assemble reducing valve subassembly into casing.

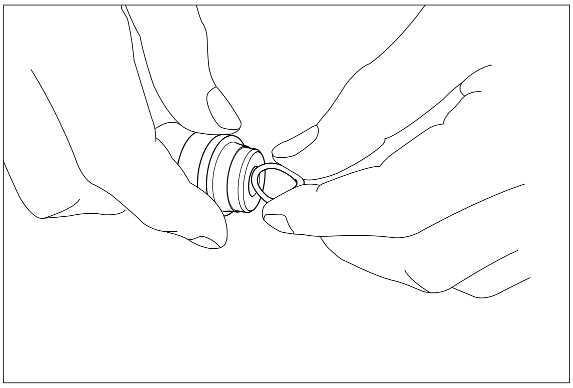
※ Assemble them to their original positions.



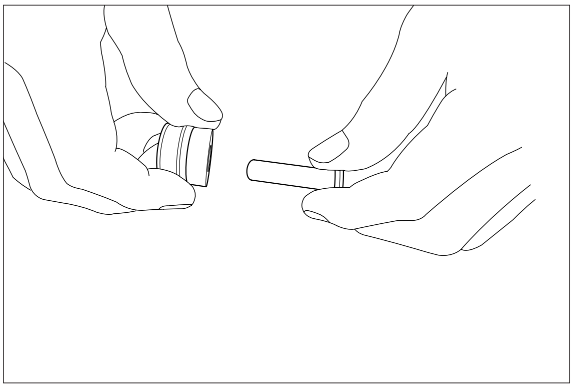
(5) Assemble O-ring (15) onto plug (14).



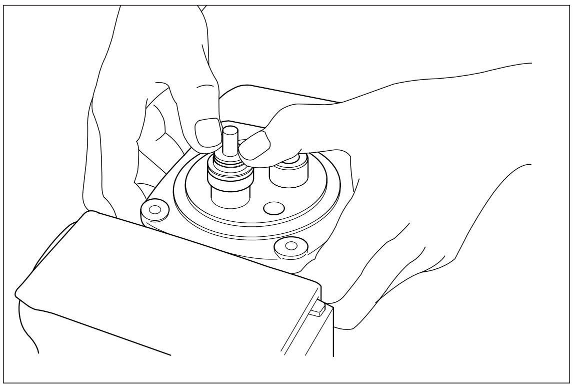
(6) Assemble seal (16) to plug (14).
※ Assemble seal in such lip direction as shown below.



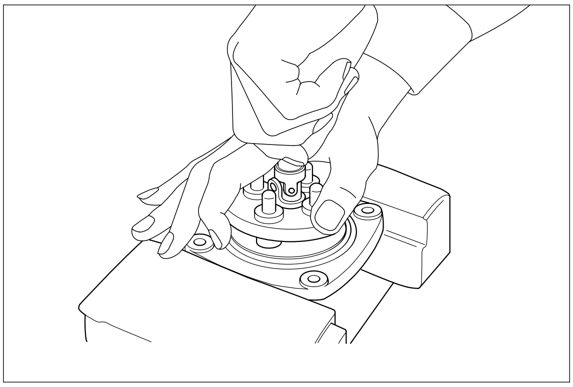
(7) Assemble push rod (11) to plug (14).
※ Apply working oil on push-rod surface.



(8) Assemble plug subassembly to casing.
※ When return spring is weak in force, subassembly stops due to resistance of O-ring.

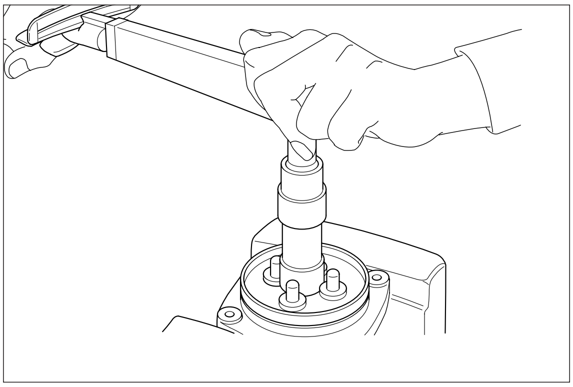


(9) When return spring is strong in force, assemble 4 sets at the same time, utilizing plate (17), and tighten joint (19) temporarily.



(10) Fit plate (17).

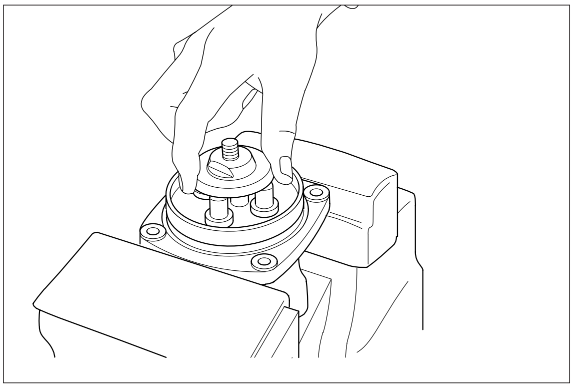
(11) Tighten joint (19) with the specified torque to casing, utilizing jig.



(12) Assemble swash plate (20) to joint (19).

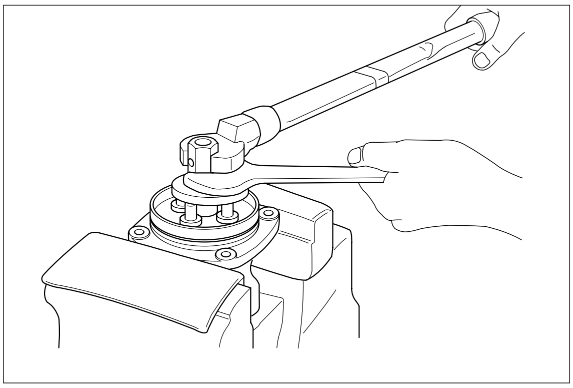
※ Screw it to position that it contacts with 4 push rods evenly.

※ Do not screw it over.

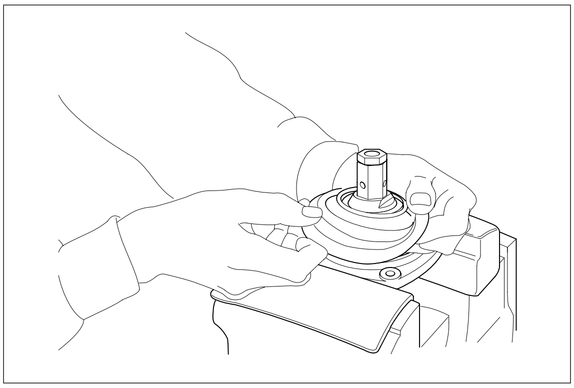


(13) Assemble adjusting nut (21), apply spanner to width across flat of plate (20) to fix it, and tighten adjusting nut to the specified torque.

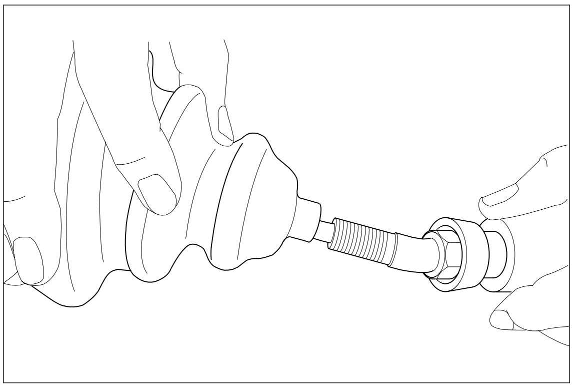
※ During tightening, do not change position of disk.

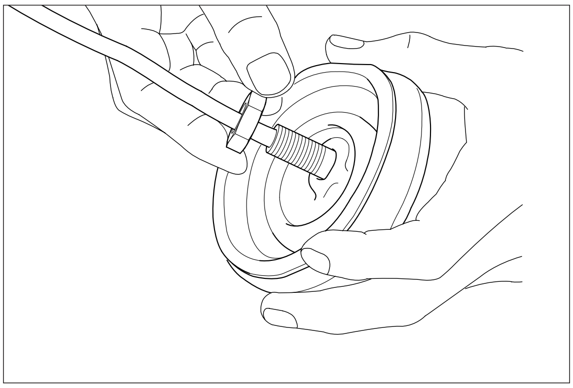


(14) Fit boot (18) to plate.

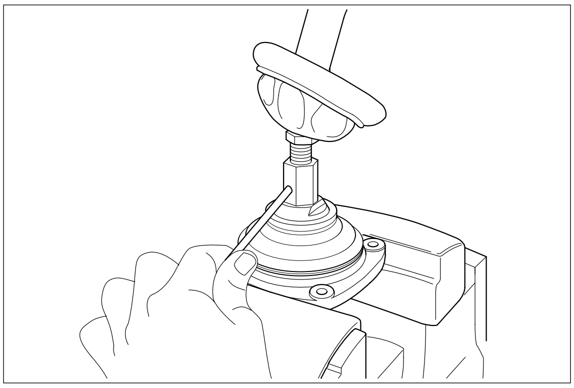


(15) Fit boot (26) and lock nut (22), and handle subassembly is assembled completely.



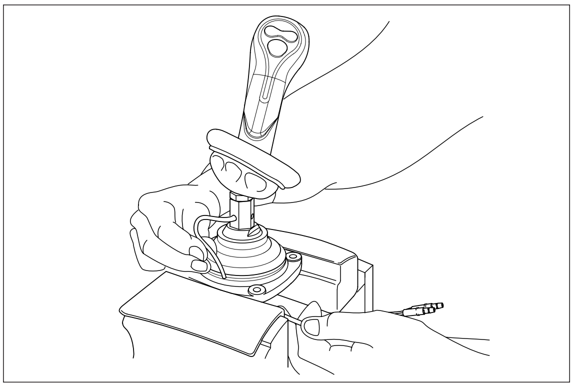


(16) Pull out cord and tube through adjusting nut hole provided in direction 60° to 120° from casing hole.

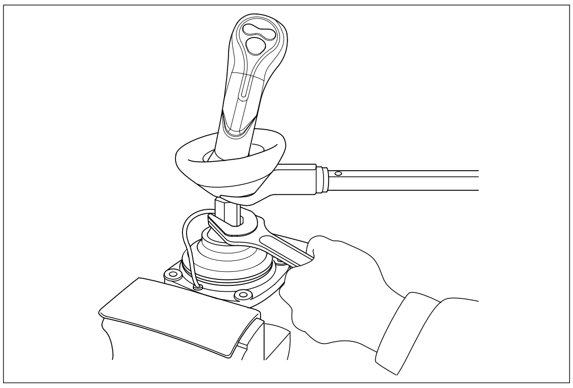


(17) Assemble bushing (27) to plate and pass cord and tube through it.

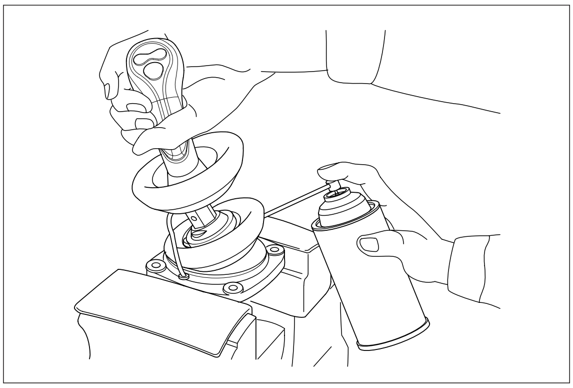
※ Provide margin necessary to operation.



(18) Determine handle direction, tighten lock nut (22) to specified torque to fix handle.

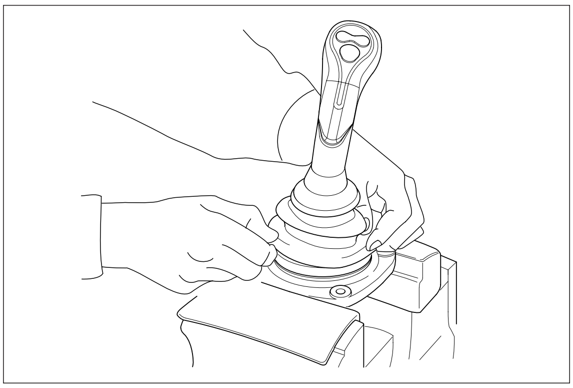


(19) Apply grease to rotating section of joint and contacting faces of disk and push rod.



(20) Assemble lower end of bellows to casing.

(21) Inject volatile rust-preventives through all ports and then put blind plugs in ports.



GROUP 8 TURNING JOINT

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

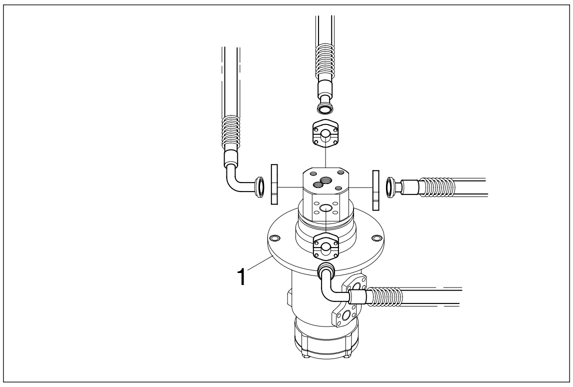
(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



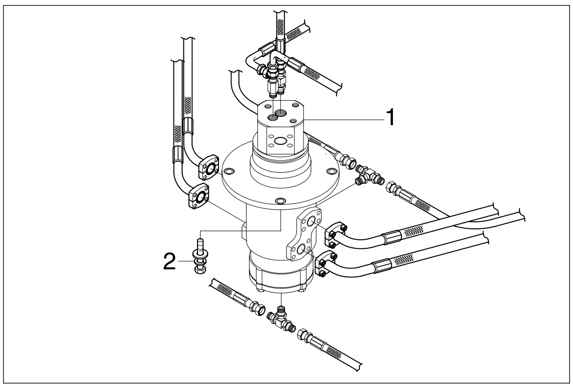
(4) Disconnect all hoses.

(5) Sling the turning joint assembly (1) and remove the mounting bolt (2).
Weight : 55 kg (120 lb)
Tightening torque : 12.31.3 kgfm
(899.4 lbfft)

(6) Remove the turning joint assembly.

※ When removing the turning joint, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

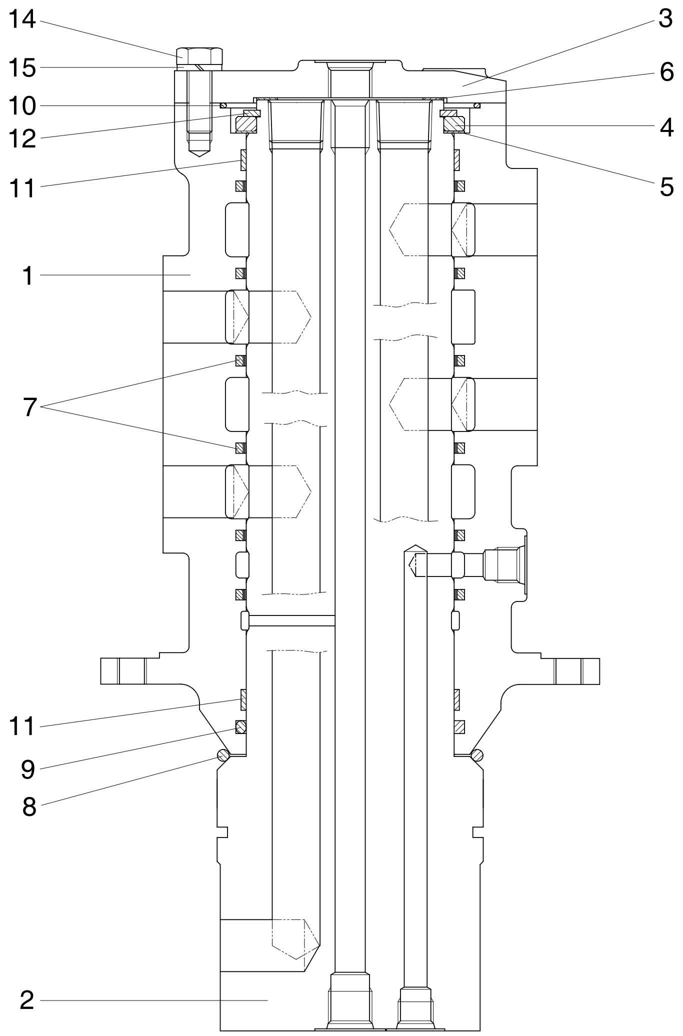
2) INSTALL



(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
Take care of turning joint direction.
Assemble hoses to their original positions.
Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

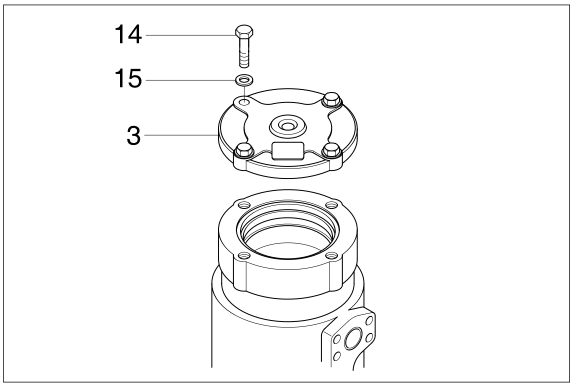


1	Hub	6	Shim	11	Wear ring
2	Shaft	7	Slipper seal	12	Retainer ring
3	Cover	8	O-ring	13	Plug
4	Spacer	9	O-ring	14	Hexagon bolt
5	Shim	10	O-ring	15	Spring washer

2) DISASSEMBLY

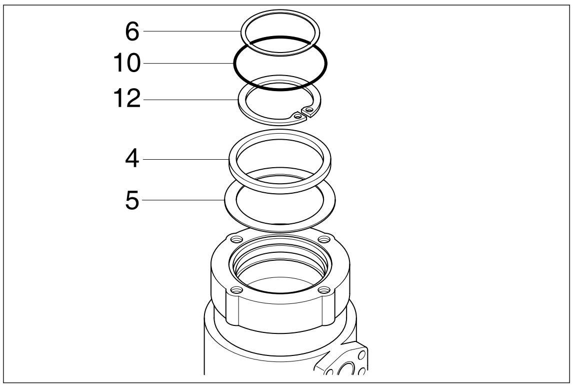
Before the disassembly, clean the turning joint.

(1) Remove bolts (14), washer (15) and cover (3).



(2) Remove shim (6) and O-ring (10).

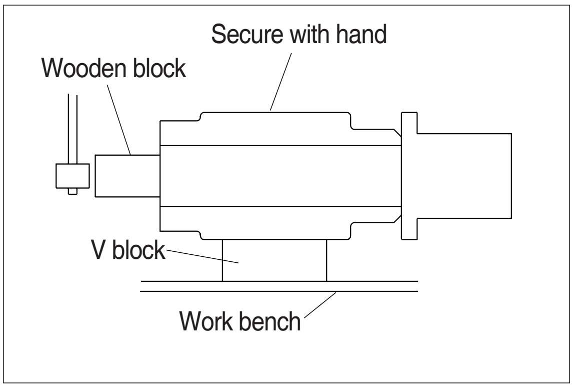
(3) Remove retainer ring (12), spacer (4) and shim (5).



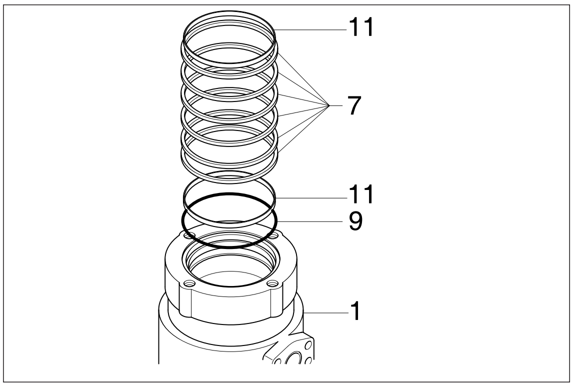
(4) Place hub (1) on a V-block and by using a wood buffer at the shaft end, hit out shaft (2) to about 1/2 from the body with a hammer.

※ Take care not to damage the shaft (2) when remove hub (1) or rest it sideway.

※ Put a fitting mark on hub (1) and shaft (2).



(5) Remove six slipper seals (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) from hub (1).



3) ASSEMBLY

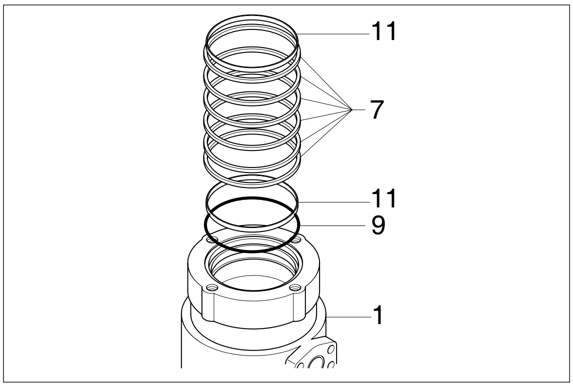
※ Clean all parts.

※ As a general rule, replace oil seals and O-ring.

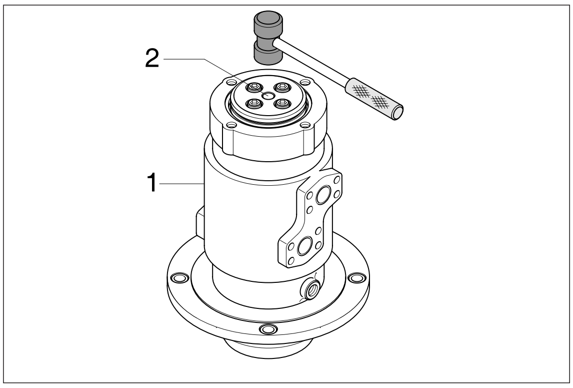
※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with engine oil or grease before installing.

(1) Fix seven slipper seal (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) to hub (1).

(2) Fit O-ring (8) to shaft (2).



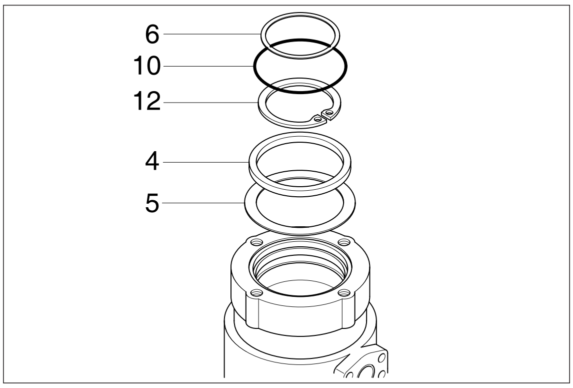
(3) Set shaft (2) on block, tap hub (1) with a plastic hammer to install.



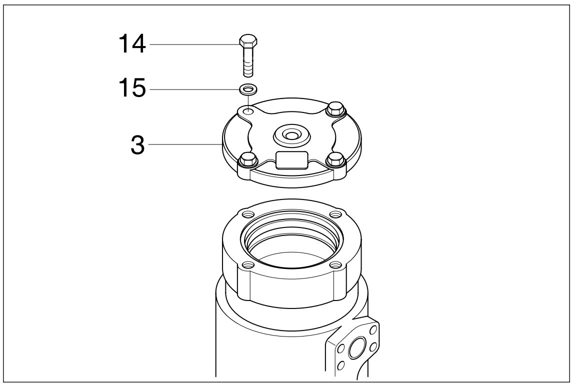
(4) Fit shim (5), spacer (4) and retainer ring (12) to shaft (2).

(5) Fit O-ring (10) to hub (1).

(6) Fit shim (6) to shaft (2).



(7) Install cover (3) to body (1) and tighten bolts (14).
Torque : 10~12.5 kgfm
(72.3~90.4 lbfft)



GROUP 9 BOOM, ARM AND BUCKET CYLINDER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) BUCKET CYLINDER

(1) Removal

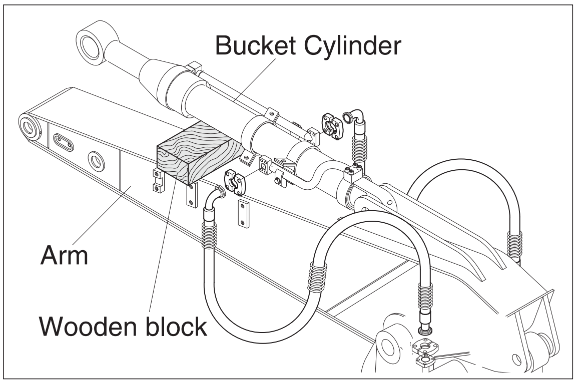
※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

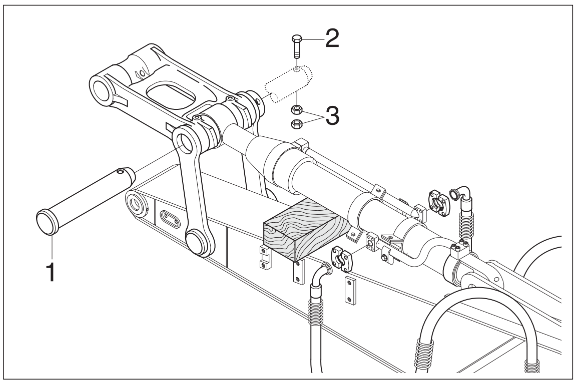
※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

① Set block between bucket cylinder and arm.

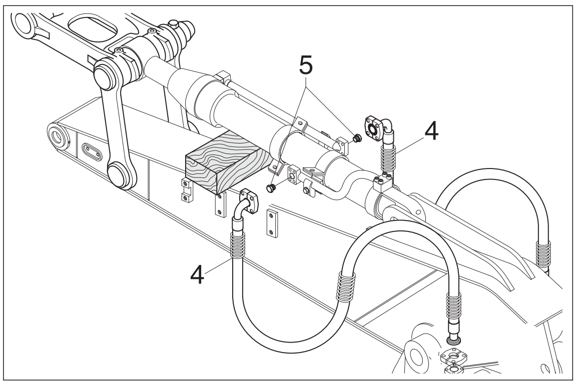


② Remove bolt (2), nut (3) and pull out pin (1).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



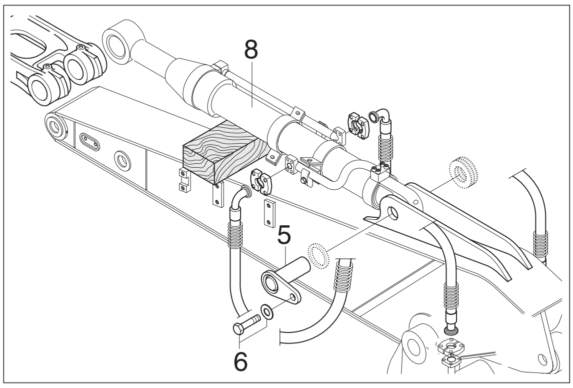
③ Disconnect bucket cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs (5) on cylinder pipe.



④ Sling bucket cylinder assembly (8) and remove bolt (6) then pull out pin (5).

⑤ Remove bucket cylinder assembly (8).

· Weight : 220 ㎏ (485 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.

※ Bleed the air from the bucket cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2) ARM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

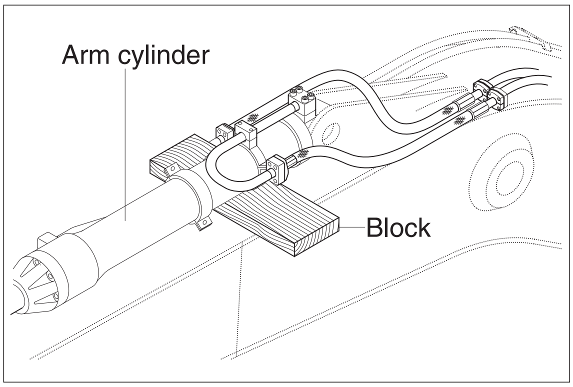
※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

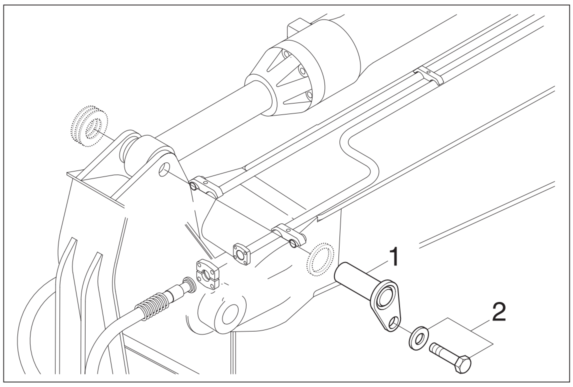
※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

① Set block between arm cylinder and boom.



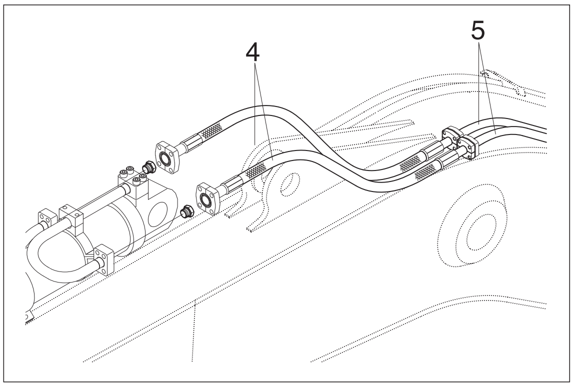
② Remove bolt (2) and pull out pin (1).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



③ Disconnect arm cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.

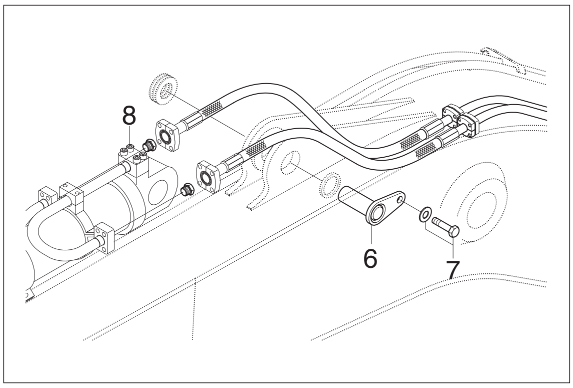
④ Disconnect greasing pipings (5).



⑤ Sling arm assembly (8) and remove bolt (7) then pull out pin (6).

⑥ Remove arm cylinder assembly (8).

· Weight : 360 ㎏ (790 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Bleed the air from the arm cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

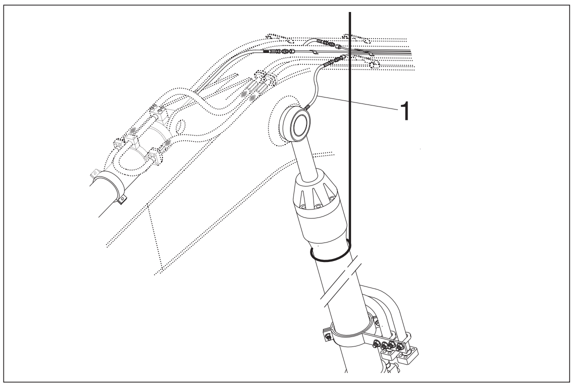
※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

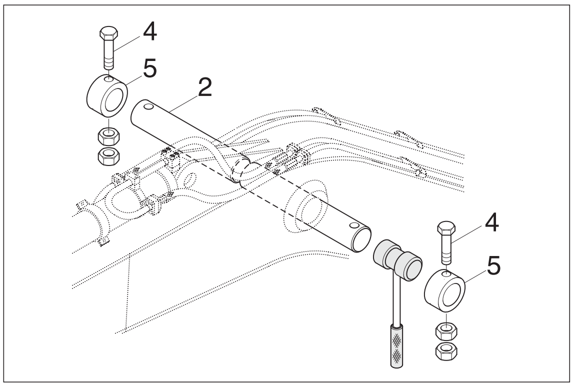
① Disconnect greasing hoses (1).

② Sling boom cylinder assembly.

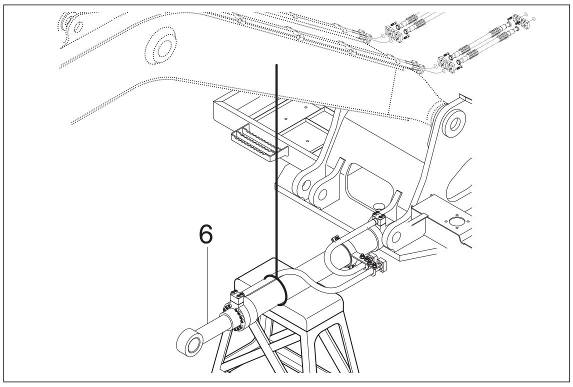


③ Remove bolt (4), pin stopper (5) and pull out pin (2).

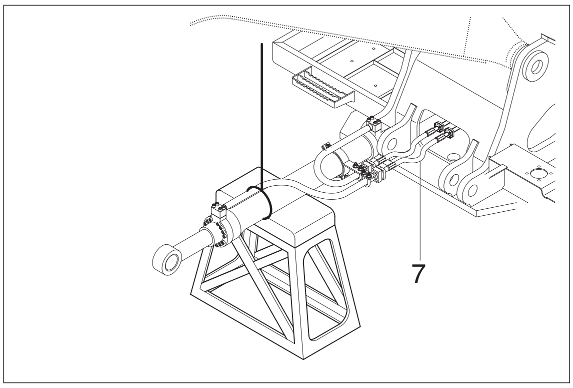
※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



④ Lower the boom cylinder assembly (6) on a stand.



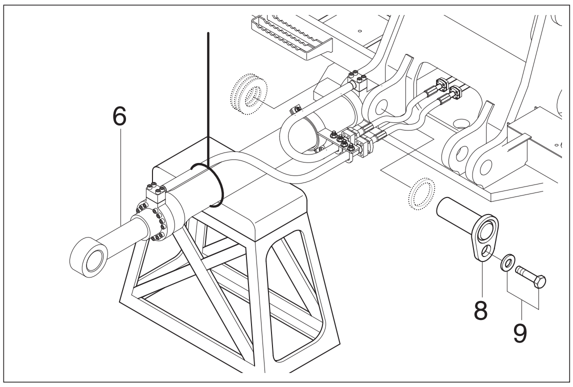
⑤ Disconnect boom cylinder hoses (7) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.



⑥ Remove bolt (9) and pull out pin (8).

⑦ Remove boom cylinder assembly (6).

· Weight : 270 ㎏ (600 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

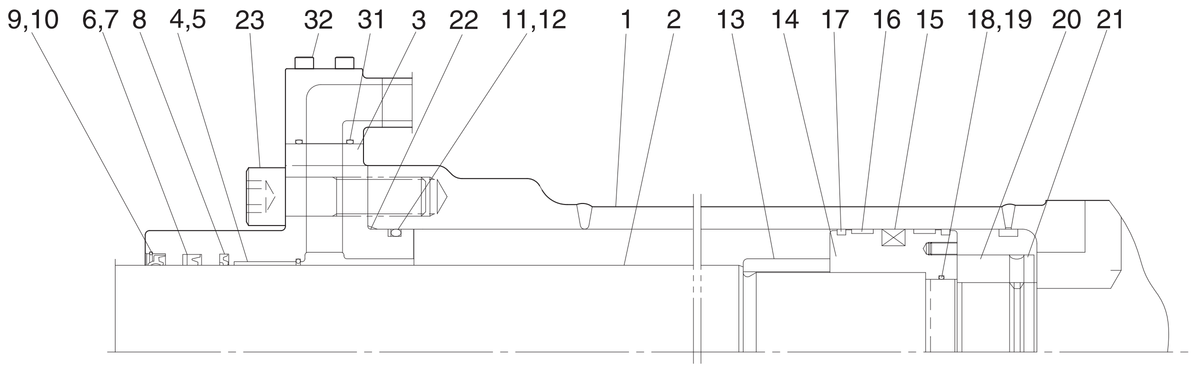
※ Bleed the air from the boom cylinder.

※ Conformed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

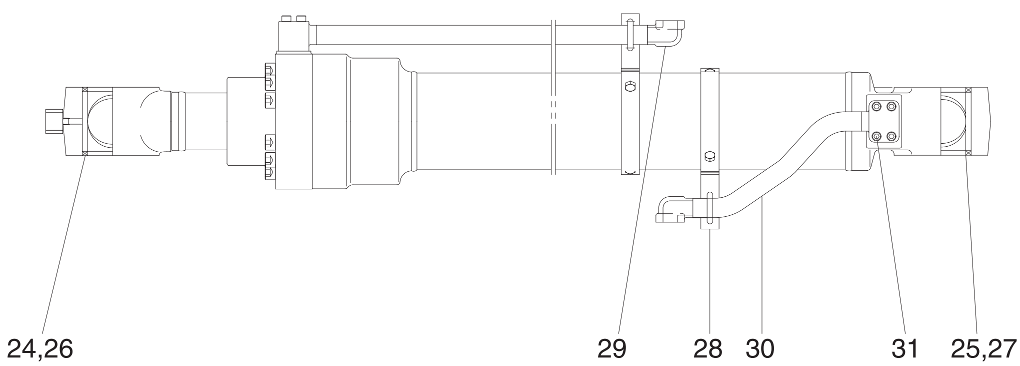
2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

(1) Bucket cylinder

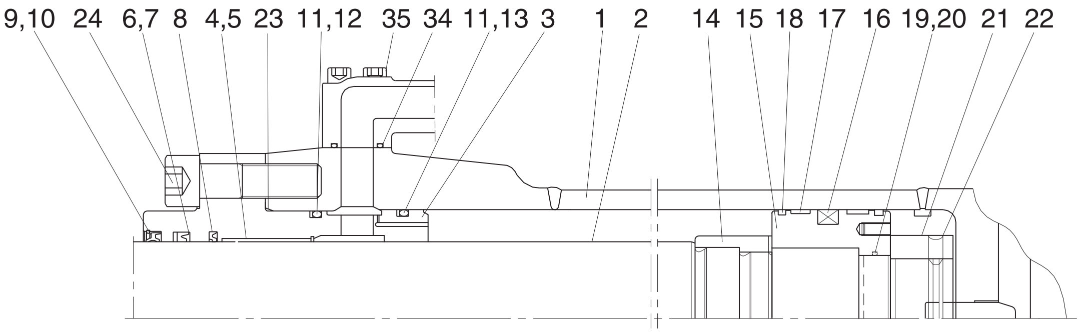


Internal detail

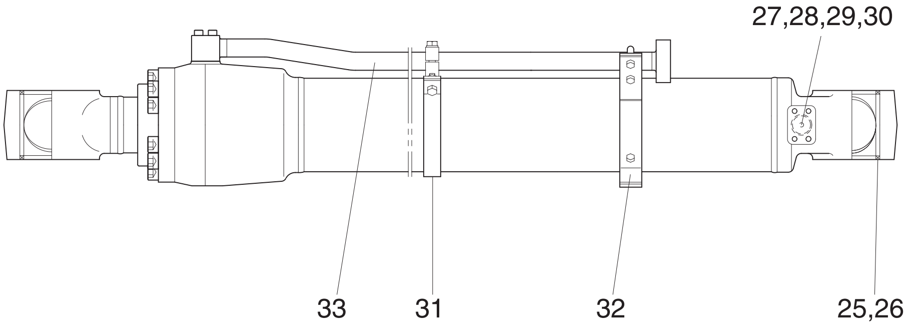


1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Dust seal
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	Pipe assembly
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	O-ring
10	Snap ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw	32	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

(2) Arm cylinder

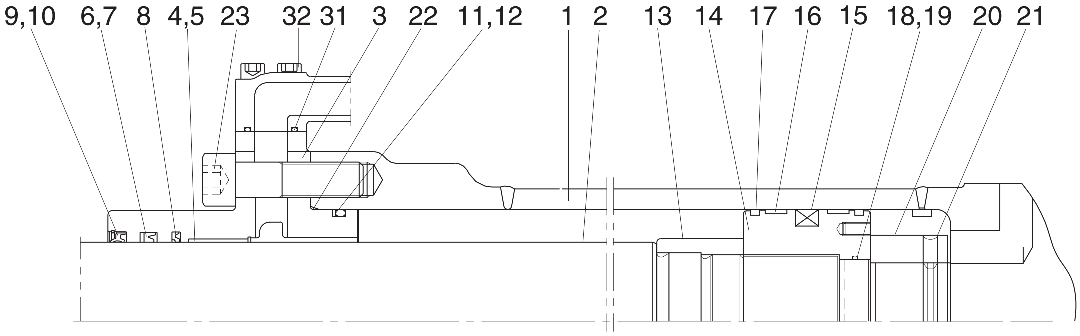


Internal detail

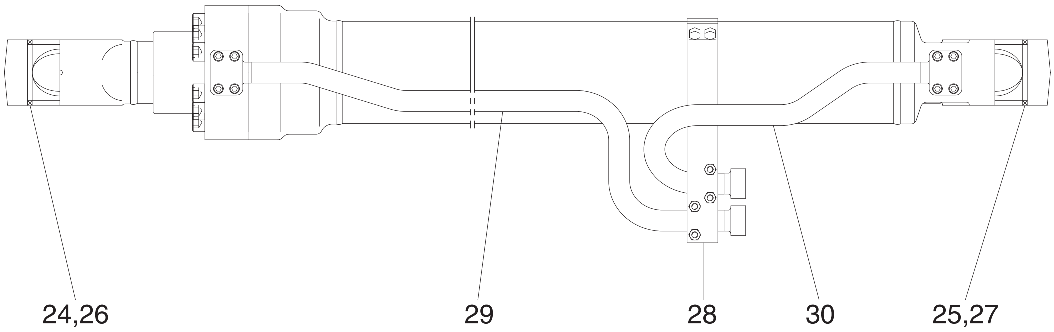


1	Tube assembly	13	Back up ring	25	Pin bushing
2	Rod assembly	14	Cushion ring	26	Dust seal
3	Gland	15	Piston	27	Check valve
4	DD2 bushing	16	Piston seal	28	Coil spring
5	Snap ring	17	Wear ring	29	O-ring
6	Rod seal	18	Dust ring	30	Plug
7	Back up ring	19	O-ring	31	Band assembly
8	Buffer ring	20	Back up ring	32	Band assembly
9	Dust wiper	21	Lock nut	33	Pipe assembly
10	Snap ring	22	Hexagon socket set screw	34	O-ring
11	O-ring	23	O-ring	35	Hexagon socket head bolt
12	Back up ring	24	Hexagon socket head bolt		

(3) Boom cylinder



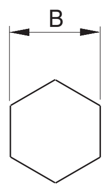
Internal detail



1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Dust seal
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	Pipe assembly
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	O-ring
10	Snap ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw	32	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tools	Remark	
Allen wrench	6	
	8	
	14	
	17	
Spanner	7	
	8	
(-) Driver	Small and large sizes	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name		Item	Size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
Socket head bolt	Bucket cylinder	23	M18	32.0±3.0	232±21.7
		32	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Boom cylinder	23	M18	32.0±3.0	232±21.7
		32	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Arm cylinder	24	M18	32.0±3.0	232±21.7
		35	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
Lock nut	Bucket cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
	Boom cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
	Arm cylinder	21	-	150±15.0	1085±108
Piston	Bucket cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
	Boom cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
	Arm cylinder	15	-	200±20.0	1447±145

3) DISASSEMBLY

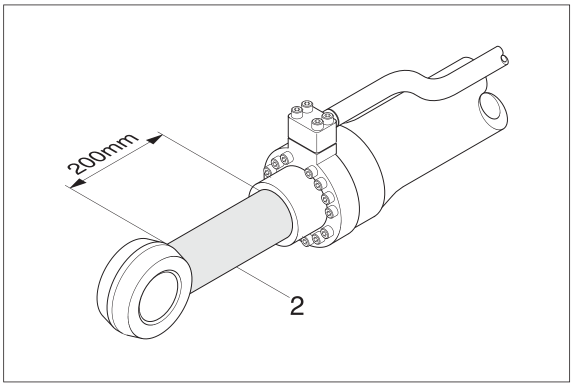
(1) Remove cylinder head and piston rod

※ Procedures are based on the bucket cylinder.

① Hold the clevis section of the tube in a vise.

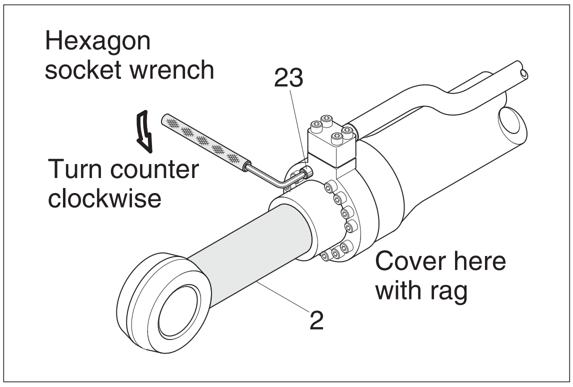
※ Use mouth pieces so as not to damage the machined surface of the cylinder tube. Do not make use of the outside piping as a locking means.

② Pull out rod assembly (2) about 200 mm (7.1 in). Because the rod assembly is rather heavy, finish extending it with air pressure after the oil draining operation.



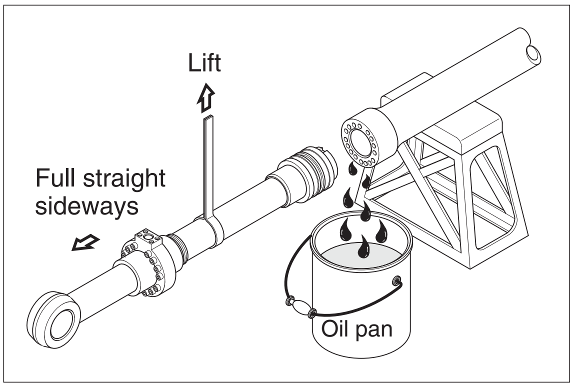
③ Loosen and remove socket bolts (23) of the gland in sequence.

※ Cover the extracted rod assembly (2) with rag to prevent it from being accidentally damaged during operation.



④ Draw out cylinder head and rod assembly together from tube assembly (1).

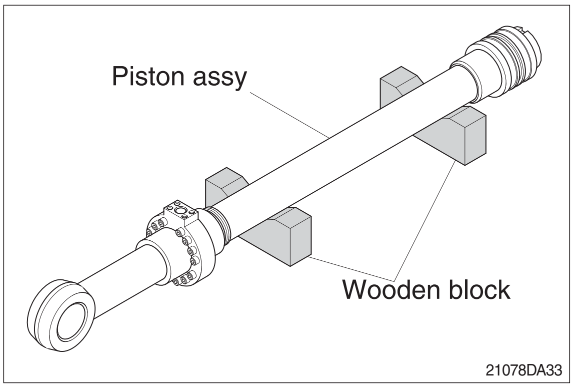
※ Since the rod assembly is heavy in this case, lift the tip of the rod assembly (2) with a crane or some means and draw it out. However, when rod assembly (2) has been drawn out to approximately two thirds of its length, lift it in its center to draw it completely.



Note that the plated surface of rod assembly (2) is to be lifted. For this reason, do not use a wire sling and others that may damage it, but use a strong cloth belt or a rope.

⑤ Place the removed rod assembly on a wooden V-block that is set level.

※ Cover a V-block with soft rag.

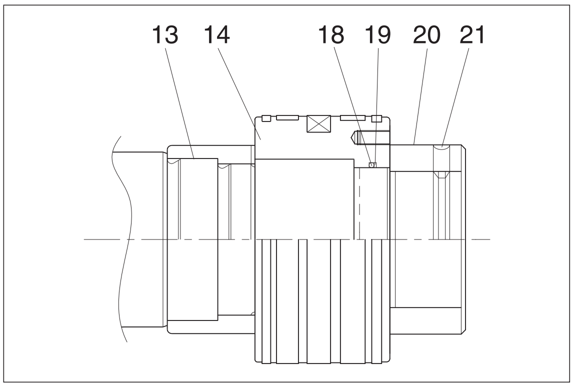


(2) Remove piston and cylinder head

① Remove set screw (21).

※ Since set screw (21) and lock nut (20) is tightened to a high torque, use a hydraulic and power wrench that utilizers a hydraulic cylinder, to remove the set screw (21) lock nut (20).

② Remove piston assembly (14), back up ring (19), and O-ring (18).

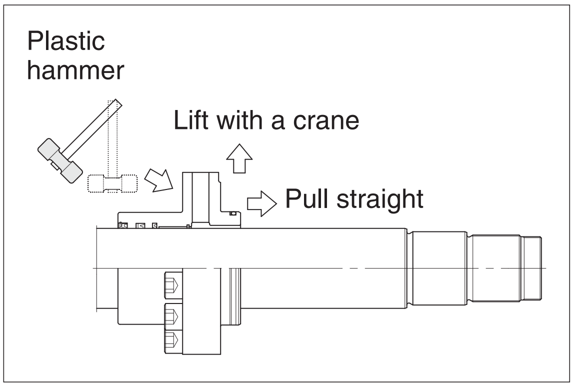


③ Remove the cylinder head assembly from rod assembly (2).

※ If it is too heavy to move, move it by striking the flanged part of cylinder head with a plastic hammer.

※ Pull it straight with cylinder head assembly lifted with a crane.

Exercise care so as not to damage the lip of rod bushing (4) and packing (5,6,7,8,9,10) by the threads of rod assembly (2).

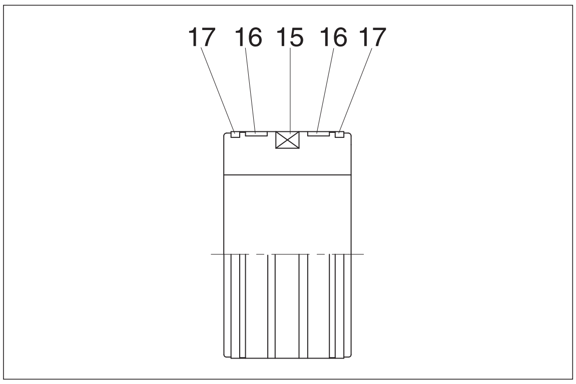


(3) Disassemble the piston assembly

① Remove wear ring (16).

② Remove dust ring (17) and piston seal (15).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.



(4) Disassemble cylinder head assembly

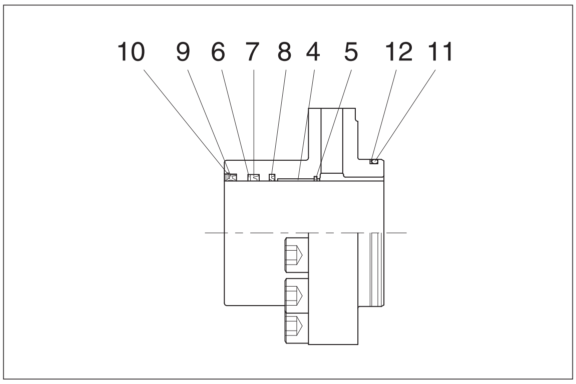
① Remove back up ring (12) and O-ring (11).

② Remove snap ring (10), dust wiper (9).

③ Remove back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.

※ Do not remove seal and ring, if does not damaged.

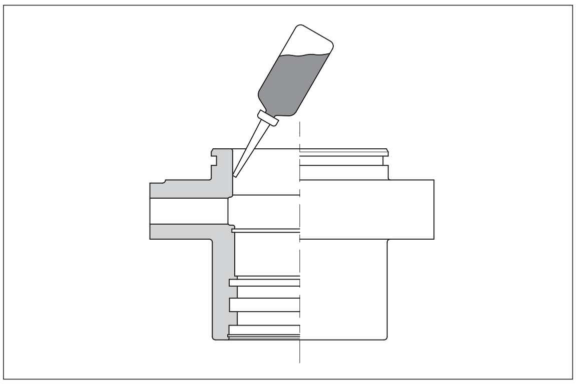


3) ASSEMBLY

(1) Assemble cylinder head assembly

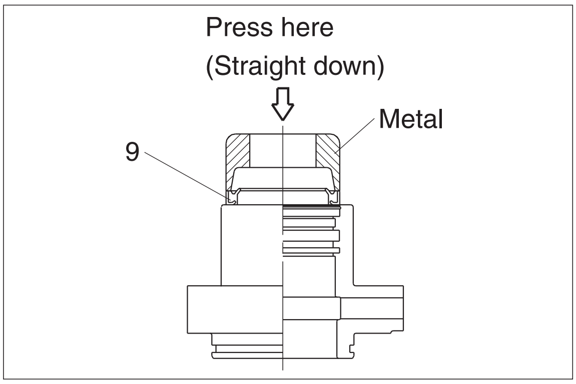
※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces if found smooth with an oil stone.

① Coat the inner face of gland (3) with hydraulic oil.



② Coat dust wiper (9) with grease and fit dust wiper (9) to the bottom of the hole of dust seal.
At this time, press a pad metal to the metal ring of dust seal.

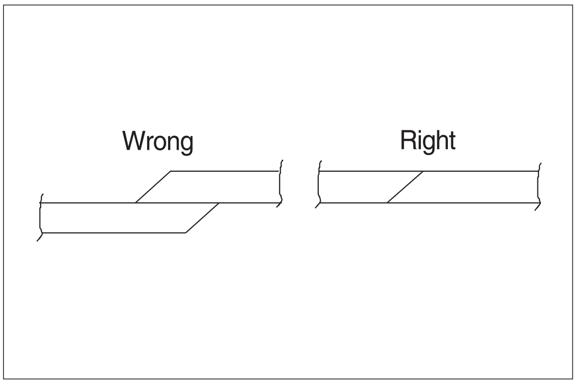
③ Fit snap ring (10) to the stop face.



④ Fit back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8) to corresponding grooves, in that order.

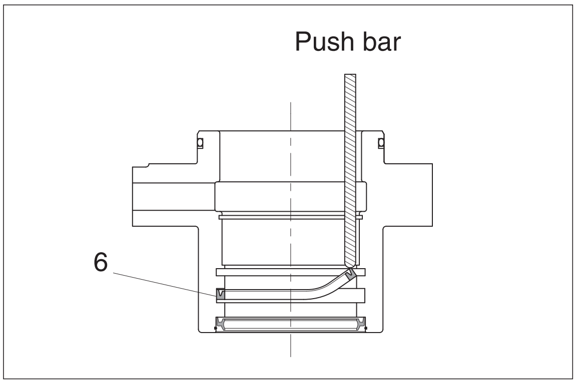
※ Coat each packing with hydraulic oil before fitting it.

※ Insert the backup ring until one side of it is inserted into groove.

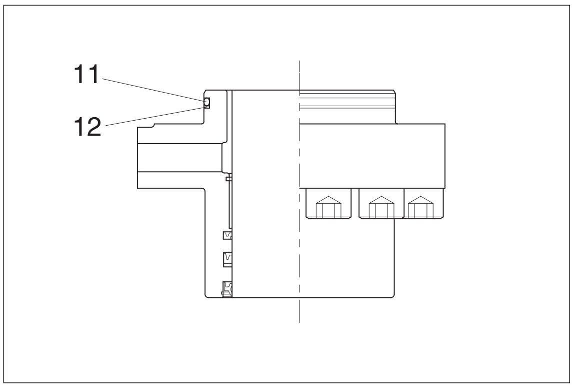


※ Rod seal (6) has its own fitting direction. Therefore, confirm it before fitting them.

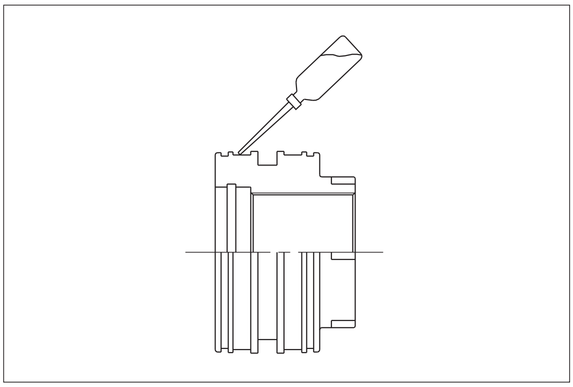
※ Fitting rod seal (6) upside down may damage its lip. Therefore check the correct direction that is shown in fig.



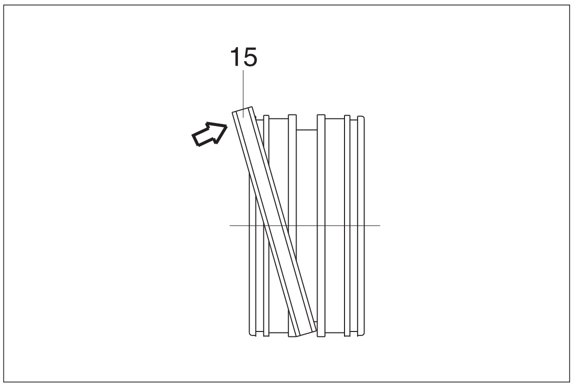
⑤ Fit back up ring (12) to gland (3).
※ Put the backup ring in the warm water of 30~50˚C.
⑥ Fit O-ring (11) to gland (3).



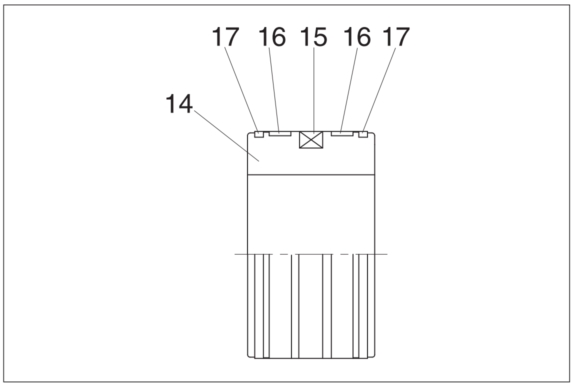
(2) Assemble piston assembly
※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces. If found smooth with an oil stone.
① Coat the outer face of piston (14) with hydraulic oil.



② Fit piston seal (15) to piston.
※ Put the piston seal in the warm water of 60~100˚C for more than 5 minutes.
※ After assembling the piston seal, press its outer diameter to fit in.



③ Fit wear ring (16) and dust ring (17) to piston (14).

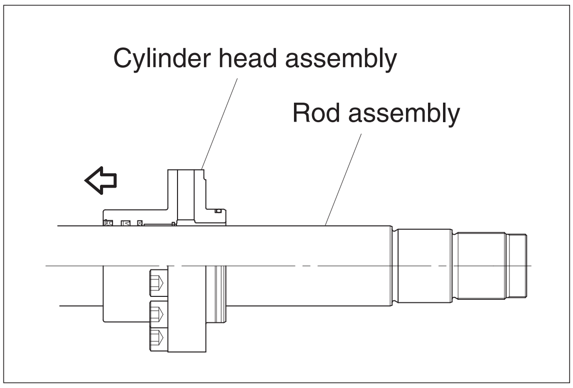


(3) Install piston and cylinder head

① Fix the rod assembly to the work bench.

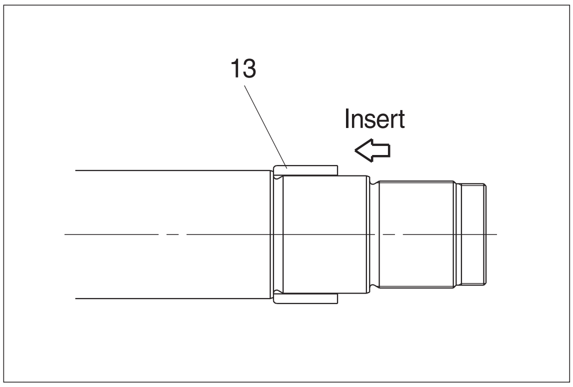
② Apply hydraulic oil to the outer surface of rod assembly (2), the inner surface of piston and cylinder head.

③ Insert cylinder head assembly to rod assembly.



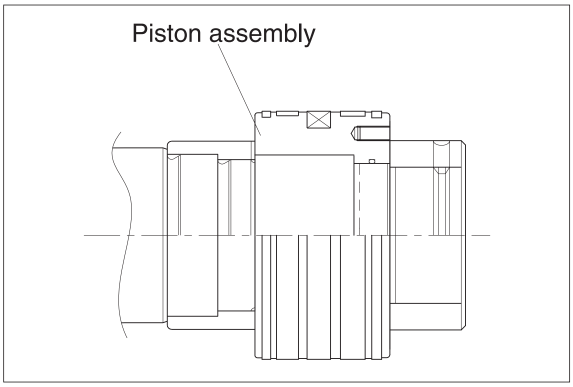
④ Insert cushion ring (13) to rod assembly.

※ Note that cushion ring (13) has a direction in which it should be fitted.



⑤ Fit piston assembly to rod assembly.

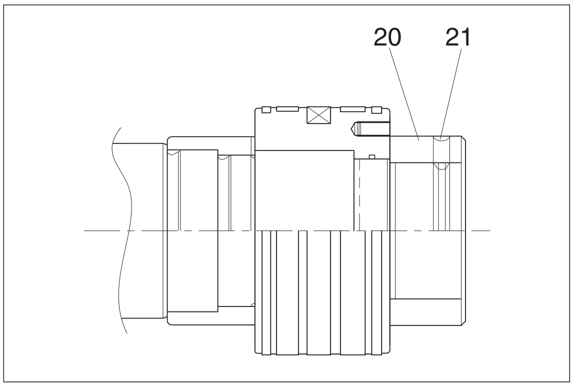
· Tightening torque : 100±10.0 kgf · m (723±72.3 lbf · ft)



⑥ Fit lock nut (20) and tighten the screw (21).

· Tightening torque :

Item		kgf · m	lbf · ft
Bucket Boom	20	100±10	723±72.3
	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6
Arm	20	150±15	1085±108
	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6



(3) Overall assemble

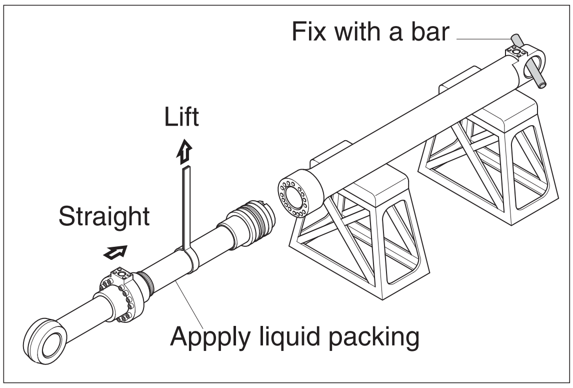
① Place a V-block on a rigid work bench. Mount the tube assembly (1) on it and fix the assembly by passing a bar through the clevis pin hole to lock the assembly.

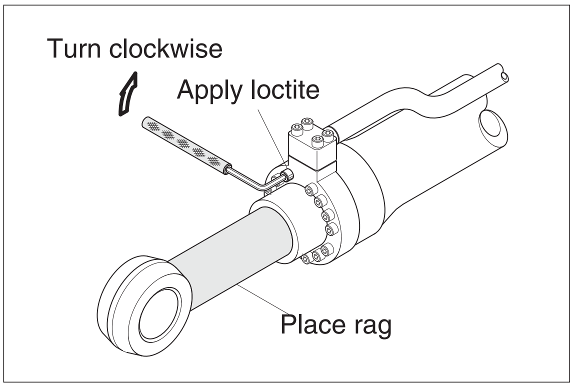
② Insert the rod assembly in to the tube assembly, while lifting and moving the rod assembly with a crane.

※ Be careful not to damage piston seal by thread of tube assembly.

③ Match the bolt holes in the cylinder head flange to the tapped holes in the tube assembly and tighten socket bolts to a specified torque.

※ Refer to the table of tightening torque.

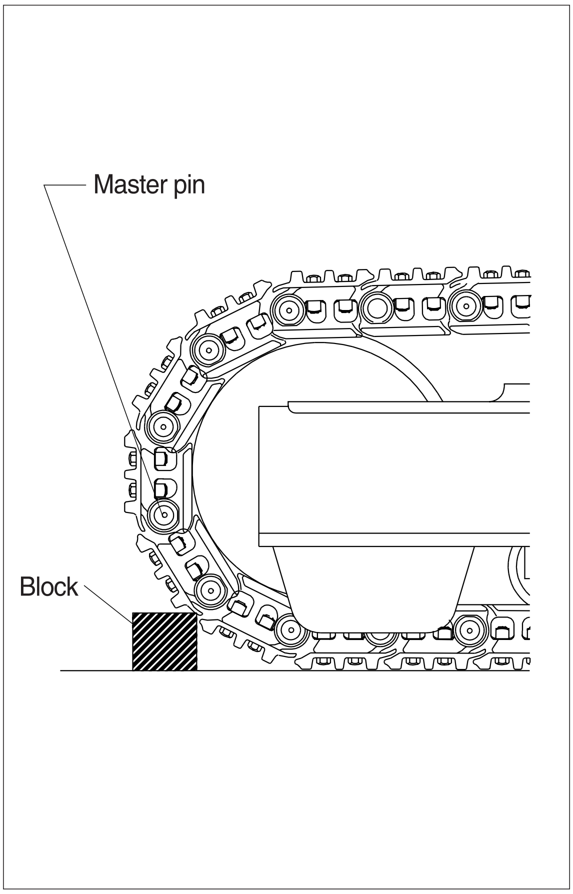




1. TRACK LINK

1) REMOVAL

(1) Move track link until master pin is over front idler in the position put wooden block as shown.



(2) Loosen tension of the track link.

※ If track tension is not relieved when the grease valve is loosened, move the machine backwards and forwards.

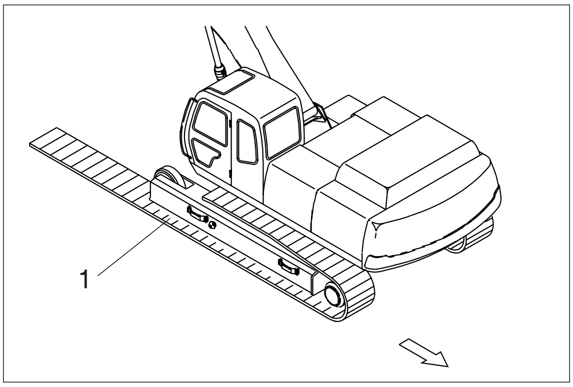
※ Unscrew the grease nipple after release the tension by pushing the poppet only when necessarily required.
Grease leaking hole is not existing. So, while unscrew the grease nipple, grease is not leaking until the grease nipple is completely coming out. If the tension is not released in advance, the grease nipple can be suddenly popped out by pressurized grease.

(3) Push out master pin by using a suitable tool.

(4) Move the machine slowly in reverse, and lay out track link assembly (1).

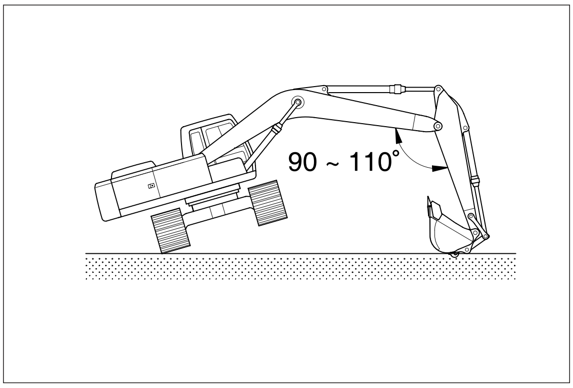
※ Jack up the machine and put wooden block under the machine.

※ Don't get close to the sprocket side as the track shoe plate may fall down on your feet.



2) INSTALL

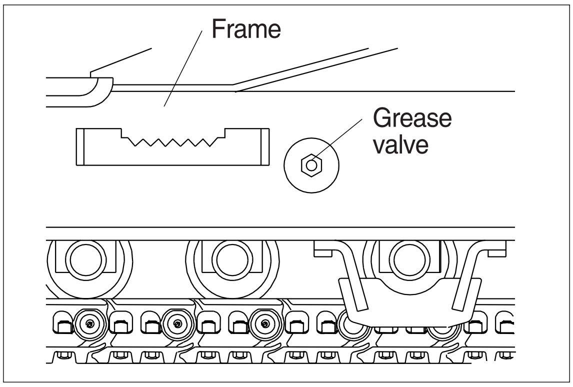
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
Adjust the tension of the track link.



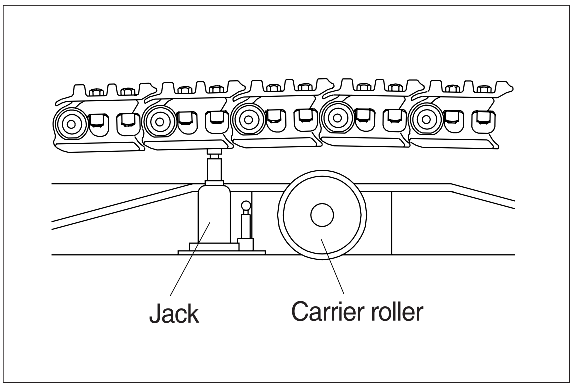
2. CARRIER ROLLER

1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.

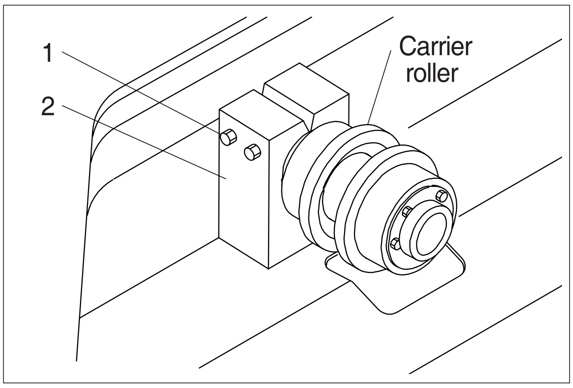


(2) Jack up the track link height enough to permit carrier roller removal.



(3) Loosen the lock nut (1).

(4) Open bracket (2) with a screwdriver, push out from inside, and remove carrier roller assembly.
Weight : 48 kg (88 lb)



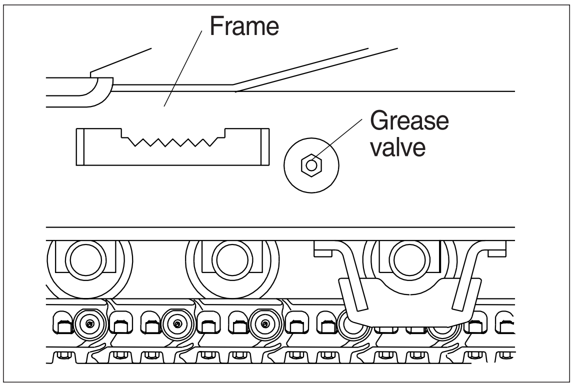
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

3. TRACK ROLLER

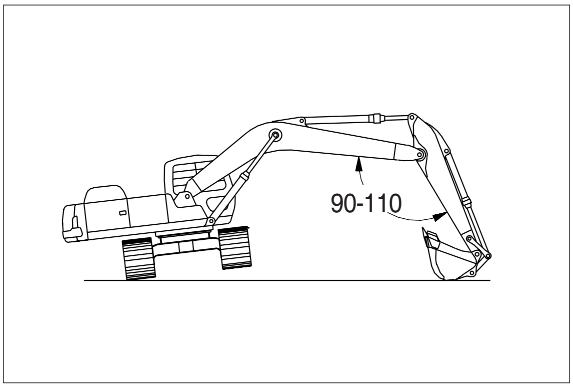
1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



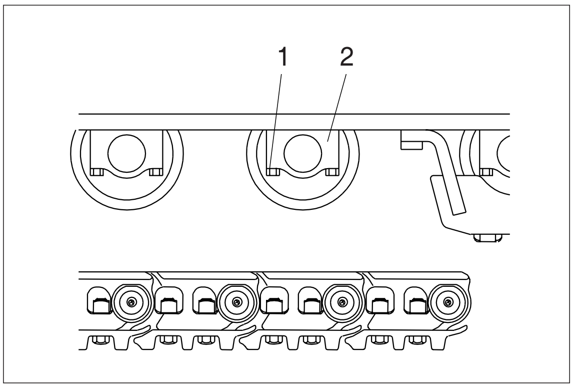
(2) Using the work equipment, push up track frame on side which is to be removed.

※ After jack up the machine, set a block under the unit.



(3) Remove the mounting bolt (1) and draw out the track roller (2).

·Weight : 54 ㎏ (119㏐)



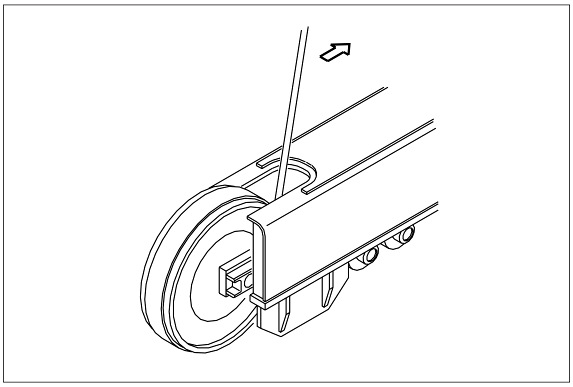
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

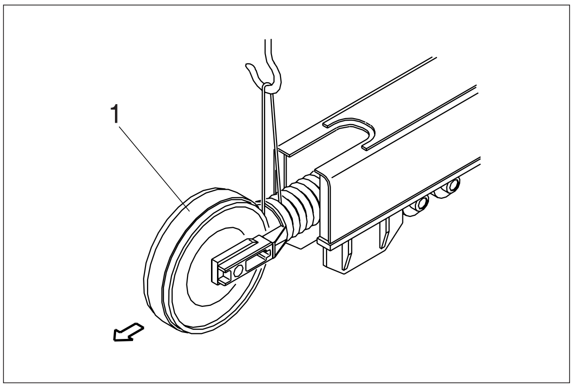
4. IDLER AND RECOIL SPRING

1) REMOVAL

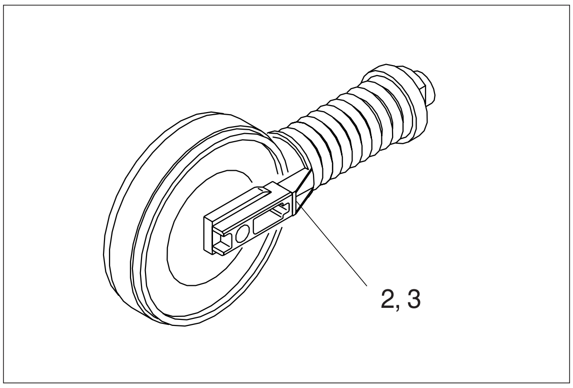
(1) Remove the track link.
For detail, see **removal of track link.**



(2) Sling the recoil spring (1) and pull out idler and recoil spring assembly from track frame, using a pry.
·Weight : 457 ㎏ (1010 ℔)

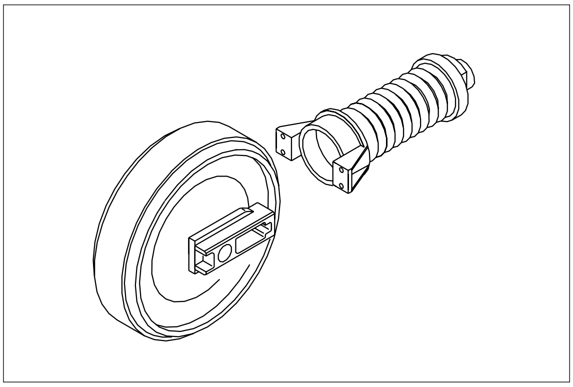


(3) Remove the bolts (2), washers (3) and separate idler from recoil spring.



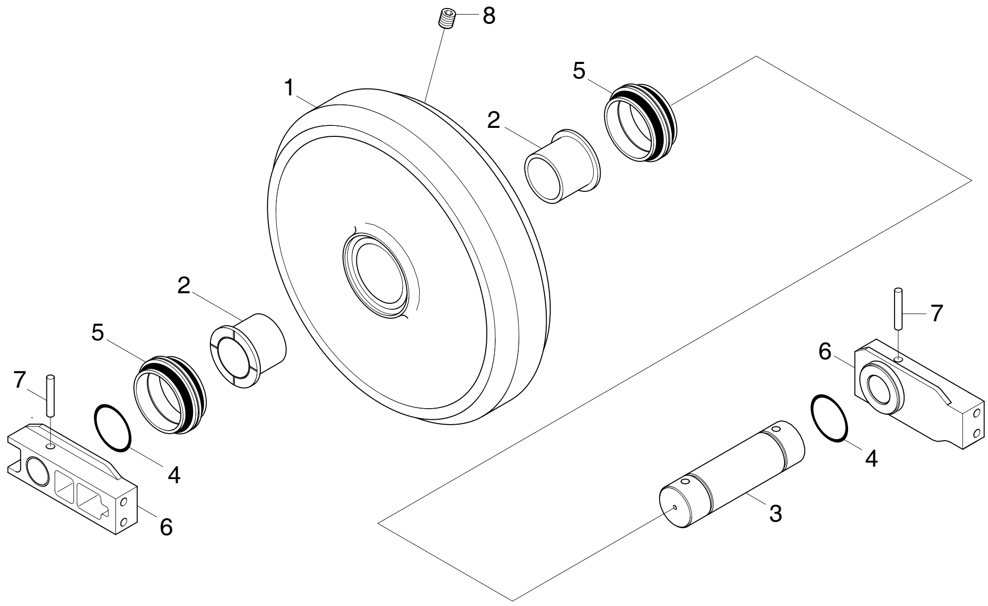
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
※ Make sure that the boss on the end face of the recoil cylinder rod is in the hole of the track frame.



3) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF IDLER

(1) Structure

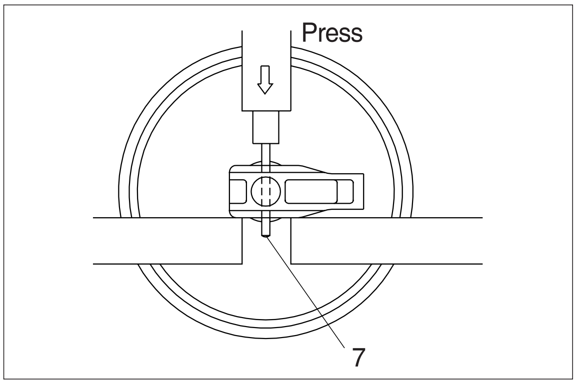


1	Shell	4	O-ring	7	Spring pin
2	Bushing	5	Seal assembly	8	Plug
3	Shaft	6	Bracket		

(2) Disassembly

① Remove plug and drain oil.

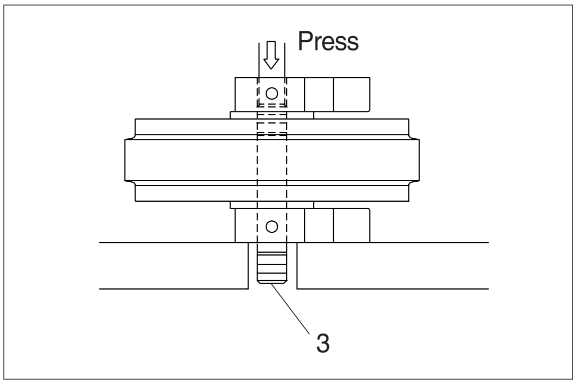
② Draw out the spring pin (7), using a press.



③ Pull out the shaft (2) with a press.

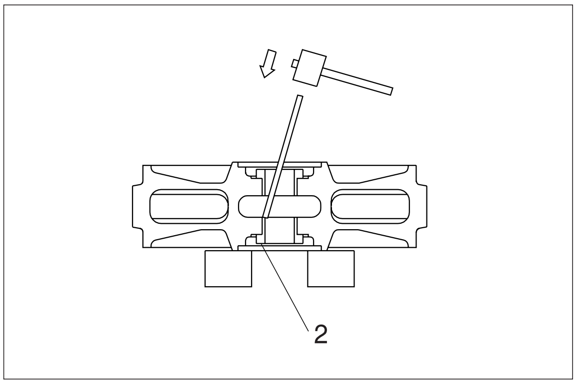
④ Remove seal (5) from shell (1) and bracket (6).

⑤ Remove O-ring (4) from shaft.



⑥ Remove the bushing (2) from idler, using a special tool.

※ Only remove bushing if replacement is necessity.

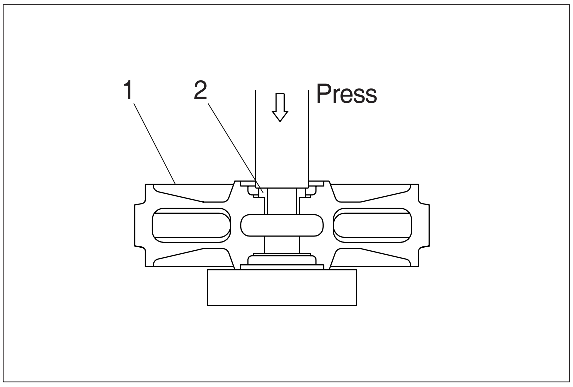


(3) Assembly

※ Before assembly, clean the parts.

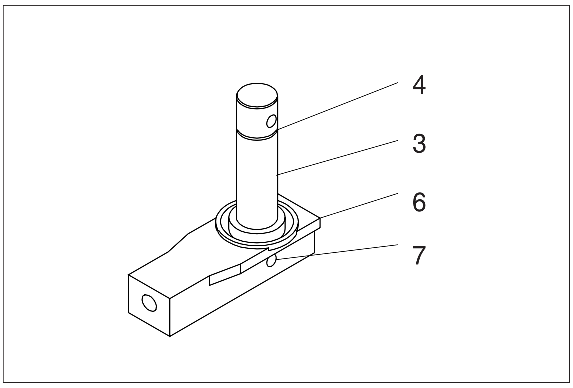
※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with oil.

① Cool up bushing (2) fully by some dry ice and press it into shell (1).
Do not press it at the normal temperature, or not knock in with a hammer even after the cooling.

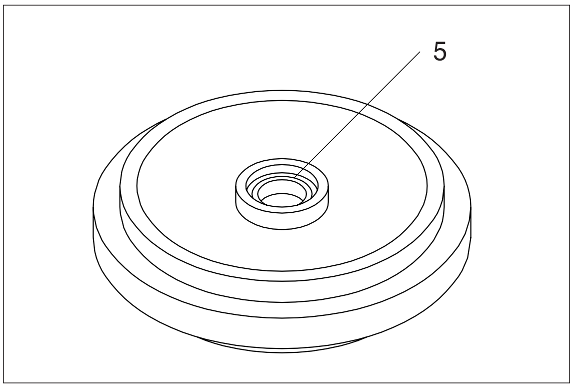


② Coat O-ring (4) with grease thinly, and install it to shaft (3).

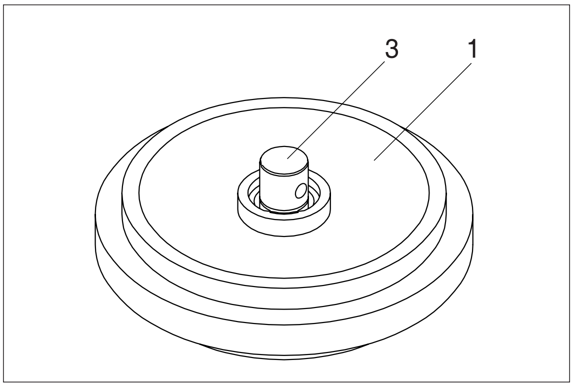
③ Insert shaft (3) into bracket (6) and drive in the spring pin (7).



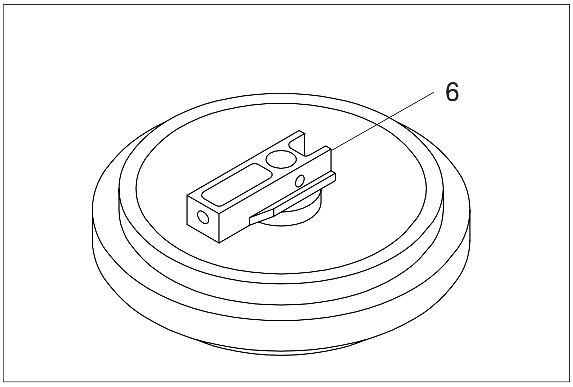
④ Install seal (5) to shell (1) and bracket (6).



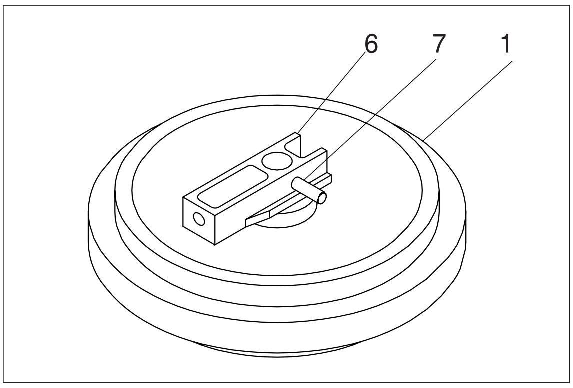
⑤ Install shaft (3) to shell (1).



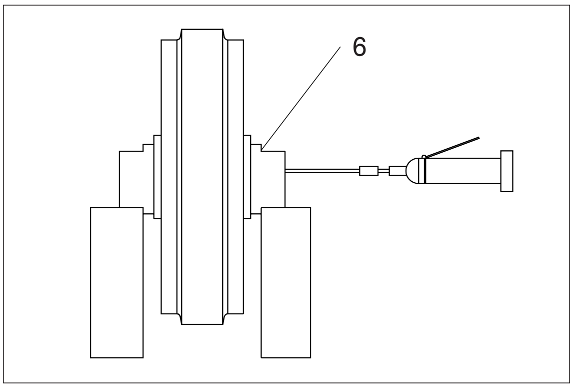
⑥ Install bracket (6) attached with seal (5).



⑦ Knock in the spring pin (7) with a hammer.

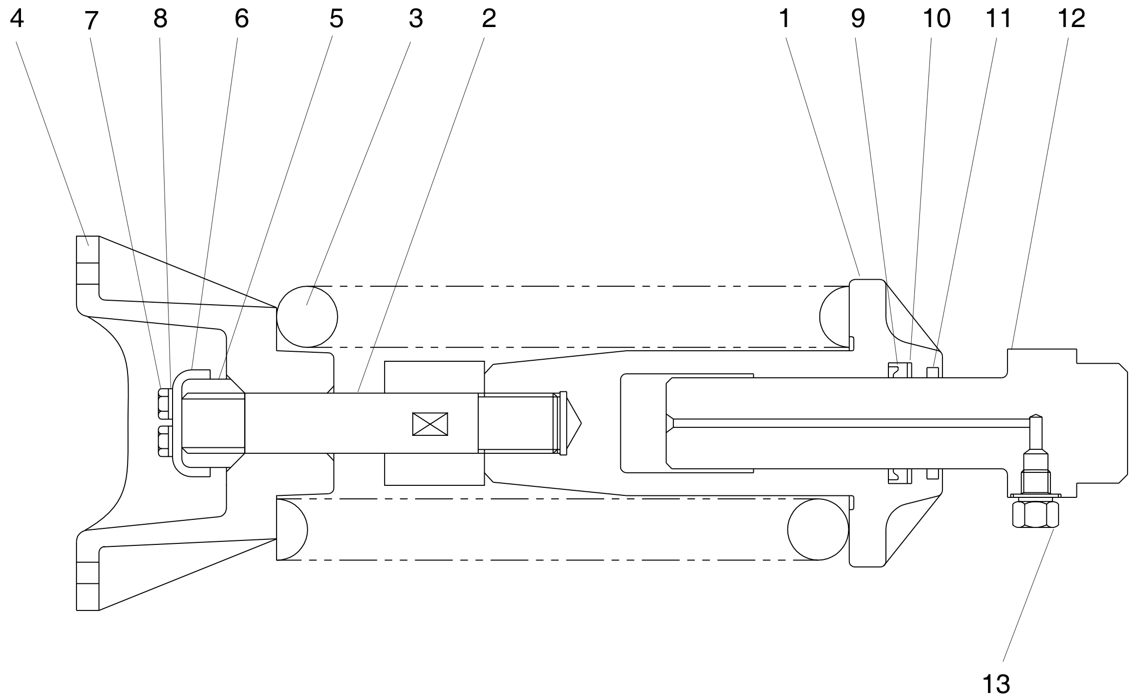


⑧ Lay bracket (6) on its side.
Supply engine oil to the specified level, and tighten plug.



4) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF RECOIL SPRING

(1) Structure



1	Body	6	Lock plate	11	Dust seal
2	Tie bar	7	Bolt	12	Rod assembly
3	Spring	8	Spring washer	13	Grease valve
4	Bracket	9	Rod seal	14	Stopper tube
5	Lock nut	10	Back up ring		

(2) Disassembly

① Apply pressure on spring (3) with a press.

※ The spring is under a large installed load. This is dangerous, so be sure to set properly.

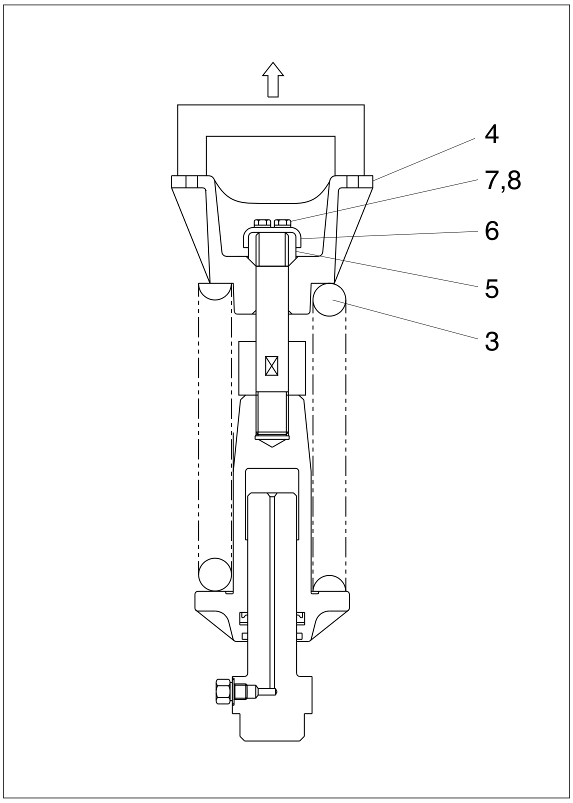
·Spring set load : 19012 ㎏ (41826 ℔)

② Remove bolt (7), spring washer (8) and lock plate (6).

③ Remove lock nut (5).

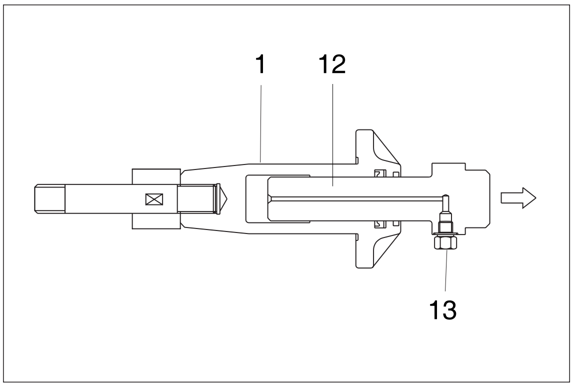
Take enough notice so that the press which pushes down the spring, should not be slipped out in its operation.

④ Lighten the press load slowly and remove bracket (4) and spring (3).

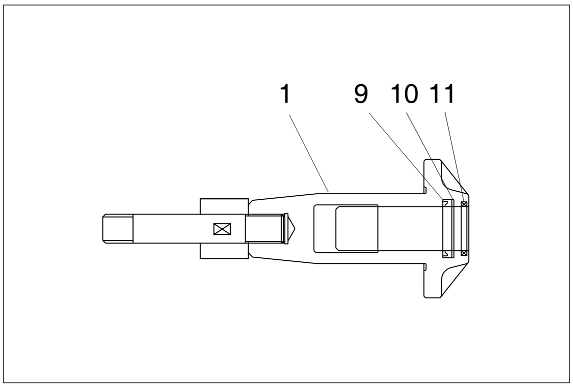


⑤ Remove rod (12) from body (1).

⑥ Remove grease valve (13) from rod (12).



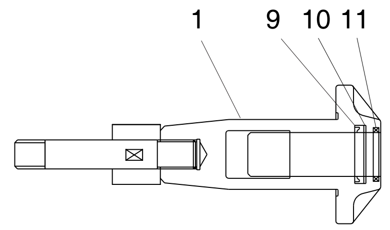
⑦ Remove rod seal (9), back up ring (10) and dust seal (11).



(3) Assembly

① Install dust seal (11), back up ring (10) and rod seal (9) to body (1).

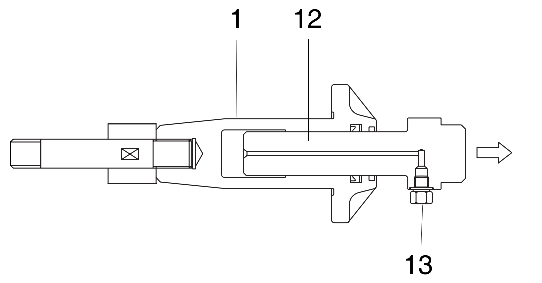
※ When installing dust seal (11) and rod seal (9), take full care so as not to damage the lip.



② Pour grease into body (1), then push in rod (12) by hand.
After take grease out of grease valve mounting hole, let air out.

※ If air letting is not sufficient, it may be difficult to adjust the tension of crawler.

③ Fit grease valve (13) to rod (12).
·Tightening torque : 13.0±1.0 kgf·m
(94±7.2 lbf·ft)

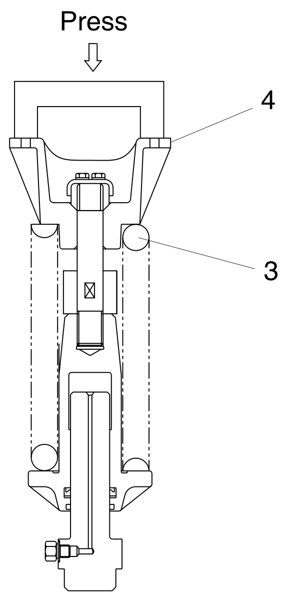


④ Install spring (3) and bracket (4) to body (1).

⑤ Apply pressure to spring (3) with a press and tighten lock nut (5).

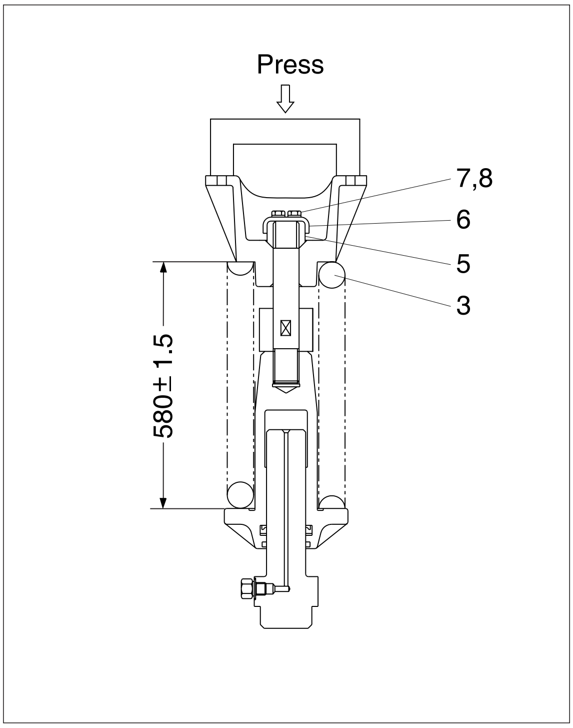
※ Apply sealant before assembling.

※ During the operation, pay attention specially to prevent the press from slipping out.



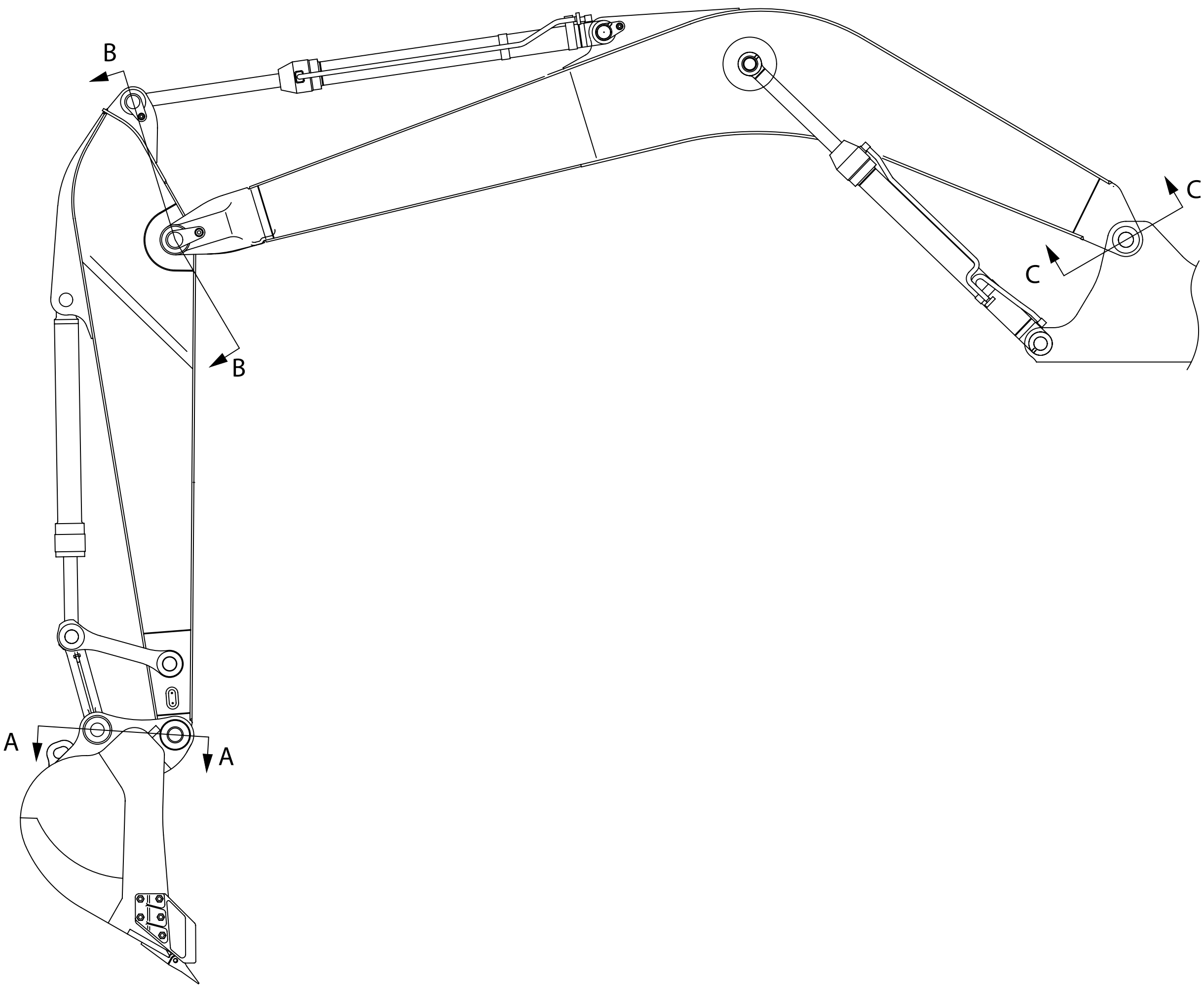
⑥ Lighten the press load and confirm the set length of spring (3).

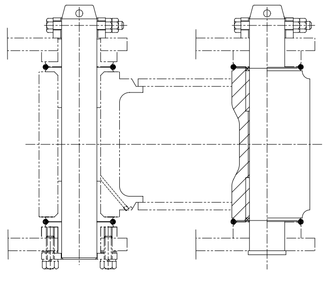
⑦ After the setting of spring (3), install lock plate (6), spring washer (8) and bolt (7).



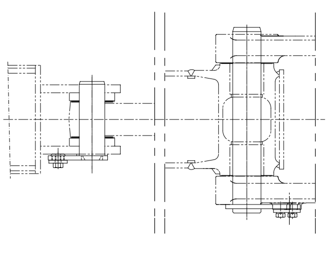
GROUP 11 WORK EQUIPMENT

1. STRUCTURE

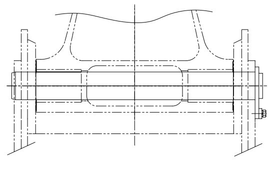




SECTION A



SECTION B



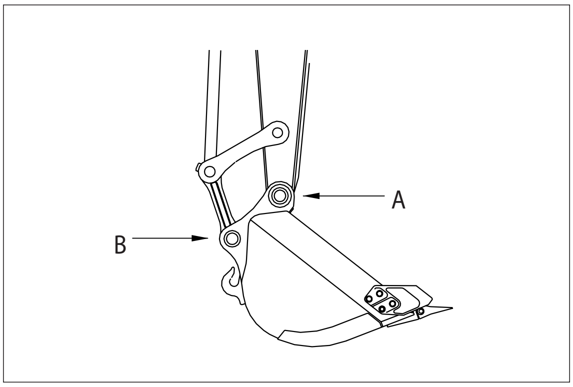
SECTION C

2. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

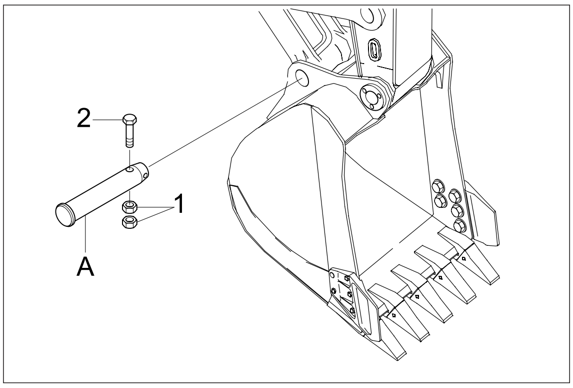
1) BUCKET ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

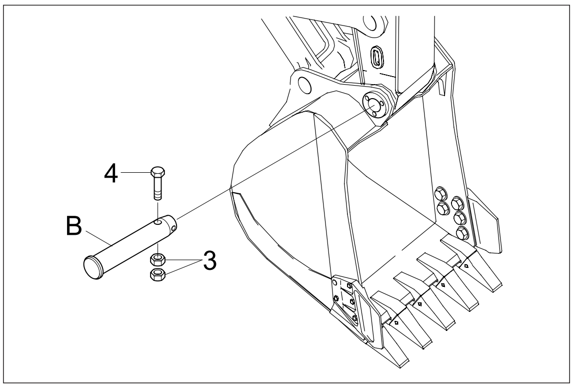
① Lower the work equipment completely to ground with back of bucket facing down.



② Remove nut (1), bolt (2) and draw out the pin (A).



③ Remove nut (3), bolt (4) and draw out the pin (B).

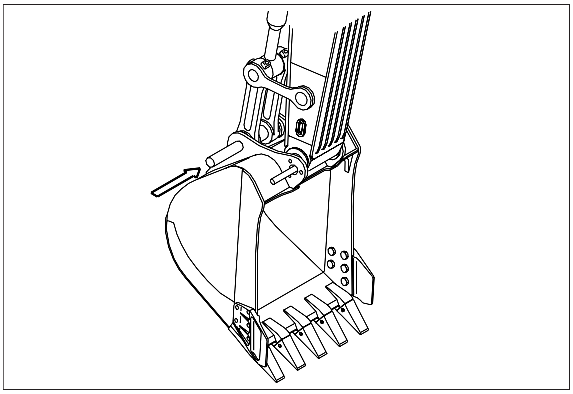


(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Adjust the bucket clearance.
For detail, see **operation manual.**



2) ARM ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

※ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrated the skin causing serious injury.**

① Remove bucket assembly.
For details, see **removal of bucket assembly.**

② Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (1).

⚠ **Fit blind plugs in the piping at the chassis end securely to prevent oil from spurting out when the engine is started.**

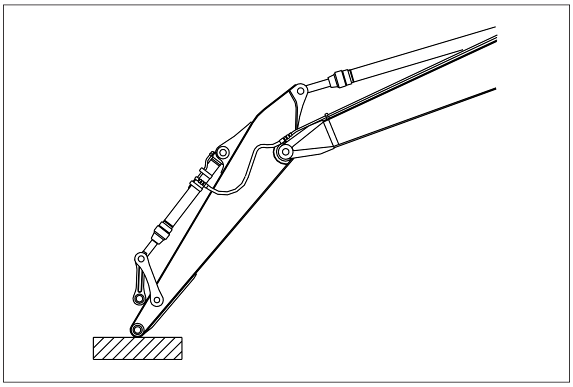
③ Sling arm cylinder assembly, remove spring, pin stopper and pull out pin.

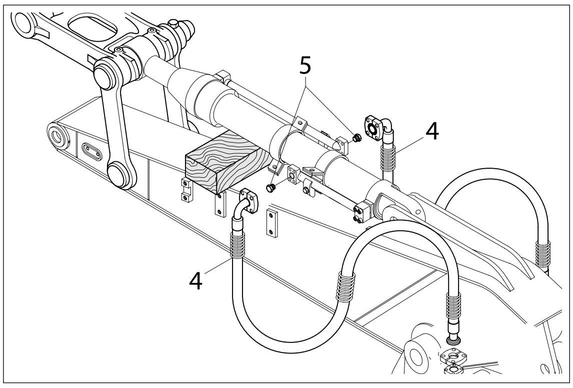
※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.

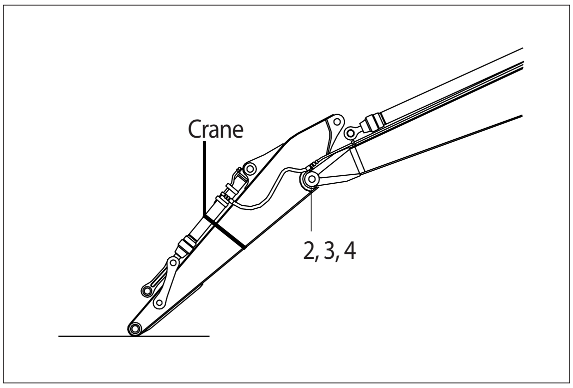
④ For details, see r**emoval of arm cylinder assembly.**
Place a wooden block under the cylinder and bring the cylinder down to it.

⑤ Remove bolt (2), plate (3) and pull out the pin (4) then remove the arm assembly.
· Weight : 1025 kg (2260 lb)

※ When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.







(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

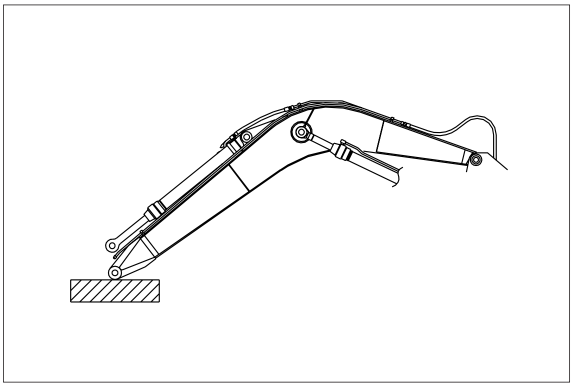
※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

① Remove arm and bucket assembly.
For details, see **removal of arm and bucket assembly.**

② Remove boom cylinder assembly from boom.
For details, see **removal of arm cylinder assembly.**

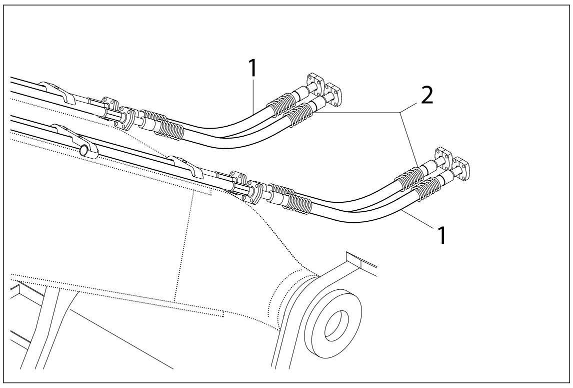


③ Disconnect head lamp wiring.

④ Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (2) and arm cylinder hose (1).

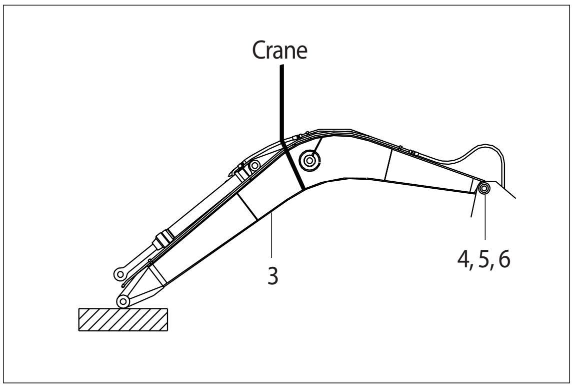
※ When the hose are disconnected, oil may spurt out.

⑤ Sling boom assembly (3).



⑥ Remove bolt (4), plate (5) and pull out the pin (6) then remove boom assembly.
· Weight : 2200 kg (4860 lb)

※ When lifting the boom assembly always lift the center of gravity.



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.